IBM Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1

Upgrade and Migration Guide for V5 Servers



IBM Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1

Upgrade and Migration Guide for V5 Servers



Note:

Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in "Notices" on page 559.

First edition (December 2013)

This edition applies to version 7, release 1, modification 0 of IBM Tivoli Storage Manager (product numbers 5608-E01, 5608-E02, 5608-E03), and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions.

© Copyright IBM Corporation 2009, 2013.

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

Preface	 	•	•	-	. xi
Who should read this guide					. xi
How to use this guide					. xi
Publications	 				. xii

New for Tivoli Storage Manager

Version 7.1
New in Version 7.1
Operations Center updates
Automatic client failover for restore operations
from replicated servers
Software upgrade for the server database
manager
Deprecated device types
EMC Centera availability on Linux x86_64
systems for Tivoli Storage Manager servers xiv
File-space level collocation groups xv
Improved server efficiency when migrating from
disk for nodes with a large number of file spaces. xv
Shared memory for database backup and restore
operations
Immediate use of space that is added to the
server database
Server components that are not delivered with
Version 7.1

Part 1. Upgrading the server from V5

to	V7.1	•			•	•	•	•	•			1

Chapter 1. Server database updates

overview	5
The server database	5
Database space for a V7.1 server 4	t
Recovery log 4	t
Operation changes	t
Database operations 4	t
Database protection and recovery 5	;
Multiple server instances on a single system 7	,
Changes to starting the server 8	,
Files and environment changes 9)
Administrative command changes 10)

Chapter 2. Planning the upgrade of the

server
The process for upgrading the server from V5 to
V7.1
Comparison of upgrading on an existing system
and a new system
Comparison of methods for moving data to the
V7.1 database
DSMUPGRD upgrade utilities
Hardware and software requirements for upgrading
to the V7.1 server \hdots

Hardware and software requirements for the V5	15
Hardware and software requirements for the	17
upgraded server.	19
Compatibility of the Tivoli Storage Manager server	
with other DB2 products on the system	35
Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server	
before an upgrade	36
Planning space for the upgrade process and the	
upgraded server	37
Space requirements for the V5 server system	37
Space requirements for the V7 server system	38
Estimating total space requirements for the	
upgrade process and upgraded server	39
Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server	42
Estimating the upgrade time.	42
Example: Estimating the upgrade time based on	40
the database size	43
Performance tips for the V5 database extraction	11
process	44
detebase	15
Planning for ungrading multiple servers and	40
components	15
Components that are available for installation	46
Compatibility with servers and components that	10
are running at earlier versions	46
Planning for upgrading multiple servers on a	10
single system	46
Planning for upgrading library managers and	
library clients.	47
Planning for upgrading clients	47
Planning for upgrading storage agents	47
Testing the upgrade process for a server	47
Testing by extracting data from a separate copy	
of the server	49
Testing by extracting data from the production	
server	49
Preparing for operational changes	50
Reference information for planning	51
Command and option changes	51
New and changed server messages	70
Server naming best practices	70
Chapter 2. Unavede econories everyieur	70
Chapter 3. Upgrade scenarios overview	13
Scenario 1 for upgrading the server: same system,	-
In a method	73
Upgrading the server by using the wizard	74
Scenario 2 for ungrading the convert same system	70
notwork method	79
Upgrading the server by using the wizard	78
Upgrading the server manually by using utilities	80
Scenario 3 for upgrading the server new system	00
media method	82
	52

Upgrading the server by using the wizard	82
Upgrading the server manually by using utilities	84
Scenario 4 for upgrading the server: New system,	
network method.	86
Upgrading the server by using the wizard	86
Upgrading the server manually by using utilities	88

Chapter 4. Scenario 1: Same system, media method

media method	91
Scenario 1: Preparing for the upgrade	. 91
Scenario 1: Checking the prerequisites for the	
upgrade	. 92
Scenario 1: Preparing space for the upgrade	
process	. 95
Scenario 1: Modifying the server before the	
upgrade	. 96
Scenario 1: Disabling sessions	. 97
Scenario 1: Backing up storage pools and the	
server database	. 98
Scenario 1: Moving the NODELOCK file	. 98
Scenario 1: Backing up configuration information	99
Scenario 1: Creating a summary of database	
contents	. 99
Scenario 1: Stopping the server before installing	
the upgrade	100
Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities	100
Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities on	
AIX systems.	101
Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities on	
HP-UX systems.	102
Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities on	
Linux systems	103
Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities on	
Oracle Solaris systems	104
Scenario 1: Setting environment variables for the	
upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and	
Oracle Solaris systems	106
Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities on	105
Microsoft Windows systems	107
Scenario 1: Preparing the database of a V5 server	107
for upgrade	107
Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program before	100
Installing V/.1	109
Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program on AIX	100
Systems	109
Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program on	100
HF-OX systems.	109
Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program on	110
Linux systems	110
Oracle Selaria austaning the V5 program on	110
Comparis 1. Universal line the VE and another and	110
Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program on	111
Microsoft Windows systems	111
Scenario 1: Installing the directories and the user ID	111
Scenario 1: Creating the directories and the user ID	115
For the upgraded server instance	115
upgrade wigard	110
Congrigate Wilding the correct manually last	110
using utilities	120
Scenario 1: Extracting the data to modia	120
occhanto 1. Extracting the data to media	141

Scenario 1: Creating and formatting the new
database
Scenario 1: Loading the extracted data into the
new database
Scenario 1: Creating a Windows service for the
server instance
Scenario 1: Configuring the system for database
backup

Chapter 5. Scenario 2: Same system,

network method	135
Scenario 2: Preparing for the upgrade	135
Scenario 2: Checking the prerequisites for the	
upgrade	136
Scenario 2: Preparing space for the upgrade	
process	139
Scenario 2: Modifying the server before the	
upgrade	139
Scenario 2: Disabling sessions	141
Scenario 2: Backing up storage pools and the	
server database.	141
Scenario 2: Moving the NODELOCK file	142
Scenario 2: Backing up configuration	
information	142
Scenario 2: Creating a summary of database	
contents	143
Scenario 2: Stopping the server before installing	
the upgrade	143
Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities	144
Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities on	
AIX systems.	144
Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities on	
HP-UX systems.	146
Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities on	
Linux systems	147
Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities on	
Oracle Solaris systems	148
Scenario 2: Setting environment variables for the	
upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and	
Oracle Solaris systems	149
Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities on	
Microsoft Windows systems	150
Scenario 2: Preparing the database of a V5 server	
or upgrade	151
Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program before	
nstalling V7.1	152
Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program on AIX	
systems	152
Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program on	
HP-UX systems.	153
Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program on	
Linux systems	153
Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program on	
Oracle Solaris systems	154
Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program on	
Microsoft Windows systems	154
Scenario 2: Installing the V7.1 server	155
Scenario 2: Creating the directories and the user ID	
for the upgraded server instance	159
Scenario 2: Upgrading the server by using the	
upgrade wizard	162
10	

iv IBM Tivoli Storage Manager: Upgrade and Migration Guide for V5 Servers

Scenario 2: Upgrading the server manually by

ısing utilities	164
Scenario 2: Creating and formatting the new	
database	164
Scenario 2: Moving the server database over a	
network	169
Scenario 2: Creating a Windows service for the	
server instance	170
Scenario 2: Configuring the system for database	
backup	171

Chapter 6. Scenario 3: New system,

media method
Scenario 3: Preparing for the upgrade
Scenario 3: Checking the prerequisites for the
upgrade
Scenario 3: Preparing space for the upgrade
process
Scenario 3: Modifying the server before the
upgrade
Scenario 3: Disabling sessions
Scenario 3: Backing up storage pools and the
server database
Scenario 3: Moving the NODELOCK file 184
Scenario 3: Backing up configuration
information
Scenario 3: Creating a summary of database
contents
Scenario 3: Stopping the server before installing
the upgrade
Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities 186
Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities on
AIX systems
Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities on
HP-UX systems
Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities on
Linux systems
Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities on
Oracle Solaris systems
Scenario 3: Setting environment variables for the
upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and
Oracle Solaris systems
Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities on
Microsoft Windows systems
Scenario 3: Upgrading the server by using the
upgrade wizard
Scenario 3, wizard: Installing the V7.1 server 194
Scenario 3, wizard: Creating the directories and
the user ID for the upgraded server instance 198
Scenario 3: Starting the upgrade wizard 201
Scenario 3: Upgrading the server manually by
using utilities
Scenario 3: Preparing the database of a V5
server for upgrade
Scenario 3: Extracting the data to media 204
Scenario 3, manual: Installing the V7.1 server 205
Scenario 3, manual: Creating the directories and
the user ID for the upgraded server instance 209
Scenario 3: Creating and formatting the new
database

Scenario 3: Loading the extracted data into the
new database
Scenario 3: Creating a Windows service for the
server instance
Scenario 3: Configuring the system for database
backup

Chapter 7. Scenario 4: New system, network method

network method	225
Scenario 4: Preparing for the upgrade	. 225
Scenario 4: Checking the prerequisites for the	
upgrade	. 226
Scenario 4: Preparing space for the upgrade	
process	. 229
Scenario 4: Modifying the server before the	
upgrade	229
Scenario 4. Disabling sessions	230
Scenario 4: Backing up storage pools and the	. 200
server database	231
Sconario 4: Moving the NODELOCK file	· 201
Scenario 4: Backing up configuration	. 202
information	222
Secondario A. Creating a summary of database	. 232
Scenario 4: Creating a summary of database	^ ~~
Contents	. 233
Scenario 4: Stopping the server before installing	000
	. 233
Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities	. 233
Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities on	
AIX systems.	. 234
Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities on	
HP-UX systems.	. 236
Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities on	
Linux systems	. 237
Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities on	
Oracle Solaris systems	. 238
Scenario 4: Setting environment variables for the	9
upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and	
Oracle Solaris systems	. 239
Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities on	
Microsoft Windows systems	. 240
Scenario 4: Upgrading the server by using the	
upgrade wizard	. 241
Scenario 4, wizard: Installing the V7.1 server	241
Scenario 4, wizard: Creating the directories and	
the user ID for the upgraded server instance.	. 245
Scenario 4: Starting the upgrade wizard	. 248
Scenario 4. Upgrading the server manually by	10
using utilities	250
Scenario 4: Preparing the database of a V5	. 200
server for upgrade	250
Scopario 4 manual: Installing the V71 corver	250 252
Scenario 4, manual: Creating the directories and	232
Scenario 4, manual: Creating the directories and	250
the user ID for the upgraded server instance.	. 256
Scenario 4: Creating and formatting the new	
	. 259
Scenario 4: Moving the server database over a	
network	. 263
Scenario 4: Creating a Windows service for the	
server instance	. 265
Scenario 4: Configuring the system for database	
backup	. 265

Chapter 8. Clustered environments:

Upgrade procedures	271
Upgrading the server to V7.1 in an AIX clustered	
environment	271
Upgrading the server to V7.1 in a Windows	
clustered environment	273
Planning the upgrade and preparing the system	273
Installing the V7.1 server and running the	
upgrade wizard	274

Chapter 9. General procedures for

upgrading a server to v7.1 2	.//
Preparing for the upgrade	277
Checking the prerequisites for the upgrade	278
Preparing space for the upgrade process	281
Modifying the server before the upgrade	282
Disabling sessions	284
Backing up storage pools and the server	
database	284
Moving the NODELOCK file	285
Backing up configuration information	285
Creating a summary of database contents	286
Stopping the server before installing the	
upgrade	286
Installing the upgrade utilities on the original	
server	287
Installing the upgrade utilities on AIX systems	287
Installing the upgrade utilities on HP-UX	
systems	289
Installing the upgrade utilities on Linux systems	290
Installing the upgrade utilities on Oracle Solaris	
systems	291
Setting environment variables for the upgrade	
utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle	
Solaris systems	292
Installing the upgrade utilities on Microsoft	••••
Windows systems	293
Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade	294
Uninstalling the V5 program before installing V7.1	295
Uninstalling the V5 program on AIX systems	295
Uninstalling the V5 program on HP-UX systems	296
Uninstalling the V5 program on Linux systems	296
Uninstalling the V5 program on Oracle Solaris	207
Uningtalling the VE program on Migrosoft	297
Windows systems	207
Installing the V71 server	297
Creating the directories and the user ID for the	291
ungraded server instance	302
Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard	305
Upgrading the server manually by using utilities	307
Creating and formatting the new database	308
Moving the server database using media	312
Moving the server database over a network	316
Creating a Windows service for the server	510
instance	318
Configuring the system for database backup	318
	- 10

Chapter 10. Taking the first steps after

· · · ·
upgrade
Verifying access to storage pools on disk
Setting up Solaris services for the server instance 324
Configuring server options for server database
maintenance
Starting the server instance after the upgrade
Starting the server on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and
Oracle Solaris systems
Starting the server on Windows systems
Registering licenses
Backing up the database after upgrading the server 335
Verifying the upgraded server
Changing the host name for the Tivoli Storage
Manager server
Changing the host name for a server running on
AIX, HP-UX, Linux, or Solaris systems
Changing the host name for a server running on
Windows
Updating automation.
Monitoring the upgraded server
Removing GSKit Version 7 after upgrading to
Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1
Chapter 11 Troubleshooting the
detebase ungreade
database upgrade
Server upgrade phase: warnings about
unsupported server options

Chapter 12. Migration overview	357
Migration roadmap	. 357
Scenarios for migrating a server from an AIX,	
HP-UX, or Solaris system to V7.1 on Linux	. 358

The migration process		363
Utilities and commands for data migration		363
Data movement		363
Device availability.		364
Protection for client data and the server durin	ng	
the process		364

Chapter 13. Planning the migration 365

Hardware and software requirements for the V5		
and V7.1 servers		366
Estimating database and recovery log requirement	s	366
Estimating the time required for migration		367
Planning data movement		368
Planning for upgrading multiple servers and		
components		368
Preparing for operational changes		368
Estimating storage and device requirements		369
Performance tips for the V5 database extraction		
process		369
Performance tips for inserting data into the V7.1		
database		370
Reference information for planning the migration		371

Chapter 14. Preparing for the

Chapter 15. Migrating the server

database to the V7.1 server
Migration scenario 1: Using the media method and
the upgrade wizard
Migration scenario 1: Installing the V7.1 server 386
Migration scenario 1: Setting up devices
Migration scenario 1: Creating the user ID and
directories for the server instance
Migration scenario 1: Running the upgrade
wizard
Migration scenario 2: Using the media method and
the command line
Migration scenario 2: Preparing the database of
the V5 server

005

Migration scenario 2: Extracting the data to	
media	393
Migration scenario 2: Installing the V7.1 server	393
Migration scenario 2: Setting up devices	396
Migration scenario 2: Configuring devices	397
Migration scenario 2: Creating the user ID and	
directories for the server instance	398
Migration scenario 2: Creating the server	
instance and database	400
Migration scenario 2: Loading the extracted data	
into the V7.1 database	402
Migration scenario 2: Configuring the system	
for database backup	404
Migration scenario 3: Using the network method	
and the upgrade wizard	406
Migration scenario 3: Installing the V7.1 server	406
Migration scenario 3: Setting up devices	409
Migration scenario 3: Creating the user ID and	
directories for the server instance	410
Migration scenario 3: Running the upgrade	
wizard	411
Migration scenario 4: Using the network method	
and the command line	412
Migration scenario 4: Preparing the database of	
the V5 server	412
Migration scenario 4: Installing the V7.1 server	413
Migration scenario 4: Setting up devices	416
Migration scenario 4: Creating the user ID and	
directories for the server instance	417
Migration scenario 4: Creating the server	
instance and database	418
Migration scenario 4: Moving the server	
database over a network	420
Migration scenario 4: Configuring the system	
for database backup	422
r · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	

Chapter 16. Taking the first steps after

migration	425
Configuring server options for server database	
maintenance	425
Starting the server	426
Verifying the migration results	426
Registering licenses	427
Updating device path information	428
Backing up the database	428
Changing the host name for the Tivoli Storage	
Manager server.	429
Updating the tcpserveraddress option	430
Setting the IP address of the server	430
Migrating data from tape to DISK or FILE devices	431
Restoring backup sets	432
Updating automation	433
Beginning operations and monitoring the server	433

Chapter 17. Troubleshooting the migration of a V5 server from AIX,

HP-UX,	0	r S	ol	ari	is.										435
Reverting	; fro	om	V7	7.1	to 1	the	pr	evi	ous	5 V	5 s	erv	/er		
version															. 435

Part 3. Migrating Tivoli Storage	
Manager V5 servers on z/OS	
systems to V7.1 on AIX or Linux	
on System z	437

Chapter 18. Migration overview		439
Migration road map		. 439
Scenarios for migrating a server from a z/OS		
system to AIX or Linux on System z		. 439
Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media overvie	ew	443
The migration process		. 443
Migration process overview		. 444
Key tasks in the migration process		. 446
Utilities and commands for data migration		. 447
Device migration		. 448
Backup sets		. 450
Effects of migration on storage agents		. 451
Protection for client data and the server duri	ng	
the process		. 452
Comparison of database migration methods		. 452
Operational changes and requirements		. 453
Automated message response systems		. 453
Performance considerations.		. 453

Chapter 19. Planning the migration 455

Hardware and software requirements for the V5	
and V7.1 servers	455
Compatibility with other components and versions	456
Estimating database and recovery log requirements	457
Planning data movement from FILE and DISK	
devices	458
Estimating storage and device requirements	458
Estimating the time required for migration	458
Example: Estimating the migration time based	
on the database size	459
Performance tips for the V5 database extraction	
process	461
Performance tips for inserting data into the V7.1	
database	461
Planning for upgrading multiple servers and	
components	462
Planning for changes to storage agents	462
Preparing for operational changes	463
Reference information for planning	463
Migration of device and library attributes	464
Migration of server options.	469

Chapter 20. Preparing for the

migration		473
Preparing space for the migration process		. 473
Backing up configuration information		. 474
Installing and configuring the V7.1 server		. 474
Installing the V7.1 server on AIX or Linux		
systems		. 474
Creating the directories and the user ID for the	ne	
server instance		. 477
Preparing the V5 server on z/OS for migration		. 479
Modifying the server before the migration.		. 479
Upgrading the V5 server to V5.5.6		. 480

Chapter 21. Migrating the z/OS server

database to the V7.1 server		491
Migrating a V5 z/OS server by using the media		
method		. 491
Creating and formatting the new database		. 491
Extracting the data to media		. 492
Moving tape to another tape library		. 492
Loading the extracted data into the new		
database		. 493
Migrating a V5 z/OS server by using the netwo	rk	
method		. 494
Creating and formatting the new database		. 494
Moving the server database over a network		. 494

Chapter 22. Configuring the z/OS media server devices on the new

	 	 		 -			 	-		
server			•		•	•				497

Chapter 23. Taking the first steps after

the migration	4	499
Configuring server options for the migrated server	•	499
Starting the server		501
Verifying the migration results		501
Recreating disk-based storage pools that were		
moved to tape		502
Recreating deleted storage pools		502
Recreating storage pool volumes marked as		
destroyed		502
Restoring data from backed-up storage pools		502
Cleaning up by deleting z/OS DISK and FILE		
volumes that were marked as destroyed		503
Registering licenses		503
Backing up the database		504
Updating automation		504
Updating configuration of storage agents		505
Beginning operations and monitoring the servers		505
Migrating data from z/OS media volumes to other	ſ	
devices		507

Chapter 24. Troubleshooting the migration of a V5 server from a z/OS system to AIX or Linux on System z 509

Reverting to the V5 server running on z/OS after a
migration
Reverting to the V5 server before data is moved
to the V7.1 server
Reverting to the V5 server before volumes are
deleted
Reverting to the V5 server after the V5 database
is deleted

Part 4. Appendixes	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	513
--------------------	---	--	---	---	---	---	---	---	-----

Appendix A. Tivoli support

	E 4 E
information	515
Communities and other learning resources .	. 515
Searching knowledge bases.	. 517
Searching the Internet	. 517
Using IBM Support Assistant	. 517
Finding product fixes.	. 518
Receiving notification of product fixes	. 518
Contacting IBM Software Support	. 518
Setting up and managing support contracts	. 519
Determining the business impact	. 519
Describing the problem and gathering	
background information.	. 519
Submitting the problem to IBM Software	
Support	. 520
1 1	

Appendix B. Utilities, scripts, and commands for server upgrade and

migration
DSMUPGRD QUERYDB (Display information
about a V5 database)
DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB (Prepare a V5 database
for upgrade)
DELETE VOLHISTORY (Delete sequential volume
history information)
DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB (Extract data from a V5
server database)
The manifest file for the data extraction to
media

DSMUPGRD EXTEND DB (Extend the size of the

database)	533							
DSMUPGRD EXTEND LOG (Extend the size of the								
recovery log)	534							
DSMUPGRD UPDATE (Create backup registry								
entries for a V5 server instance)	535							
DSMSERV LOADFORMAT (Format a database)	536							
DSMSERV INSERTDB (Move a server database								
into an empty database)	538							
ZMSPREPARE (Prepare a server on a z/OS system								
for migration)	541							
Server startup script: rc.dsmserv	544							
Server startup script: dsmserv.rc	545							
Sample commands to run for validation of the								
database upgrade	546							

Appendix C. Installing server

language packages				547
Server language locales				. 547
Configuring a language package			•	. 551

Appendix D. HP-UX system resource

requirements													553
Estimating required	se	ma	aph	ore	re	sou	Irc	es					553
Estimating required	рі	00	ess	res	ou	rce	S						553
Estimating required	nı	ım	ber	of	th	read	ds	pe	er p	pro	ces	ss	554
Viewing and modify	yin	ig t	the	keı	me	l cc	nf	igι	ıra	tio	n		554

Appendix E. Services associated with the Tivoli Storage Manager server . . 555

Appendix F. Accessibility features for the Tivoli Storage Manager product Notices 559

110110000 1							 	 	 	000
Trademarks .										. 561
Privacy policy	v con	side	erat	ior	าร					. 561
Glossary										563
,										
Index										565
Index	• •		•	•	•	•		 		303

Preface

This publication provides information about upgrading IBM[®] Tivoli[®] Storage Manager servers from one of the supported Version 5 levels to Version 7.1.

Who should read this guide

This publication is intended for server administrators who are responsible for upgrading Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers to V7.1.

In this publication, it is assumed that you have an understanding of the following areas:

- · The operating system and platform that each server runs on
- Typical administrative operations for Tivoli Storage Manager servers that will be upgraded
- Storage that is used by the servers that will be upgraded
- The network that is used by the servers

Tip: For information about upgrading the server from V6 to V7.1, see the upgrade procedures in the *Installation Guide*.

How to use this guide

To make the best use of this guide, follow the suggested sequence.

If you are upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1 on the same operating system, follow this sequence:

- 1. Read the overview information about the updates to the server: Chapter 1, "Server database updates overview," on page 3.
- 2. Read the planning information, and the descriptions of the scenarios:
 - a. Chapter 2, "Planning the upgrade of the server," on page 11
 - b. Chapter 3, "Upgrade scenarios overview," on page 73
- **3**. Select the scenario to use, and plan for the hardware, software, and storage space requirements for your server and environment. A worksheet can be used for space planning: "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.
- 4. Run a test of the upgrade process: "Testing the upgrade process for a server" on page 47. Use the results of the test to refine plans, such as the estimated amount of time that a server will be unavailable because of the upgrade process.
- 5. Upgrade the server, following the steps in the scenario that you selected:
 - Chapter 4, "Scenario 1: Same system, media method," on page 91
 - Chapter 5, "Scenario 2: Same system, network method," on page 135
 - Chapter 6, "Scenario 3: New system, media method," on page 177
 - Chapter 7, "Scenario 4: New system, network method," on page 225
- 6. Complete the upgrade process by following the steps in the section:
 - Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323

If you are migrating the server from V5 to V7.1 on a different operating system, follow the sequence for your selected migration path:

- Part 2, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux," on page 355
- Part 3, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on z/OS systems to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z," on page 437

Publications

Publications for the Tivoli Storage Manager family of products are available online. The Tivoli Storage Manager product family includes IBM Tivoli Storage FlashCopy[®] Manager, IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Space Management, IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Databases, and several other storage management products from IBM Tivoli.

To search across all publications or to download PDF versions of individual publications, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager information center at http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/tsminfo/v7r1.

You also can find the Tivoli Storage Manager product family information centers and other information centers that contain official product documentation for current and previous versions of Tivoli products at Tivoli Documentation Central. Tivoli Documentation Central is available at http://www.ibm.com/ developerworks/community/wikis/home/wiki/Tivoli Documentation Central.

New for Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1

Many features in Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1 are new for Tivoli Storage Manager users.

New in Version 7.1

New features and other changes are available in the Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1 server.

Operations Center updates

AIX Windows Linux

New features are available in Tivoli Storage Manager Operations Center Version 7.1 to help you manage your storage environment.

You can now do the following additional administrative tasks through the Operations Center:

- Customize the settings for servers and clients by editing the server and client properties.
- View or cancel the sessions and processes that are in progress by using the Active Tasks view for servers.
- View the sessions and processes that succeeded or failed by using the Completed Tasks view for servers.
- View activity log messages that are related to specific alerts, sessions, and processes. These activity log messages are available on the Alerts page and in the Active Tasks and Completed Tasks views.
- Manually back up clients, storage pools, and the server database.
- View the replication server configuration for a client.
- Register clients, and configure basic backup settings.
- Suppress risk warnings for specific clients.
- View the authority level of the administrator ID that is used to log in to the Operations Center.

Automatic client failover for restore operations from replicated servers

A Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1 client can automatically fail over to a target replication server, if the source replication server is unavailable.

To use automatic failover when node replication is in use, both the source and target replication servers and the client must be at V7.1. You can use only one failover server for each replicating node at any time. The failover server is the last server that a node successfully replicated to. The client can recover data from the target replication server, but it cannot store data during failover processing.

Software upgrade for the server database manager

Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1 is installed with the latest version of the IBM DB2[®] database software, V10.5. The DB2 technology provides management functions for the server database.

The previous Tivoli Storage Manager server release, V6.3, was packaged with a DB2 V9.7 database.

If you are upgrading the server, you must ensure that the correct version of DB2 is installed. If you are using a Tivoli Storage Manager V6.1 server, and you want to upgrade to V7.1, you must upgrade the V6.1 server to V6.2 or V6.3. Then, upgrade the server from V6.2 or V6.3 to V7.1. The Tivoli Storage Manager V6.1 server was packaged with a DB2 V9.5 database, which cannot be upgraded to V10.5. The Tivoli Storage Manager V6.2 and V6.3 servers were packaged with a DB2 V9.7 database, which can be upgraded to V10.5.

Deprecated device types

In Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1, certain device types are deprecated.

The following device types are deprecated. While you can use these device types with Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1, plan to migrate data to new devices before you upgrade to a later release of Tivoli Storage Manager.

- 3490
- 3570
- CARTRIDGE
- OPTICAL
- WORM
- OIC
- DTF

For a list of devices and valid device class formats, see the Tivoli Storage Manager Supported Devices website for your operating system:

AIX HP-UX Solaris Windows

http://www.ibm.com/software/sysmgmt/products/support/ IBM_TSM_Supported_Devices_for_AIXHPSUNWIN.html

Linux

http://www.ibm.com/software/sysmgmt/products/support/ IBM_TSM_Supported_Devices_for_Linux.html

EMC Centera availability on Linux x86_64 systems for Tivoli Storage Manager servers

You can now use EMC Centera for versions of Linux x86_64 that are supported by the Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1 server.

For details about Centera-related commands, refer to the Administrator's Reference.

File-space level collocation groups

File-space level collocation groups are introduced in Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1.

You can group file spaces that belong to a single node, which allows data for these file spaces to be collocated efficiently without requiring separate volumes for each file space. When you use file-space level collocation groups, you can group data for a limited set of file systems, for example, virtual machines. Fewer volumes are required for the data and placement can be coordinated in the server storage hierarchy.

Use the **DEFINE COLLOCMEMBER** command to define members of a file-space collocation group.

For more information about collocation, see *Keeping client files together using collocation* in the *Administrator's Guide*.

For detailed information about the **DEFINE COLLOCMEMBER** command, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

Improved server efficiency when migrating from disk for nodes with a large number of file spaces

With the new functions that are added to migration processing, you can improve the efficiency of the server by using file space level migration. Nodes with multiple large file spaces can take advantage of faster migration processing for random-access storage pools.

For updated information about how collocation settings affect data processing and how the server migrates files, see *How the server selects files to migrate* in the *Administrator's Guide*.

Shared memory for database backup and restore operations

You can now use shared memory to reduce processor load and improve throughput, if the database backup performance is slow.

You can manually configure a Tivoli Storage Manager server, or use the instance configuration wizard, to use shared memory with DB2.

Immediate use of space that is added to the server database

When you add space to the database, new database directories are now available for immediate use and parallel I/O performance is improved.

You can add directories to the database by using the **EXTEND DBSPACE** command. In Version 7.1, the updates for this operation include distributing data across all database directories and then reclaiming unused space and returning it to the system. Because redistribution operations take considerable system resources, plan ahead when you want to add space to the database. You must complete the process while the server is not handling a heavy load.

For detailed requirements, see the **EXTEND DBSPACE** command in the *Administrator's Reference*.

As part of these enhancements, a new server utility, **DSMSERV EXTEND DBSPACE**, is available to perform the same function as the **EXTEND DBSPACE** command, while the

server is offline.

Server components that are not delivered with Version 7.1

Tivoli Monitoring for Tivoli Storage Manager and the Administration Center are not delivered with Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1.

Tivoli Monitoring for Tivoli Storage Manager

You can use Tivoli Monitoring for Tivoli Storage Manager V6.3.4 with any Tivoli Storage Manager V 5.5 or later server. For more information about installing and configuring Tivoli Monitoring for Tivoli Storage Manager, see Technote 1649883 at: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg21649883

Administration Center

The Administration Center is not delivered in V7.1 or later releases. You can use the V6.3.4 Administration Center with any Tivoli Storage Manager V6.3 or later server, including to automatically update backup-archive clients. For more information about the Tivoli Storage Manager Administration Center, see the Tivoli Storage Manager V6.3 Information Center at: http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/tsminfo/v6r3/index.jsp

AlX Linux Windows In V7.1, you can use the Operations Center, a web-based interface for managing your storage environment. The Operations Center has many of the same functions as the Administration Center. For more information about the Operations Center, see Installing and upgrading the Operations Center and Managing the storage environment with the Operations Center.

Restriction: The Operations Center cannot be installed on HP-UX or Oracle Solaris systems. However, you can use the Operations Center to manage Tivoli Storage Manager V6.3.4 or later servers that run on HP-UX or Oracle Solaris systems.

Part 1. Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

You can upgrade the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager server directly from Version 5 to Version 7.1.

About this task

Tivoli Storage Manager V7 provides a relational database that is based on IBM[®] DB2[®] technology. When you upgrade the system from V5 to V7.1, you extract the data in a current Tivoli Storage Manager server database and load it into the new database structure. Tivoli Storage Manager provides utilities to complete the process.

Upgrading from V5 to V7.1 requires planning, and possibly testing. Start by reviewing what is new in V7.1, and collecting information about your current Tivoli Storage Manager servers.

Who should read this information

This information is intended for system administrators who are responsible for upgrading Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers to V7.1. Administrators should have an understanding of the following areas:

- The operating system and platform that each server runs on
- Typical administrative operations for Tivoli Storage Manager servers that will be upgraded
- Storage that is used by the servers that will be upgraded
- The network that the servers connect to

Procedure

Review the information about upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1. Here is the suggested sequence for using this information:

- 1. Read the overview information about the updates to the server: Chapter 1, "Server database updates overview," on page 3.
- 2. Read the planning information, and the descriptions of the scenarios:
 - a. Chapter 2, "Planning the upgrade of the server," on page 11
 - b. Chapter 3, "Upgrade scenarios overview," on page 73
- **3**. Select the scenario to use, and plan for the hardware, software, and storage space requirements for your server and environment. A worksheet can be used for space planning: "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.
- 4. Run a test of the upgrade process: "Testing the upgrade process for a server" on page 47. Use the results of the test to refine plans, such as the estimated amount of time that a server will be unavailable because of the upgrade process.
- 5. Upgrade the server, following the steps in the scenario that you selected:
 - Chapter 4, "Scenario 1: Same system, media method," on page 91
 - Chapter 5, "Scenario 2: Same system, network method," on page 135
 - Chapter 6, "Scenario 3: New system, media method," on page 177
 - Chapter 7, "Scenario 4: New system, network method," on page 225
- 6. Complete the upgrade process by following the steps in the section:

• Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323

Chapter 1. Server database updates overview

Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 uses a relational database that is based on IBM DB2 technology. Versions of Tivoli Storage Manager earlier than V6.1 did not use the DB2 technology. Before you upgrade the server to V7.1, learn more about DB2.

The server database

The V7 server integrates IBM DB2 database technology, which provides database management functions for the server database. An administrator can manage the server database by using Tivoli Storage Manager administrative interfaces.

The Tivoli Storage Manager administrative interfaces are updated so that an administrator who is accustomed to working with earlier versions of the server can continue to administer the server in much the same way as before. The skills of a database administrator are not required to manage the database. The database manager program offers the following advantages:

Improved server availability

Online, automated reorganization of the database occurs while server operations continue.

Audits on the database are run automatically as needed to ensure consistency. As data is added to the server database, the database manager checks data constraints and data types. The online checks for integrity prevent problems for which offline audits had been needed in earlier releases.

Improved scalability

The server has an improved capacity for concurrent operations, through the larger maximum size for the recovery log.

The maximum number of objects that can be managed by a single server is increased.

Practical database size might be limited by the time that is available to complete operations such as database backup, client backups, and data deduplication.

Complete SQL function

You can obtain information from the server database more easily than before with full-function SQL queries.

The database makes more sophisticated SQL queries on the data possible. If you choose to take advantage of its full capabilities, SQL skills might be required to develop new tools.

Database space for a V7.1 server

The database is stored on the set of directories that you specify. The amount of space that is available to the directories determines the amount of space that is available for the database.

With V7.1, you do not create or track database volumes for the server database. Instead you create and designate directories that the server can use for the database. The database manager that is part of the server automatically manages the space available to the directories as database space.

The database can be distributed across as many as 128 directories. Place the database directories on fast, reliable disks that are configured for random access I/O. Locating each directory on a different file system provides the best performance because the data is striped across the directories. Enable read cache for the database file systems, and enable write cache if the disk subsystem supports it.

The maximum size of the Tivoli Storage Manager database is 4 TB.

A practical size for the database might be limited in your environment by the time that is available to complete operations such as database backup, client backups, and data deduplication (if used).

Recovery log

The recovery log helps to ensure that a failure (for example, a system power outage) does not leave the database in an inconsistent state. The recovery log is also essential when you must restore the database.

For details, see the recovery log section in the Administrator's Guide.

Operation changes

The server delivers significant improvements in operations, including more automated database management.

For details about operations with a V7.1 server, see the *Administrator's Guide* section about managing the database and recovery log.

Database operations

The database manager controls operations for the database by running automatic tasks that can help keep the database in good condition.

The database manager controls the storage space for the database. The server can use all of the space that is available to the directories that you specify for the database. In V7, you do not manage individual volumes for the database, which was necessary in V5. When the database needs more space, instead of adding volumes and extending the database, you add more directories (preferably on different physical volumes) to the database space.

Database reorganization occurs automatically. Based on activity, the database manager program selects database tables to analyze, to determine when reorganization is needed for the tables. The database manager then runs reorganization while server operations continue.

As data is added to the server database, the database manager automatically checks data constraints and data types. The online integrity checks prevent problems for which offline audits were required in earlier releases.

Monitor the space that is used by the server and the space that is available in the file systems where the directories are located. Ensure that space is always available. You can obtain information about database space usage and recovery log usage by reviewing data in the Operations Center or by issuing administrative commands.

Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 is installed with the DB2 database application. Users who are experienced DB2 administrators can choose to perform advanced SQL queries and use DB2 tools to monitor the database. However, do not use DB2 tools to change DB2 configuration settings from those settings that are preset by Tivoli Storage Manager. Do not alter the DB2 environment for Tivoli Storage Manager in other ways, such as with other products. The Tivoli Storage Manager server was built and tested with the data definition language (DDL) and database configuration that Tivoli Storage Manager deploys.

Attention: Modifying the DDL or database configuration without using Tivoli Storage Manager interfaces can adversely affect performance, damage or destroy the server database, or cause data to become lost. Observe the following restrictions:

- Do not use database tools or interfaces other than the tools or interfaces that are delivered with Tivoli Storage Manager to change configuration settings from those that are set by Tivoli Storage Manager during the installation process.
- Do not alter the DB2 environment.
- If you use database tools or interfaces other than the tools or interface that are provided by Tivoli Storage Manager, you must treat the server database as read-only. Do not use other interfaces to modify the Tivoli Storage Manager server database.
- Do not alter the DB2 software that is installed with Tivoli Storage Manager installation packages and fix packs.
- Do not install or upgrade to a different version, release, or fix pack of DB2 software.

Database protection and recovery

Database backups are essential to protect all the data that the server manages. You can recover a damaged or lost database by using database backups, together with volume history backups and the recovery log. In this way, you can restore the database to the latest possible time, or to a specific point in time.

Database backups

Protect the server by using administrative schedules to run database backups regularly, at least once per day. More frequent backups might be needed if the server handles high numbers of client transactions.

You can create full, incremental, and snapshot backups of the server database. You can schedule the backups to run automatically, or perform the backups manually.

The archive log is included in database backups, and is used for roll-forward recovery of the database. At the end of a full database backup, space is recovered by the automatic pruning of older archive log files that are no longer needed. The archive log files that are included in a backup are automatically pruned after two more full database backups are completed.

If space for the recovery log is limited, more frequent full backups of the database might be required so that space is recovered through the automatic pruning operation.

An incremental backup of the database includes all changes to the database since the last full backup. In earlier versions of the server, an incremental backup included changes since the last full or incremental backup, and multiple incremental backups might have been needed to restore the database. With V7.1, when you must restore a database, you must use the last full backup and only the last incremental backup.

Automatic backups are performed by the database manager based on active log space usage since the last database backup and the ratio of space that is used to total space for the active log. To configure automatic database backups, during initial configuration of the server you specify a device class that is to be used for these backups. The database backups that are performed by the database manager are either full or incremental backups.

Database mirroring

The database cannot be mirrored through Tivoli Storage Manager in V7.1. Use hardware mirroring instead.

Recovery log mode

The V7.1 server always runs in a mode that is equivalent to the roll-forward mode.

Changes to the database are recorded in the recovery log to maintain a consistent database image. Active and archive log files, which are included in database backups, make it possible to restore the server to the latest time possible. You can also restore the database to a specific point in time.

To help ensure that the required log information is available for restoring the database, you can specify that the active log is mirrored to another file system location. For the best availability, locate the active log mirror on a different physical device.

Files that are required to restore the database

Both the volume history file and the device configuration file are required to restore the database.

Before V6.1, the volume history file was optional for restoring the database, and if a device configuration file was not available, you could re-create the file. Starting with the V6.1 server, both the volume history file and the device configuration file must be available; the device configuration file cannot be re-created.

Important: Ensure that the server options file includes the following options:

- At least one VOLUMEHISTORY option with the name of a file to be automatically updated when volume history information changes.
- At least one DEVCONFIG option with the name of a file in which to store a backup copy of device configuration information.

Disaster recovery manager

The disaster recovery manager works with the new database and database

backup operations. Some of the stanzas in the recovery plan are new or changed to accommodate the changes to the database operations.

Database restoration

The database can be restored to the latest possible time, or to a specific point in time. The volume history file and the device configuration file are required for restoring the database.

You can restore the database to a location that is different from the original location. Using database restore is one way to move a server.

Multiple server instances on a single system

A server instance runs the server program by using its unique database, recovery log, and server options. To run multiple server instances on a single system, set up separate database and recovery log directories. In addition, set up an instance directory for each server to contain the server options file and other files that are needed to run each server instance.

On AIX[®], HP-UX, Linux, and Solaris systems, each server instance requires a unique user ID that is the instance owner. On Windows systems, the server instances can be owned by the same or different user accounts.

The files for each instance are stored separately from the server program files. As part of server configuration, you create a directory to store the files for the server instance. The following files are stored in the instance directory:

- The server options file, dsmserv.opt
- The device configuration file, if the DEVCONFIG server option does not specify a fully qualified name
- The volume history file, if the VOLUMEHISTORY server option does not specify a fully qualified name
- Volumes for **DEVTYPE=FILE** storage pools, if the directory for the device class is not fully specified, or not fully qualified
- The dsmserv.V6lock file
- User exits
- Trace output (if not fully qualified)

Database and recovery log files are stored in separate directories, not in the instance directory.

To manage the system memory that is used by each server on a system, use the DBMEMPERCENT server option to limit the percentage of system memory that can be used by the database manager of each server. If all servers are equally important, use the same value for each server. If one server is a production server and other servers are test servers, set the value for the production server to a higher value than the test servers.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

For example, to run two server instances, tsminst1 and tsminst2, you might create instance directories such as /tsminst1 and /tsminst2. In each directory, place the dsmserv.opt file for that server. Each dsmserv.opt file must specify a different port for the server to use. To automatically start the two server instances, you can use the script, rc.dsmserv.

Changes to starting the server

You can automatically start multiple instances of the Tivoli Storage Manager server at system startup.

Startup of server instances (AIX, HP-UX, Linux, Solaris)

You can automatically start multiple instances of the Tivoli Storage Manager server at system startup (for example, from /etc/inittab on an AIX system) without the need for user-configured scripts. Two DSMSERV options and a script make it possible to start server instances in this way.

The preferred way to start the server is by using the instance user ID. By using the instance user ID, you simplify the setup process and avoid potential issues. However, in some cases, it might be necessary to start the server with the root user ID. For example, you might want to use the root user ID to ensure that the server can access specific devices. To start the server, the root user ID must meet the following requirements:

- Have authority to issue the start command for the server and database manager
- Belong to the group that is specified by the database manager SYSADM_GROUP setting
- Have database administration authority (DBADM) granted by the instance user ID
- · Have authority to access the server database
- Have authority to use all files, directories, and devices that are required by the server

Before you start the server with the root user ID, explicitly grant server database authority to the root user ID and verify all other authorities for the root user ID.

Tip: Solaris If you are running a Tivoli Storage Manager server on a Solaris system, you can use the Solaris Service Management Facility (SMF) to set up and control the Tivoli Storage Manager server as a service. For more information, see Technote 7021102 (http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg27021102).

Switching user IDs

The *-u userID* option for **DSMSERV** makes it possible for the server to switch user IDs at invocation. This option is primarily intended to be used in /etc/inittab for AIX systems, or similar methods on other platforms. Configuration is easier if you can switch to the user ID that is the instance owner at startup.

Changing the current working directory

The *-i instance_dir* option for **DSMSERV** makes it possible for the server to change its current working directory at invocation. This option is primarily intended to ensure that multiple instances of the Tivoli Storage Manager server can be launched from /etc/inittab without the need for user-configured scripts.

Setting up the environment by using a script

A script, /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/rc.dsmserv, is provided for use on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Solaris systems. The script sets up environment variables and changes the library path to resolve libraries that are required by Tivoli Storage Manager. The library path is the variable:

AIX LIBPATH

Linux LD_LIBRARY_PATH

Invoke the script from the system startup location, for example, /etc/inittab on an AIX system.

Related tasks:

"Starting the server on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 325

Startup of server instances (Windows)

Windows

You can automatically start multiple instances of the Tivoli Storage Manager server at system startup by configuring the options for the server as a service.

You can set the start mode and options for the server service so that the server starts at system startup.

When the server is started as a service, the service for the corresponding database manager is also automatically started. The service for the database manager is named as a DB2 service, and its name includes the name of the server instance. For example, the database-manager service for the Server1 server instance has the name: DB2 - DB2TSM1 - SERVER1

When you stop the service for the server, the service for the database manager is *not* automatically stopped. If you intend to stop both the server and its database manager, you must stop the service for the database manager separately.

Related concepts:

Appendix E, "Services associated with the Tivoli Storage Manager server," on page 555

Related tasks:

"Starting the server on Windows systems" on page 331

Files and environment changes

Locations and names of some files are changing from previous versions.

AIX Installation location

The location of the files for the Tivoli Storage Manager server and device driver is changed from /usr to /opt.

The location of the files for the Tivoli Storage Manager storage agent is also changed from /usr to /opt.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Log files location

During installation, logs are written in /var/tivoli/tsm. Logs and trace for the configuration and upgrade wizards are also written to this location.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris File set names

File sets have been merged and the names changed. Except for messages, the server is contained in tivoli.tsm.server.

Environment variables

• The DSMSERV_DIR variable is no longer valid. The Tivoli Storage Manager server automatically determines the directory in which it resides, and looks for necessary exits, loadable modules, and message files relative to that directory. On Windows, the program uses registry entries.

• The DSMSERV_CONFIG variable is no longer valid.

Important: When you use the upgrade utilities for a V5 server, environment variables still must be set for the utilities. See "Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 292 for the details.

Related tasks:

"Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 292

Administrative command changes

With the new database manager, you still manage the database using Tivoli Storage Manager commands. Tasks for administering the database are different, so changes to the server include new, changed, and deleted administrative commands.

Some server options and utilities also change.

Related reference:

"Command and option changes" on page 51

Chapter 2. Planning the upgrade of the server

Planning the upgrade to Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 is important because, in addition to installing the new software, you must move the contents of the V5 server database into the V7.1 database.

About this task

Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers can be upgraded directly to V7.1. However, Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 servers cannot be used with V5 clients or with other servers in the system that are at V5. Unless all V5 clients and V5 servers can be upgraded at the same time, consider upgrading the server to a level that can be used with V5 clients and V5 servers. Then, upgrade all servers and clients to V7.1 when possible. For information about the levels of the Tivoli Storage Manager server that can be used with V5 clients and V5 servers, see the following technotes:

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager Server-Client Compatibility and Upgrade Considerations

(http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21053218)

Storage-agent and library-client compatibility with the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager server

(http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21302789)

When you move data from a V5 server database to a V7.1 database, a large amount of system processing capacity is used. The move also requires a large amount of I/O activity.

Procedure

As you start to plan the upgrade process, consider the following options:

- You can test the upgrade on nonproduction systems. Testing gives you information about how long the upgrade of the server database takes, which will help you to plan for the time that the server will be unavailable. Some databases might take much longer than others to upgrade. Testing also gives you more information about the size of the new database compared to the original, giving you more precise information about database storage requirements.
- If you have multiple servers, you can upgrade one server first, to determine how the upgrade process will work for your data. Use the results of the first upgrade to plan for upgrading the remaining servers.

Related tasks:

"Estimating the upgrade time" on page 42

The process for upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

Moving from Tivoli Storage Manager V5 to V7.1 requires more preparation and planning than previous upgrades. Because of the database program that the server is using, an existing database must be moved into the new database structure by using the provided upgrade tools.

Except for the database extraction and insertion steps, the server upgrade process is similar to the disaster recovery process. Critical server files, such as the option and device configuration files, must be available, and storage pool devices must be made available to the upgraded server.

The major steps in the upgrade process from V5 to V7.1 are as follows:

1. Plan system hardware and software, and estimate the upgrade time.

Use information about the Tivoli Storage Manager upgrade process together with operational requirements for your existing servers to decide how and when to perform the upgrade.

Tip: If you are introducing new hardware or changes in the storage system infrastructure, plan the zoning for the storage area network (SAN). Allow time to create device statements and paths, and to check in tape volumes following the upgrade. For IBM tape devices, no multipathing driver is available for tape drives that are distributed over more than one adapter. Use zoning and device definitions to balance the workload.

2. Back up the Tivoli Storage Manager server database and configuration files. Ensure that at least one full database backup is available onsite.

Tip: If you must restore the database after a failed upgrade, having an onsite backup database saves time.

- **3**. Install the server code. Installation tasks include the following:
 - Installing the new server code, which includes the server and its database manager program. Configure a user ID for the new server instance.
 - Installing the upgrade utilities package on the system where the existing V5 server is located.
- 4. Upgrade the database. This task includes preparing the database, and then moving the database. Use the upgrade utilities or the upgrade wizard to complete these tasks.

The upgrade utilities or upgrade wizard extracts data from an existing database and inserts the data into a new V7.1 database. Media or the network can be used for the data movement.

As a database is moved into the new database structure, the validity of the data is checked against constraints that are enforced in the new database. The upgrade tools automatically correct some errors in the database. Other errors might require manual correction.

If you use the wizard, you are guided to complete the upgrade steps in the correct order. If you are performing the upgrade manually by using utilities from a command line, follow the procedure carefully.

5. Verify the upgrade by running basic operations and querying information about the system to confirm that all information transferred correctly.

To help you decide how to perform the upgrade process, review the information that compares upgrade methods, and the descriptions of upgrade scenarios. **Related tasks**:

Chapter 3, "Upgrade scenarios overview," on page 73

Comparison of upgrading on an existing system and a new system

Upgrading the V7.1 server on an existing system requires that the system is unavailable for production use during installation and when the data is moved into the new database. Moving the server to a new system gives you more flexibility in terms of the upgrade procedure, but with some additional costs.

If you are upgrading Tivoli Storage Manager to a different operating system, a limited set of migration paths is available. For instructions about migrating a server that is running on a z/OS[®] operating system, see Part 3, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on z/OS systems to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z," on page 437. For instructions about migrating a server that is running on an AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris operating system, see Part 2, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux," on page 355.

The following table lists items to consider when you decide how to upgrade the server.

Item	Upgrade on an existing system	Upgrade on a new system
System hardware	More resources (disk space, memory, and possibly processor capacity) are required on the existing system.	A new system that meets requirements, in addition to the existing system, is required.
		You must upgrade to a new system if the existing server is on one of the platforms that are not supported for V7.1.
Software	Software on the system must meet requirements for V7.1.	Software on the new system must meet requirements for V7.1.
	The V7.1 server cannot coexist with other versions on the same system.	Software on the original V5 system must meet requirements for the upgrade utilities (upgrade utilities requirements are the same as for a V5.5 server).

Table 1. Considerations for selecting a server upgrade scenario

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

Item	Upgrade on an existing system	Upgrade on a new system
V5 server availability	All V5 server instances on the system are unavailable after the V7.1 server program is installed. Data that is managed by a server instance cannot be accessed until the upgrade process is complete for that server instance. To revert to using the V5 server, you must reinstall the same level of the V5 server program as before. Then, restore the V5 database from a backup that was made before the upgrade process.	You can stage the upgrade of multiple servers because the V5 server program can be left on the original system. After the database extraction completes, the V5.5 server on the original system can be restarted. However, if you restart the V5.5 server for production operations after database extraction, you must carefully plan how you will complete the upgrade process to avoid data loss. See the Tivoli Storage Manager wiki (http://www.ibm.com/ developerworks/mydeveloperworks/ wikis/home/wiki/Tivoli Storage Manager) for information and discussion about hybrid upgrade methods to use, including export and import operations, and important tips about how to avoid data loss. A V5.3 or V5.4 server on the original system can be restarted, but its database must be restored first from the database backup.
Database movement method	The database can be moved with a local-host network connection, or can be moved by using disk or external media.	You must have either a network connection between the existing and the new systems, or a device and media available to store the extracted database.
Storage devices and storage pools	Existing attached devices can be used. You must change ownership or permissions for all disk space that is used for storage pools (device types of FILE or DISK). The user ID that you will create to be the owner of the upgraded server instance must be given ownership or read/write permission to the disk space for storage pools.	The new system must have access to all storage that is used by the original system. Definitions for devices such as FILE device types might need to be changed after the upgrade. You must change ownership or permissions for all disk space that is used for storage pools (device types of FILE or DISK). The user ID that you will create to be the owner of the upgraded server instance must be given ownership or read/write permission to the disk space for storage pools. If the environment includes a storage area network (SAN), zone changes or logical unit number (LUN) masking changes might be necessary.

Table 1. Considerations for selecting a server upgrade scenario (continued)

Item	Upgrade on an existing system	Upgrade on a new system
Client and storage agent connections, and library sharing	No changes are necessary.	The network address on clients and storage agents must be updated after the upgrade. Alternatively, you can make network changes so that the new system has the same address as the original system. Similarly, if the server is in a library sharing relationship with other servers, network address changes might be necessary after the upgrade.

Table 1. Considerations for selecting a server upgrade scenario (continued)

Related concepts:

"Hardware and software requirements for the upgraded server" on page 19

Related tasks:

"Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39

Related reference:

"Hardware and software requirements for the V5 server system that is being upgraded" on page 17

Comparison of methods for moving data to the V7.1 database

The upgrade utilities are required for moving data from an earlier version of the database into the V7.1 database. You can use the upgrade wizard to run the utilities with guidance.

To move the database, you must install the upgrade utilities package on the system where the original server database is located. The utilities package is available from the FTP downloads site for the Tivoli Storage Manager product. Installing the upgrade utilities package is a separate task from installing the V7.1 server.

You can move the database in two ways:

Media method

You can extract data from the original database to media, and later load the data into the new database. The new database can be located either on the same system or a different system.

The media method can be a good method to choose if you are upgrading to a new physical system for the server, and you cannot have both your old and new systems available at the same time or cannot connect them with a high speed network. It is also a good method to choose if you are not upgrading to a new system, and want the V7.1 server to use the same disk storage space that is used by the V5 server.

Network method

You can simultaneously extract data from the original database and load the data into the new database. The new database can be located either on the same system or on a system connected on the network.

The network method is a good method to choose if you are looking for maximum performance from the upgrade utility, particularly if you are migrating from one physical system to a new system, and the systems are connected by a high speed network. The network method reduces the amount of storage that is required because there are no requirements for disk or tapes to hold the data unloaded from the V5 database.

With either method, the original server cannot be running in production mode while the data is being extracted.

Related concepts:

"DSMUPGRD upgrade utilities"

Related tasks:

"Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39

DSMUPGRD upgrade utilities

You can use the **DSMUPGRD** upgrade utilities to prepare and extract data from a V5.3, V5.4, or V5.5 server database for insertion into an empty V7.1 server database.

The DSMUPGRD utilities are run on the original database.

The **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility upgrades a server database version to V5.5, and performs some cleanup to prepare for the extraction process.

Important: After a V5.3 or V5.4 server database is upgraded to V5.5, the database can no longer be used by a V5.3 or V5.4 server. If you do not want the database on your production server to be upgraded, you can restore the database backup on another system. Then, upgrade that copy of the database.

The **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB** utility extracts the data from a server database. You can use the utility to simultaneously extract and insert the data into a new database over a network. Alternatively, you can use the utility to extract the data to media for later insertion into a new database. The data extraction operation can be run with multiple processes.

If a problem occurs during the database preparation or extraction, the **DSMUPGRD EXTEND DB** and **DSMUPGRD EXTEND LOG** utilities are available to make more space available for the database or log.

Related reference:

"DSMUPGRD QUERYDB (Display information about a V5 database)" on page 522 "DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB (Prepare a V5 database for upgrade)" on page 523 "DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB (Extract data from a V5 server database)" on page 529

"DSMUPGRD EXTEND DB (Extend the size of the database)" on page 533 "DSMUPGRD EXTEND LOG (Extend the size of the recovery log)" on page 534 "DSMUPGRD UPDATE (Create backup registry entries for a V5 server instance)" on page 535

"DSMSERV INSERTDB (Move a server database into an empty database)" on page 538

DSMSERV LOADFORMAT (Format a database)

Hardware and software requirements for upgrading to the V7.1 server

Use the requirements that are described here as a starting point.

For the latest information about hardware and software requirements, see the Tivoli Storage Manager Supported Operating Systems technote at http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21243309.

Restrictions: AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris You can install and run the V7.1 server on a system that already has DB2 installed on it, whether DB2 was installed by itself or as part of another application, with restrictions. For details, see the section about compatibility of the Tivoli Storage Manager server with other DB2 products on the system in the *Installation Guide*.

Restriction: Windows You cannot install and run the V7.1 server on a system that already has DB2 installed on it, whether DB2 was installed by itself or as part of another application. The V7.1 server requires the installation and use of the DB2 version that is packaged with the V7.1 server. No other version of DB2 can exist on the system.

Related tasks:

"Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39

Hardware and software requirements for the V5 server system that is being upgraded

A V5.3, V5.4, or V5.5 server can be upgraded to V7.1. The upgrade utility package must be installed on the system where the V5 database is located. The V5 system must meet the requirements for running the upgrade utilities, even if you intend to place the upgraded server on a new system.

V5.3 or V5.4 servers might be running on operating systems that are not supported by the upgrade utilities. Therefore, you might need to update your system before you begin the upgrade procedure. Use the information in Table 2 on page 18 to determine whether you are using one of the operating system versions that must be upgraded.

When you prepare to upgrade a system, you must ensure that the source server is at V5.3.6 or later, and that the latest interim fix for the selected level is installed.

To optimize the upgrade process and avoid potential issues, consider upgrading the V5 server to the latest available level and installing the latest interim fix for that level. Follow the guidelines in "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36. To download the latest fix pack and interim fix, go to the IBM Support Portal at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/ Downloads. Locate the appropriate version of Tivoli Storage Manager.

If your operating system is listed in the second column of the following table, you must upgrade the system to the required minimum level in the third column, or to a later level.

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

Operating system	Version that must be upgraded	Required minimum level
AIX	 IBM AIX 5L[™] V5.1 (32 or 64 bit) AIX V5.2 (32 or 64 bit) 	AIX V5.3 (64 bit only)AIX V7.1 (64 bit only)
HP-UX	• PA-RISC: HP-UX 11i V1.0 (32 or 64 bit)	 PA-RISC: HP-UX 11i v2 (64 bit) HP-UX 11i v3 (64 bit)
Linux on Power®	 Red Hat[®] Enterprise Linux 3 (supported on POWER5 processors only) SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8/UnitedLinux 1.0 (supported only on processors earlier to POWER5) Miracle Linux 4.0 or Asianux 2.0 GNU C libraries 2.2.5-108 	 Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 and 10 Asianux 2.0 - Red Flag DC 5.0 and Haansoft Linux 2006 or Asianux 3.0 V2.3.3 or later of the GNU C libraries that are installed on the target system
Linux x86	 Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 (AS, WS, ES) SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 8 / UnitedLinux 1.0 V2.2.5-213 of the GNU C libraries 	 Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 and 10 Asianux 2.0 - Red Flag DC 5.0, Miracle Linux 4.0, and Haansoft Linux 2006 or Asianux 3.0 V2.3.3 or later of the GNU C libraries that are installed on the target system
Linux x86_64	 Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 Red Flag Advanced Server 4.1 SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 V2.2.5-213 of the GNU C libraries 	 Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 and 10 Asianux 2.0 - Red Flag DC 5.0, Miracle Linux 4.0, and Haansoft Linux 2006 or Asianux 3.0 V2.3.3 or later of the GNU C libraries that are installed on the target computer
Linux on System z	 SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 / UnitedLinux 1.0 Version 2.2.5-108 of the GNU C libraries 	 Red Hat[®] Enterprise Linux 4 Red Hat[®] Enterprise Linux 5 SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 and 10 V2.3.3 or later of the GNU C libraries that are installed on the target system
Oracle Solaris	• Oracle Solaris 8 (64 bit)	 SPARC 64 bit: Oracle Solaris 9 Oracle Solaris 10 x86_64: Oracle Solaris 10

Table 2. Operating system versions that must be upgraded to run the upgrade utilities
Operating system	Version that must be upgraded	Required minimum level
Microsoft Windows	 Windows 2000 Professional Windows 2000 Server Windows 2000 Advanced Server Windows 2000 Datacenter Server 	 Windows Server 2003 (Standard, Enterprise, or Datacenter) Edition Windows Server 2003 (Standard, Enterprise, or Datacenter) x64 Edition Windows Server 2008 (Standard, Enterprise, or Datacenter) Edition Windows Server 2008 (Standard, Enterprise, or Datacenter) x64 Edition

Table 2. Operating system versions that must be upgraded to run the upgrade utilities (continued)

Tip: The system requirements for the upgrade utility are the same as the system requirements for a V5.5 server because the upgrade utility is based on the V5.5 server code. See system requirements for a V5.5 server at one of the following websites. Compare the system on which your V5.3 or V5.4 server is running with the system requirements for a V5.5 server.

AIX http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21052220

HP-UX

http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21052219

Linux

Linux on Power Systems[™] Servers: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg21108042

Linux x86: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg21107360

Linux x86_64: http://www.ibm.com/support/

docview.wss?uid=swg21204361

Linux on System z: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg21108040

Solaris

http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21053216

Windows

http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21064234

Hardware and software requirements for the upgraded server

Use these requirements as a starting point. Find the latest information about hardware and software requirements on the product support site.

The product support site is located at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/Tivoli_Storage_Manager.

If you are upgrading Tivoli Storage Manager on a different operating system, a limited set of migration paths is available. For instructions about migrating a server that is running on a z/OS operating system, see Part 3, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on z/OS systems to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z," on page 437. For instructions about migrating a server that is running on an

AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris operating system, see Part 2, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux," on page 355.

Some platforms that were supported for earlier versions of the server are not supported for V7.1. If the server that you want to upgrade is running on one of these platforms, you cannot upgrade your server to V7.1 on the same platform. You must install your V7.1 server on a system that is a specific supported platform, depending on the original platform. For required platforms, see the following table.

Platform for V5 server	Required platform for upgrade to V7.1
HP-UX running on a PA-RISC system	HP-UX running on an Intel Itanium system
Linux running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Linux running on an x86_64 system
Linux running on an x86_32 system	Linux running on an x86_64 system
Solaris running on an x86_64 system	Linux running on an x86_64 system
Windows running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Windows running on an x86_64 system

Table 3. Required platforms for upgrading from V5 to V7.1

If you are upgrading from Tivoli Storage Manager V5 to V7.1 on a new system, restrictions apply. Ensure that you install the V7.1 server in a compatible hardware and software environment, as described in the following table.

V5 server	V7.1 server	Comments
AIX running on an IBM POWER [®] system	AIX running on an IBM POWER system	
HP-UX running on an Itanium system	HP-UX running on an Itanium system	
HP-UX running on a PA-RISC system	HP-UX running on an Itanium system	HP-UX running on PA-RISC is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux running on an IBM POWER system	Linux running on an IBM POWER system	
Linux running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Linux running on an x86_64 system	Linux running on Itanium is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux running on an x86_32 system	Linux running on an x86_64 system	Linux running on x86_32 is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux on System z [®]	Linux on System z	

Table 4. Requirements for upgrading from V5 to V7.1 on a new system

V5 server	V7.1 server	Comments
Solaris running on an x86_64 system	Operating system depends on the migration method	A V7.1 server cannot be installed on a Solaris x86_64 system. However, you can migrate a V5 server that is running on a Solaris x86_64 operating system to V7.1 on a Linux x86_64 operating system. For instructions, see Part 2, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux," on page 355. Alternatively, you can migrate the Solaris x86_64 system by installing a V7.1 server on any operating system that is supported for V7.1. Then, use Tivoli Storage Manager server EXPORT and IMPORT commands to move the server from the V5 source system.
Windows running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Windows running on an x86_64 system	Windows running on Itanium is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Windows running on an x86_32 system	Windows running on an x86_64 system	Windows running on x86_32 is not supported for V7.1 servers.
z/OS	AIX or Linux on System z	See the section on migrating from V5 on z/OS to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z.

Table 4. Requirements for upgrading from V5 to V7.1 on a new system (continued)

Server requirements on AIX systems

Check that your AIX system meets the requirements.

Hardware requirements

AIX

The following table describes the minimum hardware requirements.

For information about estimating the total disk space that is required, see "Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39.

Type of hardware	Hardware requirements
Hardware	An appropriately configured POWER4, POWER5, POWER6 [®] , POWER7 [®] systems computer (64-bit)
Disk space	The following minimum values for disk space:
	• 512 MB for the /var directory
	• 5 GB for the installation directory
	• 2 GB for the /tmp directory
	• 300 MB for the /usr directory
	• 2 GB in the home directory
	Tip: Expect to use more space for problem determination.
	• 2 GB for the shared resources area
	Significant additional disk space is required for database and log files. The size of the database depends on the number of client files to be stored and the method by which the server manages them. The default active log space is 16 GB, the minimum that is needed for most workloads and configurations. Allocate at least three times the active log space for the archive log (48 GB). Ensure that you have sufficient resources if you are using data deduplication or expect a heavy client workload.
	For optimal performance and to facilitate I/O, specify at least two equally sized containers or Logical Unit Numbers (LUNs) for the database. See <i>Optimizing Performance</i> for more information about the configuration of directories for the database. In addition, each active log and archive log should have its own container or LUN.
	Ensure that you see the capacity planning section for more details about disk space.
Memory	The following minimum values for memory:
	• 12 GB.
	• 16 GB if you are using data deduplication.
	• At least 32 GB for heavily used servers. Using 32 GB or more of memory enhances performance of the Tivoli Storage Manager server database inventory.
	• If you plan to run multiple instances, each instance requires the memory listed for one server. Multiply the memory for one server by the number of instances planned for the system.
	• Node replication processing requires additional memory. Use a minimum of 32 GB of memory for node replication without data deduplication. Node replication with data deduplication requires a minimum of 64 GB of memory.
	• When you create the active log, you need at least 64 GB of memory to run replication. If replication and deduplication are both being used, create an active log of 128 GB in size.

Table 5. Hardware requirements

Software requirements

The following table describes the minimum software requirements.

Table 6. Software requirements

Type of software	Minimum software requirements
Operating system	AIX 6.1 running in a 64-bit kernel environment with the following additional requirements:AIX 6.1 TL 7 and SP6.
	• Minimum C++ runtime level with the xlC.rte 12.1.0.1 or later file sets. The file set is automatically upgraded if the level is lower than 12.1.0.1. The file set is included in the June 2008 fix pack package for IBM C++ Runtime Environment Components for AIX.
	AIX 7.1 running in a 64-bit kernel environment. • AIX 7.1 TL 1 and SP6.
	• Minimum C++ runtime level with the xlC.rte 12.1.0.1 or later file sets. The file set is automatically upgraded if the level is lower than 12.1.0.1. The file set is included in the June 2008 fix pack package for IBM C++ Runtime Environment Components for AIX.
	For the latest recommendations about AIX maintenance levels, see http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21165448
Communication protocol	A configured communication method.
Processing	Asynchronous I/O must be enabled.
Device drivers	The Tivoli Storage Manager device driver required for non-IBM drives and tape libraries. The Tivoli Storage Manager device driver package contains device driver tools and ACSLS daemons.
	For the IBM 3590, 3592, or the Ultrium tape library or drives, the IBM device drivers are required. Install the most current device drivers. You can locate IBM driver packages at the Fix Central website: http://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral/.
	Configure the device drivers before you use the Tivoli Storage Manager server with tape devices.
Gunzip utility	The gunzip utility must be available on your system before you install or upgrade the Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7 server. Ensure that the gunzip utility is installed and the path to it is set in the PATH environment variable.
Other software	Korn Shell (ksh)
	You must have the I/O completion ports (IOCP) configured on the operating system.

Server requirements on HP-UX systems

HP-UX

Check that your HP-UX system meets the requirements.

You cannot run a V7.1 server on a PA-RISC system that is running an HP-UX operating system. If the server that you want to upgrade is running on this operating system, you cannot upgrade your server to V7.1 on the same operating system. You must install your V7.1 server on an Itanium system that is running the HP-UX operating system, and then use the network or media method to upgrade your V5 server to that system.

The following tables list the minimum hardware and software requirements for the installation of a Tivoli Storage Manager server. Use these requirements as a starting point. You can find the most current information about system requirements at Tivoli Storage Manager Supported Operating Systems.

Hardware requirements

For information about estimating the total disk space that is required, see "Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39.

Type of hardware	Hardware requirements
Hardware	A 64-bit Intel Itanium system.
Disk space	 The following minimum values for disk space: 512 MB for the /var directory 6 GB in the installation directory 2 GB for the /opt directory if you do not create mount points 2 GB for the /tmp directory 300 MB for the /usr directory 2 GB in the home directory 2 GB in the home directory 2 GB for the shared resources area Significant additional disk space is required for database and log files. The size of the database depends on the number of client files to be stored and the method by which the server manages them. The default active log space is 16 GB, the minimum that is needed for most workloads and configurations. Allocate at least three times the active log space for the archive log (48 GB). Ensure that you have sufficient resources if you are using data deduplication or expect a heavy client workload. For optimal performance and to facilitate I/O, specify at least two equally sized containers or Logical Unit Numbers (LUNs) for the database. See <i>Optimizing Performance</i> for more information about the configuration of directories for the database. In addition, each active log and archive log should have its own container or LUN. Ensure that you see the capacity planning section for more details about disk space.

Table 7. Hardware requirements

Type of hardware	Hardware requirements
Memory	The following minimum values for memory:
	• 12 GB.
	• 16 GB if you are using data deduplication.
	• At least 32 GB for heavily used servers. Using 32 GB or more of memory enhances performance of the Tivoli Storage Manager server database inventory.
	• If you plan to run multiple instances, each instance requires the memory that is listed for one server. Multiply the memory for one server by the number of instances that are planned for the system.
	• Node replication processing requires additional memory. Use a minimum of 32 GB of memory for node replication without data deduplication. Node replication with data deduplication requires a minimum of 64 GB of memory.
	• When you create the active log, you need at least 64 GB of memory to run replication. If replication and deduplication are both being used, create an active log of 128 GB in size.
Devices	A DVD device that is available for the installation process, if you are installing from DVD media.

Table 7. Hardware requirements (continued)

Software requirements

The following table describes the minimum software requirements.

System resources such as semaphores and kernel values might require special configuration and tuning. See the information in Appendix D, "HP-UX system resource requirements," on page 553.

Table 8. Software requirements

Type of	
software	Minimum software requirements
Operating system	The HP Itanium system must have operating system 11i v3 (11.31) with the most current maintenance levels installed.
	11i v3 with:
	PHCO_38658 - libc cumulative patch
	• PHSS_37202
	• PHKL_41481
	• PHKL_42035
	• PHKL_42335
	• PHKL_41588
	• PHSS_41496
	The latest available service patches for the operating system must be applied. Older levels without patches do not work with the device drivers that Tivoli Storage Manager uses.
Communication protocol	A communication method that is installed and activated (shared memory is the default).

Type of software	Minimum software requirements
Device drivers	The Tivoli Storage Manager passthru device driver is used for non-IBM devices. It uses the SCSI passthru interface to communicate with tape drives and tape libraries. The stape device driver is required for tape drives. The schgr device driver is required for tape libraries. The Tivoli Storage Manager device driver package contains device driver tools and ACSLS daemons.
	For the IBM 3590, 3592, or the Ultrium tape library or drives, the IBM device drivers are required. Install the most current device drivers. You can locate IBM driver packages at the Fix Central website: http://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral/
	Configure the device drivers before you use the Tivoli Storage Manager server with tape devices.
Gunzip utility	The gunzip utility must be available on your system before you install or upgrade the Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7 server. Ensure that the gunzip utility is installed and the path to it is set in the PATH environment variable.
Other software	Korn Shell (ksh)

Table 8. Software requirements (continued)

Server requirements on Linux systems

Linux

Check that your Linux system meets the requirements.

Some platforms that were supported for earlier versions of the server are *not* supported for V7.1:

- Linux running on an Itanium system (IA64)
- Linux running on a 32-bit x86 system

If the server that you want to upgrade is running on one of these platforms, you cannot upgrade your server to V7.1 on the same platform. You must install your V7.1 server on an x86_64 system that is running the Linux operating system, and then use the network or media method to upgrade your V5 server to that system.

Server requirements for Linux on x86_64 systems:

The Tivoli Storage Manager server has minimum requirements for hardware and software.

Hardware requirements

The following table describes the minimum hardware requirements.

For information about estimating the total disk space that is required, see "Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39.

If you have an IBM 3592 or Ultrium tape library or drive, install the most current device driver before you install Tivoli Storage Manager. You can locate the device drivers at http://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral/.

Table 9.	Hardware	requirements

Type of hardware	Hardware requirements
Hardware	An AMD64 or Intel EMT-64 processor
Disk space	The following minimum values for disk space: • 512 MB for the /var directory
	• 4 GB for the installation directory
	• 2 GB for the /tmp directory
	• 300 MB for the /usr directory
	 2 GB in the home directory Tip: Expect to use more space for problem determination.
	• 2 GB for the shared resources area
	Significant additional disk space is required for database and log files. The size of the database depends on the number of client files to be stored and the method by which the server manages them. The default active log space is 16 GB, the minimum that is needed for most workloads and configurations. Allocate at least three times the active log space for the archive log (48 GB). Ensure that you have sufficient resources if you are using data deduplication or expect a heavy client workload.
	For optimal performance and to facilitate I/O, specify at least two equally sized containers or Logical Unit Numbers (LUNs) for the database. See <i>Optimizing Performance</i> for more information about the configuration of directories for the database. In addition, each active log and archive log should have its own container or LUN.
	Ensure that you see the capacity planning section for more details about disk space.
Memory	The following minimum values for memory:
	• 12 GB.
	• 16 GB if you are using data deduplication.
	• At least 32 GB for heavily used servers. Using 32 GB or more of memory enhances performance of the Tivoli Storage Manager server database inventory.
	• If you plan to run multiple instances, each instance requires the memory listed for one server. Multiply the memory for one server by the number of instances planned for the system.
	• Node replication processing requires additional memory. Use a minimum of 32 GB of memory for node replication without data deduplication. Node replication with data deduplication requires a minimum of 64 GB of memory.
	• When you create the active log, you need at least 64 GB of memory to run replication. If replication and deduplication are both being used, create an active log of 128 GB in size.

Software requirements

The following table describes the minimum software requirements.

Table 10. Software requirements

Type of software	Minimum software requirements		
Operating system	 The Tivoli Storage Manager server on Linux X86_64 requires one of the following operating systems: Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11, Service Pack 2 		
Libraries	GNU C libraries, Version 2.3.3-98.38 or later that is installed on the Tive Storage Manager system.		
	For SUSE Linux Enterprise Servers: • libaio		
	 libstdc++.so.5 at version 3.3 or later (32 and 64 bit packages are required) 		
	 libstdc++.so.6 at version 4.3 or later (32 and 64 bit packages are required) 		
	For Red Hat Enterprise Linux Servers: • libaio		
	 libstdc++.so.6 (32 and 64 bit packages are required) 		
	To determine if SELinux is installed and in enforcing mode, perform one of the following tasks:		
	• Check the /etc/sysconfig/selinux file.		
	• Run the sestatus operating system command.		
	• Check the /var/log/messages file for SELinux notices.		
	To disable SELinux, complete one of the following tasks:		
	• Set permissive mode by issuing the setenforce 0 command as a superuser.		
	• Modify the /etc/sysconfig/selinux file and reboot the machine.		
Communication protocol	 TCP/IP Version 4 or Version 6, which is standard with Linux Shared memory protocol (with Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1 Linux X86_64 client) 		
Processing	Asynchronous I/O must be enabled. On Linux kernels at 2.6 or later, install the libaio library to enable Asynchronous I/O.		
Device drivers	The Tivoli Storage Manager passthru device driver is used for non- IBM devices. It uses the SCSI passthru interface to communicate with tape devices and tape libraries. The Linux SCSI Generic (sg) device driver is required for tape drives and tape libraries. The Tivoli Storage Manager device driver package contains device driver tools and ACSLS daemons.		
	For the IBM 3590, 3592, or the Ultrium tape library or drives, the IBM device drivers are required. Install the most current device drivers. You can locate IBM driver packages at the Fix Central website: http://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral/.		
	Configure the device drivers before you use the Tivoli Storage Manager server with tape devices.		
Other software	Korn Shell (ksh)		

Server requirements for Linux on System z systems:

The Tivoli Storage Manager server has minimum requirements for hardware and software.

Hardware requirements

The following table describes the minimum hardware requirements.

For information about estimating the total disk space that is required, see "Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39.

If you have an IBM 3592 or Ultrium tape library or drive, install the most current device driver before you install Tivoli Storage Manager. You can locate the device drivers at http://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral/.

Table 11. Hardware requirements

Type of hardware	Hardware requirements
Hardware	An IBM zSeries, IBM System z9 [®] , IBM System z10 [®] , or IBM zEnterprise [®] System (z114 and z196) 64-bit native logical partition (LPAR) or z/VM [®] guest.
Disk space	 The following minimum values for disk space: 512 MB for the /var directory 3 GB for the installation directory 2 GB for the /tmp directory 300 MB for the /usr directory 2 GB in the home directory 2 GB in the home directory Tip: Expect to use more space for problem determination. 2 GB for the shared resources area Significant additional disk space is required for database and log files. The size of the database depends on the number of client files to be stored and the method by which the server manages them. The default active log space is 16 GB, the minimum that is needed for most workloads and configurations. Allocate at least three times the active log space for the archive log (48 GB). Ensure that you have sufficient resources if you are using data deduplication or expect a heavy client workload. For optimal performance and to facilitate I/O, specify at least two equally sized containers or Logical Unit Numbers (LUNs) for the database. See <i>Optimizing Performance</i> for more information about the configuration of directories for the database. In addition, each active log and archive log should have its own container or LUN. Ensure that you see the capacity planning section for more details about dirk enace

Type of hardware	Hardware requirements
Memory	The following minimum values for memory:
	• 12 GB.
	• 16 GB if you are using data deduplication.
	• At least 32 GB for heavily used servers. Using 32 GB or more of memory enhances performance of the Tivoli Storage Manager server database inventory.
	• If you plan to run multiple instances, each instance requires the memory listed for one server. Multiply the memory for one server by the number of instances planned for the system.
	• Node replication processing requires additional memory. Use a minimum of 32 GB of memory for node replication without data deduplication. Node replication with data deduplication requires a minimum of 64 GB of memory.
	• When you create the active log, you need at least 64 GB of memory to run replication. If replication and deduplication are both being used, create an active log of 128 GB in size.

Table 11.	Hardware	requirements	(continued)
-----------	----------	--------------	-------------

Software requirements

The following table describes the minimum software requirements.

Table 1	2. Softv	ware req	uirements
---------	----------	----------	-----------

Type of software	Minimum software requirements	
Operating system	The Tivoli Storage Manager server on Linux on System z (s390x 64-bit architecture) requires one of the following operating systems:	
	• Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6	
	SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11, Service Pack 2	
Libraries	GNU C library, Version 2.4-31.43.6 is installed on the Tivoli Storage Manager system.	
	For SUSE Linux Enterprise Servers:	
	• libaio	
	 libstdc++.so.5 at version 3.3 or later (32 and 64 bit packages are required) 	
	 libstdc++.so.6 at version 4.3 or later (32 and 64 bit packages are required) 	
	For Red Hat Enterprise Linux Servers:	
	• libaio	
	• libstdc++.so.6 (32 and 64 bit packages are required)	
Communication protocol	 TCP/IP Version 4 or Version 6, which is standard with Linux Shared memory protocol (with Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1 Linux on System z client) 	
Processing	Asynchronous I/O must be enabled. On Linux kernels at 2.6 or later, install the libaio library to enable Asynchronous I/O.	
Other software	Korn Shell (ksh)	

Server requirements on Solaris systems

Solaris

Check that your Solaris system meets the requirements.

Hardware requirements

The following table describes the minimum hardware requirements.

For information about estimating the total disk space that is required, see "Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39.

Table 13. Hardware requirements

Type of hardware	Hardware requirements
Hardware	One of the following processors is required:
	• Ultra SPARC-based processors (sun4u architecture)
	Ultra SPARC-based processors (sun4v architecture)
Disk space	The following list is the minimum values for disk space for Ultra SPARC-based processors (sun4u and sun4v architecture) for the respective directories and logs:
	• 512 MB for the /var directory
	• 4 GB for the installation directory
	• 2 GB for the /tmp directory
	• 300 MB for the /usr directory
	• 2 GB in the home directory Tip: Expect to use more space for problem determination.
	• 2 GB for the shared resources area
	Significant additional disk space is required for database and log files. The size of the database depends on the number of client files to be stored and the method by which the server manages them. The default active log space is 16 GB, the minimum that is needed for most workloads and configurations. Allocate at least three times the active log space for the archive log (48 GB). Ensure that you have sufficient resources if you are using data deduplication or expect a heavy client workload.
	For optimal performance and to facilitate I/O, specify at least two equally sized containers or Logical Unit Numbers (LUNs) for the database. See <i>Optimizing Performance</i> for more information about the configuration of directories for the database. In addition, each active log and archive log should have its own container or LUN.
	Ensure that you see the capacity planning section for more details about disk space.

Type of hardware	Hardware requirements
Memory	The following minimum values for memory:
	• 12 GB.
	• 16 GB if you are using data deduplication.
	• At least 32 GB for heavily used servers. Using 32 GB or more of memory enhances performance of the Tivoli Storage Manager server database inventory.
	• If you plan to run multiple instances, each instance requires the memory listed for one server. Multiply the memory for one server by the number of instances planned for the system.
	• Node replication processing requires additional memory. Use a minimum of 32 GB of memory for node replication without data deduplication. Node replication with data deduplication requires a minimum of 64 GB of memory.
	• When you create the active log, you need at least 64 GB of memory to run replication. If replication and deduplication are both being used, create an active log of 128 GB in size.
	Tip: Ensure that there is at least twice as much swap space allocated as there is physical memory on the system.

Table 13. Hardware requirements (continued)

Software requirements

The following table describes the minimum software requirements.

	-
Type of software	Minimum software requirements
Operating system	Oracle Solaris 10 Update 10 on SPARC, running in 64-bit kernel system with sun4u or sun4v architecture
	• Patch 118822-25
	• If raw devices are used, patch 125100-07
Communication protocol	TCP/IP
Device drivers	The Tivoli Storage Manager device driver required for non-IBM drives and tape libraries. The Tivoli Storage Manager device driver package contains device driver tools and ACSLS daemons.
	For the IBM 3590, 3592, or the Ultrium tape library or drives, the IBM device drivers are required. Install the most current device drivers. You can locate IBM driver packages at the Fix Central website: http://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral/.
	Configure the device drivers before you use the Tivoli Storage Manager server with tape devices.
Gunzip utility	The gunzip utility must be available on your system before you install or upgrade the Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7 server. Ensure that the gunzip utility is installed and the path to it is set in the PATH environment variable.
Other software	Korn Shell (ksh)
,	A

Table 14. Software requirements

Server requirements on Microsoft Windows systems

Windows

Check that your Microsoft Windows system meets the requirements.

You cannot run a V7.1 server on an Itanium system (IA64) that is running the Windows operating system. If the server that you want to upgrade is running on this platform, you cannot upgrade your server to V7.1 on the same platform. You must install your V7.1 server on an x86_64 system that is running the Windows operating system, and then use the network or media method to upgrade your V5 server to that system.

Hardware requirements

The following table describes the minimum hardware requirements.

For information about estimating the total disk space that is required, see "Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39.

Type of hardware	Hardware requirements
Hardware	An AMD64 or Intel EMT-64 processor
Disk Space	The following minimum values for disk space:
	• At least 5 GB of free disk storage (for a typical installation)
	• 60 MB in the temporary directory space
	• 2 GB partition size in the C:\ drive
	• 300 MB in the instance directory
	• 2 GB in the shared resources area
	Significant additional disk space is required for database and log files. The size of the database depends on the number of client files to be stored and the method by which the server manages them. The default active log space is 16 GB, the minimum that is needed for most workloads and configurations. Allocate at least three times the active log space for the archive log (48 GB). Ensure that you have sufficient resources if you are using data deduplication or expect a heavy client workload.
	For optimal performance and to facilitate I/O, specify at least two equally sized containers or Logical Unit Numbers (LUNs) for the database. See <i>Optimizing Performance</i> for more information about the configuration of directories for the database. In addition, each active log and archive log should have its own container or LUN.
	Ensure that you see the capacity planning section for more details about disk space.

Table 15. Hardware requirements

Type of hardware	Hardware requirements
Memory	The following minimum values for memory:
	• 12 GB.
	• 16 GB if you are using data deduplication.
	• At least 32 GB for heavily used servers. Using 32 GB or more of memory enhances performance of the Tivoli Storage Manager server database inventory.
	• If you plan to run multiple instances, each instance requires the memory listed for one server. Multiply the memory for one server by the number of instances planned for the system.
	• Node replication processing requires additional memory. Use a minimum of 32 GB of memory for node replication without data deduplication. Node replication with data deduplication requires a minimum of 64 GB of memory.
	• When you create the active log, you need at least 64 GB of memory to run replication. If replication and deduplication are both being used, create an active log of 128 GB in size.

Table 15. Hardware requirements (continued)

Software requirements

The following table describes the minimum software requirements.

Table 16. Software requirements

Type of software	Minimum software requirements
Operating	One of the following operating systems:
system	• Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2: Standard, Enterprise, or Datacenter Edition (64-bit)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2012 (64-bit)
Communication protocol	At least one of the following communication protocols (installed by default with the current Windows operating systems):
	Named Pipes
	• TCP/IP Version 4 or Version 6
Device drivers	The Tivoli Storage Manager passthru device driver that is required for non-IBM drives and tape libraries. The Windows native device driver is recommended for tape drives and tape libraries. Otherwise, the Tivoli Storage Manager kernel device driver can be used.
	For the IBM 3590, 3592, or the Ultrium tape library or drives, the IBM device drivers are required. Install the most current device drivers. You can locate IBM driver packages at the Fix Central website: http://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral/.
	Configure the device drivers before you use the Tivoli Storage Manager server with tape devices.

Type of software	Minimum software requirements
Other software	Windows 2012 requires that .NET Framework 3.5 is installed and enabled.
	The following User Account Control policies must be disabled:User Account Control: Admin Approval Mode for the Built-in Administrator account
	User Account Control: Run all administrators in Admin Approval Mode

 Table 16. Software requirements (continued)

Compatibility of the Tivoli Storage Manager server with other DB2 products on the system

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

You can install other products that deploy and use DB2 products on the same system as the Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1 server on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris platforms, with some limitations.

To install and use other products that use a DB2 product on the same system as the Tivoli Storage Manager server, ensure that the following criteria are met:

Criterion	Instructions
Version level	The other products that use a DB2 product must use DB2 version 9 or later. DB2 products include product encapsulation and segregation support beginning with Version 9. Starting with this version, you can run multiple copies of DB2 products, at different code levels, on the same system. For details, see the information about multiple DB2 copies: http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/ db2luw/v10r5.
User IDs and directories	Ensure that the user IDs, fence user IDs, installation location, other directories, and related information are not shared across DB2 installations. Your specifications must be different from the IDs and locations that you used for the Tivoli Storage Manager server installation and configuration. If you used the dsmicfgx wizard or dsmupgdx wizard to configure Version 7.1, or upgrade the server from Version 5.5, these are values that you entered when running the wizard. If you used the manual configuration for Version 7.1 or upgrade from Version 5.5 procedures, review the procedures that you used if necessary to recall the values that were used for the server.

Table 17. Compatibility of the Tivoli Storage Manager server with other DB2 products on the system

Criterion	Instructions	
Resource allocation	Consider the resources and capability of the system compared to the requirements for both the Tivoli Storage Manager server and the other applications that use the DB2 product. To provide sufficient resources for the other DB2 applications, you might have to change the Tivoli Storage Manager server settings so that the server uses less system memory and resources. Similarly, if the workloads for the other DB2 applications compete with the Tivoli Storage Manager server for processor or memory resources, the performance of the server in handling the expected client workload or other server operations might be adversely affected. To segregate resources and provide more capability for the tuning and allocation of processor, memory, and other system resources for multiple applications, consider using logical partition (LPAR), workload partition (WPAR), or other virtual workstation support. For example, run a DB2 application on its own virtualized	
	oyotent.	

Table 17. Compatibility of the Tivoli Storage Manager server with other DB2 products on the system (continued)

Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade

When you prepare a system for an upgrade, you must verify the level of the V5 server and upgrade the server if required. By reviewing the guidelines and upgrading the V5 server to an appropriate level, you can optimize the subsequent upgrade to V7.

About this task

The guidelines apply to server upgrades from V5 to V7 on the same operating system. The guidelines also apply if you are migrating a V5 server to V7 on a different operating system.

Procedure

You can upgrade the server from V5.3.6 or later to any level of V7. However, to determine the most appropriate level for a V5 server, review the following guidelines:

- The preferred method is to upgrade the server to the latest level of V5. In this way, you can use the latest upgrade utilities to extract information from a source server database and to insert the information into a target server database.
- For the selected server level, ensure that the latest interim fix is installed. In this way, you can reduce the risk of upgrade issues.
- Because upgrade utilities are provided in a separate package, you can install the latest version of the utilities without upgrading the server. If you are installing only the upgrade utilities without upgrading the server, the following restrictions apply:

- The upgrade utilities must be at the same level as the V5 server or at a later level.
- To avoid a potential issue with data extraction, the upgrade utilities must be at V5.5.4 or later.
- If you plan to extract the server database to media, the preferred method is to upgrade the source server to V5.5.6 or later.

To find the latest level of the V5 server and the latest interim fixes, go to the FTP downloads site at ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/maintenance/.

Planning space for the upgrade process and the upgraded server

Plan for the space requirements for the upgrade process, and for the server database and recovery log for the upgraded server. Consider the disk storage currently in use for the server, and whether changes in hardware can be timed to coincide with the upgrade of the server.

Space requirements for the V5 server system

Space is required for storing the backup of the server database, which is an important step in preparing for the upgrade process. If you are using the media method for moving the database, you need space for storing the extracted data.

The backup of the server database requires as much space as is used by your V5 database. Store the backup on the form of sequential media that is convenient for you, either tape or disk.

Additional space requirements depend on the method that you choose for moving the data from the V5 database:

Media method

You need media to store the data that will be extracted from the V5 database. The media can be tape, or disk space that is defined as a sequential-access disk device class. The space required for the extracted data is the same as the used space in your database. If your database is safely backed up, and you are certain that you no longer need to run the V5 server, after you extract the data you can optionally release the space used by the V5 database and recovery log.

Network method

You must have the working copy of the V5 database and recovery log on the V5 system. If you are working with a copy of the database that was created for testing the upgrade process, you need enough space to hold the total allocated size of the database; you can use the minimum size for a V5 recovery log.

Related tasks:

"Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39

Space requirements for the V7 server system

Before beginning the upgrade process, plan for the space that is required for the database and recovery log. Where you locate the database and recovery log directories is very important to the operation of your server.

You need unique, empty directories for the following items for the upgraded server:

- The database
- The recovery log
 - Active log
 - Archive log
 - Optional: Active log mirror
 - Optional: Secondary archive log (archive failover log)
- The *instance directory* for the server, which is a directory that will contain files specifically for this server instance (the server options file and other server-specific files)

Locate the database and the active log on fast, reliable storage, with high availability characteristics. Ideally, use multiple directories for database space and locate them across as many physical devices or logical unit numbers (LUNs) as there are directories.

Place the database and recovery log directories on separate physical volumes or file systems.

To maintain database integrity, ensure that the storage hardware can withstand failures such as power outages and controller failure. You can improve database performance by using hardware that provides a fast, nonvolatile write cache for both the database and logs.

Related tasks:

"Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39

Related information:

Tivoli Storage Manager support site

Database space requirements

The amount of database space that is required depends on the size of the original V5 database, and on how much data the server will manage.

The amount of storage space for the database is managed automatically. The database space can be spread across up to 128 directories. After you specify the directories for the database, the server uses the disk space available to those directories as required.

Plan for 33 - 50% more than the space that is used by the V5 database. (Do not include allocated but unused space for the V5 database in the estimate.) Some databases can grow temporarily during the upgrade process; consider providing up to 80% more than the space that is used by the V5 database.

Estimate the amount of space that the database will require by completing the following steps:

- 1. Use the QUERY DB FORMAT=DETAILED command to determine the number of used database pages in your V5 database.
- **2**. Multiply the number of used database pages by 4096 to get the number of used bytes.
- 3. Add 33 50% to the used bytes to estimate the database space requirements.

Consider testing the upgrade of the database to get a more accurate estimate. Not all databases will grow as much as the suggested 33 - 50% increase in space.

When the server is operating normally, after the upgrade process, some operations might cause occasional large, temporary increases in the amount of space used by the database. Continue to monitor the usage of database space to determine whether the server needs more database space.

For the best efficiency in database operations, anticipate future growth when you set up space for the database. If you underestimate the amount of space that is needed for the database and must add directories later, the database manager might need to perform more database reorganization, which can consume resources on the system. Estimate the requirements for database growth based on the predicted number of additional objects to be stored in server storage. For more information about estimating database space requirements, see the *Administrator's Guide*.

Restriction: You cannot use raw logical volumes for the database. If you want to reuse space on the disk where raw logical volumes were located for an earlier version of the server, you must create file systems on the disk first.

For the latest information and recommendations, see the Tivoli Storage Manager support website at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/Tivoli_Storage_Manager.

Recovery log space requirements

The amount of space that you require for the recovery log depends on various factors, including, for example, the amount of client activity with the server.

For details, see the section that describes recovery log space requirements in the *Installation Guide*.

For the latest information and updates, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager support site: http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager

Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server

In addition to the space required for the upgraded server itself, some additional disk space is needed for the upgrade process. For example, if you are upgrading the server on the same system, you need enough space for two copies of the database during the upgrade process.

About this task

The space requirements for the upgraded, V7.1 server depend on the size of the V5 database and other factors. For details, see "Database space requirements" on page 38 and "Recovery log space requirements."

The space requirements for the upgrade process depend on how you move the data from the V5 database to the new database. You can move the data to the new database by using the media method or the network method, with the following requirements:

- The media method requires sequential media. The sequential media can be tape or sequential disk device class (**FILE** device type).
- The network method requires a network connection between systems, if you are upgrading on a new system.

Table 18 shows basic tips for estimating each item, for each of the main scenarios. For details about sizing the V7.1 database and recovery log, see "Space requirements for the V7 server system" on page 38.

Table 18. Tips for estimating space requirements. Select the scenario. Then, read down the column.

Item that requires space	Type of space	Scenario 1: • Same system as V5 server • Media method	Scenario 2: • Same system as V5 server • Network method	Scenario 3: • New system • Media method	Scenario 4: • New system • Network method
V5 database: space allocated for the original database	Disk	Space that is allocated for the V5 database	Space that is allocated for the V5 database	0	0
V5 database: final backup copy	Sequential media	Space that is used by the V5 database (based on % utilization)	Space that is used by the V5 database (based on % utilization)	Space that is used by the V5 database (based on % utilization)	Space that is used by the V5 database (based on % utilization)
V5 database: extracted data	Sequential media	Space that is used by the V5 database (based on % utilization)	0	Space that is used by the V5 database (based on % utilization)	0
V5 recovery log	Disk	The amount of space that is allocated for the V5 recovery log	The amount of space that is allocated for the V5 recovery log	0	0
V7.1 database: estimated size	Disk	Space that is used by the V5 database plus 33 - 50% more	Space that is used by the V5 database plus 33 - 50% more	Space that is used by the V5 database plus 33 - 50% more	Space that is used by the V5 database plus 33 - 50% more
V7.1 database: first backup	Sequential media	Same as estimated database size			
V7.1 active log directory	Disk	16 GB during the upgrade process. A higher value might be needed for normal use.	16 GB during the upgrade process. A higher value might be needed for normal use.	16 GB during the upgrade process. A higher value might be needed for normal use.	16 GB during the upgrade process. A higher value might be needed for normal use.
V7.1 active log mirror (optional)	Disk	If used, same size as active log			
V7.1 archive log directory	Disk	Estimate based on client activity and database backup frequency			

Table 19 on page 41 shows a sample completed worksheet for a 100 GB, V5 database that has 80% space utilization, with the assumption that the database increases by 33% - 50% when upgraded.

Item that requires space	Type of space	Scenario 1: • Same system as V5 server • Media method	Scenario 2: • Same system as V5 server • Network method	Scenario 3: • New system • Media method	Scenario 4: • New system • Network method
V5 database: space allocated for the original database	Disk	100 GB	100 GB	0	0
V5 database: final backup copy	Sequential media	80 GB	80 GB	80 GB	80 GB
V5 database: extracted data	Sequential media	80 GB	0	80 GB	0
V5 recovery log	Disk	12	12	0	0
V7.1 database: estimated size	Disk	106 - 120 GB	106 - 120 GB	106 - 120 GB	106 - 120 GB
V7.1 database: first backup	Sequential media	106 - 120 GB	106 - 120 GB	106 - 120 GB	106 - 120 GB
V7.1 active log directory	Disk	8 GB	8 GB	8 GB	8 GB
V7.1 active log mirror (optional)	Disk	(8 GB)	(8 GB)	(8 GB)	(8 GB)
V7.1 archive log directory	Disk	80 GB	80 GB	80 GB	80 GB
Total disk space	Disk	307 - 320 GB	307 - 320 GB	195 - 208 GB	195 - 208 GB
required during the upgrade process		(315 - 328 GB)	(315 - 328 GB)	(203 - 216 GB)	(203 - 216 GB)
Total sequential media required during the upgrade process	Sequential media	267 - 280 GB	187 - 200 GB	267 - 280 GB	187 - 200 GB
Total disk space for the V7.1 server after upgrade and cleanup	Disk	195 - 208 GB (203 - 216 GB)	195 - 208 GB (203 - 216 GB)	195 - 208 GB (203 - 216 GB)	195 - 208 GB (203 - 216 GB)

Table 19. Sample space estimates for a 100 GB V5 database

Related concepts:

"Space requirements for the V5 server system" on page 37 "Space requirements for the V7 server system" on page 38 **Related tasks**:

Chapter 3, "Upgrade scenarios overview," on page 73

Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server

You can use the worksheet to help you plan the amount and location of storage needed for the V7.1 server.

Item	Space required	Location
The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which is a directory that contains files specifically for this server instance (the server options file and other server-specific files)		
The database		
Active log		
Archive log		
Optional: Log mirror for the active log		
Optional: Secondary archive log (failover location for archive log)		

Estimating the upgrade time

The V5 server is not available for use during upgrade operations. To help plan for the amount of time that the server will be unavailable, estimate the upgrade time. The time that is required to complete the upgrade of a V5 server depends on several factors.

About this task

The following factors can affect the upgrade time:

- The size of the database that is being upgraded.
- The number and speed of system processors.
- The configuration of storage devices. If new hardware is being introduced, time is required to define the new devices to the server, test the configuration, and adjust storage pools.
- The method for moving the data from the V5 database to the V7 database (media or network). The network method for the data movement overlaps the extraction time with the insertion time. Using the network method might help reduce the total time that is required for the upgrade because of the overlap.
- The type of workload that the server handles. A workload that consists of large numbers of small files, or files with long file names, can cause a relatively longer upgrade time.
- The amount of fragmentation in the V5 database. A higher level of fragmentation results in a more efficient database insertion process. The reason is that fragmented data on the V5 system can use multiple threads and processors on the V7 system.

Procedure

When you estimate the time it might take to migrate the system, consider the results that were obtained in labs. For example, in benchmark environments in IBM labs, upgrade operations achieved 5 - 10 GB per hour by using the network method. This rate is based on the amount of space that is used by the V5 database,

not the allocated space for the database. Your environment might produce different results. Results are dependent on system configuration. If you use the media method, the rate is decreased.

Estimate the time that is required to migrate your system based on the amount of data in the server database.

Results

Your estimate might be higher than the actual time that is required. Because of the way that databases are structured, the amount of data that the extraction utility extracts might be much less than the total amount of space that is used by the database.

What to do next

Test upgrade operations for Tivoli Storage Manager servers that are used by essential systems.

Example: Estimating the upgrade time based on the database size

You can roughly estimate the time that is required for the upgrade based on the amount of data in the V5 database. To this estimate, add the time that is required for additional tasks, such as configuring storage devices.

Procedure

- 1. Issue a command to obtain details about the V5 database.
 - If the V5 server is running, issue the command:
 - query db format=detailed
 - If the V5 server is not running and you have installed the upgrade utilities, use the upgrade utility:

dsmupgrd querydb

An example of results:



2. Use the results of the query command to calculate the amount of data in the database. Multiply the number of used pages by the page size.

Using the results in the example, you can calculate the amount of data in this database:

3,214,880 used pages \times 4096 bytes/page = 13,168,148,480 bytes, or 12.26 GB

3. Estimate the time that is required for the upgrade operation by dividing the amount of data by the expected rate.

For example, by using rates of 5 GB/hour and 10 GB/hour:

12.26 GB \div 5 GB/hour = 2.5 hours 12.26 GB \div 10 GB/hour = 1.2 hours

Performance tips for the V5 database extraction process

Review the performance tips for the V5 database extraction process so that you can minimize the time that is required for the upgrade. In this way, you can reduce the time that the Tivoli Storage Manager server is unavailable.

The speed of the extraction process is typically limited by the speed of I/O to the destination for the extracted data. The length of time that the process runs also depends on the size of the database. The time will be approximately as long as the time required for a full backup of the database.

Do not reorganize the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 database before the upgrade. The extraction process can achieve faster throughput when the source database does not contain long sequences of pages that are allocated to a single database table. This tip applies to both the media method and the network method.

The following performance tips depend on the method that you choose for moving the data from the V5 database.

Media method

If you are using the media method, consider the following tips:

- If you are extracting the data to tape, use a high-speed tape device. For example, select a device with a transfer rate of at least 1000 MB per second.
- If you are extracting the data to disk, use a disk device or LUN that is different from the device that is used for the V5 database and recovery log.
- If both the V5 database and the destination for the extracted data are on a virtualization device (high-end storage controller, or a SAN virtualization device), ensure that the two virtual LUNs are *not* on the same physical disk drive. Ensure that the space for the V5 database and the destination for the extracted data are on different physical disk drives within the virtualization device.
- If it is not possible to provide different LUNs for the V5 database and the extraction destination, the extraction process will take more time. The slower speed of extraction might be acceptable, depending on the size of the database and your requirements for the upgrade.

Network method

If you are using the network method, consider the following tips:

• Use a high-speed link if you are extracting the data to a different system. If you are upgrading a database that is larger than 2 - 3 GB, use at least a 1-gigabit (Gb) Ethernet network.

• If you are extracting the database on the same system, no external network connections are required.

Performance tips for inserting data into the V7.1 database

The process for inserting the V5 extracted data into the V7.1 database is the longest-running part of an upgrade process. The performance of the data insertion process depends on the system configuration.

On a system that meets only the minimum requirements, the insertion process will run, but performance might be slow. For better performance, set up the system as described in the following tips:

Processors

The insertion process is designed to use multiple processors or cores. The insertion process typically performs better on a system with a relatively small number of fast processors. If the system has many slow processors, you might experience reduced performance levels.

Disk storage

The insertion process is designed to use high-bandwidth disk storage subsystems. The speed of the process is dependent on the disk storage that is used.

For best performance, use multiple LUNs that map to multiple independent disks, or that map to redundant arrays of independent disks (RAIDs) with a large stripe size (for example, 128 KB). Use a different file system on each LUN.

The following table shows an example of good usage of LUNs.

LUN	Usage
1	Active log
2	Archive log
3, 4, 5	Database directories
6	Extracted V5 database, which is required only if the media method is used to extract the V5 database to a sequential disk device class

Table 20. Example of LUN use

If the disk storage is supplied by a virtualization device (high-end storage controller, or a SAN virtualization device), ensure that none of the virtual LUNs are on the same physical disk drive. Ensure that the directories in use are on different physical disk drives within the virtualization device.

Planning for upgrading multiple servers and components

If your environment includes multiple servers and storage agents, evaluate the compatibility of the versions being run with an upgraded V7.1 server. Plan to upgrade one server first in a test environment. Then stage the upgrade of additional servers and storage agents.

Components that are available for installation

In addition to the server, you can choose to install language packages, devices, the Operations Center, and other components.

Compatibility with servers and components that are running at earlier versions

Details about the levels of server, client, storage agent, library manager server, library client servers, and configuration manager servers that can work together are available from the product support site.

The product support site is located at: http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/Tivoli_Storage_Manager

To use the new functions that are available in Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1, install the latest version of the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager Operations Center.

Planning for upgrading multiple servers on a single system

How you upgrade multiple servers that run on a single system depends on whether the servers are to remain on that system, or be moved to a new system. After you install the V7.1 server on a system, you can no longer run any V5 servers on that system.

About this task

If the upgraded servers are to remain on the same system, all server instances must be upgraded at the same time. After the point in the upgrade process when you install the V7.1 server program on the system, a V5 server cannot be started on that system. Each V5 server must be upgraded separately before you can start that server again.

If the upgraded servers are to be moved to a new system as part of the upgrade process, you can upgrade the servers independently of one another.

You can use the upgrade wizard, or manually use the upgrade utilities to upgrade the servers:

Procedure

- If you use the upgrade wizard, run the wizard once for each server instance. You can upgrade multiple servers at the same time. Each time that you start the upgrade wizard, you work with a single server, but you can start the wizard in multiple windows at the same time.
- If you use the upgrade utilities manually from a command line, repeat the procedure for upgrading each server instance.

What to do next

You can begin running one upgraded server instance while other server instances are still being upgraded.

Related concepts:

"Comparison of upgrading on an existing system and a new system" on page 13

Planning for upgrading library managers and library clients

To work with a Version 7.1 library manager, servers that are library clients must be at Version 5.4 or later.

About this task

If library client servers are at V5.3 or earlier, you must upgrade the library client servers to at least V5.4 before upgrading the library manager server to V7.1. If library client servers are at V5.4 or later, you can upgrade the server that is the library manager to V7.1 first, and then upgrade the library client servers later.

If you are moving a library manager or library clients to new systems for the upgrade to V7.1, consider moving the servers to the new systems before upgrading the servers. By moving the servers first, you can reestablish connectivity to all servers and devices before the upgrade. Then upgrade the library manager, followed by upgrading the library clients.

For the most recent information about supported levels of library clients, see the following website: http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21302789

Planning for upgrading clients

To connect to a V7.1 server, client nodes must be running a version 5.5 or later client program.

Planning for upgrading storage agents

To connect to a V7.1 server, storage agents must be at V7.1.

Procedure

If you have storage agents at earlier versions, upgrade them to V7.1 before you upgrade the server to V7.1. Verify that LAN-free data movement works as expected before you upgrade the server.

What to do next

For the most recent information about supported levels of storage agents, go to the following website: http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21302789

Testing the upgrade process for a server

Test the upgrade to ensure a smooth upgrade process. The larger and more complex your environment, the more important testing the upgrade is. Testing can help to plan for the amount of time that the server is unavailable because of the upgrade.

About this task

The original server and the V7.1 server cannot both be installed on a system at the same time. To evaluate the V7.1 server, you can install the program on a new system.

To test with a copy of production data, or to test the upgrade process, you can use the upgrade utilities to create a test server. Follow the normal upgrade procedure, but consider these tips:

Minimizing impact to your production server

To avoid affecting your original production server, you must install the V7.1 server on a different system. Different versions of the server cannot be run on a system at the same time.

The **DSMUPGRD** utility must be installed on the system that has your original server, or a copy of your original server. The utility package installs by default in a different location than a normal server, so it can be installed without affecting your production server.

Important: When you run the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility, the utility upgrades the database version to a V5.5 fix pack level. If you do not want the database on your production server to be upgraded to the V5.5 fix pack level, back up the database and use the backup on another system to test the upgrade.

You can extract the production database for the test by using either media or the network. The advantage of extracting the database to media is that you can repeatedly load the test database without stopping your production server each time.

Detecting problems in the database

A **PREVIEW** parameter is available for the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility. When you use the **PREVIEW=YES** parameter, the operation includes all the steps of the process, except for the actual insertion of data into the new database.

When you preview the insertion operation, you can quickly verify that the source database is readable. You can also identify any data constraint violations before you run the actual upgrade process for your server. Investigate any data constraint violations that are discovered during the preview so that you can avoid delays when you run the actual upgrade process.

Protecting storage and stored data

Ensure that the storage devices for your production server are not available to the test server. If the test server can detect the devices that your production server uses, it might start operations such as issuing resets on tape drives or unloading tapes.

For example, if your tape drives are connected in a storage area network (SAN), you might need to change the zones in your SAN to prevent the test server from detecting the devices.

For testing, you can use one of the following methods to use a backup copy of the database. The methods are given in outline form. See the detailed procedures for instructions for each step.

Related tasks:

Chapter 9, "General procedures for upgrading a server to V7.1," on page 277

Testing by extracting data from a separate copy of the server

Either the media method or the network method can be used to move the database.

Procedure

- 1. Prepare a test system. This system is a different system than the production server, where you must install a separate copy of the V5.3, V5.4, or V5.5 server (the same version as your production server).
- 2. Back up the database of the production server.
- **3**. Restore the database backup on the test system. Start the server to verify that the restore operation worked.

Tip: If you are upgrading the server by using media, ensure that the device class is valid on the test system. For example, if you are using a **FILE** device class for the extraction step, ensure that the path for the device class is valid on the test system. The path that is in the server database for the device class must be correct. If necessary, start the server and update the path.

If you are using a tape device class for the extraction step, ensure that the device names for the library and drives are correct.

4. From this point, you can use the detailed procedures in one of the following sections to complete your test:

Chapter 4, "Scenario 1: Same system, media method," on page 91

Chapter 5, "Scenario 2: Same system, network method," on page 135

Testing by extracting data from the production server

This example process uses the media method to move the database to the test system.

About this task

You follow the steps in the procedures for Chapter 6, "Scenario 3: New system, media method," on page 177, with just a few changes.

With this process, the production server is unavailable for at least the amount of time that is required to prepare and extract the database. The time is approximately as much as the time required for a full backup of the database.

Procedure

- Prepare for the test by backing up the database of the production server. Consider making a second copy of the database backup. For details, see "Scenario 3: Preparing for the upgrade" on page 177.
- 2. Install the **DSMUPGRD** utilities on the same system as the production server. For details, see "Installing the upgrade utilities on the original server" on page 287.
- **3**. Prepare the database and extract the data from the database of the production server to media by using either the upgrade wizard or commands. For details, see:
 - "Scenario 3: Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard" on page 194
 - a. "Scenario 3, wizard: Installing the V7.1 server" on page 194
 - b. "Scenario 3, wizard: Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance" on page 198
 - c. "Scenario 3: Starting the upgrade wizard" on page 201

After the database extraction is completed, you can pause the process by exiting the wizard while you complete step 4 to restore and restart the production server.

- "Scenario 3: Upgrading the server manually by using utilities" on page 202
 - a. "Scenario 3: Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade" on page 203
 - b. "Scenario 3: Extracting the data to media" on page 204
- 4. After the data is extracted from the production server, resume normal operations by restoring the database backup that you made in step 1 on page 49 to the production server. You can then restart the production server.
- 5. From this point, continue your test by using the detailed procedures for Scenario 3, using the test system as the new system.
 - If you are using the wizard, restart the wizard if necessary, and continue at the step after the extraction.
 - If you are using commands, follow these steps:
 - a. Scenario 3: Installing the V7.1 server
 - b. Scenario 3: Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance
 - c. "Scenario 3: Creating and formatting the new database" on page 212
 - d. "Scenario 3: Loading the extracted data into the new database" on page 216

As part of your testing, you can use the **PREVIEW=YES** parameter on the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility to test the insertion. When you preview the insertion operation, you can quickly verify that the source database is readable. You can also identify any data constraint violations that might prevent an upgraded database from being put into production. When you use this parameter, the operation includes all steps of the process, except for the actual insertion of data into the new database.

e. "Scenario 3: Configuring the system for database backup" on page 219

Preparing for operational changes

As you upgrade your system from V5 to V7.1, the method for backing up and monitoring the server database changes.

Procedure

Verify the operating procedures, scripts, and administrative schedules that you use for server operations:

• Plan to back up the server database regularly by using administrative schedules, a maintenance script, or your own scripts. Back up the server database at least once per day. For best results, consider scheduling more frequent backups for the V7.1 database than you did for the V5 database. To ensure that archive log space is pruned, consider scheduling more full database backups and fewer incremental backups.

Review information about how database backups are performed automatically for the V7.1 server. For details, see the *Administrator's Guide*.

- Understand how database and recovery log space is used, and how monitoring will change.
- Verify scripts and administrative schedules. The V7.1 server adds new commands, changes some commands, and deletes some commands that are no

longer needed. These changes will affect your automated operations. For information about new and changed commands, see "Command and option changes."

- Verify the **SELECT** commands that you use regularly. Some parameters and syntax that were previously allowed are not accepted by the database manager program. For information about **SELECT** command updates, see "Changes to the **SELECT** command" on page 68. To resolve problems that are related to **SELECT** commands, see Technote 1380830 (http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21380830).
- If you use products from independent software vendors to interface with the server, ensure that the products are compatible with the V7.1 server.

What to do next

To use the new functions that are available in Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1, install the latest version of the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager Operations Center.

Related concepts:

"Database protection and recovery" on page 5

"Recovery log" on page 4

"Database operations" on page 4

Related reference:

"Command and option changes"

"Changes to the **SELECT** command" on page 68

Reference information for planning

Information about new, changed, and deleted administrative commands, server options, and server messages can help you plan for the V7.1 upgrade.

Command and option changes

Use the lists of new, changed, and deleted commands and options to help you identify operation changes that are needed for your server.

New server commands, utilities, and options

As you plan to upgrade the server, be aware of new commands, utilities, and options that were introduced in V6 and later.

"New commands"

"New utilities" on page 54

"New server options" on page 55

New commands

Table 21.	New	commands
-----------	-----	----------

Command	Function	Comparable commands in previous versions
AUDIT LDAPDIRECTORY	Audits a namespace that is controlled by Tivoli Storage Manager on a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server.	None
CANCEL REPLICATION	Cancels all node replication processes.	None
DEFINE ALERTTRIGGER	Triggers an alert in the Operations Center whenever a server issues a specified error message.	None

Table 21. New commands (continued)

Command	Function	Comparable commands in previous versions
AIX Linux DEFINE DEVCLASS - z/OS media server	Defines a device class for a type of storage device. A limited set of device class types is available for devices that are accessed through the z/OS media server.	None
AIX Linux DEFINE LIBRARY (Define a ZOSMEDIA library type)	Defines a library that represents a TAPE or FILE storage resource that is maintained by Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media.	None
AIX Linux DEFINE PATH (Define a path when the destination is a ZOSMEDIA library)	Defines a path to a ZOSMEDIA library. You must first define the z/OS media server in your configuration with the DEFINE SERVER command.	None
DEFINE STATUSTHRESHOLD	Defines a status monitoring threshold.	None
DELETE STATUSTHRESHOLD	Deletes a status monitoring threshold.	None
EXTEND DBSPACE	Makes more storage space available for the server to use for its database. You can have multiple locations for database storage space. After you install and use the DSMSERV FORMAT or DSMSERV LOADFORMAT utility, you can add more storage locations.	DEFINE DBVOLUME EXTEND DB
IDENTIFY DUPLICATES	Starts or stops processes that identify duplicate data in a storage pool.	None
PERFORM LIBACTION	Defines or deletes all drives and their paths for a single library in one step.	None
QUERY ALERTSTATUS	Displays information about alerts that are issued on the Tivoli Storage Manager server.	None
QUERY ALERTTRIGGER	Displays which server messages are defined as alerts.	None
QUERY DBSPACE	Displays information about the directories that are used by a database to store data.	QUERY DBVOLUME
QUERY MONITORSETTINGS	Displays information about the configuration settings for monitoring alerts and server status.	None
QUERY MONITORSTATUS	Displays monitoring messages that are within a defined status retention period.	None
QUERY PVUESTIMATE	Generates an estimate of the client devices and server devices that are managed by a Tivoli Storage Manager server. In addition, this command provides an estimate of the processor value unit (PVU) totals for server devices.	None
QUERY REPLICATION	Displays information about running and completed node-replication processes.	None
QUERY REPLNODE	Displays the number of client node files that are stored on source and target replication servers.	None
QUERY REPLRULE	Displays information about replication rules.	None
QUERY SSLKEYRINGPW	Displays the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) key database file password.	None
QUERY STATUSTHRESHOLD	Displays information about thresholds for status monitoring.	None
REMOVE REPLNODE	Removes a client node from replication.	None

Command	Function	Comparable commands in previous versions
REPLICATE NODE	Replicates data in file spaces that belong to one or more client nodes or defined groups of client nodes.	None
SET ALERTACTIVEDURATION	Specifies how long an alert remains active before it becomes inactive.	None
SET ALERTCLOSEDDURATION	Specifies how long an alert remains closed before it is deleted.	None
SET ALERTEMAIL	Enables alerts to be sent to specified administrators by email.	None
SET ALERTEMAILFROMADDR	Specifies the email address of the alert sender.	None
SET ALERTEMAILSMTPHOST	Specifies the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) mail server host name that is used to send alerts by email.	None
SET ALERTEMAILSMTPPORT	Specifies the port number of an SMTP mail server that is used to send alerts by email.	None
SET ALERTINACTIVEDURATION	Specifies how long an alert remains inactive.	None
SET ALERTMONITOR	Enables or disables an alert monitor.	None
SET ALERTSUMMARYTOADMINS	Specifies the administrators who receive hourly alert summaries by email.	None
SET ALERTUPDATEINTERVAL	Specifies how often an alert monitor updates and prunes alerts that are stored in the Tivoli Storage Manager server database.	None
SET ARREPLRULEDEFAULT	Sets the server replication rule for archive data.	None
SET BKREPLRULEDEFAULT	Sets the server replication rule for backup data.	None
SET CPUINFOREFRESH	Specifies the number of days between workstation scans, which are used to estimate PVU.	None
SET DBRECOVERY	Sets the device class to use for backing up the server database. The database manager uses the device class for automatic backups of the database.	DEFINE DBBACKUPTRIGGER
SET DBREPORTMODE	Sets the amount of diagnostic information that is reported for a database.	None
SET DEDUPVERIFICATIONLEVEL	Verifies extents that are sent to the server during client-side data deduplication.	None
SET DEFAULTAUTHENTICATION	Sets the default password authentication method for nodes and administrators.	None
SET DRMACTIVEDATASTGPOOL	Sets the active-data pools that are included in recovery plans and procedures.	None
SET LDAPPASSWORD	Defines a password for a user name or ID that you specify by using the SET LDAPUSER command.	None
SET LDAPUSER	Specifies the ID of a user or account that can conduct administrative operations when the user or account accesses an LDAP directory server.	None
SET MONITOREDSERVERGROUP	Defines a server group that is monitored for alerts and status.	None
SET MONITORINGADMIN	Sets the name of the monitoring administrator that is used to connect to the servers in a monitored server group.	None

Table 21. New commands (continued)

Table 21. New commands (continued)

Command	Function	Comparable commands in previous versions
SET REPLRETENTION	Specifies the retention period for client-node replication records in the source replication-server database.	None
SET REPLSERVER	Sets the name of a target replication server.	None
SET SPREPLRULEDEFAULT	Sets the server replication rule for space-managed data.	None.
SET SSLKEYRINGPW	Provides the key database file password to the server.	None
SET STATUSMONITOR	Enables or disables status monitoring.	None
SET STATUSREFRESHINTERVAL	Specifies the number of minutes between server queries. The queries are used for status monitoring.	None
UPDATE ALERTTRIGGER	Updates the attributes of one or more alert triggers.	None
UPDATE ALERTSTATUS	Updates the status of a reported alert.	None
AIX Linux UPDATE DEVCLASS - z/OS media server	Updates a device class. A limited set of device class types is available for devices that are accessed through a z/OS media server.	None
UPDATE FILESPACE	Updates replication rules for file spaces.	None
AIX Linux UPDATE PATH (Update a path when the destination is a ZOSMEDIA library)	Updates a path to a ZOSMEDIA library.	None
UPDATE REPLRULE	Enables or disables a replication rule.	None
UPDATE STATUSTHRESHOLD	Updates a threshold for status monitoring.	None
VALIDATE REPLICATION	Identifies the replication rules that apply to file spaces in client nodes that are configured for replication.	None
z/0S ZMSPREPARE	Analyzes the V5 server and generates a report that describes the steps that you must take before data migration can begin.	None

New utilities

Table 22. New utilities

Command	Function	Comparable commands in previous versions
DSMSERV DISPLAY DBSPACE	Offline utility to view the current locations for database storage.	DSMSERV DISPLAY DBVOLUMES
DSMSERV DISPLAY LOG	Offline utility to view information about recovery logs, including active logs and archive logs.	DSMSERV DISPLAY LOGVOLUMES
DSMSERV INSERTDB	Offline utility that is used only for inserting data that was extracted from a V5 server database into an empty V7.1 database.	None
DSMSERV REMOVEDB	Offline utility that is used only when you are sure that you no longer need a server database and recovery logs. Use with caution.	None
DSMUPGRD EXTEND DB	Offline utility that is used only on a V5 server to extend the database when database space is insufficient to complete the upgrade process.	None
Command	Function	Comparable commands in previous versions
---------------------	---	--
DSMUPGRD EXTEND LOG	Offline utility that is used only on a V5 server to extend the recovery log when recovery log space is insufficient to complete the upgrade process.	None
DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB	Offline utility that is used only on a V5 server to extract the data from the database. The extracted data is inserted into a V7.1 database by using the DSMSERV INSERTDB utility.	None
DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB	Offline utility that is used only on a V5 server to prepare the database for extraction. After this utility is run, the data can be extracted from the database by using the DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB utility.	None
DSMUPGRD QUERYDB	Offline utility that is used only on a V5 server to display information about the database and recovery log.	None

Table 22. New utilities (continued)

New server options

Table 23. New server options. For some options, changes have no effect until the server is restarted.

New server option	Function	Comparable commands or options in previous versions
ACTIVELOGDIRECTORY	The name of the directory where all active logs are stored.	DEFINE LOGVOLUME
ACTIVELOGSIZE	The maximum size of the active log.	EXTEND LOG
		REDUCE LOG
ALLOWREORGINDEX	Specifies whether server-initiated index reorganization is enabled.	None
ALLOWREORGTABLE	Specifies whether server-initiated table reorganization is enabled.	None
ARCHFAILOVERLOGDIRECTORY	The directory in which the server stores archive log files if they cannot be stored in the archive log location.	None
ARCHLOGDIRECTORY	The directory in which the server stores the archive log.	None
CLIENTDEDUPTXNLIMIT	The maximum size of a transaction when client-side deduplicated data is backed up or archived.	None
DBDIAGPATHFSTHRESHOLD	The threshold for free space on the file system or disk that contains the db2diag.log file. When the amount of free space is equal to or less than the specified threshold, the ANR1545W error message is shown.	None
DBMEMPERCENT	The limit on the percentage of the system memory that is used for the database.	None
DBMTCPPORT	The port number on which the TCP/IP communication driver for the database manager waits for requests for client sessions.	None

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

Table 23. New server options (continued). For some options, changes have no effect until the server is restarted.

Now corver option	Function	Comparable commands or options
DEDUPTIER2FILESIZE	Specifies at what file size Tivoli Storage Manager begins to use Tier 2 data deduplication.	None
DEDUPTIER3FILESIZE	Specifies at what file size Tivoli Storage Manager begins to use Tier 3 data deduplication.	None
ENABLENASDEDUP	Specifies whether a server deduplicates data that is stored by a network-attached storage (NAS) file server. This option applies only to NetApp file servers.	None
FFDCLOGNAME	The name of the first failure data capture (FFDC) log.	None
FFDCMAXLOGSIZE	The size of the FFDC log.	None
LDAPCACHEDURATION	The length of time that the Tivoli Storage Manager server caches LDAP password authentication information.	None
LDAPURL	The location of an LDAP directory server.	None
MIRRORLOGDIRECTORY	The directory where the log mirror for the active log is stored.	DEFINE LOGCOPY
NDMPENABLEKEEPALIVE	Specifies whether the server enables the Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) keepalive function on network data-management protocol (NDMP) control connections to NAS devices.	None
NDMPKEEPIDLEMINUTES	The amount of time, in minutes, before an operating system transmits the first TCP keepalive packet on an NDMP control connection.	None
REORGBEGINTIME	The earliest time that the Tivoli Storage Manager server can start table or index reorganization.	None
REORGDURATION	The interval during which server-initiated table or index reorganization can start.	None
AIX Linux Solaris Windows SANDISCOVERYTIMEOUT	The amount of time that is allowed for host bus adapters to respond when they are queried by the SAN discovery process.	None
SERVERDEDUPTXNLIMIT	The maximum size of objects that can be deduplicated on a server.	None
SSLFIPSMODE	Specifies whether the Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) mode is in effect for SSL.	None
SSLTLS12	Controls Transport Layer Security (TLS) 1.2, an SSL protocol that is available for use with Tivoli Storage Manager V6.3 or later. TLS 1.2 can be used only with V6.3 or later clients.	None

Updated server commands, utilities, and options

Be aware of the commands, utilities, and options that are updated in V6 and later.

- "Updated commands"
- "Updated utilities" on page 63
- "Updated server options" on page 64

Updated commands

Table 24. Updated commands

Command	Changes
BACKUP DB	You must run the SET DBRECOVERY command before the BACKUP DB command. By running the SET DBRECOVERY command, you set the device class for the database backup.
	An incremental database backup is a backup of all changes since the last full backup. In earlier versions of the server, an incremental backup was a backup of all changes since either the last full backup or the last incremental backup.
	 New parameters are available: The DEDUPDEVICE parameter identifies storage devices that support data deduplication and optimize backup images that are stored on these devices. The NUMSTREAMS parameter specifies the number of parallel data movement streams that are used for database backup.
BACKUP NODE QUERY NASBACKUP	The commands include the SNAPMIRROR value for the TYPE parameter:
RESTORE NODE	• When you specify the SNAPMIRROR value for the BACKUP NODE command, the file system is copied to a storage pool by using the NetApp SnapMirror to Tape feature.
	• When you specify the SNAPMIRROR value for the QUERY NASBACKUP command, the output shows information about NetApp SnapMirror images.
	• When you specify the SNAPMIRROR value for the RESTORE NODE command, the file system is retrieved from a NetApp SnapMirror image.
BACKUP STGPOOL DEFINE STGPOOL QUERY STGPOOL UPDATE STGPOOL	The commands can be used with data deduplication functions.

Table 24. Updated commands (continued)

Command	Changes
BACKUP VOLHISTORY DELETE VOLHISTORY QUERY VOLHISTORY UPDATE VOLHISTORY	Database memory dump operations are no longer available. Therefore, database memory dump volumes are not displayed in volume history.
	AIX Linux Z/OS If you are migrating a V5 server that is running on a z/OS operating system to a V7.1 server on an AIX or Linux operating system, you can issue the DELETE VOLHISTORY command on the V5 server to prepare for the migration. The command specifies the device class of volumes to be deleted.
DEFINE DEVCLASS UPDATE DEVCLASS	When you run the DEFINE DEVCLASS command or the UPDATE DEVCLASS command to specify a 3592 or LTO device class, you can use the LBPROTECT parameter. The LBPROTECT parameter specifies whether logical block protection is used to ensure data integrity on tape.AIXLinuxZ/OSA limited set of device class types is available for devices that are accessed through a Z/OS
DEFINE LIBRARY	AIX Linux You can use the DEFINE LIBRARY command to define a ZOSMEDIA library type. In this way, you can define a library that represents a tape or FILE storage resource that is maintained by Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media.
DEFINE LIBRARY UPDATE LIBRARY	You can use the DEFINE LIBRARY command to define a virtual tape library (VTL) to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. You can use the UPDATE LIBRARY command to update a VTL definition.
AIX Linux DEFINE PATH	You can use the DEFINE PATH command to define a path to a ZOSMEDIA library.
DEFINE SERVER	You can use the DEFINE SERVER command to define a server for the following functions: LAN-free data movement, node replication, and data movement by using z/OS media server.
DEFINE SPACETRIGGER DELETE SPACETRIGGER QUERY SPACETRIGGER UPDATE SPACETRIGGER	The commands can be used only for storage pools. Space triggers are no longer available for databases and logs.
DEFINE VOLUME	The maximum capacity of a volume in a DISK storage pool is 8 TB.
DISABLE SESSIONS ENABLE SESSIONS	The DIRECTION parameter specifies whether to disable or enable inbound sessions, outbound sessions, or both.

Table 24. Updated commands (continued)

Command	Changes
EXPIRE INVENTORY	Expiration processing can be run for specific nodes and node groups, or for all nodes in a policy domain. The types of data to be examined for expiration can be specified.
	The values for the DURATION parameter are changed. You can specify a value in the range 1 - 9999999 to define the maximum number of minutes for the expiration process.
GRANT AUTHORITY REVOKE AUTHORITY	The ANALYST privilege class is removed.
HALT	The QUIESCE parameter is removed.
LOCK ADMIN	The AUTHENTICATION parameter specifies the method of authentication that the administrator uses to log on.
LOCK NODE	The AUTHENTICATION parameter specifies the method of password authentication that is required to log on to a node.
MOVE DRMEDIA PREPARE QUERY DRMEDIA QUERY DRMSTATUS	Changes to disaster recovery manager commands make it possible to include active-data pools in recovery plans and procedures.
	The MOVE DRMEDIA command cannot be used concurrently with the BACKUP STGPOOL command. Ensure that the primary storage pool backup process is complete before you back up the database. Ensure that the BACKUP STGPOOL command and the BACKUP DB command are complete before you issue the MOVE DRMEDIA command.
QUERY DB	The output shows the total number of free pages in all table spaces.
AIX Linux QUERY DEVCLASS QUERY LIBRARY QUERY PATH	You can use this command to view information that is specific to the z/OS media server.
QUERY FILESPACE	You can use this command to view replication information.
QUERY LOG	You can use this command to view information about the active log directory, mirror log directory, archive failover log directory, and archive log directory.
QUERY NODE	You can use this command to view information about the password authentication method and security settings for the administrator ID.
QUERY OPTION	Obsolete options are removed from the output. The output is updated to include information about settings for LDAP directory servers.

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

Table 24. Updated commands (continued)

Command	Changes
QUERY PROCESS	You can use this command to obtain information about duplicate identification processes.
QUERY SERVER	You can use this command to find out whether Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) communication is used.
QUERY SESSION	You can use this command to display the actions that occurred during the session.
QUERY STATUS	Obsolete options and the database backup trigger are removed.
	You can use this command to verify whether passwords are authenticated with the Tivoli Storage Manager server or with the LDAP directory server.
	You can also view the name that is specified for the default target replication server.
QUERY VOLHISTORY	For the TYPE parameter, the values RPFile and RPFSnapshot are added. By using the values, you can display records that contain information about recovery plan file objects.
QUERY VOLUME	You can use this command to verify whether logical block protection is enabled.
REGISTER ADMIN	New parameters are available:
	 The ALERT parameter specifies whether alerts are sent to an administrator email address.
	• The AUTHENTICATION parameter specifies the authentication method for the administrator user ID.
	• The SSLREQUIRED parameter specifies whether the administrator user ID must use SSL to communicate with the backup-archive client from the Tivoli Storage Manager server.
REGISTER ADMIN QUERY ADMIN UPDATE ADMIN	In these commands, the ALERT parameter specifies whether alerts are sent to an administrator email address.
	In the QUERY ADMIN command, the output is updated to include information about email alerts, the password authentication method, and security settings for the administrator ID.
REGISTER LICENSE	You are required to use this command to register licenses for server components. Use of the REGISTER LICENSE command implies that you agree to and accept the license terms that are specified in the license agreement.

Command	Changes
REGISTER NODE	New parameters are available:The AUTHENTICATION parameter specifies the password authentication method for
	 the node. The BACKUPINITIATION parameter specifies whether the non-root user ID on the client node can back up files to the server.
	• The BKREPLRULEDEFAULT , ARREPLRULEDEFAULT , and SPREPLRULEDEFAULT parameters specify the replication rule that applies to a data type if the file space rules for the data type are set to DEFAULT.
	• The REPLSTATE parameter specifies whether data that belongs to the client node is ready to be replicated.
	• The ROLEOVERRIDE parameter specifies whether to override the reported role of the client for PVU estimation.
	• The SSLREQUIRED parameter specifies whether the node must use SSL to communicate with the Tivoli Storage Manager server.
REMOVE ADMIN	You can use the SYNCLDAPDELETE parameter to remove an administrative user ID that is stored on an LDAP directory server.
REMOVE NODE	You can use the SYNCLDAPDELETE parameter to remove a node ID that is stored on an LDAP directory server.
RENAME ADMIN	You can use the SYNCLDAPDELETE parameter to rename an administrative user ID that authenticates to an LDAP directory server.
RENAME NODE	You can use the SYNCLDAPDELETE parameter to rename a node ID that is stored on an LDAP directory server.

Table 24. Updated commands (continued)

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

Table 24. Updated commands (continued)

Command	Changes
SELECT	The following updates apply to the SELECT command:
	• In previous versions of the server, syntax that did not conform to SQL syntax rules could be used in the SELECT command. In V6.3 and later, you must use SQL syntax that conforms to the syntax rules of the database manager, DB2.
	• You can use the SELECT * FROM PVUESTIMATE_DETAILS query to generate a PVU report that provides detailed information at the node level.
	• You can use the SELECT command to list user ID passwords for administrators and nodes that authenticate with an LDAP directory server.
	• You can use the SELECT command to verify whether logical block protection is enabled for a device class or volume.
SET DBRECOVERY	The NUMSTREAMS parameter specifies the number of concurrent data movement streams to use while you back up the database.
SETOPT	Obsolete options are removed. The LDAPCACHEDURATION option determines the length of time that the Tivoli Storage Manager server caches information about LDAP password authentication.
UNLOCK ADMIN	The AUTHENTICATION parameter specifies the method of password authentication that is required for an administrator to log on.
UNLOCK NODE	The AUTHENTICATION parameter specifies the method for node password authentication.
UPDATE ADMIN	The ANALYST privilege class is removed. New parameters are available:
	• The AUTHENTICATION parameter specifies the password authentication method that is used for the administrator ID.
	• The SSLREQUIRED parameter specifies whether the administrator user ID must use SSL to communicate with the backup-archive client from the Tivoli Storage Manager server.
	• The SYNCLDAPDELETE parameter is used to remove an administrator user ID from an LDAP directory server.

Command	Changes
UPDATE NODE	The ANALYST privilege class is removed. New parameters are available:
	• The AUTHENTICATION parameter specifies the password authentication method.
	• The SSLREQUIRED parameter specifies whether a node must use SSL to communicate with the Tivoli Storage Manager server.
	• The SYNCLDAPDELETE parameter is used to change the authentication method for a node from authentication with the LDAP directory server to authentication with the Tivoli Storage Manager server.
UPDATE LIBRARY	You can use this command to update a library definition for a VTL.
UPDATE NODE	New parameters are available:
	• The BACKUPINITIATION parameter specifies whether the non-root user ID on the client node can back up files to the server.
	• The ROLEOVERRIDE parameter specifies whether to override the reported role of the client for PVU estimation.
AIX Linux UPDATE PATH	You can use this command to update a path to a ZOSMEDIA library.
UPDATE SERVER	You can use this command to specify whether to use SSL during server-to-server communications.

Table 24. Updated commands (continued)

Updated utilities

Table 25. Updated utilities

Utility	Changes
DSMSERV	You can specify the owning user ID for the server instance on startup. You can also specify the user ID for other DSMSERV utilities.
DSMSERV FORMAT	Obsolete parameters are removed. New parameters are available to specify the directories for database space, and the maximum size and locations of the recovery log.
DSMSERV INSERTDB	The CONFIGINFO parameter specifies the device configuration information that is used by the DSMSERV INSERTDB utility to load a database.

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

Table 25. Updated utilities (continued)

Utility	Changes
DSMSERV RESTORE DB	Volume history is required for restoring a database.
	All restore operations use rollforward recovery.
	The function for restoring individual database volumes is removed. The server no longer manages database volumes.
AIX Linux DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB	The MEDIASERVER parameter is used during an upgrade from a V5 server on z/OS. The parameter specifies the name of the server to be used as the z/OS media server.

Updated server options

Table 26. Updated server options

Option	Changes
CHECKTAPEPOS	You can use the CHECKTAPEPOS option to enable append-only mode for IBM LTO Generation 5 and later drives, and for any drives that support this feature.
AIX Linux Solaris Windows SANDISCOVERY	The SANDISCOVERY option changed in Tivoli Storage Manager V5.5.3 and later releases. To ensure that the system operates correctly, verify the setting for the SANDISCOVERY option.
TXNGROUPMAX	The default value is increased from 256 to 4096. Verify whether the server options file has this option:
	• If the server options file does not include this option, the server automatically uses the new default value.
	• If the server options file includes a value for the option, the server uses the specified value. If the specified value is less than 4096, consider increasing this value, or removing the option so that the server uses the new default value. By increasing the value or using the new default value, you can improve the performance for data movement operations such as storage pool migration and storage pool backup.
	Increasing the value for the TXNGROUPMAX option has no effect on data-movement performance for files that were stored on the server by using a smaller value for the option.

Deleted server commands, utilities, and options

Some commands, utilities, and options are deleted because their function is no longer needed. In some cases, new commands replace deleted commands.

- "Deleted commands"
- "Deleted utilities" on page 66

"Deleted server options" on page 67

Deleted commands

Table 27. Deleted commands

Deleted command	Comments	
CONVERT ARCHIVE	The operation that this command performe is no longer needed.	
DEFINE DBBACKUPTRIGGER DELETE DBBACKUPTRIGGER QUERY DBBACKUPTRIGGER UPDATE DBBACKUPTRIGGER	Ensure that you schedule backups of the database to occur at least once per day.	
DEFINE DBCOPY	Database volumes are no longer used.	
DEFINE DBVOLUME QUERY DBVOLUME	Space allocation is done automatically in the directory locations specified for the database.	
DEFINE LOGCOPY	Instead of log volume copies, you can specify a log mirror to have the active log protected by a mirror copy.	
DEFINE LOGVOLUME DELETE LOGVOLUME QUERY LOGVOLUME	The database manager automatically manages space in the recovery log directories.	
	For information about the directories that are used for the logs, use the QUERY LOG command.	
ESTIMATE DBREORGSTATS	Collecting and resetting database statistics occurs automatically.	
	Database-reorganization operations are done automatically by the database manager as needed.	
EXTEND DB	Space allocation is done automatically in the directory locations specified for the database. If the server needs additional space, you can add directory locations by using the EXTEND DBSPACE command.	
EXTEND LOG	Server options are available for increasing the size of recovery logs.	
QUERY SQLSESSION	The information that this command supplied is no longer in the server database. SQL SELECT settings are replaced by syntax options that are available in a DB2 SELECT command.	
REDUCE DB	Space allocation is done automatically in the directory locations specified for the database. You cannot adjust the assigned capacity of the database.	

Table 27.	Deleted	commands	(continued)
-----------	---------	----------	-------------

Deleted command	Comments
REDUCE LOG	The database manager automatically manages space in the recovery log directories.
RESET BUFPOOL	The BUFP00LSIZE option is eliminated; therefore, this command is not needed.
RESET DBMAXUTILIZATION RESET LOGCONSUMPTION RESET LOGMAXUTILIZATION	Collecting and resetting database statistics occurs automatically.
SET LOGMODE	Logging mode for the database is now always roll-forward mode.
SET SQLDATETIMEFORMAT SET SQLDISPLAYMODE SET SQLMATHMODE	The commands are replaced by options in the DB2 SELECT command syntax.
UNDO ARCHCONVERSION	The operation that this command performed is no longer needed.
UPDATE ARCHIVE	The operation that this command performed is no longer needed.

Deleted utilities

Table 28. Deleted utilities

Deleted utility	Comments
DSMFMT	Space allocation is done automatically in the directory locations specified for the database.
DSMSERV AUDITDB	Offline database audits are no longer required.
	As data is added to the server database, the database manager automatically checks data constraints and data types. The online integrity checks prevent problems for which offline audits were required in earlier releases.
DSMSERV DISPLAY DBBACKUPVOLUME	Information about volumes used for database backup is available from the volume history file. The volume history file is now required to restore the database.
DSMSERV DISPLAY DBVOLUMES	Use DSMSERV DISPLAY DBSPACE to view information about database space when the server is not running.
DSMSERV DISPLAY LOGVOLUMES	Use DSMSERV DISPLAY LOG to display information about recovery logs including the active log, the mirror for the active log, the failover directory for the archive log, and the overflow location for logs.
DSMSERV DUMPDB	The operation that this utility performed is no longer needed.

Table 28. Deleted utilities (continued)

Deleted utility	Comments
DSMSERV EXTEND LOG	This utility is replaced by the following server options: ACTIVELOGSIZE ACTIVELOGDIRECTORY MIRRORLOGDIRECTORY With these options, you can add recovery log space if the log is full when the server is down.
DSMSERV LOADDB	The operation that this utility performed is no longer needed.
 DSMSERV RESTORE DB Restore a single database volume to its most current state Restore a database to a point in time when a volume history file is unavailable 	The server does not track individual database volumes in V7.1. The volume history file is required to perform database restore operations.
DSMSERV UNLOADDB	The operation that this utility performed is no longer needed.

Deleted server options

When you start the server, you might receive warning messages about server options that are not supported, but that cannot be found in this list of deleted options. V5 releases tolerated the presence of some server options that were not supported by the server. The V7.1 server flags such options by issuing warning messages. You can ignore the error, or update the server options file and restart the server.

Table 29. Deleted server options

Deleted option	Comments
BUFPOOLSIZE	The server adjusts the value of buffer pool size dynamically.
DBPAGESHADOW	The option is no longer needed.
DBPAGESHADOWFILE	The option is no longer needed.
LOGPOOLSIZE	The server uses its own fixed-size recovery log buffer pool.
LOGWARNFULLPERCENT	The option is no longer needed.
MIRRORREAD MIRRORWRITE	Mirroring of the active log is supported, but not of the database. Provide availability protection for the database by locating the database on devices that have high availability characteristics.
SELFTUNEBUFPOOLSIZE	The server adjusts the buffer pool size dynamically.

Changes to the SELECT command

In previous versions of the server, the **SELECT** command allowed syntax that did not always conform to SQL syntax rules. With V7, the server conforms to SQL syntax rules in use by its database manager, the DB2 program. Some examples illustrate changes that you might need to make to **SELECT** statements that you use.

"LIKE predicate for a nested SELECT statement"

"SELECT statements for time calculation"

"The index_keyseq and index_order columns"

"Access to database objects by using the SELECT command" on page 69

"Retrieval of information from more than one database table" on page 69

"Results of the SELECT command for the DISK device class" on page 69

"Extra spaces in output" on page 69

"Data types for arithmetic operations" on page 69

LIKE predicate for a nested SELECT statement

You cannot use the **LIKE** predicate for a nested **SELECT** statement. For example, you receive an error if you use the **LIKE** predicate as in this statement:

select * from volumeusage where volume_name like (select distinct volume_name from volumeusage where node_name='node1')

Replace such usage with the **in** parameter, as in this statement: select * from volumeusage where volume_name in (select distinct volume_name from volumeusage where node name='node1')

SELECT statements for time calculation

Labeled duration cannot be compared in a **SELECT** statement. For example, the following statement results in an SQL error:

select * from actlog where (current_time-date_time) seconds <= 60 seconds

The following statements are examples of correct usage.

To list the activity log entries for the last 60 seconds, use a statement similar to this one:

select * from actlog where
TIMESTAMPDIFF(2,CHAR(current_timestamp-date_time)) <= 60</pre>

To list the activity log entries for the last 60 minutes, use a statement similar to this one:

select * from actlog where
TIMESTAMPDIFF(4,CHAR(current_timestamp-date_time)) <= 60</pre>

The index_keyseq and index_order columns

The system catalog tables SYSCAT.COLUMNS and SYSCAT.TABLES are now processed by the database manager, instead of directly by the Tivoli Storage Manager server. The **INDEX_KEYSEQ** and **INDEX_ORDER** columns are not available. Use the **KEYSEQ** column instead. For instructions, go to the DB2 information center at http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/v10r5. Enter keyseq as the search term.

Access to database objects by using the SELECT command

The database objects that can be accessed by using the **SELECT** command are the same as for earlier versions of the server, with some additions for new functions.

However, the SYSCAT.COLUMNS and SYSCAT.TABLES catalog tables now include all database objects that are known to the server, including some objects that cannot be accessed through the **SELECT** command. You receive an error message if a **SELECT** command includes an attempt to access one of these objects.

Retrieval of information from more than one database table

To retrieve information from more than one table, use a join process. Many types of join processes can be used.

For example, the following command, which worked with earlier versions of the server, no longer works:

```
select entity,activity,sum(bytes),sum(end_time-start_time),sum(affected),sum(failed),sum(mediaw)
from summary where entity in (select node_name from nodes) and
cast((current_timestamp-start_time)hours as decimal)<24 group by entity,activity</pre>
```

You can declare names for columns that are retrieved from multiple tables so that a conditional statement can be run with the results that you want from the **SELECT** command. For example:

select entity,activity,sum(bytes),sum(end_time-start_time),sum(affected),sum(failed),sum(mediaw)
from summary su, nodes nd where su.entity=nd.node_name and
cast((current_timestamp-start_time)hours as decimal)<24 group by entity,activity</pre>

Results of the SELECT command for the DISK device class

Results when you use the **SELECT** command to get information from the **DEVCLASSES** table have changed slightly for the **DISK** device class.

In previous releases, the SHARED field was blank (null) for the **DISK** device class. Now, the SHARED field contains the value N0. The SHARED field does not apply to the **DISK** device class, and the value N0 can be ignored.

Extra spaces in output

If the output includes trailing spaces, such as in the following **tabschema** output example, you can use the **RTRIM** scalar function to remove them.

dsmadmc -errorlogn=errorlog -id=admin -pa=admin -comma -dataonly=y
 'select tabschema,tabname from tables'

SYSCAT ,ATTRIBUTES SYSCAT ,AUDITPOLICIES SYSCAT ,AUDITUSE

For example, if you are writing scripts for automation and must strip out the additional spaces, you can use the **RTRIM** scalar function:

select rtrim(tabschema) as tabschema, tabname from syscat.tables

Data types for arithmetic operations

Changes in how data types for arithmetic operations are handled might require changes to **SELECT** commands that worked in earlier versions of the server.

For example, the following command causes an arithmetic overflow error because of the **SUM** statement:

```
select node_name,sum(capacity) as capacity,
sum(capacity * (pct_util/100)) as used from filespaces group by node_name
```

To make the command compatible with V7.1, add the **CAST** function to convert the items in the **SUM** statement to decimal data types:

```
select node_name,sum(capacity) as capacity,
sum(cast(capacity as decimal) * cast((pct_util/100) as decimal)) as used from
filespaces group by node_name
```

New and changed server messages

If you have scripts or other automation that use server messages, check the lists of new, changed, and deleted messages for items that you might need to change.

Lists are available in the information center:

http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/tsminfo/v7r1

Server naming best practices

Use these descriptions as a reference when you install or upgrade a Tivoli Storage Manager server.

Instance user ID

The instance user ID is used as the basis for other names that are related to the server instance. The instance user ID is also called the instance owner.

For example: tsminst1

The instance user ID is the user ID that must have ownership or read/write access authority to all directories that you create for the database and the recovery log. The standard way to run the server is under the instance user ID. That user ID must also have read/write access to the directories that are used for any **FILE** device classes.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Home directory for the instance user ID

The home directory can be created when you create the instance user ID, by using the option (-m) to create a home directory if it does not exist already. Depending on local settings, the home directory might have the form: /home/instance_user_ID

For example: /home/tsminst1

The home directory is primarily used to contain the profile for the user ID and for security settings.

Database instance name

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

The database instance name must be the same as the instance user ID under which you run the server instance.

For example: tsminst1

Windows

The database instance name is the name of the server instance as it is listed in the registry.

For example: Server1

Instance directory

The instance directory is a directory that contains files specifically for a server instance (the server options file and other server-specific files). It can have any name that you want. For easier identification, use a name that ties the directory to the instance name.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris	AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris
-------------------------	-----	-------	-------	---------

You can create the instance directory as a subdirectory of the home directory for the instance user ID. For example: /home/instance_user_ID/ instance_user_ID

The following example places the instance directory in the home directory for user ID tsminst1: /home/tsminst1/tsminst1

You can also create the directory in another location, for example: /tsmserver/tsminst1

The instance directory stores the following files for the server instance:

- The server options file, dsmserv.opt
- The server key database file, cert.kdb, and the .arm files (used by clients and other servers to import the Secure Sockets Layer certificates of the server)
- Device configuration file, if the DEVCONFIG server option does not specify a fully qualified name
- Volume history file, if the VOLUMEHISTORY server option does not specify a fully qualified name
- Volumes for **DEVTYPE=FILE** storage pools, if the directory for the device class is not fully specified, or not fully qualified
- User exits
- Trace output (if not fully qualified)

Windows

You can use a name that includes the name of the server instance as it is listed (or will be listed) in the registry. Default server instance names have the form Serverx.

For example: C:\tsm\server1

The instance directory stores the following files for the server instance:

- The server options file, dsmserv.opt
- The server key database file, cert.kdb, and the .arm files (used by clients and other servers to import the Secure Sockets Layer certificates of the server)
- Device configuration file, if the DEVCONFIG server option does not specify a fully qualified name
- Volume history file, if the VOLUMEHISTORY server option does not specify a fully qualified name
- Volumes for **DEVTYPE=FILE** storage pools, if the directory for the device class is not fully specified, or not fully qualified

- User exits
- Trace output (if not fully qualified)

Database name

The database name is always TSMDB1, for every server instance. This name cannot be changed.

Server name

The server name is an internal name for Tivoli Storage Manager, and is used for operations that involve communication among multiple Tivoli Storage Manager servers. Examples include server-to-server communication and library sharing.

AIX Linux Windows The server name is also used when you add the server to the Operations Center so that it can be managed by using that interface. Use a unique name for each server. For easy identification in the Operations Center (or from a **QUERY SERVER** command), use a name that reflects the location or purpose of the server.

Do not change the name of a Tivoli Storage Manager server after it is configured as a hub or spoke server.

HP-UX Use a unique name for each server. For easy identification from a **QUERY SERVER** command, use a name that reflects the location or purpose of the server.

If you use the wizard, the default name that is suggested is the host name of the system that you are using. You can use a different name that is meaningful in your environment. If you have more than one server on the system and you use the wizard, you can use the default name for only one of the servers. You must enter a unique name for each server.

For example:

AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris	
	PAYROLL			
	SALES			
Windows				
	TUCSON_	SERVER1		
	TUCSON	SERVER2		

For more information about server names, see the Administrator's Guide.

Directories for database space and recovery log

The directories can be named according to local practices. For easier identification, consider using names that tie the directories to the server instance.

For example, for the archive log:



Chapter 3. Upgrade scenarios overview

You can upgrade the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager server on the same system or a new system. You can use either a media method or a network method to move data from the original server database to the upgraded server database. Descriptions of the scenarios illustrate the order of steps for the different approaches.

About this task

Select the scenario that you are interested in from the following table. The scenarios are presented in overview form in this section, to summarize the steps that are required in each case. To complete the procedure, follow the link from the scenario overview to the detailed procedures.

Scenario	Location of upgraded server	Method for moving data
"Scenario 1 for upgrading the server: same system, media method"	Same system as original server	Media method
"Scenario 2 for upgrading the server: same system, network method" on page 78	Same system as original server	Network method
"Scenario 3 for upgrading the server: new system, media method" on page 82	New system	Media method
"Scenario 4 for upgrading the server: New system, network method" on page 86	New system	Network method

Table 30. Links to scenario overviews

Related concepts:

"Comparison of upgrading on an existing system and a new system" on page 13 "Comparison of methods for moving data to the V7.1 database" on page 15

Scenario 1 for upgrading the server: same system, media method

In this scenario, all upgrade tasks are completed on the same system. The database is extracted to media and later inserted into the V7.1 database.

You can use the wizard, or upgrade the server manually by using the utilities. The wizard offers a guided approach to the upgrade of a server. By using the wizard, you can avoid some configuration steps that are complex when done manually.

Related concepts:

"Comparison of upgrading on an existing system and a new system" on page 13

"Comparison of methods for moving data to the V7.1 database" on page 15

Related tasks:

Chapter 4, "Scenario 1: Same system, media method," on page 91

Upgrading the server by using the wizard

To upgrade the server by using the wizard, you must complete preparation tasks, uninstall the V5 server, install the V7.1 server, and start the upgrade wizard.

Upgrade to V7 on the same system, media method Upgrade using the upgrade wizard





The following steps are a summary of the procedure for this scenario. If this scenario matches your environment, see the details for the procedure: Chapter 4, "Scenario 1: Same system, media method," on page 91.

Procedure

- 1. Complete all preparation tasks, which include backing up the database.
- 2. Install the upgrade utilities package (**DSMUPGRD**) on the system. The utilities package must be installed whether you are using the upgrade wizard or performing the upgrade with utilities.
- 3. Prepare the V5 database by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility.
- 4. Uninstall the V5 server code.
- 5. Install the V7.1 server code on the system.
- **6**. Create the directories for the V7.1 database and logs, and the user ID that will own the server instance.
- 7. Start the upgrade wizard to configure the new server and upgrade the V5 database. With the wizard, you complete the following tasks:
 - a. Extract the V5 database to external media.
 - b. Create and format an empty database to receive the data.
 - c. Insert the data from the media to which it was extracted.
 - d. Configure the system for database backup.
- 8. Complete the post-installation tasks, including backing up the database and verifying the database contents.

Upgrading the server manually by using utilities

To upgrade the server manually, you must uninstall the V5 server, install the V7.1 server, and complete manual steps to move the data to the V7.1 database.

Upgrade to V7 on the same system, media method Upgrade using the command line and upgrade utilities





The following steps are a summary of the procedure for this scenario. If this scenario matches your environment, see the details for the procedure: Chapter 4, "Scenario 1: Same system, media method," on page 91.

Procedure

- 1. Complete all preparation tasks, which include backing up the database.
- 2. Install the upgrade utilities package (**DSMUPGRD**) on the system. The utilities package must be installed whether you are using the upgrade wizard or performing the upgrade with utilities.
- 3. Prepare the V5 database by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility.
- 4. Uninstall the V5 server code.
- 5. Install the V7.1 server code on the system.
- **6**. Create the directories for the V7.1 database and logs, and the user ID that will own the server instance.
- 7. Extract the V5 database to external media by using the **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB** utility.
- 8. Create and format an empty database to receive the data. The database is created with the **db2icrt** command. The database is formatted by using the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** utility.
- 9. Insert the data from the media to which it was extracted. You must have the manifest file that was created as part of the extraction process. Use the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility.
- 10. Configure the system for database backup.
- 11. Complete the post-installation tasks, including backing up the database and verifying the database contents.

Scenario 2 for upgrading the server: same system, network method

In this scenario, all upgrade tasks are completed on the same system. The data is extracted from the original server database and inserted into the new server database at the same time.

You can use the wizard, or upgrade the server manually by using the utilities. The wizard offers a guided approach to the upgrade of a server. By using the wizard, you can avoid some configuration steps that are complex when done manually.

Related concepts:

"Comparison of upgrading on an existing system and a new system" on page 13

"Comparison of methods for moving data to the V7.1 database" on page 15 **Related tasks**:

Chapter 5, "Scenario 2: Same system, network method," on page 135

Upgrading the server by using the wizard

To upgrade the server by using the wizard, you must complete preparation tasks, uninstall the V5 server, install the V7.1 server, and start the upgrade wizard.

Upgrade to V7 on the same system, network method Upgrade using the upgrade wizard





The following steps are a summary of the procedure for this scenario. If this scenario matches your environment, see the details for the procedure: Chapter 5, "Scenario 2: Same system, network method," on page 135.

Procedure

- 1. Complete all preparation tasks, which include backing up the database.
- 2. Install the upgrade utilities package (**DSMUPGRD**) on the system. The utilities package must be installed whether you are using the upgrade wizard or performing the upgrade with utilities.
- 3. Prepare the V5 database by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility.
- 4. Uninstall the V5 server code.
- 5. Install the V7.1 server code on the system.
- **6**. Create the directories for the V7.1 database and logs, and the user ID that will own the server instance.
- 7. Start the upgrade wizard to configure the new server and upgrade the V5 database. With the wizard, you complete the following tasks:
 - a. Create and format an empty database to receive the data.
 - b. Move the data from the V5 database to the V7.1 database.
 - c. Configure the system for database backup.
- 8. Complete the post-installation tasks, including backing up the database and verifying the database contents.

Upgrading the server manually by using utilities

To upgrade the server manually, you must uninstall the V5 server, install the V7.1 server, and complete manual steps to move the data to the V7.1 database.

Upgrade to V7 on the same system, network method Upgrade using the command line and upgrade utilities



Figure 4. Scenario 2

The following steps are a summary of the procedure for this scenario. If this scenario matches your environment, see the details for the procedure: Chapter 5, "Scenario 2: Same system, network method," on page 135.

Procedure

- 1. Complete all preparation tasks, which include backing up the database.
- 2. Install the upgrade utilities package (**DSMUPGRD**) on the system. The utilities package must be installed whether you are using the upgrade wizard or performing the upgrade with utilities.
- 3. Prepare the V5 database by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility.
- 4. Uninstall the V5 server code.
- 5. Install the V7.1 server code on the system.
- **6**. Create the directories for the V7.1 database and logs, and the user ID that will own the server instance.
- 7. Create and format an empty database to receive the data. The database is created with the **db2icrt** command. The database is formatted by using the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** utility.
- 8. Start the insertion process for the new server by using the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility.
- **9**. Start the extraction process from the V5 database by using the **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB** utility.
- 10. Configure the system for database backup.
- **11**. Complete the post-installation tasks, including backing up the database and verifying the database contents.

Scenario 3 for upgrading the server: new system, media method

In this scenario, some upgrade tasks are completed on the original system and some on the new system. The database is extracted to media and later inserted into the V7.1 database.

You can use the wizard, or upgrade the server manually by using the utilities. The wizard offers a guided approach to the upgrade of a server. By using the wizard, you can avoid some configuration steps that are complex when done manually.

Related concepts:

"Comparison of upgrading on an existing system and a new system" on page 13

"Comparison of methods for moving data to the V7.1 database" on page 15 **Related tasks**:

Chapter 6, "Scenario 3: New system, media method," on page 177

Upgrading the server by using the wizard

To upgrade the server by using the wizard, you must install the upgrade utilities and the V7.1 server. Then, create the directories and user ID for the 7.1 server and start the upgrade wizard.

Upgrade to V7 on a new system, media method

Upgrade using the upgrade wizard



Figure 5. Scenario 3

The following steps are a summary of the procedure for this scenario. If this scenario matches your environment, see the details for the procedure: Chapter 6, "Scenario 3: New system, media method," on page 177.

Procedure

- 1. Complete all preparation tasks on the original system. Preparation includes performing a database backup.
- 2. Install the **DSMUPGRD** utilities package on the original system. The utilities package must be installed whether you are using the upgrade wizard or are upgrading the server manually by using utilities.

- 3. Install the V7.1 server code on the new system.
- 4. Create the directories for the V7.1 database and logs, and the user ID that will own the server instance.
- 5. Start the upgrade wizard to configure the new server and upgrade the V5 database. With the wizard, you complete the following tasks:
 - a. On the original system, prepare the V5 database.
 - b. On the original system, extract the V5 database to external media.
 - **c**. On the new system, create and format an empty database to receive the data.
 - d. On the new system, insert the data from the media to which it was extracted.
 - e. Configure the new system for database backup.
- 6. Complete the post-installation tasks, including backing up the database and verifying the database contents.

Upgrading the server manually by using utilities

To upgrade the server manually, you must install the upgrade utilities on the V5 system and extract the database. Then, install the V7.1 server and complete manual steps to move the data into the V7.1 database.

Upgrade to V7 on a new system, media method

Upgrade using the command line and upgrade utilities



Figure 6. Scenario 3

The following steps are a summary of the procedure for this scenario. If this scenario matches your environment, see the details for the procedure: Chapter 6, "Scenario 3: New system, media method," on page 177.

Procedure

- 1. Complete all preparation tasks on the original system. Preparation includes performing a database backup.
- 2. Install the **DSMUPGRD** utilities package on the original system. The utilities package must be installed whether you are using the upgrade wizard or are upgrading the server manually by using utilities.
- **3**. On the original system, prepare the V5 database by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility.
- 4. On the original system, extract the V5 database to external media by using the **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB** utility.
- 5. Install the V7.1 server code on the new system.
- **6**. Create the directories for the V7.1 database and logs, and the user ID that will own the server instance.
- 7. On the new system, create and format an empty database to receive the data. The database is created with the **db2icrt** command. The database is formatted by using the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** utility.
- 8. On the new system, insert the data from the media to which it was extracted. You must have the manifest file that was created as part of the extraction process. Use the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility.
- 9. Configure the system for database backup.
- **10.** Complete the post-installation tasks, including backing up the database and verifying the database contents.

Scenario 4 for upgrading the server: New system, network method

In this scenario, some upgrade tasks are completed on the original system and some on the new system. The data is extracted from the original server database and sent over the network connection to be inserted into the new server database.

You can use the wizard, or upgrade the server manually by using the utilities. The wizard offers a guided approach to the upgrade of a server. By using the wizard, you can avoid some configuration steps that are complex when done manually.

Related concepts:

"Comparison of upgrading on an existing system and a new system" on page 13

"Comparison of methods for moving data to the V7.1 database" on page 15

Related tasks:

Chapter 7, "Scenario 4: New system, network method," on page 225

Upgrading the server by using the wizard

To upgrade the server by using the wizard, you must install the upgrade utilities and the V7.1 server. Then, create the directories and user ID for the 7.1 server and start the upgrade wizard.

Upgrade to V7 on a new system, network method

Upgrade using the upgrade wizard



Figure 7. Scenario 4

The following steps are a summary of the procedure for this scenario. If this scenario matches your environment, see the details for the procedure: Chapter 7, "Scenario 4: New system, network method," on page 225.

Procedure

- 1. Complete all preparation tasks on the original system. Preparation includes performing a database backup.
- 2. Install the **DSMUPGRD** utilities package on the original system. The utilities package must be installed whether you are using the upgrade wizard or are upgrading the server manually by using utilities.
- 3. Install the V7.1 server code on the new system.

- 4. Create the directories for the V7.1 database and logs, and the user ID that will own the server instance.
- 5. Start the upgrade wizard to configure the new server and upgrade the V5 database. With the wizard, you complete the following tasks:
 - a. On the original system, prepare the V5 database.
 - b. On the new system, create and format an empty database to receive the data.
 - c. Move the data from the V5 database to the V7.1 database.
 - d. Configure the new system for database backup.
- **6**. Complete the post-installation tasks, including backing up the database and verifying the database contents.

Upgrading the server manually by using utilities

To upgrade the server manually, you must install the upgrade utilities on the V5 system and extract the database. Then, install the V7.1 server and complete manual steps to move the data into the V7.1 database.

Upgrade to V7 on a new system, network method Upgrade using the command line and upgrade utilities



Figure 8. Scenario 4

The following steps are a summary of the procedure for this scenario. If this scenario matches your environment, see the details for the procedure: Chapter 7, "Scenario 4: New system, network method," on page 225.

Procedure

- 1. Complete all preparation tasks on the original system. Preparation includes performing a database backup.
- 2. Install the **DSMUPGRD** utilities package on the original system. The utilities package must be installed whether you are using the upgrade wizard or are upgrading the server manually by using utilities.
- **3**. On the original system, prepare the V5 database by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility.
- 4. Install the V7.1 server code on the new system.
- 5. Create the directories for the V7.1 database and logs, and the user ID that will own the server instance.
- 6. On the new system, create and format an empty database to receive the data. The database is created with the **db2icrt** command. The database is formatted by using the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** utility.
- 7. On the new system, start the insertion process for the new server. Use the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility.
- 8. On the original system, start the extraction process for the V5 database by using the **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB** utility.
- 9. Configure the system for database backup.
- **10**. Complete the post-installation tasks, including backing up the database and verifying the database contents.
Chapter 4. Scenario 1: Same system, media method

Use this procedure if you are upgrading the Tivoli Storage Manager server on the same system as the V5 server, and you are using the media method to move the data.

Procedure

The procedure for upgrading the server includes the following tasks:

- 1. "Scenario 1: Preparing for the upgrade"
- 2. "Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities" on page 100
- 3. "Scenario 1: Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade" on page 107
- 4. "Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program before installing V7.1" on page 109
- 5. "Scenario 1: Installing the V7.1 server" on page 111
- 6. "Scenario 1: Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance" on page 115
- 7. Upgrading the server, by using one of the following methods:
 - "Scenario 1: Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard" on page 118
 - "Scenario 1: Upgrading the server manually by using utilities" on page 120
- 8. The following tasks are completed after the upgrade:
 - a. "Verifying access to storage pools on disk" on page 323
 - b. "Setting up Solaris services for the server instance" on page 324
 - c. "Configuring server options for server database maintenance" on page 324
 - d. "Starting the server instance after the upgrade" on page 325
 - e. "Registering licenses" on page 334
 - f. "Backing up the database after upgrading the server" on page 335
 - g. "Verifying the upgraded server" on page 336
 - h. "Changing the host name for the Tivoli Storage Manager server" on page 336
 - i. "Updating automation" on page 338
 - j. "Monitoring the upgraded server" on page 339
 - k. "Removing GSKit Version 7 after upgrading to Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1" on page 340

Scenario 1: Preparing for the upgrade

Prepare for the upgrade by checking requirements, preparing the space that is required, backing up the server, and modifying certain server settings.

About this task

Follow the preparation steps carefully to protect your server and its data.

Important: It is possible, after the upgrade to V7.1 is complete, that conditions might cause the need to temporarily revert to the previous version of the server. Successfully reverting to the previous version of the server is possible only if you

have completed all preparation steps. To understand why it is important to complete all preparation steps, review the procedure for reverting an upgraded server to its previous version.

Procedure

- 1. "Scenario 1: Checking the prerequisites for the upgrade"
- 2. "Scenario 1: Preparing space for the upgrade process" on page 95
- 3. "Scenario 1: Modifying the server before the upgrade" on page 96
- 4. "Scenario 1: Disabling sessions" on page 97
- 5. "Scenario 1: Backing up storage pools and the server database" on page 98
- 6. "Scenario 1: Moving the NODELOCK file" on page 98
- 7. "Scenario 1: Backing up configuration information" on page 99
- 8. "Scenario 1: Creating a summary of database contents" on page 99
- 9. "Scenario 1: Stopping the server before installing the upgrade" on page 100

Related tasks:

"Reverting from V7.1 to the previous V5 server version" on page 351

Scenario 1: Checking the prerequisites for the upgrade

Check your system against requirements for the server.

Before you begin

Requirement: If you are upgrading the Tivoli Storage Manager server on the same system, the system must meet the minimum requirements for both the V5 and V7.1 servers.

Procedure

- 1. Ensure that the server that you plan to upgrade is at the V5.5 release level, and that the latest interim fix is installed. For example, if the server is at V5.5.6, install the latest interim fix for V5.5.6. Take the following actions:
 - a. Select the appropriate server level. For detailed guidelines, see "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36. If the server is at an appropriate level, no action is required.
 - b. If the server is not at an appropriate level, download the appropriate server fix pack and the latest interim fix from the FTP downloads site at ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server/. Locate the appropriate version of Tivoli Storage Manager and install it.
- 2. Ensure that the system where the V5 server is located meets the minimum requirements. Review the information in "Hardware and software requirements for the V5 server system that is being upgraded" on page 17 to determine whether you must update your system before you continue.
- **3**. Ensure that the system where you plan to install the V7.1 server meets requirements for the operating system type and level. For the latest information about system requirements, see Tivoli Storage Manager Supported Operating Systems (http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21243309).

If you are upgrading Tivoli Storage Manager to a different operating system, a limited set of migration paths is available. For instructions about migrating a server that is running on a z/OS operating system, see Part 3, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on z/OS systems to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z," on page 437. For instructions about migrating a server that is

running on an AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris operating system, see Part 2, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux," on page 355.

Some platforms that were supported for earlier versions of the server are not supported for V7.1. If the server that you want to upgrade is running on one of these platforms, you cannot upgrade your server to V7.1 on the same platform. You must install your V7.1 server on a system that is a specific supported platform, depending on the original platform. For required platforms, see the following table.

Platform for V5 serverRequired platform for upgrade to V7.1HP-UX running on a PA-RISC systemHP-UX running on an Intel Itanium systemLinux running on an Itanium system (IA64)Linux running on an x86_64 systemLinux running on an x86_32 systemLinux running on an x86_64 systemSolaris running on an x86_64 systemLinux running on an x86_64 systemWindows running on an Itanium systemWindows running on an x86_64 system

Table 31. Required platforms for upgrading from V5 to V7.1

If you are upgrading from Tivoli Storage Manager V5 to V7.1 on a new system, restrictions apply. Ensure that you install the V7.1 server in a compatible hardware and software environment, as described in the following table.

V5 server	V7.1 server	Comments
AIX running on an IBM POWER system	AIX running on an IBM POWER system	
HP-UX running on an Itanium system	HP-UX running on an Itanium system	
HP-UX running on a PA-RISC system	HP-UX running on an Itanium system	HP-UX running on PA-RISC is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux running on an IBM POWER system	Linux running on an IBM POWER system	
Linux running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Linux running on an x86_64 system	Linux running on Itanium is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux running on an x86_32 system	Linux running on an x86_64 system	Linux running on x86_32 is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux on System z	Linux on System z	

Table 32. Requirements for upgrading from V5 to V7.1 on a new system

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

V5 server	V7.1 server	Comments
Solaris running on an x86_64 system	Operating system depends on the migration method	A V7.1 server cannot be installed on a Solaris x86_64 system. However, you can migrate a V5 server that is running on a Solaris x86_64 operating system to V7.1 on a Linux x86_64 operating system. For instructions, see Part 2, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux," on page 355. Alternatively, you can migrate the Solaris x86_64 system by installing a V7.1 server on any operating system that is supported for V7.1. Then, use Tivoli Storage Manager server EXPORT and IMPORT commands to move the server from the V5 source system.
Windows running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Windows running on an x86_64 system	Windows running on Itanium is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Windows running on an x86_32 system	Windows running on an x86_64 system	Windows running on x86_32 is not supported for V7.1 servers.
z/OS	AIX or Linux on System z	See the section on migrating from V5 on z/OS to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z.

Table 32. Requirements for upgrading from V5 to V7.1 on a new system (continued)

4. Verify that the system memory meets the server requirements. If you plan to run multiple instances of the V7.1 server on the system, each instance requires the memory that is listed for one server. Multiply the memory for one server by the number of instances that are planned for the system.

For specific information about memory requirements, see the section for your operating system:

Operating system	Memory requirements
AIX	"Server requirements on AIX systems" on page 21
HP-UX	"Server requirements on HP-UX systems" on page 24
Linux	"Server requirements on Linux systems" on page 26
Solaris	"Server requirements on Solaris systems" on page 31

Table 33. Memory requirements for the V7.1 system

Table 33. Memory requirements for the V7.1 system (continued)

Operating system	Memory requirements
Windows	"Server requirements on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 33

5. Ensure that the system has enough disk storage for the database and recovery logs. Review the planning information for requirements and guidance.

You can take one of two approaches:

- Ensure that the system has enough disk storage for storing database and recovery logs for both the original server and the new V7.1 server. Both are stored on disk storage during the upgrade process.
- After you back up the V5 database and extract the data to media, reconfigure the disk subsystem that is used for the database storage. Then, insert the data to the new database from the media. You must take this approach if you do not have enough disk space for both servers.

If you are adding new hardware for the server, such as new disk storage for the database, ensure that the hardware is installed and running.

Related concepts:

"Hardware and software requirements for upgrading to the V7.1 server" on page 17

Scenario 1: Preparing space for the upgrade process

Determine the amount and type of space that is required for the upgrade process before beginning the process.

Procedure

- 1. Verify that the system has the amount of space that was estimated in the planning step. Use the planning worksheet that you completed with your information. See "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.
- 2. Ensure that you have space available for storing the database and the manifest file that the extraction process creates.
 - a. Identify the device class to which you will extract the original database. The definition must exist in the server database, not just in the device configuration file. View information about devices classes by issuing the command:

query devclass format=detailed

The device class must be a sequential device class that has volumes or space available. Define a new device class if necessary. The device class type cannot be **NAS** or **CENTERA**.

Important: You must confirm *now* that the definition that is in the server database for the device class is correct. After you prepare the database for upgrade (by completing the **Prepare Database** phase in the upgrade wizard, or by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility), you cannot update this device class definition. For example, check the path for a FILE device class. If you copied the original server to a different system to extract the data, the path might be different on the current system.

b. Ensure that space or volumes are available in the selected device class. The amount of space that you need is about the same as the current size of the original database.

For example, if the device class is FILE, ensure that the directory has sufficient space for your environment. If the device class is TAPE, ensure that sufficient scratch volumes are available for your environment.

Ensure that the instance user ID that you create for the upgraded server has access permission to the location of the extracted data.

c. Check that the access permissions are correct for the location that you plan to specify for the manifest file.

The user ID that will run the database preparation and extraction utilities (**DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** and **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB**) must have write access to this file. This is typically the root user ID.

When the data is later inserted into the V7.1 database, the instance user ID that you use for the upgraded server must have access permission for the manifest file.

The manifest file is typically less than 1 KB.

Related tasks:

"Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39

Scenario 1: Modifying the server before the upgrade

A command must be run on the server to prevent one type of problem during the upgrade process. Some modifications to typical server settings can be useful to prepare for the upgrade.

Procedure

1. From a Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command line, issue the command:

convert ussfilespace

This command fixes a problem that might exist in older Tivoli Storage Manager databases. If the problem does not exist in your database, the command is completed and you might see error ANR2034E. This error can be ignored. For more information, see Technote 1408895 (http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg21408895). If the problem exists in your database, the command might take some time to run.

Important: Do not skip this step. If your database has the problem and you do not run this command now, the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility fails when you run it. You must then restart the V5 server and run the **CONVERT USSFILESPACE** command before you continue the upgrade process.

2. Review the steps for reverting to the earlier version of the server in the section, "Reverting from V7.1 to the previous V5 server version" on page 351.

If you must revert to the earlier version after the upgrade to V7.1, the results of the reversion will be better if you understand the steps and prepare for the possibility now.

- **3**. Make the following adjustments to settings on your server and clients. These adjustments must be done to make it possible for you to revert to the original server after the upgrade, if problems occur.
 - a. For each sequential-access storage pool, set the **REUSEDELAY** parameter to the number of days during which you want to be able to revert to the original server, if necessary.

For example, if you want to be able to revert to the original server for up to 30 days after the upgrade to V7.1, set the **REUSEDELAY** parameter to 31 days. Issue the following administrative command:

update stgpool sequential_access_storage_pool reusedelay=31

- b. For each copy storage pool, set the RECLAIM parameter to 100 (meaning 100%). Issue the following administrative command: update stgpool copy_storage_pool reclaim=100
- **c.** If you typically use a **DELETE VOLHISTORY** command to delete database backups, ensure that the command does not delete database backups too frequently. The interval between backups should be at least the same number of days that you set for the **REUSEDELAY** period for sequential-access storage pools. For example, to delete database backups every 45 days, issue the following administrative command:

delete volhist type=dbbackup todate=-45

d. For important clients that use the server, verify that the value for the schedlogretention client option is set to retain the client schedule log for a sufficient time. Update the option for clients if needed.

The entries in the client schedule log might be useful if the server must revert to the original version. If the retention period for the schedule log is too short, the schedule log information might be deleted too soon.

For example, to prune the log every 45 days and save the log entries, add the following option:

schedlogretention 45 S

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Add the option to the dsm.sys file within a server stanza.

Windows Add the option to the client options file, dsm.opt.

Scenario 1: Disabling sessions

In preparation for the upgrade, prevent activity on the server by disabling new sessions. Cancel any existing sessions.

About this task

The commands in the following procedure are Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands.

Procedure

1. Prevent all clients, storage agents, and other servers from starting new sessions with the server. Use the commands:

```
disable sessions client disable sessions server
```

For more information about these commands and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

- Verify whether any sessions exist, and notify the users that the server is going to be stopped. To check for existing sessions, use the command: query session
- 3. Cancel sessions that are still running. Use the command: cancel session all

Scenario 1: Backing up storage pools and the server database

Immediately before upgrading the server, back up primary storage pools to copy storage pools, and perform a full database backup.

Before you begin

Back up storage pools and the server database by using Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands:

Procedure

1. Back up primary storage pools to copy storage pools by using the **BACKUP STGPOOL** command:

backup stgpool primary_pool copy_stg

where *primary_pool* specifies the primary storage pool and *copy_stg* specifies the copy storage pool. If you have been performing regular backups of the storage pools, this step backs up only the data that was added to the primary storage pools since they were last backed up.

2. Back up the database. The preferred method is to use a snapshot backup. A snapshot backup is a full database backup that does not interrupt any scheduled database backups. Issue the command:

backup db type=dbsnapshot devclass=device_class_name

The device class that you specify must exist and have volumes that are available to it. For example, to perform a snapshot backup of your database to the TAPECLASS device class by using scratch volumes, enter:

backup db type=dbsnapshot devclass=tapeclass

To use specific volumes instead of scratch volumes, specify the volume names in the command.

Tip: Consider making two copies of the backup to protect the backup from media failures. Ensure that at least one full database backup is available onsite. If you must restore the database after a failed upgrade, having an onsite backup database saves time.

Scenario 1: Moving the NODELOCK file

To ensure that licensing information is updated during the upgrade process, move the NODELOCK file from the server instance directory to another directory.

About this task

The NODELOCK file contains the licensing information from the previous Tivoli Storage Manager installation. This licensing information is replaced when the upgrade is complete.

Procedure

- 1. In the server instance directory of your installation, locate the NODELOCK file.
- 2. Move the NODELOCK file to another directory. For example, you can save it to a directory where you are saving configuration files from the previous release.

Scenario 1: Backing up configuration information

Before you install the new version, back up critical files and information for each server instance. Store the files in a safe place, on a different system from the system that is being upgraded or on offline media, such as a CD. The files are required after the installation of the new software version is complete. You also need these files if you must revert to the previous version after the upgrade.

Procedure

1. Back up device configuration information to another directory by using the following Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command:

backup devconfig filenames=file_name

where *file_name* specifies the file in which to store device configuration information.

2. Back up volume history information to another directory by using the following Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command:

backup volhistory filenames=file_name

where *file_name* specifies the file in which to store volume history information. Ensure that the volume history includes information about the database backup that you completed in the preceding steps. For example, issue the following command:

query volhistory type=dbsnapshot

Review the query output to verify that the time stamp for the database backup matches the actual time of the backup.

- 3. Save copies of the following files, which are in the server instance directory:
 - Server options file, typically named dsmserv.opt
 - dsmserv.dsk

Important: The dsmserv.dsk file is not available in Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1. Save a copy of the dsmserv.dsk file in case you must revert to V5.5.

- 4. In the server instance directory, look for the accounting log file, dsmaccnt.log. If the file exists, save a copy.
- 5. Back up any scripts that were used to complete daily housekeeping for the server. Examine the scripts for changes that are needed after the upgrade.
- 6. Store the device configuration file, the volume history file, the server options file, and the other files in a safe place. Ensure that the files are stored on a different system from the system that is being upgraded, or on offline media.

Scenario 1: Creating a summary of database contents

Create a summary of the contents of the original database. After the upgrade, you can use the same commands to compare the results and to confirm that the database contents are intact.

Procedure

Run commands that give a summary of information about your database contents. For example, issue commands that summarize the file spaces that are being protected, and save the results. For a list of commands, see "Sample commands to run for validation of the database upgrade" on page 546.

Related reference:

"Sample commands to run for validation of the database upgrade" on page 546

Scenario 1: Stopping the server before installing the upgrade

Stop all server processes and unmount any tapes that are mounted. Then, stop the server.

Procedure

Use Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands to stop the server:

1. Determine whether server processes are running. Either cancel processes, or allow them to complete. Use the following commands:

query process
cancel process process_number

Allow time for the processes to be stopped. Some processes, such as storage pool migration, might take some time to stop.

For more information about the **QUERY PROCESS** and **CANCEL PROCESS** commands and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

2. After all sessions and processes are stopped, determine whether any tapes are mounted. Unmount any tapes that are mounted. Use the following commands: query mount

dismount volume volume_name

 Stop the server. Use the following command: halt

Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities

You must install the upgrade utilities on the system. The installation package for the utilities must be downloaded from a website.

Before you begin

The preferred method is to install the latest available version of the upgrade utilities. For more information about selecting the version, see "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36.

Procedure

Use the procedure for your operating system:

- Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities on AIX systems" on page 101
- HP-UX "Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities on HP-UX systems" on page 102
- **Linux** "Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities on Linux systems" on page 103
- Solaris "Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities on Oracle Solaris systems" on page 104
- Windows "Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 107

Related concepts:

"DSMUPGRD upgrade utilities" on page 16

Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities on AIX systems

AIX

Install the upgrade utilities on the system. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.*x*.*x* directory. The 5.5.*x*.*x* number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - c. Select the package that matches your operating system, and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x.x*-TIV-TSMUPG-AIX.tar.gz

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- **3**. Ensure that the system has the following file sets installed:

xlC.rte 8.0.0.5, or later gsksa.rte 7.0.4.11

You can use the following commands to check for these file sets: lslpp -L xlC.rte

lslpp -L gsksa.rte

If needed, you can obtain the gsksa.rte file set from any of the regular V5.5 maintenance packages for the AIX server. The maintenance packages are available on the FTP downloads site: ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/maintenance/server/v5r5/AIX/

- 4. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. If you downloaded a language package, also extract the contents of that package.
- 5. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- 6. Access the System Management Interface Tool (SMIT).
 - a. Enter smitty install_update
 - b. Select Install and Update Software > Install and Update from ALL Available Software.
- 7. Select the **INPUT** device. Specify the directory location of the upgrade utilities package on the system.

- **8**. Select **Software to Install**. Press F4 or Esc+4 for the list of available file sets in the directory.
- 9. Select the file sets for the upgrade utilities, the device driver, and optionally the language package. The file set for the upgrade utilities is tivoli.tsmupg.server. Optional language packages include messages for languages other than US English.
- 10. Set **COMMIT software updates** to Yes. Press F4 or Esc+4.
- 11. Set SAVE replaced files to No.
- **12**. Ensure that the default settings for the options in the window for all the selected file sets show success.
- **13**. Press Enter, and respond to the ARE YOU SURE? question by pressing Enter again. The installation begins.
- 14. When the installation is complete, exit the SMIT program.
- **15.** Optional: If you installed a language package, ensure that the locale environment variable is set to use it. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- **16**. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 1: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 106.

Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities on HP-UX systems

HP-UX

Install the upgrade utilities on the system. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

Procedure

1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.

- a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
- b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.*x*.*x* directory. The 5.5.*x*.*x* number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
- c. Select the package that matches your operating system, and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.x.x-TIV-TSMUPG-*platform*.tar.gz

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the command:
 gzip -dc package name.tar.gz | tar -xvf -
- 4. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- 5. Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the source argument (-s) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

swinstall -s /tmp/TSM package_name

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin.

- 6. Optional: Install the language package.
 - a. Extract the contents of the package.

gzip -d package_name.img.gz

b. Install the package. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

swinstall -s /tmp/TSM/package_name.img package_name

c. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- 7. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 1: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 106.

Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities on Linux systems

Linux

Install the upgrade utilities on the system. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.x.x directory. The 5.5.x.x number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.

c. Open the directory for your operating system and download the package. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x*.*x*-TIV-TSMUPG-*platform*.tar.bz2

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- 3. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the commands: bunzip2 package_name.tar.bz2 tar xvf package_name.tar
- 4. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system, for example, x86_64.
- 5. Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the following command: rpm -ivh package name.rpm

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin by default.

- 6. Optional: Install the language package.
 - a. Extract the contents of the downloaded package.

bunzip2 package_name.tar.bz2
tar xvf package name.tar

- b. Install the package for the language that you want to use.
 - rpm -ivh *package_name*.rpm
- c. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- 7. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 1: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 106.

Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities on Oracle Solaris systems

Solaris

Install the upgrade utilities on the system. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

About this task

Restriction: Do *not* install the utilities in the installation directory of the server that must be upgraded. Install the utilities package in its own directory.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.x.x directory. The 5.5.x.x number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c.** Select the package that matches your operating system, and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x*.*x*-TIV-TSMUPG-*platform*.tar.Z

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- 3. Change to the directory where the upgrade utilities package was downloaded.
- 4. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the command:

uncompress -c *package_name*.tar.Z | tar -xvf -

- 5. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- 6. Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the source argument (-d) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

pkgadd -d . /tmp/TSM package_name

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin by default.

- 7. Optional: Install the language package.
 - a. Extract the contents of the downloaded package.

uncompress *package_name*.pkg.Z

b. Install the package for the language that you want to use. Use the source argument (-d) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

pkgadd -d /tmp/TSM package_name.pkg package_name

c. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

• The locale is installed on the system.

- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- 8. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 1: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems."

Scenario 1: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

After installing the upgrade utility package, you must set environment variables in the shell from which you will run the utilities. An environment variable describes the operating environment of a process, such as the home directory or terminal in use.

About this task

The **DSMSERV_DIR** variable specifies the installed location of the upgrade utilities. By default, the location is the following directory:

```
AIX
```

/usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin



Procedure

Use the appropriate command for your system to set the environment variable for running the utilities. If the shell is in the ksh or bash family, enter the following command to set the **DSMSERV_DIR** variable:

export DSMSERV_DIR=upgrade_utilities_directory

If your shell is in the csh family, use the following command: setenv DSMSERV_DIR upgrade_utilities_directory

where *upgrade_utilities_directory* is the directory where the upgrade utilities are installed.

What to do next

After you set the environment variables, continue at "Scenario 1: Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade" on page 107.

Scenario 1: Installing the upgrade utilities on Microsoft Windows systems

Windows

Install the upgrade utilities on the system. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/WIN
 - b. Open the 5.5.*x*.*x* directory. The 5.5.*x*.*x* number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c**. Select the package and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.x.x-TIV-TSMUPG-Windows.exe

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, install the language package that your installation requires.
- 2. Log on with an administrator ID.
- 3. Run the executable package for the upgrade utilities.

The default location for the installation of the utilities is based on the location where the V5 server was last installed. For example, if the V5 server was installed using the default path, C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server, the upgrade utilities are installed in C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade.

What to do next

After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 1: Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade."

Tip: When you use the upgrade utilities, if you have multiple servers running on the system, you must use the -k option to specify the name of the Windows registry key from which to retrieve information about the server being upgraded. The default value for the option is SERVER1.

Scenario 1: Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade

Before you extract the data from the database, you must prepare the server database by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility. If you have multiple servers on a single system, you must repeat this task for each server.

Procedure

- 1. Ensure that you have completed all preparation steps.
- 2. Log in using the root user ID on the system that has the original server. Log on with the administrator ID on a Windows system.
- **3**. Change to the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading. The instance directory is the directory that contains the files such as dsmserv.dsk for the server.

Important: The dsmserv.dsk file is not available in Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1. Save a copy of the dsmserv.dsk file in case you must revert to V5.5.

4. Prepare the database. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring.

From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process in the background and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

nohup /usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd preparedb >prepare.out 2>&1 &

HP-UX Linux Solaris

From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process in the background and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd preparedb >prepare.out 2>&1 &

Windows

AIX

From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd" preparedb 1>>prepare.out 2>&1

If multiple servers exist on the system, issue the command from the instance directory for the server that you want to prepare. Specify the registry key for that server. For example, if the server is SERVER2:

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd" -k server2
 preparedb 1>>prepare.out 2>&1

5. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages. The final message indicates success or failure of the operation. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to monitor the process:

tail -f prepare.out

Tip: On Windows systems, use the **tail** command or an equivalent utility with which you can monitor the contents of a file as it changes. For example, the Windows Server 2003 Resource Kit Tools includes the **tail** command, which can be used as shown in the preceding example.

6. Ensure that the prepare operation is completed successfully before you continue to the next step. If the prepare operation fails, you might need to restart the V5 server to fix the problem and run the prepare operation again. If the server that is being upgraded is a V5.3 or V5.4 server, you might need to restore the database by using a backup before you can restart the server to correct the problem.

Related reference:

"DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB (Prepare a V5 database for upgrade)" on page 523

Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program before installing V7.1

For best results when you are upgrading the server to V7.1 on the same system where the V5 server is located, uninstall the V5 server program. Then, install the V7.1 server program.

Procedure

Use the procedure for your operating system:

- Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program on AIX systems"
- HP-UX "Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program on HP-UX systems"
- Clinux "Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program on Linux systems" on page 110
- Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program on Oracle Solaris systems" on page 110
- Windows "Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 111

Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program on AIX systems

AIX

Uninstall the V5 server, server license, and device driver, if available. Do *not* remove the database, recovery log, or any other related files or directories, such as the server options file.

Procedure

• For a V5.4 or V5.5 server, issue the following commands:

```
/usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.license.aix5.rte64
/usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.devices.aix5.rte
/usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.server.aix5.rte64
```

• For a V5.3 server, issue the following commands:

```
/usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.license
/usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.devices
/usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.server
```

What to do next

After the V5 server program is uninstalled, continue at "Scenario 1: Installing the V7.1 server" on page 111.

Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program on HP-UX systems

HP-UX

Uninstall the V5 server, server license, and device driver, if available. Do *not* remove the database, recovery log, or any other related files or directories, such as the server options file.

Procedure

• For a V5.4 or V5.5 server, issue the following commands:

```
swremove TIVsmS64IA.server
swremove TIVsmS64IA.license
swremove TIVsmDD64 IA11 23.tsmscsi
```

• For a V5.3 server, issue the following commands:

```
swremove TIVsmS64.server
swremove TIVsmS64.license
swremove TIVsmDD64_HP11_11.tsmscsi
```

What to do next

After the V5 server program is uninstalled, continue at "Scenario 1: Installing the V7.1 server" on page 111.

Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program on Linux systems

Linux

Uninstall the V5 server, server license, and device driver, if available. Do *not* remove the database, recovery log, or any other related files or directories, such as the server options file.

Procedure

1. To determine the Tivoli Storage Manager packages that are installed, issue the following command:

rpm -qa | grep TIVsm

2. Remove the server, server license, and device driver packages. Issue the following commands:

rpm -e TIVsm-server rpm -e TIVsm-license rpm -e TIVsm-tsmscsi

What to do next

After the V5 server program is uninstalled, continue at "Scenario 1: Installing the V7.1 server" on page 111.

Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program on Oracle Solaris systems

Solaris

Uninstall the V5 server, server license, and device driver, if available. Do *not* remove the database, recovery log, or any other related files or directories, such as the server options file.

Procedure

Issue the following commands:

/usr/sbin/pkgrm TIVsmS /usr/sbin/pkgrm TIVsmSlic /usr/sbin/pkgrm TIVsmSdev

What to do next

After the V5 server program is uninstalled, continue at "Scenario 1: Installing the V7.1 server" on page 111.

Scenario 1: Uninstalling the V5 program on Microsoft Windows systems

Windows

Uninstall the V5 server and server license. Do not remove the database, recovery log, or any other related files or directories, such as the server options file.

About this task

Do not remove registry entries for the server.

Procedure

- 1. Click Start > Control Panel > Add or Remove Programs.
- Select the Tivoli Storage Manager server component, and click Remove. For this step and all remaining steps, if you see any messages that suggest that you restart the system, ignore them until the selected Tivoli Storage Manager component is removed.
- 3. Select the Tivoli Storage Manager license, and click **Remove**.
- 4. Determine whether the device driver must be uninstalled.
 - Do not uninstall the device driver if the following conditions are true:
 - You are migrating the server database to a tape device.
 - The tape drive or tape changer uses the Tivoli Storage Manager device driver.
 - If the conditions are not true, uninstall the device driver.
- **5**. To uninstall the device driver, select the Tivoli Storage Manager device driver, and click **Remove**.

What to do next

After the V5 server program is uninstalled, continue at "Scenario 1: Installing the V7.1 server."

Scenario 1: Installing the V7.1 server

You can install the server by using the installation wizard, console mode, or silent mode.

Before you begin

Take the following actions:

- Ensure that you have completed all upgrade preparation steps, including the database backup. The server that you are upgrading will not be available until after the installation and upgrade steps are completed.
- Ensure that you retain the installation media from the V5 base release of the installed server. If you installed Tivoli Storage Manager from a DVD, ensure that the DVD is available. If you installed Tivoli Storage Manager from a downloaded package, ensure that the downloaded files are available. If the upgrade fails, and the server license module is uninstalled, the installation media from the server base release are required to reinstall the license.

You can obtain the installation package from the product DVD or from an IBM download site such as Passport Advantage[®] or the Tivoli Storage Manager support site.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris If you plan to download the files, set the system user limit for maximum file size to unlimited to ensure that the files can be downloaded correctly.

- To query the maximum file size value, issue the following command: ulimit -Hf
- 2. If the system user limit for maximum file size is not set to unlimited, change it to unlimited by following the instructions in the documentation for your operating system.

Procedure

1. Log on to the system.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Log in by using the root user ID.

Windows Log on as an administrator. You must be logged on to the system with the administrative user ID that was used to install the V5 server.

- 2. If you are obtaining the package from an IBM download site, download the appropriate package file from one of the following websites:
 - For a new release, go to Passport Advantage at http://www.ibm.com/ software/lotus/passportadvantage/. Passport Advantage is the only website from which you can download a licensed package file.
 - For a maintenance fix, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager support site at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/Tivoli_Storage_Manager.
- **3**. If you are downloading the package from one of the download sites, complete the following steps:

AIX HP-UX Linux	Solaris
-----------------	---------

- a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:
 - Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035122
 - Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http:// www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035635
 - System Storage[®] Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035637
- b. Download the package file to the directory of your choice. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files.

Also, ensure that you have executable permission for the package file.

c. If necessary, change the file permissions by issuing the following command:

chmod a+x package_name.bin

where *package_name* is like the following example:

AIX

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-AIX.bin

HP-UX

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-HP-UX.bin

Linux

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxx86_64.bin 7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxs390x.bin

Solaris

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-SolarisSPARC.bin

In the examples, 7.1.0.000 represents the product release level.

d. Extract the installation files by issuing the following command: ./package_name.bin

The package is large. Therefore, the extraction takes some time.

Windows

- **a**. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:
 - Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035121
 - Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http:// www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035636
 - System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035638
- b. Change to the directory where you placed the executable file.

In the next step, the files are extracted to the current directory. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files.

c. To extract the installation files, double-click the executable file: package name.exe

where *package_name* is like this example:

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Windows.exe

The package is large. Therefore, the extraction takes some time.

4. AIX HP-UX Solaris To ensure that the Tivoli Storage Manager wizards work correctly, verify that the following command is enabled:

AIX lsuser

HP-UX Solaris logins

By default, the command is enabled.

5. If you plan to install the server by using the graphical wizard of IBM Installation Manager, review the following information and verify that your system meets the requirements:

- Verify that all required RPM files are installed. For a list of required RPM files and instructions about installing RPM files, see the section about installing Tivoli Storage Manager by using the installation wizard in the *Installation Guide*.
- Verify that the operating system is set to the language that you require. By default, the language of the operating system is the language of the installation wizard.
- Windows The user ID that you use during installation must be a user with local Administrator authority.
- Solaris Ensure that the LD_LIBRARY_PATH_64 environment variable is not set.

On test servers only: Use the following command to bypass prerequisite checks such as the operating system and the required memory. Do not issue this command on a production server.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solari	AIX	X HP-UX	Linux	Solaris
------------------------	-----	---------	-------	---------

./install.sh -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS TSM REQ CHECKS=true"

Windows

install.bat -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS_TSM_REQ_CHECKS=true"

6. If you use the installation wizard, complete the following steps to begin the installation:

Option	Description
Installing from a downloaded package file:	 Change to the directory where you downloaded the package file. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command:
	AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris
	Windows install.bat
Installing from DVD media:	 Insert the DVD into the DVD drive. Tip: Ensure that the installation files are visible on the DVD drive.
	Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command:
	AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris
	./install.sh
	Windows install.bat
	Windows Or, in the directory where the installation files were extracted, double-click the install.bat file.

- 7. If you are installing the server by using the wizard, follow these instructions:
 - a. In the IBM Installation Manager window, click the **Install** icon; do not click the **Update** or **Modify** icon.
 - b. Select the components to install. You must install the license package. If you select the storage agent, you must accept the Tivoli Storage Manager for Storage Area Networks license.
- 8. Alternatively, install the server in console mode. Review the information about installing the server in console mode and then complete the installation procedure, as described in the *Installation Guide*.
- **9**. Alternatively, to install the server in silent mode, follow the instructions for an installation in silent mode in the *Installation Guide*. Review the information about installing the server in silent mode. Then, complete Steps 1 and 2 of the installation procedure.
- Correct any errors that are detected during the installation process. To view installation log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click File > View Log. To collect log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click Help > Export Data for Problem Analysis.
- Obtain any applicable fixes by going to the following website: http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager. Click Fixes (downloads) and apply any applicable fixes.
- 12. HP-UX Linux Solaris To prevent server failures during interaction with DB2, tune the kernel parameters.

For instructions, see the section about tuning kernel parameters in the *Installation Guide*.

- **13**. Optional: To install an additional language package, use the modify function of the IBM Installation Manager.
- 14. Optional: To upgrade to a newer version of a language package, use the update function of the IBM Installation Manager.

Related concepts:

Appendix E, "Services associated with the Tivoli Storage Manager server," on page 555

Scenario 1: Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance

Create the directories that the server instance needs for database and recovery logs, and create the user ID that will own the server instance.

Before you begin

Review the information about planning space for the server before you complete this task. See "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

Procedure

1. Create the user ID that will own the server instance. You use this user ID when you create the server instance in a later step.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Create a user ID and group that will be the owner of the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance.

a. Create the user ID and group.

Restriction: In the user ID, only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_) can be used. The user ID and group name must comply with the following rules:

- The length must be 8 characters or less.
- The user ID and group name cannot start with *ibm, sql, sys,* or a numeral.
- The user ID and group name cannot be *user*, *admin*, *guest*, *public*, *local*, or any SQL reserved word.

For example, create user ID tsminst1 in group tsmsrvrs. The following examples show how to create this user ID and group by using operating system commands:

AIX

```
# mkgroup id=1001 tsmsrvrs
```

- # mkuser id=1002 pgrp=tsmsrvrs home=/home/tsminst1 tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1

HP-UX

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
 # useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs
 -s /bin/ksh tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1

Linux

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
- # useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/bash tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1

Solaris

```
# groupadd tsmsrvrs
```

- # useradd -d /export/home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/ksh tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1
- b. Log out and then log in to your system by using the new user ID and password. Use an interactive login program, such as telnet, so that you are prompted for the password and can change it if necessary.
- c. If a configuration profile does not exist for the user ID, create the file. For example, create a .profile file if you are using the Korn shell (ksh).

Windows

Identify the user account that will own the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance. When the server is started as a Windows service, this is the account that the service will log on to. The user account must have administrative authority on the system. One user account can own more than one server instance.

You can create a user account, or use an existing account.

If you have multiple servers on one system and want to run each server with a different user account, create a user account in this step.

a. Create the user ID.

Restriction: The user ID can contain only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_). The user ID must be 30 characters or less, and cannot start with *ibm*, *sql*, *sys*, or a numeral. The user ID and group name cannot be *user*, *admin*, *guest*, *public*, *local*, or any SQL reserved word.

Use the following command to create the user ID:

net user user_ID * /add

You are prompted to create and verify a password for the new user ID.

b. Issue the following operating system commands to add the new user ID to the Administrators groups:

net localgroup Administrators $user_ID$ /add net localgroup DB2ADMNS $user_ID$ /add

- c. Log in to your system, by using the new user ID and password.
- d. For all directories that were created for the server instance, ensure that the user ID for the server instance has read/write access. The directories to check include the instance directory and all database and log directories.
- 2. Create the directories that the server requires. Ensure that you are logged in under the new user ID that you created.

You need a unique, empty directory for each item in the following table. Create the database directories, the active log directory, and the archive log directory on different physical volumes. For space requirements, see "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Table 34. Worksheet for creating required directories

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsminst1	
The database directories	<pre>mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb001 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb002 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb003 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb004</pre>	
Active log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmlog	
Archive log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmlogmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlogfailover	

Windows

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir d:\tsm\server1	
The database directories	mkdir d:\tsm\db001 mkdir e:\tsm\db002 mkdir f:\tsm\db003 mkdir g:\tsm\db004	
Active log directory	mkdir h:\tsm\log	
Archive log directory	mkdir i:\tsm\archlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir j:\tsm\logmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir k:\tsm\archlogfailover	

Table 35. Worksheet for creating required directories

When a server is initially created by using the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility or the configuration wizard, a server database and recovery log are created. In addition, files are created to hold database information that is used by the database manager.

3. Create additional logical volumes and mount the volumes on the directories that were created in the previous step.

What to do next

Continue the upgrade process by using one of the following topics:

"Scenario 1: Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard"

"Scenario 1: Upgrading the server manually by using utilities" on page 120

Related tasks:

"Planning space for the upgrade process and the upgraded server" on page 37 **Related reference**:

"Server naming best practices" on page 70

Scenario 1: Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard

The wizard offers a guided approach to upgrading a server. By using the wizard, you can avoid some configuration steps that are complex when done manually. Start the wizard on the system where you installed the V7.1 server program.

Before you begin

You must complete all preceding steps to prepare for the upgrade, to install the upgrade utilities, to install the V7.1 server program, and to create the directories and user ID for the server instance.

Procedure

1. Ensure that the following requirements are met.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

- The system must have the X Window client. You must also be running an X Window server on your desktop.
- The system must have one of the following protocols enabled. Ensure that the port that the protocol uses is not blocked by a firewall.
 - Secure Shell (SSH). Ensure that the port is set to the default value,
 22. Also, ensure that the SSH daemon service has access rights for connecting to the system by using localhost.
 - Remote shell (rsh).
 - Remote Execution Protocol (REXEC).
- You must be able to log in to the system with the user ID that you created for the server instance, by using the SSH, rsh, or REXEC protocol. When you use the wizard, you must provide this user ID and password to access that system.

Windows

- The system where you installed the V7.1 server program must have the Windows server message block (SMB) protocol enabled. SMB is the interface that is used by File and Print Sharing (also known as CIFS). To use the SMB protocol, you must ensure that File and Print Sharing is enabled, and that port 445 is not blocked by your firewall.
- If the V5 server is on a different system than the V7.1 server, that system must also have SMB enabled.
- You must be able to log on to the system that has SMB enabled by using either the user ID that you created for the server instance, or another user ID that exists on the system. When you use the wizard, you must provide the user ID and password to access the system.
- 2. Windows If the system is running on Windows Server 2008, complete the following steps to disable User Account Control:
 - a. Ensure that the Remote Registry in Windows Services is started, and ports 445, 137, and 139 are unblocked in the firewall.
 - b. Configure both the framework server and the targets as members of a Windows domain. Use a user account in that domain, or in a trusted domain, when you connect to the target.
 - c. Connect to the target workstation by enabling and using the built-in administrator account. To enable the built-in administrator account, click Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Local Security Policy > Security Settings > Local Policies > Security Options. Double-click the Accounts: Administrator account status section. Select Enable and click OK.
 - d. Click Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Local Security Policy > Security Settings > Local Policies > Security Options. Double-click the User Account Control: Run all administrators in Admin Approval Mode section. Select Disable and click OK.
- 3. Start the upgrade wizard, dsmupgdx, from the V7.1 server installation directory.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Log in using the root user ID. Issue the command: /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmupgdx

Windows

Open a new Command Prompt window, and issue the command: "c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmupgdx.exe"

4. Follow the instructions to complete the upgrade. The upgrade wizard can be stopped and restarted, but the server will not be operational until the entire upgrade process is complete.

In the message display area within the wizard, read all messages that are displayed for each phase of the upgrade process. Informational messages might show actions that occurred during the process that are important to you.

Windows If you are moving the server database to a tape device, and the tape drive or tape changer uses a Tivoli Storage Manager device driver, you might see a message about a drive or tape library error. In this case, you must complete Step 5.

- 5. Windows If you see a message about a drive or tape library error, complete the following actions:
 - a. Uninstall the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 device driver by clicking Start > Control Panel > Add or Remove Programs. Select the Tivoli Storage Manager device driver, and then click Remove.
 - Install the V7.1 Tivoli Storage Manager device driver.
 Follow the instructions for installing a Tivoli Storage Manager device driver in the *Administrator's Guide*.
 - **c.** Restart the upgrade wizard as described in Step 3 on page 119. Step through the wizard, but skip the step for extracting the server database.

What to do next

To complete the upgrade, perform the steps described in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Scenario 1: Upgrading the server manually by using utilities

Use the utilities to upgrade the server by using a command interface.

Before you begin

Complete all preceding steps to prepare for the upgrade. Ensure that you have installed the upgrade utilities, installed the V7.1 server program, and created the directories and user ID for the server instance.

Procedure

Complete the following steps:

- 1. "Scenario 1: Extracting the data to media" on page 121
- 2. "Scenario 1: Creating and formatting the new database" on page 122
- 3. "Scenario 1: Loading the extracted data into the new database" on page 126
- 4. "Scenario 1: Creating a Windows service for the server instance" on page 128
- 5. "Scenario 1: Configuring the system for database backup" on page 129

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Related concepts:

"The manifest file for the data extraction to media" on page 531

"DSMUPGRD upgrade utilities" on page 16

Scenario 1: Extracting the data to media

You can extract the data from the original server database to sequential media. The sequential media can be tape, or disk space that is defined with the FILE device class.

Procedure

- 1. Log in using the root user ID on the system that has the original server. Log on with the administrator ID on a Windows system.
- 2. Ensure that the device that you want to use to store the extracted data is available. The server database and the device configuration file must contain a valid device class definition for the device.
- **3**. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the command to start the extraction. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring. For example, issue the following command on one line:

AIX

nohup /usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd extractdb \
devclass=file manifest=./manifest.txt >extract.out 2>&1 &

HP-UX Linux Solaris

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd extractdb \
devclass=file manifest=./manifest.txt >extract.out 2>&1 &

Windows

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd" extractdb devclass=file manifest=.\manifest.txt 1>>extract.out 2>&1

Tip: Messages that are issued during the extract operation are *not* saved in the server activity log. Direct the output of the utility to a file, as shown in the examples, to record the messages.

4. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages, and for items that you might need to take action on. A message near the end of the process output indicates success or failure of the operation:

Success message: ANR1382I EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed.

Failure message: ANR1396E EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed with errors.

For example, from the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to monitor the process:

tail -f extract.out

The length of time that the process runs depends on the size of the database. The time will be approximately as much as the time required for a full backup of the database.

Tip: On Windows systems, use the **tail** command or an equivalent utility with which you can monitor the contents of a file as it changes. For example, the Windows Server 2003 Resource Kit Tools includes the **tail** command, which can be used as shown in the preceding example.

Related concepts:

"The manifest file for the data extraction to media" on page 531 **Related tasks:**

"Scenario 1: Preparing space for the upgrade process" on page 95

Related reference:

"DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB (Extract data from a V5 server database)" on page 529

Scenario 1: Creating and formatting the new database

Create the server instance and format files for an empty V7.1 database.

Procedure

1. Log on to the system where you installed the V7.1 program.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris				
Log in by using the root user ID. Verify the following items:				
 The home directory for the user, /home/tsminst1, exists. If there is no home directory, you must create it. 				
The instance directory stores the following core files that are generated by the Tivoli Storage Manager server:				
 The server options file, dsmserv.opt 				
 The server key database file, cert.kdb, and the .arm files, which are used by clients and other servers to import the Secure Sockets Layer certificates of the server 				
 Device configuration file, if the DEVCONFIG server option does not specify a fully qualified name 				
 Volume history file, if the VOLUMEHISTORY server option does not specify a fully qualified name 				
 Volumes for DEVTYPE=FILE storage pools, if the directory for the device class is not fully specified, or not fully qualified 				
– User exits				
 Trace output, if it is not fully qualified 				
• A shell configuration file, for example, .profile, exists in the home directory. The root user and instance user ID must have write permission to this file. For more information, go to the DB2 Information Center (http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/ v10r5), and search for information about Linux and UNIX environment variable settings.				
Windows				
Log on as an administrator.				

2. Create a Tivoli Storage Manager instance by using the **db2icrt** command.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Enter the following command on one line. For the instance name, specify the user ID that you created to own the instance:

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2icrt -a server -s ese -u instance_name instance_name

For example, if the user ID for this instance is tsminst1, use the following command to create the instance:

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2icrt -a server -s ese -u
tsminst1 tsminst1

Remember: From this point on, use this new user ID when you configure the Tivoli Storage Manager server. Log out of the root user ID, and log in using the user ID that is the instance owner.

Enter the following command on one line. The user account that you specify becomes the user ID that owns the V7.1 server; this ID is the instance user ID.

db2icrt -s ese -u user_account instance_name

For example, if the user account is *tsminst1* and the server instance is *Server1*, enter the following command:

db2icrt -s ese -u tsminst1 server1

The database service for the server instance logs on to the user account that is specified in this command.

Use the registry key name of the V5 server as the instance name for the V7.1 server. You are prompted to enter the password for the user account.

The instance name that you specify on this **db2icrt** command is the name that you later specify with the -k option on the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** command, when you create and format the database and recovery log.

- **3.** Log on to the system by using the user ID that owns the V7.1 server instance (the instance user ID).
- 4. Copy the configuration files to the instance directory that you created for the new server. The files are the configuration files that you saved from the original V5 server:
 - Device configuration

Windows

Server options file, which is typically named dsmserv.opt

For example, if you created the instance directory that is shown in the example in the step to create directories for the V7.1 server, copy the files into the following directory:





Ensure that the user ID that owns the V7.1 server (the instance user ID) has ownership or read/write permission to the files that you copied.

- 5. Edit the server options file.
 - a. Remove any options that are not supported for V7.1. For the list of deleted options, see Table 29 on page 67.
 - b. Verify that the server options file contains at least one VOLUMEHISTORY option and at least one DEVCONFIG option. By specifying these options, you ensure that a volume history file and a device configuration file are generated and updated automatically. If you must restore the database, these files are required.

- **c.** Check whether the server options file includes the TXNGROUPMAX option with a value, and if it does, what the value is. You might want to change the current value because the default value for this option changed from 256 to 4096, starting in V6. The increased value can improve the performance for data movement operations such as storage pool migration and storage pool backup.
 - If the server options file does not include this option, the server automatically uses the new default value of 4096.
 - If the server options file includes a value for this option, the server uses that specified value. If the specified value is less than 4096, consider increasing the value, or removing the option so that the new default value is applied.
- 6. Change the default path for the database.

K	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris	
	Change the	default p	ath for th	e database to be the same as the
instance directory for the server. Issue the command:				
	db2 update	dbm cfg us	ing dftdb	bath instance_directory

For example: db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath /tsminst1

Windows

AĽ

Change the default path for the database to be the drive where the instance directory for the server is located. Complete the following steps:

- a. Click Start > Programs > IBM DB2 > DB2TSM1 > Command Line Tools > Command Line Processor.
- b. Enter quit to exit the command line processor.

A window with a command prompt opens, with the environment correctly set up to successfully issue the commands in the next steps.

c. From the command prompt in that window, issue the following command to set the environment variable for the server instance that you are working with:

set db2instance=instance_name

The *instance_name* is the same as the instance name that you specified when you issued the **db2icrt** command. For example, to set the environment variable for the Server1 server instance, issue the following command:

set db2instance=server1

d. Issue the command to set the default drive:

db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath instance_location

For example, if the instance directory is d:\tsm\server1, the instance location is drive d:. Enter the command:

db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath d:

7. Modify the library path to use the version of the IBM Global Security Kit (GSKit) that is installed with the Tivoli Storage Manager server:

AIX Issue the following command:

export LIBPATH=/usr/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LIBPATH

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris You must update the following files to set the library path when DB2 or the Tivoli Storage Manager server is started:

- instance_directory/sqllib/usercshrc
- instance_directory/sqllib/userprofile

For the *instance_directory*/sqllib/usercshrc file, add the following lines:

- AIX
- setenv LIBPATH /usr/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LIBPATH
- HP-UX Solaris

setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH /opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH

Linux

AIX

setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH /usr/local/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH

For the *instance_directory*/sqllib/userprofile file, add the following lines:

- LIBPATH=/usr/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LIBPATH export LIBPATH
- HP-UX Solaris

```
LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

• Linux

```
LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/usr/local/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

Verify the library path settings and ensure that the GSKit version is 8.0.14.14 or later. Issue the following commands:

• AIX echo \$LIBPATH gsk8capicmd_64 -version gsk8ver_64

HP-UX Linux Solaris

echo \$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
gsk8capicmd_64 -version
gsk8ver_64

If the GSKit version is not 8.0.14.14 or later, you must reinstall the Tivoli Storage Manager server. The reinstallation ensures that the correct GSKit version is available.

- 8. Change to the instance directory that you created for the server.
- **9**. Create and format the database and recovery logs. In the command, specify the directories that you created for the database and logs. The directories must be empty.



For example, to get an active log size of 16 GB (16384 MB, the default size), issue the following command, on one line:

/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmserv loadformat \
dbdir=/tsmdb001,/tsmdb002,/tsmdb003,/tsmdb004 \
activelogsize=16384 activelogdirectory=/tsmlog \
mirrorlogdirectory=/tsmlogmirror archlogdirectory=/tsmarchlog

Windows

For example, to get an active log size of 16 GB (16384 MB, the default size) for the Server1 server instance, issue the following command, on one line:

```
"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmserv" loadformat
dbdir=d:\tsm\db001,e:\tsm\db002,f:\tsm\db003,g:\tsm\db004
activelogsize=16384 activelogdirectory=h:\tsm\log
mirrorlogdirectory=j:\tsm\logmirror archlogdirectory=i:\tsm\archlog
```

If the server that you are upgrading is not Server1, you must use the -k option. The -k option specifies the instance name for running this utility. For example, if the system has more than one server instance and the instance that you are upgrading is Server2, issue the command:

```
"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmserv" -k server2
loadformat dbdir=d:\tsm\db001,e:\tsm\db002,f:\tsm\db003,g:\tsm\db004
activelogsize=16384 activelogdirectory=h:\tsm\log
mirrorlogdirectory=j:\tsm\logmirror archlogdirectory=i:\tsm\archlog
```

Important: The server instance that you specify must have already been through all preceding steps for the upgrade process, including the creation of the database instance (**db2icrt** command).

10. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages. The final message indicates success or failure of the operation.

Related tasks:

"Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39

Related reference:

DSMSERV LOADFORMAT (Format a database)

"Deleted server commands, utilities, and options" on page 65

Scenario 1: Loading the extracted data into the new database

After you format an empty database by using the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** utility, load the data that you extracted from the original server database.

Before you begin

Ensure that the following requirements are met before you begin to load the data:

- The manifest file from the **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB** operation must be available.
- The server options file must contain an entry for the device configuration file.
- The device configuration file must have information about the device class that is specified in the manifest file.
- The media that contains the extracted database must be available to the V7.1 server. The device must be physically attached to the system. The permissions must be set to grant access to the media for the user ID that owns the V7.1 server instance.

Procedure

- 1. Verify that the V7.1 server can access the extracted data.
 - If the extracted data is on tape, the tape drive must be physically attached to the system.
 - If the extracted data was stored by using a FILE or DISK device class, complete the following steps:
 - a. Log on to the system by using the root user ID.
- b. Ensure that the user ID that owns the V7.1 server (the instance user ID) has ownership or read/write permission for the extracted files.
- 2. For the manifest file that was created by the extraction process, ensure that the instance user ID has ownership or read/write permission.
- 3. Log on with the instance user ID.
- 4. On the V7.1 server, complete the following steps:
 - a. Verify that the server options file from the V5 server includes the DEVCONFIG option, and that the option specifies the full path of the device configuration file.
 - b. Verify that the device configuration file from the V5 server is available in the location that is specified by the DEVCONFIG option.
 - **c.** Verify that the permissions on the device configuration file allow read access for the instance user ID.
- 5. Verify that the contents of the device configuration file are correct. The device class that was used for the extraction step is recorded in the manifest file, and that device class must exist and be valid on the V7.1 system.
 - a. Verify entries for FILE device classes. For example, paths might be different on the system.
 - b. Verify entries for tape and other devices. For example, the device names might have changed.
- 6. Verify the contents of the manifest file and edit the file if necessary:
 - a. Ensure that the device names in the manifest file are valid for the V7.1 system. Device names for the same device might be different on V5 and V7 systems.
 - b. Ensure that the manifest file contains a list of volumes to be used when the extracted data is loaded into the new database. For example, if the manifest file contains a list of volumes that belong to a FILE device class, ensure that the fully qualified path to the volumes is correct for the system.
- 7. Issue the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** command to load an extracted server database into the prepared, empty V7.1 database. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring. For example, enter the following command on one line:



Windows

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmserv" insertdb \
manifest=.\manifest.txt 1>>insert.out 2>&1

8. Monitor the process for error messages, warning messages, and any items that you might need to address. The system displays interim statistics about the process of loading the database. However, there might be time periods when no messages are issued. During this time, DB2 operations are running in the background. The length of time that the process runs depends on the size of the database. For more information, see "Example: Estimating the upgrade time based on the database size" on page 43.

Optional: Verify that the database is being loaded by monitoring the processor and I/O usage for the server process and the corresponding DB2 process. For example, issue the following command to monitor the process:

tail -f insert.out

Tip: Windows On Windows systems, use the **tail** command or an equivalent utility with which you can monitor the contents of a file as it changes. For example, the Windows Server 2003 Resource Kit Tools includes the **tail** command, which can be used as shown in the preceding example.

A message in the output of the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** command indicates the status of the operation:

Success message: ANR1395I INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed.

Failure message: ANR1396E INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed with errors.

9. If you used a tape device, after the insertion operation is complete remove or check out from the library the tape that holds the extracted data. Prevent the tape from being reused until you are sure that you do not need to run the insertion operation again.

Related concepts:

"The manifest file for the data extraction to media" on page 531

Related reference:

"DSMSERV INSERTDB (Move a server database into an empty database)" on page 538

Scenario 1: Creating a Windows service for the server instance

Windows

A Windows service is created for the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server automatically if you use the upgrade wizard (**dsmupgdx**). If you do not use the wizard, you must create the Windows service for the Tivoli Storage Manager server manually.

Procedure

- Change to the installation directory for the server program. By default, the directory is C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\console. If you installed the server in a different directory, change to the console subdirectory of the server installation directory.
- 2. Install the Windows service by using the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance name and password in the service name. Issue the following command:

```
install "TSM server_instance_name"
   "C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmsvc.exe"
instance_owner instance_owner_password
```

where:

"TSM *server_instance_name*" is the name of the service that is being installed.

server_instance_name is the instance name that was specified when you issued the **db2icrt** command.

instance_owner is the instance owner account; this account will own the service.

instance_owner_password is the password for the instance owner account.

Example

To install the Windows service for the server1 server instance, enter the

following command on one line. The example uses rudy as the instance owner and s21ret as the password for the instance owner account. install "TSM server1" "C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmsvc.exe" rudy s21ret

3. Optional: Manually change the service to an automatic startup type by using Windows administrative tools (**Administrative Tools** > **Services**).

Related tasks:

"Starting the server on Windows systems" on page 331

Scenario 1: Configuring the system for database backup

The database manager and the Tivoli Storage Manager API must be configured so that the database manager can back up the server database. The configuration is completed for you automatically if you use the upgrade wizard (**dsmupgdx**). If you do not use the wizard, you must complete the configuration manually.

Procedure

- "Scenario 1: Configuring the system for database backup on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems"
- "Scenario 1: Configuring the system for database backup on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 131

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Scenario 1: Configuring the system for database backup on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

If you did not use the upgrade wizard, you must complete the configuration for the database backup manually.

About this task

Starting with Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1, it is no longer necessary to set the API password during a manual configuration of the server. If you set the API password during the manual configuration process, attempts to back up the database might fail.

Complete the following steps before you issue either the **BACKUP DB** or the **RESTORE DB** command.

Attention: If the database is unusable, the entire Tivoli Storage Manager server is unavailable. If a database is lost and cannot be recovered, it might be difficult or impossible to recover data that was managed by that server. Therefore, it is critically important to back up the database.

In the following commands, replace the example values with your actual values. The examples use tsminst1 for the server instance user ID, /tsminst1 for the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance directory, and /home/tsminst1 as the home directory of the server instance user.

Procedure

- 1. Set the Tivoli Storage Manager API environment-variable configuration for the database instance:
 - a. Log in by using the tsminst1 user ID.
 - b. When user tsminst1 is logged in, ensure that the DB2 environment is correctly initialized. The DB2 environment is initialized by running the /home/tsminst1/sqllib/db2profile script, which normally runs automatically from the profile of the user ID. Ensure that the .profile file exists in the home directory of the instance user, for example, /home/tsminst1/.profile. If .profile does not run the db2profile script, add the following lines:
 - c. In the *instance_directory*/sqllib/userprofile file, add the following lines: DSMI CONFIG=server instance directory/tsmdbmgr.opt

```
DSMI_CONFIG-Server_instance_atrectory/tsmabhigr.opt
DSMI_DIR=server_bin_directory/dbbkapi
DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory
export DSMI_CONFIG DSMI_DIR DSMI_LOG
```

d. In the *instance_directory*/sqllib/usercshrc file, add the following lines:

setenv DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory/tsmdbmgr.opt
setenv DSMI_DIR=server_bin_directory/dbbkapi
setenv DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory

2. Log out and log in again as tsminst1, or issue this command:

. ~/.profile

Ensure that you enter a space after the initial dot (.) character.

3. Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.opt in the server instance directory, which is in the /tsminst1 directory in this example, and add the following line: SERVERNAME TSMDBMGR_TSMINST1

The value for SERVERNAME must be consistent in the tsmdbmgr.opt and dsm.sys files.

4. Locate the Tivoli Storage Manager API dsm.sys configuration file. By default, the dsm.sys file is in the following location:

server_bin_directory/dbbkapi/dsm.sys

5. As root user, add the following lines to the dsm.sys configuration file:

```
servername TSMDBMGR_TSMINST1
commmethod tcpip
tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport 1500
errorlogname /tsminst1
nodename $$_TSMDBMGR_$$
```

where

- servername matches the servername value in the tsmdbmgr.opt file.
- commethod specifies the client API that is used to contact the server for database backup. This value can be tcpip or sharedmem. For more information about shared memory, see Step 6 on page 131.
- tcpserveraddr specifies the server address that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be localhost.

- tcpport specifies the port number that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. Ensure that you enter the same tcpport value that is specified in the dsmserv.opt server options file.
- errorlogname specifies the error log where the client API logs errors that are encountered during a database backup. This log is typically in the server instance directory. However, this log can be placed in any location where the instance user ID has write-permission.
- nodename specifies the node name that the client API uses to connect to the server during a database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be \$\$_TSMDBMGR_\$\$.

Do not add the PASSWORDACCESS generate option to the dsm.sys configuration file. This option can cause the database backup to fail.

- 6. Optional: Configure the server to back up the database by using shared memory. In this way, you might be able to reduce the processor load and improve throughput. Complete the following steps:
 - a. Review the dsmserv.opt file. If the following lines are not in the file, add them:

commmethod sharedmem
shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port that you use for shared memory.

b. In the dsm.sys configuration file, locate the following lines:

commmethod tcpip
tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport port_number

Replace the specified lines with the following lines: commmethod sharedmem shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port that you use for shared memory.

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Scenario 1: Configuring the system for database backup on Microsoft Windows systems

Windows

If you did not use the upgrade wizard, you must complete the configuration for the database backup manually.

About this task

Complete the following steps before you issue either the **BACKUP DB** or the **RESTORE DB** command.

Attention: If the database is unusable, the entire Tivoli Storage Manager server is unavailable. If a database is lost and cannot be recovered, it might be difficult or impossible to recover data that was managed by that server. Therefore, it is critically important to back up the database.

In the following commands, the examples use server1 for the database instance and d:\tsmserver1 for the Tivoli Storage Manager server directory. When you issue the commands, replace these values with your actual values.

Procedure

1. Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.env in the d:\tsmserver1 directory with the following contents:

DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory\tsmdbmgr.opt DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory

- 2. Set the DSMI_ api environment-variable configuration for the database instance:
 - a. Open a DB2 command window. One method is to go to the C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\db2\bin directory, or if you installed Tivoli Storage Manager in a different location, go to the db2\bin subdirectory in your main installation directory. Then, issue the following command: db2cmd
 - b. Issue the following command:
 - db2set -i server1 DB2_VENDOR_INI=d:\tsmserver1\tsmdbmgr.env
 - c. Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.opt in the d:\tsmserver1 directory with the following contents:

where

- nodename specifies the node name that the client API uses to connect to the server during a database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be \$\$_TSMDBMGR_\$\$.
- commmethod specifies the client API that is used to contact the server for database backup. This value can be tcpip or sharedmem. For more information about shared memory, see Step 3.
- tcpserveraddr specifies the server address that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be localhost.
- tcpport is the port number that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. Ensure that you enter the same tcpport value that is specified in the dsmserv.opt server options file.
- passwordaccess is required to ensure that the backup node can connect to the server.
- errorlogname is the error log where the client API logs errors that are encountered during a database backup. This log is typically in the server instance directory. However, this log can be placed in any location where the instance user ID has write-permission.
- **3**. Optional: Configure the server to back up the database by using shared memory. In this way, you might be able to reduce the processor load and improve throughput. Complete the following steps:
 - a. Review the dsmserv.opt file. If the following lines are not in the file, add them:

commmethod sharedmem
shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port to use for shared memory.

b. In the tsmdbmgr.opt file, locate the following lines:

commmethod tcpip tcpserveraddr localhost tcpport 1500

Replace the specified lines with the following lines: commmethod sharedmem shmport *port_number*

where *port_number* specifies the port to use for shared memory.

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Chapter 5. Scenario 2: Same system, network method

Use this procedure if you are upgrading the Tivoli Storage Manager server on the same system as the V5 server, and you are using the network method to move the data.

Procedure

The procedure for upgrading the server includes the following tasks:

- 1. "Scenario 2: Preparing for the upgrade"
- 2. "Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities" on page 144
- 3. "Scenario 2: Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade" on page 151
- 4. "Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program before installing V7.1" on page 152
- 5. "Scenario 2: Installing the V7.1 server" on page 155
- 6. "Scenario 2: Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance" on page 159
- 7. Upgrading the server, by using one of the following methods:
 - "Scenario 2: Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard" on page 162
 - "Scenario 2: Upgrading the server manually by using utilities" on page 164
- **8**. The following tasks are completed after the upgrade:
 - a. "Verifying access to storage pools on disk" on page 323
 - b. "Setting up Solaris services for the server instance" on page 324
 - c. "Configuring server options for server database maintenance" on page 324
 - d. "Starting the server instance after the upgrade" on page 325
 - e. "Registering licenses" on page 334
 - f. "Backing up the database after upgrading the server" on page 335
 - g. "Verifying the upgraded server" on page 336
 - h. "Changing the host name for the Tivoli Storage Manager server" on page 336
 - i. "Updating automation" on page 338
 - j. "Monitoring the upgraded server" on page 339
 - k. "Removing GSKit Version 7 after upgrading to Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1" on page 340

Scenario 2: Preparing for the upgrade

Prepare for the upgrade by checking requirements, preparing the space that is required, backing up the server, and modifying certain server settings.

About this task

Follow the preparation steps carefully to protect your server and its data.

Important: It is possible, after the upgrade to V7.1 is complete, that conditions might cause the need to temporarily revert to the previous version of the server. Successfully reverting to the previous version of the server is possible only if you

have completed all preparation steps. To understand why it is important to complete all preparation steps, review the procedure for reverting an upgraded server to its previous version.

Procedure

- 1. "Scenario 2: Checking the prerequisites for the upgrade"
- 2. "Scenario 2: Preparing space for the upgrade process" on page 139
- 3. "Scenario 2: Modifying the server before the upgrade" on page 139
- 4. "Scenario 2: Disabling sessions" on page 141
- 5. "Scenario 2: Backing up storage pools and the server database" on page 141
- 6. "Scenario 2: Moving the NODELOCK file" on page 142
- 7. "Scenario 2: Backing up configuration information" on page 142
- 8. "Scenario 2: Creating a summary of database contents" on page 143
- 9. "Scenario 2: Stopping the server before installing the upgrade" on page 143

Related tasks:

"Reverting from V7.1 to the previous V5 server version" on page 351

Scenario 2: Checking the prerequisites for the upgrade

Check your system against requirements for the server.

Before you begin

Requirement: If you are upgrading the Tivoli Storage Manager server on the same system, the system must meet the minimum requirements for both the V5 and V7.1 servers.

Procedure

- 1. Ensure that the server that you plan to upgrade is at the V5.5 release level, and that the latest interim fix is installed. For example, if the server is at V5.5.6, install the latest interim fix for V5.5.6. Take the following actions:
 - a. Select the appropriate server level. For detailed guidelines, see "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36. If the server is at an appropriate level, no action is required.
 - b. If the server is not at an appropriate level, download the appropriate server fix pack and the latest interim fix from the FTP downloads site at ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server/. Locate the appropriate version of Tivoli Storage Manager and install it.
- 2. Ensure that the system where the V5 server is located meets the minimum requirements. Review the information in "Hardware and software requirements for the V5 server system that is being upgraded" on page 17 to determine whether you must update your system before you continue.
- **3**. Ensure that the system where you plan to install the V7.1 server meets requirements for the operating system type and level. For the latest information about system requirements, see Tivoli Storage Manager Supported Operating Systems (http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21243309).

If you are upgrading Tivoli Storage Manager to a different operating system, a limited set of migration paths is available. For instructions about migrating a server that is running on a z/OS operating system, see Part 3, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on z/OS systems to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z," on page 437. For instructions about migrating a server that is

running on an AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris operating system, see Part 2, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux," on page 355.

Some platforms that were supported for earlier versions of the server are not supported for V7.1. If the server that you want to upgrade is running on one of these platforms, you cannot upgrade your server to V7.1 on the same platform. You must install your V7.1 server on a system that is a specific supported platform, depending on the original platform. For required platforms, see the following table.

Platform for V5 serverRequired platform for upgrade to V7.1HP-UX running on a PA-RISC systemHP-UX running on an Intel Itanium systemLinux running on an Itanium system (IA64)Linux running on an x86_64 systemLinux running on an x86_32 systemLinux running on an x86_64 systemSolaris running on an x86_64 systemLinux running on an x86_64 systemWindows running on an Itanium systemWindows running on an x86_64 system

Table 36. Required platforms for upgrading from V5 to V7.1

If you are upgrading from Tivoli Storage Manager V5 to V7.1 on a new system, restrictions apply. Ensure that you install the V7.1 server in a compatible hardware and software environment, as described in the following table.

V5 server	V7.1 server	Comments
AIX running on an IBM POWER system	AIX running on an IBM POWER system	
HP-UX running on an Itanium system	HP-UX running on an Itanium system	
HP-UX running on a PA-RISC system	HP-UX running on an Itanium system	HP-UX running on PA-RISC is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux running on an IBM POWER system	Linux running on an IBM POWER system	
Linux running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Linux running on an x86_64 system	Linux running on Itanium is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux running on an x86_32 system	Linux running on an x86_64 system	Linux running on x86_32 is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux on System z	Linux on System z	

Table 37. Requirements for upgrading from V5 to V7.1 on a new system

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

V5 server	V7.1 server	Comments
Solaris running on an x86_64 system	Operating system depends on the migration method	A V7.1 server cannot be installed on a Solaris x86_64 system. However, you can migrate a V5 server that is running on a Solaris x86_64 operating system to V7.1 on a Linux x86_64 operating system. For instructions, see Part 2, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux," on page 355. Alternatively, you can migrate the Solaris x86_64 system by installing a V7.1 server on any operating system that is supported for V7.1. Then, use Tivoli Storage Manager server EXPORT and IMPORT commands to move the server from the V5 source system.
Windows running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Windows running on an x86_64 system	Windows running on Itanium is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Windows running on an x86_32 system	Windows running on an x86_64 system	Windows running on x86_32 is not supported for V7.1 servers.
z/OS	AIX or Linux on System z	See the section on migrating from V5 on z/OS to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z.

Table 37. Requirements for upgrading from V5 to V7.1 on a new system (continued)

- 4. Verify that the system memory meets the server requirements.
 - Ensure that the system memory is sufficient to run two servers at the same time.

When you run the process that extracts the database from the existing server and inserts the database for the new server, the net effect is that two servers are running.

• If you plan to run multiple instances of the V7.1 server on the system, each instance requires the memory that is listed for one server. Multiply the memory for one server by the number of instances that are planned for the system.

For specific information about memory requirements, see the section for your operating system:

Table 38. Memory requirements for the V7.1 system

Operating system	Memory requirements
AIX	"Server requirements on AIX systems" on page 21

Operating system	Memory requirements
HP-UX	"Server requirements on HP-UX systems" on page 24
Linux	"Server requirements on Linux systems" on page 26
Solaris	"Server requirements on Solaris systems" on page 31
Windows	"Server requirements on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 33

Table 38. Memory requirements for the V7.1 system (continued)

5. Ensure that the system has enough disk storage for the database and recovery logs. Review the planning information for requirements and guidance.

Ensure that the system has enough disk storage for storing database and recovery logs for both the original server and the new V7.1 server. Both are stored on disk storage during the upgrade process.

If you are adding new hardware for the server, such as new disk storage for the database, ensure that the hardware is installed and running.

Related concepts:

"Hardware and software requirements for upgrading to the V7.1 server" on page 17

Scenario 2: Preparing space for the upgrade process

Determine the amount and type of space that is required for the upgrade process before beginning the process.

Procedure

Verify that the system has the amount of space that was estimated in the planning step. Use the planning worksheet that you completed with your information. See "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

Related tasks:

"Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39

Scenario 2: Modifying the server before the upgrade

A command must be run on the server to prevent one type of problem during the upgrade process. Some modifications to typical server settings can be useful to prepare for the upgrade.

Procedure

1. From a Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command line, issue the command:

convert ussfilespace

This command fixes a problem that might exist in older Tivoli Storage Manager databases. If the problem does not exist in your database, the command is completed and you might see error ANR2034E. This error can be ignored. For more information, see Technote 1408895 (http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg21408895). If the problem exists in your database, the command might take some time to run.

Important: Do not skip this step. If your database has the problem and you do not run this command now, the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility fails when you run it. You must then restart the V5 server and run the **CONVERT USSFILESPACE** command before you continue the upgrade process.

2. Review the steps for reverting to the earlier version of the server in the section, "Reverting from V7.1 to the previous V5 server version" on page 351.

If you must revert to the earlier version after the upgrade to V7.1, the results of the reversion will be better if you understand the steps and prepare for the possibility now.

- **3**. Make the following adjustments to settings on your server and clients. These adjustments must be done to make it possible for you to revert to the original server after the upgrade, if problems occur.
 - a. For each sequential-access storage pool, set the **REUSEDELAY** parameter to the number of days during which you want to be able to revert to the original server, if necessary.

For example, if you want to be able to revert to the original server for up to 30 days after the upgrade to V7.1, set the **REUSEDELAY** parameter to 31 days. Issue the following administrative command:

update stgpool sequential_access_storage_pool reusedelay=31

b. For each copy storage pool, set the **RECLAIM** parameter to 100 (meaning 100%). Issue the following administrative command:

update stgpool copy_storage_pool reclaim=100

c. If you typically use a **DELETE VOLHISTORY** command to delete database backups, ensure that the command does not delete database backups too frequently. The interval between backups should be at least the same number of days that you set for the **REUSEDELAY** period for sequential-access storage pools. For example, to delete database backups every 45 days, issue the following administrative command:

delete volhist type=dbbackup todate=-45

d. For important clients that use the server, verify that the value for the schedlogretention client option is set to retain the client schedule log for a sufficient time. Update the option for clients if needed.

The entries in the client schedule log might be useful if the server must revert to the original version. If the retention period for the schedule log is too short, the schedule log information might be deleted too soon.

For example, to prune the log every 45 days and save the log entries, add the following option:

schedlogretention 45 S

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Add the option to the dsm.sys file within a server stanza.

Windows Add the option to the client options file, dsm.opt.

Scenario 2: Disabling sessions

In preparation for the upgrade, prevent activity on the server by disabling new sessions. Cancel any existing sessions.

About this task

The commands in the following procedure are Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands.

Procedure

1. Prevent all clients, storage agents, and other servers from starting new sessions with the server. Use the commands:

disable sessions client disable sessions server

For more information about these commands and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

- Verify whether any sessions exist, and notify the users that the server is going to be stopped. To check for existing sessions, use the command: query session
- Cancel sessions that are still running. Use the command: cancel session all

Scenario 2: Backing up storage pools and the server database

Immediately before upgrading the server, back up primary storage pools to copy storage pools, and perform a full database backup.

Before you begin

Back up storage pools and the server database by using Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands:

Procedure

1. Back up primary storage pools to copy storage pools by using the **BACKUP STGPOOL** command:

backup stgpool primary_pool copy_stg

where *primary_pool* specifies the primary storage pool and *copy_stg* specifies the copy storage pool. If you have been performing regular backups of the storage pools, this step backs up only the data that was added to the primary storage pools since they were last backed up.

2. Back up the database. The preferred method is to use a snapshot backup. A snapshot backup is a full database backup that does not interrupt any scheduled database backups. Issue the command:

backup db type=dbsnapshot devclass=device_class_name

The device class that you specify must exist and have volumes that are available to it. For example, to perform a snapshot backup of your database to the TAPECLASS device class by using scratch volumes, enter:

backup db type=dbsnapshot devclass=tapeclass

To use specific volumes instead of scratch volumes, specify the volume names in the command. **Tip:** Consider making two copies of the backup to protect the backup from media failures. Ensure that at least one full database backup is available onsite. If you must restore the database after a failed upgrade, having an onsite backup database saves time.

Scenario 2: Moving the NODELOCK file

To ensure that licensing information is updated during the upgrade process, move the NODELOCK file from the server instance directory to another directory.

About this task

The NODELOCK file contains the licensing information from the previous Tivoli Storage Manager installation. This licensing information is replaced when the upgrade is complete.

Procedure

- 1. In the server instance directory of your installation, locate the NODELOCK file.
- 2. Move the NODELOCK file to another directory. For example, you can save it to a directory where you are saving configuration files from the previous release.

Scenario 2: Backing up configuration information

Before you install the new version, back up critical files and information for each server instance. Store the files in a safe place, on a different system from the system that is being upgraded or on offline media, such as a CD. The files are required after the installation of the new software version is complete. You also need these files if you must revert to the previous version after the upgrade.

Procedure

 Back up device configuration information to another directory by using the following Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command: backup devconfig filenames=file_name

where *file_name* specifies the file in which to store device configuration information.

 Back up volume history information to another directory by using the following Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command: backup volhistory filenames=file name

where *file_name* specifies the file in which to store volume history information. Ensure that the volume history includes information about the database backup that you completed in the preceding steps. For example, issue the following command:

query volhistory type=dbsnapshot

Review the query output to verify that the time stamp for the database backup matches the actual time of the backup.

- 3. Save copies of the following files, which are in the server instance directory:
 - Server options file, typically named dsmserv.opt
 - dsmserv.dsk

Important: The dsmserv.dsk file is not available in Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1. Save a copy of the dsmserv.dsk file in case you must revert to V5.5.

- 4. In the server instance directory, look for the accounting log file, dsmaccnt.log. If the file exists, save a copy.
- 5. Back up any scripts that were used to complete daily housekeeping for the server. Examine the scripts for changes that are needed after the upgrade.
- 6. Store the device configuration file, the volume history file, the server options file, and the other files in a safe place. Ensure that the files are stored on a different system from the system that is being upgraded, or on offline media.

Scenario 2: Creating a summary of database contents

Create a summary of the contents of the original database. After the upgrade, you can use the same commands to compare the results and to confirm that the database contents are intact.

Procedure

Run commands that give a summary of information about your database contents. For example, issue commands that summarize the file spaces that are being protected, and save the results. For a list of commands, see "Sample commands to run for validation of the database upgrade" on page 546.

Related reference:

"Sample commands to run for validation of the database upgrade" on page 546

Scenario 2: Stopping the server before installing the upgrade

Stop all server processes and unmount any tapes that are mounted. Then, stop the server.

Procedure

Use Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands to stop the server:

1. Determine whether server processes are running. Either cancel processes, or allow them to complete. Use the following commands:

query process
cancel process process_number

Allow time for the processes to be stopped. Some processes, such as storage pool migration, might take some time to stop.

For more information about the **QUERY PROCESS** and **CANCEL PROCESS** commands and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

2. After all sessions and processes are stopped, determine whether any tapes are mounted. Unmount any tapes that are mounted. Use the following commands: query mount

dismount volume volume_name

3. Stop the server. Use the following command:

halt

Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities

You must install the upgrade utilities on the system. The installation package for the utilities must be downloaded from a website.

Before you begin

The preferred method is to install the latest available version of the upgrade utilities. For more information about selecting the version, see "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36.

Procedure

Use the procedure for your operating system:

- **AIX** "Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities on AIX systems"
- HP-UX "Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities on HP-UX systems" on page 146
- **Linux** "Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities on Linux systems" on page 147
- Solaris "Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities on Oracle Solaris systems" on page 148
- Windows "Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 150

Related concepts:

"DSMUPGRD upgrade utilities" on page 16

Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities on AIX systems

AIX

Install the upgrade utilities on the system. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.*x*.*x* directory. The 5.5.*x*.*x* number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c.** Select the package that matches your operating system, and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x*.*x*-TIV-TSMUPG-AIX.tar.gz

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.

- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- 3. Ensure that the system has the following file sets installed:

```
xlC.rte 8.0.0.5, or later
gsksa.rte 7.0.4.11
```

You can use the following commands to check for these file sets: lslpp -L xlC.rte

lslpp -L gsksa.rte

If needed, you can obtain the gsksa.rte file set from any of the regular V5.5 maintenance packages for the AIX server. The maintenance packages are available on the FTP downloads site: ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivolistorage-management/maintenance/server/v5r5/AIX/

- 4. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. If you downloaded a language package, also extract the contents of that package.
- 5. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- 6. Access the System Management Interface Tool (SMIT).
 - a. Enter smitty install_update
 - b. Select Install and Update Software > Install and Update from ALL Available Software.
- 7. Select the **INPUT** device. Specify the directory location of the upgrade utilities package on the system.
- **8**. Select **Software to Install**. Press F4 or Esc+4 for the list of available file sets in the directory.
- 9. Select the file sets for the upgrade utilities, the device driver, and optionally the language package. The file set for the upgrade utilities is tivoli.tsmupg.server. Optional language packages include messages for languages other than US English.
- 10. Set COMMIT software updates to Yes. Press F4 or Esc+4.
- 11. Set SAVE replaced files to No.
- **12.** Ensure that the default settings for the options in the window for all the selected file sets show success.
- **13**. Press Enter, and respond to the ARE YOU SURE? question by pressing Enter again. The installation begins.
- 14. When the installation is complete, exit the SMIT program.
- 15. Optional: If you installed a language package, ensure that the locale environment variable is set to use it. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages: export LC MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.

16. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 2: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 149.

Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities on HP-UX systems

Install the upgrade utilities on the system. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

Procedure

HP-UX

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.*x*.*x* directory. The 5.5.*x*.*x* number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - c. Select the package that matches your operating system, and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x*.*x*-TIV-TSMUPG-*platform*.tar.gz

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the command:
 gzip -dc package_name.tar.gz | tar -xvf -
- 4. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- 5. Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the source argument (-s) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command: swinstall -s /tmp/TSM package name

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin.

- 6. Optional: Install the language package.
 - a. Extract the contents of the package.

gzip -d package_name.img.gz

b. Install the package. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

swinstall -s /tmp/TSM/package_name.img package_name

c. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- 7. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 2: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 149.

Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities on Linux systems

Linux

Install the upgrade utilities on the system. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.x.x directory. The 5.5.x.x number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c.** Open the directory for your operating system and download the package. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x*.*x*-TIV-TSMUPG-*platform*.tar.bz2

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the commands: bunzip2 package_name.tar.bz2 tar xvf package_name.tar
- 4. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system, for example, x86_64.
- 5. Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the following command: rpm -ivh package name.rpm

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin by default.

- 6. Optional: Install the language package.
 - a. Extract the contents of the downloaded package.

bunzip2 package_name.tar.bz2
tar xvf package_name.tar

b. Install the package for the language that you want to use.

rpm -ivh package_name.rpm

c. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- 7. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 2: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 149.

Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities on Oracle Solaris systems

Solaris

Install the upgrade utilities on the system. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

About this task

Restriction: Do *not* install the utilities in the installation directory of the server that must be upgraded. Install the utilities package in its own directory.

Procedure

1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.

- a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
- b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.*x*.*x* directory. The 5.5.*x*.*x* number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
- c. Select the package that matches your operating system, and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.x.x-TIV-TSMUPG-*platform*.tar.Z

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- 3. Change to the directory where the upgrade utilities package was downloaded.
- 4. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the command:

uncompress -c package_name.tar.Z | tar -xvf -

- 5. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- 6. Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the source argument (-d) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

pkgadd -d . /tmp/TSM package_name

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin by default.

- 7. Optional: Install the language package.
 - Extract the contents of the downloaded package. uncompress package_name.pkg.Z
 - b. Install the package for the language that you want to use. Use the source argument (-d) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

pkgadd -d /tmp/TSM package_name.pkg package_name

c. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- 8. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 2: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems."

Scenario 2: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

After installing the upgrade utility package, you must set environment variables in the shell from which you will run the utilities. An environment variable describes the operating environment of a process, such as the home directory or terminal in use.

About this task

The **DSMSERV_DIR** variable specifies the installed location of the upgrade utilities. By default, the location is the following directory:



/usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin

HP-UX Linux Solaris

/opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin

Procedure

Use the appropriate command for your system to set the environment variable for running the utilities. If the shell is in the ksh or bash family, enter the following command to set the **DSMSERV_DIR** variable:

export DSMSERV_DIR=upgrade_utilities_directory

If your shell is in the csh family, use the following command: setenv DSMSERV_DIR upgrade_utilities_directory

where *upgrade_utilities_directory* is the directory where the upgrade utilities are installed.

What to do next

After you set the environment variables, continue at "Scenario 2: Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade" on page 151.

Scenario 2: Installing the upgrade utilities on Microsoft Windows systems

Windows

Install the upgrade utilities on the system. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/WIN
 - b. Open the 5.5.*x*.*x* directory. The 5.5.*x*.*x* number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c**. Select the package and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.x.x-TIV-TSMUPG-Windows.exe

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, install the language package that your installation requires.
- 2. Log on with an administrator ID.
- 3. Run the executable package for the upgrade utilities.

The default location for the installation of the utilities is based on the location where the V5 server was last installed. For example, if the V5 server was installed using the default path, C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server, the upgrade utilities are installed in C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade.

What to do next

After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 2: Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade" on page 151.

Tip: When you use the upgrade utilities, if you have multiple servers running on the system, you must use the -k option to specify the name of the Windows registry key from which to retrieve information about the server being upgraded. The default value for the option is SERVER1. Use the -o option with the **DSMUPGRD** command to specify the location of the server options file.

Scenario 2: Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade

Before you extract the data from the database, you must prepare the server database by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility. If you have multiple servers on a single system, you must repeat this task for each server.

Procedure

- 1. Ensure that you have completed all preparation steps.
- 2. Log in using the root user ID on the system that has the original server. Log on with the administrator ID on a Windows system.
- **3**. Change to the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading. The instance directory is the directory that contains the files such as dsmserv.dsk for the server.

Important: The dsmserv.dsk file is not available in Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1. Save a copy of the dsmserv.dsk file in case you must revert to V5.5.

4. Prepare the database. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring.

AIX

From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process in the background and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

nohup /usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd preparedb >prepare.out 2>&1 &

HP-UX Linux Solaris

From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process in the background and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd preparedb >prepare.out 2>&1 &

Windows

From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd" preparedb 1>>prepare.out 2>&1

If multiple servers exist on the system, issue the command from the instance directory for the server that you want to prepare. Specify the registry key for that server. For example, if the server is SERVER2:

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd" -k server2
 preparedb 1>>prepare.out 2>&1

5. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages. The final message indicates success or failure of the operation. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to monitor the process:

tail -f prepare.out

Tip: On Windows systems, use the **tail** command or an equivalent utility with which you can monitor the contents of a file as it changes. For example, the Windows Server 2003 Resource Kit Tools includes the **tail** command, which can be used as shown in the preceding example.

6. Ensure that the prepare operation is completed successfully before you continue to the next step. If the prepare operation fails, you might need to restart the V5 server to fix the problem and run the prepare operation again. If the server that is being upgraded is a V5.3 or V5.4 server, you might need to restore the database by using a backup before you can restart the server to correct the problem.

Related reference:

"DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB (Prepare a V5 database for upgrade)" on page 523

Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program before installing V7.1

For best results when you are upgrading the server to V7.1 on the same system where the V5 server is located, uninstall the V5 server program. Then, install the V7.1 server program.

Procedure

Use the procedure for your operating system:

- MX "Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program on AIX systems"
- HP-UX "Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program on HP-UX systems" on page 153
- **Linux** "Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program on Linux systems" on page 153
- Solaris "Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program on Oracle Solaris systems" on page 154
- Windows "Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 154

Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program on AIX systems

AIX

Uninstall the V5 server, server license, and device driver, if available. Do *not* remove the database, recovery log, or any other related files or directories, such as the server options file.

Procedure

• For a V5.4 or V5.5 server, issue the following commands:

```
/usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.license.aix5.rte64
/usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.devices.aix5.rte
/usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.server.aix5.rte64
```

• For a V5.3 server, issue the following commands:

```
/usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.license
/usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.devices
/usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.server
```

What to do next

After the V5 server program is uninstalled, continue at "Scenario 2: Installing the V7.1 server" on page 155.

Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program on HP-UX systems

HP-UX

Uninstall the V5 server, server license, and device driver, if available. Do *not* remove the database, recovery log, or any other related files or directories, such as the server options file.

Procedure

• For a V5.4 or V5.5 server, issue the following commands:

```
swremove TIVsmS64IA.server
swremove TIVsmS64IA.license
swremove TIVsmDD64 IA11 23.tsmscsi
```

• For a V5.3 server, issue the following commands:

```
swremove TIVsmS64.server
swremove TIVsmS64.license
swremove TIVsmDD64_HP11_11.tsmscsi
```

What to do next

After the V5 server program is uninstalled, continue at "Scenario 2: Installing the V7.1 server" on page 155.

Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program on Linux systems

Linux

Uninstall the V5 server, server license, and device driver, if available. Do *not* remove the database, recovery log, or any other related files or directories, such as the server options file.

Procedure

1. To determine the Tivoli Storage Manager packages that are installed, issue the following command:

rpm -qa | grep TIVsm

2. Remove the server, server license, and device driver packages. Issue the following commands:

rpm -e TIVsm-server rpm -e TIVsm-license rpm -e TIVsm-tsmscsi

What to do next

After the V5 server program is uninstalled, continue at "Scenario 2: Installing the V7.1 server" on page 155.

Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program on Oracle Solaris systems

Solaris

Uninstall the V5 server, server license, and device driver, if available. Do *not* remove the database, recovery log, or any other related files or directories, such as the server options file.

Procedure

Issue the following commands:

/usr/sbin/pkgrm TIVsmS /usr/sbin/pkgrm TIVsmSlic /usr/sbin/pkgrm TIVsmSdev

What to do next

After the V5 server program is uninstalled, continue at "Scenario 2: Installing the V7.1 server" on page 155.

Scenario 2: Uninstalling the V5 program on Microsoft Windows systems

Windows

Uninstall the V5 server, server license, and device driver, if available. Do *not* remove the database, recovery log, or any other related files or directories, such as the server options file.

About this task

Do not remove registry entries for the server.

Procedure

- 1. Click Start > Control Panel > Add or Remove Programs.
- 2. Select the Tivoli Storage Manager server component, and click **Remove**. Repeat for the license and the device driver.

If you see any messages that suggest that you restart the system, ignore them until the selected Tivoli Storage Manager components are removed.

What to do next

After the V5 server program is uninstalled, continue at "Scenario 2: Installing the V7.1 server" on page 155.

Scenario 2: Installing the V7.1 server

You can install the server by using the installation wizard, console mode, or silent mode.

Before you begin

Take the following actions:

- Ensure that you have completed all upgrade preparation steps, including the database backup. The server that you are upgrading will not be available until after the installation and upgrade steps are completed.
- Ensure that you retain the installation media from the V5 base release of the installed server. If you installed Tivoli Storage Manager from a DVD, ensure that the DVD is available. If you installed Tivoli Storage Manager from a downloaded package, ensure that the downloaded files are available. If the upgrade fails, and the server license module is uninstalled, the installation media from the server base release are required to reinstall the license.

You can obtain the installation package from the product DVD or from an IBM download site such as Passport Advantage or the Tivoli Storage Manager support site.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris If you plan to download the files, set the system user limit for maximum file size to unlimited to ensure that the files can be downloaded correctly.

- To query the maximum file size value, issue the following command: ulimit -Hf
- 2. If the system user limit for maximum file size is not set to unlimited, change it to unlimited by following the instructions in the documentation for your operating system.

Procedure

1. Log on to the system.

HP-UX Linux Solaris Log in by using the root user ID.

Windows Log on as an administrator. You must be logged on to the system with the administrative user ID that was used to install the V5 server.

- 2. If you are obtaining the package from an IBM download site, download the appropriate package file from one of the following websites:
 - For a new release, go to Passport Advantage at http://www.ibm.com/ software/lotus/passportadvantage/. Passport Advantage is the only website from which you can download a licensed package file.
 - For a maintenance fix, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager support site at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/Tivoli_Storage_Manager.
- **3**. If you are downloading the package from one of the download sites, complete the following steps:

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:

- Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035122
- Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http:// www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035635
- System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035637
- b. Download the package file to the directory of your choice. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files.

Also, ensure that you have executable permission for the package file.

c. If necessary, change the file permissions by issuing the following command:

chmod a+x package_name.bin

where *package_name* is like the following example:

AIX

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-AIX.bin

HP-UX

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-HP-UX.bin

Linux

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxx86_64.bin 7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxs390x.bin

Solaris

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-SolarisSPARC.bin

In the examples, 7.1.0.000 represents the product release level.

 d. Extract the installation files by issuing the following command: ./package_name.bin

The package is large. Therefore, the extraction takes some time.

Windows

- a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:
 - Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035121
 - Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http:// www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035636
 - System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035638
- b. Change to the directory where you placed the executable file. In the next step, the files are extracted to the current directory. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you

extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files.

c. To extract the installation files, double-click the executable file: package name.exe

where *package_name* is like this example:

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Windows.exe

The package is large. Therefore, the extraction takes some time.

4. AIX HP-UX Solaris To ensure that the Tivoli Storage Manager wizards work correctly, verify that the following command is enabled:

AIX lsuser

HP-UX Solaris logins

By default, the command is enabled.

- 5. If you plan to install the server by using the graphical wizard of IBM Installation Manager, review the following information and verify that your system meets the requirements:
 - **NAX** Verify that all required RPM files are installed. For a list of required RPM files and instructions about installing RPM files, see the section about installing Tivoli Storage Manager by using the installation wizard in the *Installation Guide*.
 - Verify that the operating system is set to the language that you require. By default, the language of the operating system is the language of the installation wizard.
 - Windows The user ID that you use during installation must be a user with local Administrator authority.
 - Solaris Ensure that the LD_LIBRARY_PATH_64 environment variable is not set.

On test servers only: Use the following command to bypass prerequisite checks such as the operating system and the required memory. Do not issue this command on a production server.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

./install.sh -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS_TSM_REQ_CHECKS=true"

Windows

install.bat -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS_TSM_REQ_CHECKS=true"

6. If you use the installation wizard, complete the following steps to begin the installation:

Option	Description
Installing from a downloaded package file:	 Change to the directory where you downloaded the package file. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command: AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris ./install.sh Windows install.bat
Installing from DVD media:	 Insert the DVD into the DVD drive. Tip: Ensure that the installation files are visible on the DVD drive.
	2. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command:
	AIX HP-UX Linux
	./install.sh
	Windows
	ınstall.bat
	Windows Or, in the directory where the installation files were extracted, double-click the install.bat file.

- 7. If you are installing the server by using the wizard, follow these instructions:
 - a. In the IBM Installation Manager window, click the **Install** icon; do not click the **Update** or **Modify** icon.
 - b. Select the components to install. You must install the license package. If you select the storage agent, you must accept the Tivoli Storage Manager for Storage Area Networks license.
- 8. Alternatively, install the server in console mode. Review the information about installing the server in console mode and then complete the installation procedure, as described in the *Installation Guide*.
- **9**. Alternatively, to install the server in silent mode, follow the instructions for an installation in silent mode in the *Installation Guide*. Review the information about installing the server in silent mode. Then, complete Steps 1 and 2 of the installation procedure.
- Correct any errors that are detected during the installation process. To view installation log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click File > View Log. To collect log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click Help > Export Data for Problem Analysis.
- Obtain any applicable fixes by going to the following website: http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager. Click Fixes (downloads) and apply any applicable fixes.

12. HP-UX Linux Solaris To prevent server failures during interaction with DB2, tune the kernel parameters.

For instructions, see the section about tuning kernel parameters in the *Installation Guide*.

- **13.** Optional: To install an additional language package, use the modify function of the IBM Installation Manager.
- 14. Optional: To upgrade to a newer version of a language package, use the update function of the IBM Installation Manager.

Related concepts:

Appendix E, "Services associated with the Tivoli Storage Manager server," on page 555

Scenario 2: Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance

Create the directories that the server instance needs for database and recovery logs, and create the user ID that will own the server instance.

Before you begin

Review the information about planning space for the server before you complete this task. See "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

Procedure

1. Create the user ID that will own the server instance. You use this user ID when you create the server instance in a later step.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Create a user ID and group that will be the owner of the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance.

a. Create the user ID and group.

Restriction: In the user ID, only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_) can be used. The user ID and group name must comply with the following rules:

- The length must be 8 characters or less.
- The user ID and group name cannot start with *ibm*, *sql*, *sys*, or a numeral.
- The user ID and group name cannot be *user, admin, guest, public, local,* or any SQL reserved word.

For example, create user ID tsminst1 in group tsmsrvrs. The following examples show how to create this user ID and group by using operating system commands:

AIX

- # mkgroup id=1001 tsmsrvrs
- # mkuser id=1002 pgrp=tsmsrvrs home=/home/tsminst1 tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1

HP-UX

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
- # useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs
 - -s /bin/ksh tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1

Linux

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
- # useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/bash tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1

Solaris

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
- # useradd -d /export/home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs
 -s /bin/ksh tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1
- b. Log out and then log in to your system by using the new user ID and password. Use an interactive login program, such as telnet, so that you are prompted for the password and can change it if necessary.
- c. If a configuration profile does not exist for the user ID, create the file. For example, create a .profile file if you are using the Korn shell (ksh).

Windows

Identify the user account that will own the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance. When the server is started as a Windows service, this is the account that the service will log on to. The user account must have administrative authority on the system. One user account can own more than one server instance.

You can create a user account, or use an existing account.

If you have multiple servers on one system and want to run each server with a different user account, create a user account in this step.

a. Create the user ID.

Restriction: The user ID can contain only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_). The user ID must be 30 characters or less, and cannot start with *ibm*, *sql*, *sys*, or a numeral. The user ID and group name cannot be *user*, *admin*, *guest*, *public*, *local*, or any SQL reserved word.

Use the following command to create the user ID:

net user user_ID * /add

You are prompted to create and verify a password for the new user ID.

b. Issue the following operating system commands to add the new user ID to the Administrators groups:

net localgroup Administrators user_ID /add
net localgroup DB2ADMNS user_ID /add

- c. Log in to your system, by using the new user ID and password.
- d. For all directories that were created for the server instance, ensure that the user ID for the server instance has read/write access. The directories to check include the instance directory and all database and log directories.

2. Create the directories that the server requires. Ensure that you are logged in under the new user ID that you created.

You need a unique, empty directory for each item in the following table. Create the database directories, the active log directory, and the archive log directory on different physical volumes. For space requirements, see "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris

Table 39. Worksheet for creating required directories

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsminst1	
The database directories	<pre>mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb001 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb002 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb003 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb004</pre>	
Active log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmlog	
Archive log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmlogmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlogfailover	

Windows

Table 40. Worksheet for creating required directories

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir d:\tsm\server1	
The database directories	mkdir d:\tsm\db001 mkdir e:\tsm\db002 mkdir f:\tsm\db003 mkdir g:\tsm\db004	
Active log directory	mkdir h:\tsm\log	
Archive log directory	mkdir i:\tsm\archlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir j:\tsm\logmirror	

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir k:\tsm\archlogfailover	

Table 40. Worksheet for creating required directories (continued)

When a server is initially created by using the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility or the configuration wizard, a server database and recovery log are created. In addition, files are created to hold database information that is used by the database manager.

3. Create additional logical volumes and mount the volumes on the directories that were created in the previous step.

What to do next

Continue the upgrade process by using one of the following topics:

"Scenario 2: Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard"

"Scenario 2: Upgrading the server manually by using utilities" on page 164

Related tasks:

"Planning space for the upgrade process and the upgraded server" on page 37 **Related reference**:

"Server naming best practices" on page 70

Scenario 2: Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard

The wizard offers a guided approach to upgrading a server. By using the wizard, you can avoid some configuration steps that are complex when done manually. Start the wizard on the system where you installed the V7.1 server program.

Before you begin

You must complete all preceding steps to prepare for the upgrade, to install the upgrade utilities, to install the V7.1 server program, and to create the directories and user ID for the server instance.

Procedure

1. Ensure that the following requirements are met.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

- The system must have the X Window client. You must also be running an X Window server on your desktop.
- The system must have one of the following protocols enabled. Ensure that the port that the protocol uses is not blocked by a firewall.
 - Secure Shell (SSH). Ensure that the port is set to the default value, 22. Also, ensure that the SSH daemon service has access rights for connecting to the system by using localhost.
 - Remote shell (rsh).
 - Remote Execution Protocol (REXEC).
• You must be able to log in to the system with the user ID that you created for the server instance, by using the SSH, rsh, or REXEC protocol. When you use the wizard, you must provide this user ID and password to access that system.

Windows

- The system where you installed the V7.1 server program must have the Windows server message block (SMB) protocol enabled. SMB is the interface that is used by File and Print Sharing (also known as CIFS). To use the SMB protocol, you must ensure that File and Print Sharing is enabled, and that port 445 is not blocked by your firewall.
- If the V5 server is on a different system than the V7.1 server, that system must also have SMB enabled.
- You must be able to log on to the system that has SMB enabled by using either the user ID that you created for the server instance, or another user ID that exists on the system. When you use the wizard, you must provide the user ID and password to access the system.
- 2. Windows If the system is running on Windows Server 2008, complete the following steps to disable User Account Control:
 - a. Ensure that the Remote Registry in Windows Services is started, and ports 445, 137, and 139 are unblocked in the firewall.
 - b. Configure both the framework server and the targets as members of a Windows domain. Use a user account in that domain, or in a trusted domain, when you connect to the target.
 - c. Connect to the target workstation by enabling and using the built-in administrator account. To enable the built-in administrator account, click
 Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Local Security Policy > Security
 Settings > Local Policies > Security Options. Double-click the Accounts:
 Administrator account status section. Select Enable and click OK.
 - d. Click Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Local Security Policy > Security Settings > Local Policies > Security Options. Double-click the User Account Control: Run all administrators in Admin Approval Mode section. Select Disable and click OK.
- 3. Start the upgrade wizard, dsmupgdx, from the V7.1 server installation directory.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Log in using the root user ID. Issue the command: /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmupgdx

Windows

Open a new Command Prompt window, and issue the command:

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmupgdx.exe"

4. Follow the instructions to complete the upgrade. The upgrade wizard can be stopped and restarted, but the server will not be operational until the entire upgrade process is complete.

Important: Read all messages that appear for each phase of the upgrade process, in the message display area within the wizard. Informational messages might show actions that occurred during the process that are important to you.

What to do next

To complete the upgrade, perform the steps described in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Scenario 2: Upgrading the server manually by using utilities

Use the utilities to upgrade the server by using a command interface.

Before you begin

Complete all preceding steps to prepare for the upgrade. Ensure that you have installed the upgrade utilities, installed the V7.1 server program, and created the directories and user ID for the server instance.

Procedure

Complete the following steps:

- 1. "Scenario 2: Creating and formatting the new database"
- 2. "Scenario 2: Moving the server database over a network" on page 169
- 3. "Scenario 2: Creating a Windows service for the server instance" on page 170
- 4. "Scenario 2: Configuring the system for database backup" on page 171

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Related concepts:

"DSMUPGRD upgrade utilities" on page 16

Scenario 2: Creating and formatting the new database

Create the server instance and format files for an empty V7.1 database.

Procedure

1. Log on to the system where you installed the V7.1 program.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Log in by using the root user ID. Verify the following items:

• The home directory for the user, /home/tsminst1, exists. If there is no home directory, you must create it.

The instance directory stores the following core files that are generated by the Tivoli Storage Manager server:

- The server options file, dsmserv.opt
- The server key database file, cert.kdb, and the .arm files, which are used by clients and other servers to import the Secure Sockets Layer certificates of the server
- Device configuration file, if the DEVCONFIG server option does not specify a fully qualified name
- Volume history file, if the VOLUMEHISTORY server option does not specify a fully qualified name
- Volumes for DEVTYPE=FILE storage pools, if the directory for the device class is not fully specified, or not fully qualified
- User exits
- Trace output, if it is not fully qualified
- A shell configuration file, for example, .profile, exists in the home directory. The root user and instance user ID must have write

permission to this file. For more information, go to the DB2 Information Center (http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/ v10r5), and search for information about Linux and UNIX environment variable settings.

Windows

Log on as an administrator.

2. Create a Tivoli Storage Manager instance by using the **db2icrt** command.

AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris	
-----	-------	-------	---------	--

Enter the following command on one line. For the instance name, specify the user ID that you created to own the instance:

AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris

/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2icrt -a server -s ese -u
instance_name instance_name

For example, if the user ID for this instance is tsminst1, use the following command to create the instance:

AIX HP-UX	Linux	Solaris
-----------	-------	---------

/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2icrt -a server -s ese -u
tsminst1 tsminst1

Remember: From this point on, use this new user ID when you configure the Tivoli Storage Manager server. Log out of the root user ID, and log in using the user ID that is the instance owner.

Windows

Enter the following command on one line. The user account that you specify becomes the user ID that owns the V7.1 server; this ID is the instance user ID.

db2icrt -s ese -u user_account instance_name

For example, if the user account is *tsminst1* and the server instance is *Server1*, enter the following command:

db2icrt -s ese -u tsminst1 server1

The database service for the server instance logs on to the user account that is specified in this command.

Use the registry key name of the V5 server as the instance name for the V7.1 server. You are prompted to enter the password for the user account.

The instance name that you specify on this **db2icrt** command is the name that you later specify with the -k option on the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** command, when you create and format the database and recovery log.

- **3**. Log on to the system by using the user ID that owns the V7.1 server instance (the instance user ID).
- 4. Copy the configuration files to the instance directory that you created for the new server. The files are the configuration files that you saved from the original V5 server:
 - Device configuration
 - Server options file, which is typically named dsmserv.opt

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

For example, if you created the instance directory that is shown in the example in the step to create directories for the V7.1 server, copy the files into the following directory:



Ensure that the user ID that owns the V7.1 server (the instance user ID) has ownership or read/write permission to the files that you copied.

- 5. Edit the server options file.
 - a. Remove any options that are not supported for V7.1. For the list of deleted options, see Table 29 on page 67.
 - b. Verify that the server options file contains at least one VOLUMEHISTORY option and at least one DEVCONFIG option. By specifying these options, you ensure that a volume history file and a device configuration file are generated and updated automatically. If you must restore the database, these files are required.
 - c. Check whether the server options file includes the TXNGROUPMAX option with a value, and if it does, what the value is. You might want to change the current value because the default value for this option changed from 256 to 4096, starting in V6. The increased value can improve the performance for data movement operations such as storage pool migration and storage pool backup.
 - If the server options file does not include this option, the server automatically uses the new default value of 4096.
 - If the server options file includes a value for this option, the server uses that specified value. If the specified value is less than 4096, consider increasing the value, or removing the option so that the new default value is applied.
- 6. Change the default path for the database.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Change the default path for the database to be the same as the instance directory for the server. Issue the command: db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath *instance directory*

For example:

db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath /tsminst1

Windows

Change the default path for the database to be the drive where the instance directory for the server is located. Complete the following steps:

- a. Click Start > Programs > IBM DB2 > DB2TSM1 > Command Line Tools > Command Line Processor.
- b. Enter quit to exit the command line processor.

A window with a command prompt opens, with the environment correctly set up to successfully issue the commands in the next steps.

c. From the command prompt in that window, issue the following command to set the environment variable for the server instance that you are working with:

set db2instance=instance_name

The *instance_name* is the same as the instance name that you specified when you issued the **db2icrt** command. For example, to set the environment variable for the Server1 server instance, issue the following command:

- set db2instance=server1
- d. Issue the command to set the default drive:
 db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath *instance location*

For example, if the instance directory is d:\tsm\server1, the instance location is drive d:. Enter the command:

db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath d:

7. Modify the library path to use the version of the IBM Global Security Kit (GSKit) that is installed with the Tivoli Storage Manager server:

AIX Issue the following command:

export LIBPATH=/usr/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LIBPATH

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris You must update the following files to set the library path when DB2 or the Tivoli Storage Manager server is started:

- instance_directory/sqllib/usercshrc
- instance_directory/sqllib/userprofile

For the *instance_directory*/sqllib/usercshrc file, add the following lines:

- AIX setenv LIBPATH /usr/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LIBPATH
- HP-UX Solaris
 - setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH /opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
- Linux
 - setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH /usr/local/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH

For the *instance_directory*/sqllib/userprofile file, add the following lines:

- AIX LIBPATH=/usr/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LIBPATH export LIBPATH
- HP-UX Solaris

LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH export LD_LIBRARY_PATH

- Linux
 - LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/usr/local/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH export LD_LIBRARY_PATH

Verify the library path settings and ensure that the GSKit version is 8.0.14.14 or later. Issue the following commands:

• AIX

echo \$LIBPATH gsk8capicmd_64 -version gsk8ver_64

HP-UX Linux Solaris

echo \$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
gsk8capicmd_64 -version
gsk8ver_64

If the GSKit version is not 8.0.14.14 or later, you must reinstall the Tivoli Storage Manager server. The reinstallation ensures that the correct GSKit version is available.

- 8. Change to the instance directory that you created for the server.
- **9**. Create and format the database and recovery logs. In the command, specify the directories that you created for the database and logs. The directories must be empty.

AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris	
7.07	111 0/1	Ennax	oonanio	

For example, to get an active log size of 16 GB (16384 MB, the default size), issue the following command, on one line:

```
/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmserv loadformat \
dbdir=/tsmdb001,/tsmdb002,/tsmdb003,/tsmdb004 \
activelogsize=16384 activelogdirectory=/tsmlog \
mirrorlogdirectory=/tsmlogmirror archlogdirectory=/tsmarchlog
```

Windows

For example, to get an active log size of 16 GB (16384 MB, the default size) for the Server1 server instance, issue the following command, on one line:

```
"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmserv" loadformat
dbdir=d:\tsm\db001,e:\tsm\db002,f:\tsm\db003,g:\tsm\db004
activelogsize=16384 activelogdirectory=h:\tsm\log
mirrorlogdirectory=j:\tsm\logmirror archlogdirectory=i:\tsm\archlog
```

If the server that you are upgrading is not Server1, you must use the -k option. The -k option specifies the instance name for running this utility. For example, if the system has more than one server instance and the instance that you are upgrading is Server2, issue the command:

```
"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmserv" -k server2
loadformat dbdir=d:\tsm\db001,e:\tsm\db002,f:\tsm\db003,g:\tsm\db004
activelogsize=16384 activelogdirectory=h:\tsm\log
mirrorlogdirectory=j:\tsm\logmirror archlogdirectory=i:\tsm\archlog
```

Important: The server instance that you specify must have already been through all preceding steps for the upgrade process, including the creation of the database instance (**db2icrt** command).

10. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages. The final message indicates success or failure of the operation.

Related tasks:

"Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39

Related reference:

DSMSERV LOADFORMAT (Format a database)

"Deleted server commands, utilities, and options" on page 65

Scenario 2: Moving the server database over a network

Move the database by starting the insertion process for the V7.1 server to accept the server database. Then, start the extraction process for the V5 server to extract and send the database.

Before you begin

Ensure that the V5 server and the V7.1 server are not running.

Procedure

 Start the insertion process on the V7.1 server to accept the database. To monitor the process, direct the output of the process to a file. For example, start the server, allowing 60 minutes (the default time) for the other server to contact the V7.1 server and directing the process output to insert.out, by using this command:

AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris	
nohup /opt sesswait=6	:/tivoli/t 50 >insert	sm/server/ .out 2>&1	bin/dsmsen &	rv insertdb \
Windows				

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmserv" insertdb sesswait=60 1>>insert.out 2>&1

The server starts and waits up to 60 minutes to be contacted by the original server. Some time might pass during which no messages are issued. During this time, DB2 operations are running in the background. Optional: To verify that operations are continuing as expected, monitor the CPU and I/O usage for the server process and the corresponding DB2 process.

 Monitor the output of the DSMSERV INSERTDB process. Verify that the DSMSERV INSERTDB process has issued the following message before continuing to the next step:

ANR1336I INSERTDB: Ready for connections from the source server

Issue the following command to monitor the process output in the insert.out file:

tail -f insert.out

Tip: On Windows systems, use the **tail** command or an equivalent utility with which you can monitor the contents of a file as it changes. For example, the Windows Server 2003 Resource Kit Tools includes the **tail** command, which can be used as shown in the preceding example.

3. Start the extraction from the original server. Specify the TCP/IP address and port for the V7.1 server. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring. For example, enter the following command on one line:

AIX

nohup /usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd extractdb \
hladdress=127.0.0.1 lladdress=1500 >extract.out 2>&1 &

HP-UX Linux Solaris

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd extractdb \
hladdress=127.0.0.1 lladdress=1500 >extract.out 2>&1 &

Windows

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd" extractdb hladdress=127.0.0.1
 lladdress=1500 1>>extract.out 2>&1

4. Monitor the processes for errors and warning messages, and for items that you might need to act on. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to monitor the extraction process: tail -f extract.out

The length of time that the process runs depends on the size of the database, the hardware being used, and the network.

5. Examine the process outputs for the extraction and insertion processes to find the messages that indicate the success or failure of the operations.

Process	Success message	Failure message
Extraction	ANR1382I EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed.	ANR1396E EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed with errors.
Insertion	ANR1395I INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed.	ANR1396E INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed with errors.

Related reference:

"DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB (Extract data from a V5 server database)" on page 529

"DSMSERV INSERTDB (Move a server database into an empty database)" on page 538

Scenario 2: Creating a Windows service for the server instance

Windows

A Windows service is created for the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server automatically if you use the upgrade wizard (**dsmupgdx**). If you do not use the wizard, you must create the Windows service for the Tivoli Storage Manager server manually.

Procedure

- Change to the installation directory for the server program. By default, the directory is C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\console. If you installed the server in a different directory, change to the console subdirectory of the server installation directory.
- 2. Install the Windows service by using the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance name and password in the service name. Issue the following command:

```
install "TSM server_instance_name"
   "C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmsvc.exe"
instance owner instance owner password
```

where:

"TSM *server_instance_name*" is the name of the service that is being installed.

server_instance_name is the instance name that was specified when you issued the **db2icrt** command.

instance_owner is the instance owner account; this account will own the service.

instance_owner_password is the password for the instance owner account.

Example

To install the Windows service for the server1 server instance, enter the following command on one line. The example uses rudy as the instance owner and s21ret as the password for the instance owner account. install "TSM server1" "C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmsvc.exe" rudy s21ret

3. Optional: Manually change the service to an automatic startup type by using Windows administrative tools (**Administrative Tools** > **Services**).

Related tasks:

"Starting the server on Windows systems" on page 331

Scenario 2: Configuring the system for database backup

The database manager and the Tivoli Storage Manager API must be configured so that the database manager can back up the server database. The configuration is completed for you automatically if you use the upgrade wizard (**dsmupgdx**). If you do not use the wizard, you must complete the configuration manually.

Procedure

- "Scenario 2: Configuring the system for database backup on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems"
- "Scenario 2: Configuring the system for database backup on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 173

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Scenario 2: Configuring the system for database backup on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

If you did not use the upgrade wizard, you must complete the configuration for the database backup manually.

About this task

Starting with Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1, it is no longer necessary to set the API password during a manual configuration of the server. If you set the API password during the manual configuration process, attempts to back up the database might fail.

Complete the following steps before you issue either the **BACKUP DB** or the **RESTORE DB** command.

Attention: If the database is unusable, the entire Tivoli Storage Manager server is unavailable. If a database is lost and cannot be recovered, it might be difficult or impossible to recover data that was managed by that server. Therefore, it is critically important to back up the database.

In the following commands, replace the example values with your actual values. The examples use tsminst1 for the server instance user ID, /tsminst1 for the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance directory, and /home/tsminst1 as the home directory of the server instance user.

Procedure

- 1. Set the Tivoli Storage Manager API environment-variable configuration for the database instance:
 - a. Log in by using the tsminst1 user ID.
 - b. When user tsminst1 is logged in, ensure that the DB2 environment is correctly initialized. The DB2 environment is initialized by running the /home/tsminst1/sqllib/db2profile script, which normally runs automatically from the profile of the user ID. Ensure that the .profile file exists in the home directory of the instance user, for example, /home/tsminst1/.profile. If .profile does not run the db2profile script, add the following lines:

c. In the *instance_directory*/sqllib/userprofile file, add the following lines:

DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory/tsmdbmgr.opt DSMI_DIR=server_bin_directory/dbbkapi DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory export DSMI_CONFIG DSMI_DIR DSMI_LOG

- d. In the instance_directory/sqllib/usercshrc file, add the following lines: setenv DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory/tsmdbmgr.opt setenv DSMI_DIR=server_bin_directory/dbbkapi setenv DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory
- 2. Log out and log in again as tsminst1, or issue this command:

. ~/.profile

Ensure that you enter a space after the initial dot (.) character.

3. Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.opt in the server instance directory, which is in the /tsminst1 directory in this example, and add the following line: SERVERNAME TSMDBMGR_TSMINST1

The value for SERVERNAME must be consistent in the tsmdbmgr.opt and dsm.sys files.

4. Locate the Tivoli Storage Manager API dsm.sys configuration file. By default, the dsm.sys file is in the following location:

server_bin_directory/dbbkapi/dsm.sys

5. As root user, add the following lines to the dsm.sys configuration file:

```
servername TSMDBMGR_TSMINST1
commmethod tcpip
tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport 1500
errorlogname /tsminst1
nodename $$_TSMDBMGR_$$
```

where

• servername matches the servername value in the tsmdbmgr.opt file.

- commmethod specifies the client API that is used to contact the server for database backup. This value can be tcpip or sharedmem. For more information about shared memory, see Step 6.
- tcpserveraddr specifies the server address that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be localhost.
- tcpport specifies the port number that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. Ensure that you enter the same tcpport value that is specified in the dsmserv.opt server options file.
- errorlogname specifies the error log where the client API logs errors that are encountered during a database backup. This log is typically in the server instance directory. However, this log can be placed in any location where the instance user ID has write-permission.
- nodename specifies the node name that the client API uses to connect to the server during a database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be \$\$_TSMDBMGR_\$\$.

Linux Do not add the PASSWORDACCESS generate option to the dsm.sys configuration file. This option can cause the database backup to fail.

- 6. Optional: Configure the server to back up the database by using shared memory. In this way, you might be able to reduce the processor load and improve throughput. Complete the following steps:
 - a. Review the dsmserv.opt file. If the following lines are not in the file, add them:

commmethod sharedmem
shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port that you use for shared memory.

b. In the dsm.sys configuration file, locate the following lines:

commmethod tcpip
tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport port_number

Replace the specified lines with the following lines: commmethod sharedmem shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port that you use for shared memory.

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Scenario 2: Configuring the system for database backup on Microsoft Windows systems

Windows

If you did not use the upgrade wizard, you must complete the configuration for the database backup manually.

About this task

Complete the following steps before you issue either the **BACKUP DB** or the **RESTORE DB** command.

Attention: If the database is unusable, the entire Tivoli Storage Manager server is unavailable. If a database is lost and cannot be recovered, it might be difficult or impossible to recover data that was managed by that server. Therefore, it is critically important to back up the database.

In the following commands, the examples use server1 for the database instance and d:\tsmserver1 for the Tivoli Storage Manager server directory. When you issue the commands, replace these values with your actual values.

Procedure

1. Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.env in the d:\tsmserver1 directory with the following contents:

DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory\tsmdbmgr.opt DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory

- 2. Set the DSMI_api environment-variable configuration for the database instance:
 - a. Open a DB2 command window. One method is to go to the C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\db2\bin directory, or if you installed Tivoli Storage Manager in a different location, go to the db2\bin subdirectory in your main installation directory. Then, issue the following command: db2cmd
 - b. Issue the following command:

db2set -i server1 DB2_VENDOR_INI=d:\tsmserver1\tsmdbmgr.env

c. Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.opt in the d:\tsmserver1 directory with the following contents:

where

- nodename specifies the node name that the client API uses to connect to the server during a database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be \$\$_TSMDBMGR_\$\$.
- commmethod specifies the client API that is used to contact the server for database backup. This value can be tcpip or sharedmem. For more information about shared memory, see Step 3.
- tcpserveraddr specifies the server address that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be localhost.
- tcpport is the port number that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. Ensure that you enter the same tcpport value that is specified in the dsmserv.opt server options file.
- passwordaccess is required to ensure that the backup node can connect to the server.
- errorlogname is the error log where the client API logs errors that are encountered during a database backup. This log is typically in the server instance directory. However, this log can be placed in any location where the instance user ID has write-permission.
- **3**. Optional: Configure the server to back up the database by using shared memory. In this way, you might be able to reduce the processor load and improve throughput. Complete the following steps:

a. Review the dsmserv.opt file. If the following lines are not in the file, add them:

commmethod sharedmem
shmport port_number

- where *port_number* specifies the port to use for shared memory.
- b. In the tsmdbmgr.opt file, locate the following lines:

commmethod tcpip tcpserveraddr localhost tcpport 1500

Replace the specified lines with the following lines: commmethod sharedmem shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port to use for shared memory.

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Chapter 6. Scenario 3: New system, media method

Use this procedure if you are upgrading the Tivoli Storage Manager server on a different system than your V5 server, and you are using the media method to move the data.

Procedure

The procedure for upgrading the server includes the following tasks:

- 1. "Scenario 3: Preparing for the upgrade"
- 2. "Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities" on page 186
- 3. Upgrading the server, by using one of the following methods:
 - "Scenario 3: Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard" on page 194
 - "Scenario 3: Upgrading the server manually by using utilities" on page 202
- 4. The following tasks are completed after the upgrade:
 - a. "Verifying access to storage pools on disk" on page 323
 - b. "Setting up Solaris services for the server instance" on page 324
 - c. "Configuring server options for server database maintenance" on page 324
 - d. "Starting the server instance after the upgrade" on page 325
 - e. "Registering licenses" on page 334
 - f. "Backing up the database after upgrading the server" on page 335
 - g. "Verifying the upgraded server" on page 336
 - h. "Changing the host name for the Tivoli Storage Manager server" on page 336
 - i. "Updating automation" on page 338
 - j. "Monitoring the upgraded server" on page 339
 - K. "Removing GSKit Version 7 after upgrading to Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1" on page 340

Scenario 3: Preparing for the upgrade

Prepare for the upgrade by checking requirements, preparing the space that is required, backing up the server, and modifying certain server settings.

About this task

Follow the preparation steps carefully to protect your server and its data.

Important: It is possible, after the upgrade to V7.1 is complete, that conditions might cause the need to temporarily revert to the previous version of the server. Successfully reverting to the previous version of the server is possible only if you have completed all preparation steps. To understand why it is important to complete all preparation steps, review the procedure for reverting an upgraded server to its previous version.

Procedure

- 1. "Scenario 3: Checking the prerequisites for the upgrade" on page 178
- 2. "Scenario 3: Preparing space for the upgrade process" on page 181

- 3. "Scenario 3: Modifying the server before the upgrade" on page 182
- 4. "Scenario 3: Disabling sessions" on page 183
- 5. "Scenario 3: Backing up storage pools and the server database" on page 184
- 6. "Scenario 3: Moving the NODELOCK file" on page 184
- 7. "Scenario 3: Backing up configuration information" on page 185
- 8. "Scenario 3: Creating a summary of database contents" on page 185
- **9**. "Scenario 3: Stopping the server before installing the upgrade" on page 186 **Related tasks**:

"Reverting from V7.1 to the previous V5 server version" on page 351

Scenario 3: Checking the prerequisites for the upgrade

Check your system against requirements for the server.

Procedure

- 1. Ensure that the server that you plan to upgrade is at the V5.5 release level, and that the latest interim fix is installed. For example, if the server is at V5.5.6, install the latest interim fix for V5.5.6. Take the following actions:
 - a. Select the appropriate server level. For detailed guidelines, see "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36. If the server is at an appropriate level, no action is required.
 - b. If the server is not at an appropriate level, download the appropriate server fix pack and the latest interim fix from the FTP downloads site at ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server/. Locate the appropriate version of Tivoli Storage Manager and install it.
- 2. Ensure that the system where the V5 server is located meets the minimum requirements. Review the information in "Hardware and software requirements for the V5 server system that is being upgraded" on page 17 to determine whether you must update your system before you continue.
- 3. Ensure that the system where you plan to install the V7.1 server meets requirements for the operating system type and level. For the latest information about system requirements, see Tivoli Storage Manager Supported Operating Systems (http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21243309).

If you are upgrading Tivoli Storage Manager to a different operating system, a limited set of migration paths is available. For instructions about migrating a server that is running on a z/OS operating system, see Part 3, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on z/OS systems to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z," on page 437. For instructions about migrating a server that is running on an AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris operating system, see Part 2, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux," on page 355.

Some platforms that were supported for earlier versions of the server are not supported for V7.1. If the server that you want to upgrade is running on one of these platforms, you cannot upgrade your server to V7.1 on the same platform. You must install your V7.1 server on a system that is a specific supported platform, depending on the original platform. For required platforms, see the following table.

Table 41. Required platforms for upgrading from V5 to V7.1

Platform for V5 server	Required platform for upgrade to V7.1
HP-UX running on a PA-RISC system	HP-UX running on an Intel Itanium system

Platform for V5 server	Required platform for upgrade to V7.1
Linux running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Linux running on an x86_64 system
Linux running on an x86_32 system	Linux running on an x86_64 system
Solaris running on an x86_64 system	Linux running on an x86_64 system
Windows running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Windows running on an x86_64 system

Table 41. Required platforms for upgrading from V5 to V7.1 (continued)

If you are upgrading from Tivoli Storage Manager V5 to V7.1 on a new system, restrictions apply. Ensure that you install the V7.1 server in a compatible hardware and software environment, as described in the following table.

V5 server	V7.1 server	Comments
AIX running on an IBM POWER system	AIX running on an IBM POWER system	
HP-UX running on an Itanium system	HP-UX running on an Itanium system	
HP-UX running on a PA-RISC system	HP-UX running on an Itanium system	HP-UX running on PA-RISC is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux running on an IBM POWER system	Linux running on an IBM POWER system	
Linux running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Linux running on an x86_64 system	Linux running on Itanium is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux running on an x86_32 system	Linux running on an x86_64 system	Linux running on x86_32 is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux on System z	Linux on System z	

Table 42. Requirements for upgrading from V5 to V7.1 on a new system

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

V5 server	V7.1 server	Comments
Solaris running on an x86_64 system	Operating system depends on the migration method	A V7.1 server cannot be installed on a Solaris x86_64 system. However, you can migrate a V5 server that is running on a Solaris x86_64 operating system to V7.1 on a Linux x86_64 operating system. For instructions, see Part 2, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux," on page 355. Alternatively, you can migrate the Solaris x86_64 system by installing a V7.1 server on any operating system that is supported for V7.1. Then, use Tivoli Storage Manager server EXPORT and IMPORT commands to move the server from the V5 source system.
Windows running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Windows running on an x86_64 system	Windows running on Itanium is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Windows running on an x86_32 system	Windows running on an x86_64 system	Windows running on x86_32 is not supported for V7.1 servers.
z/OS	AIX or Linux on System z	See the section on migrating from V5 on z/OS to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z.

Table 42. Requirements for upgrading from V5 to V7.1 on a new system (continued)

4. Verify that the system memory meets the server requirements. If you plan to run multiple instances of the V7.1 server on the system, each instance requires the memory that is listed for one server. Multiply the memory for one server by the number of instances that are planned for the system.

For specific information about memory requirements, see the section for your operating system:

Operating system	Memory requirements
AIX	"Server requirements on AIX systems" on page 21
HP-UX	"Server requirements on HP-UX systems" on page 24
Linux	"Server requirements on Linux systems" on page 26
Solaris	"Server requirements on Solaris systems" on page 31

Table 43. Memory requirements for the V7.1 system

Table 43. Memory requirements for the V7.1 system (continued)

Operating system	Memory requirements
Windows	"Server requirements on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 33

5. Ensure that the system has enough disk storage for the database and recovery logs. Review the planning information for requirements and guidance.

If you are adding new hardware for the server, such as new disk storage for the database, ensure that the hardware is installed and running.

6. Ensure that the new system can access the storage devices that are used on the original system. This includes disk and tape devices that are used to store client data.

You might need to leave a storage device attached to the original system to perform the database extraction. Then move the storage device to the new system.

Related concepts:

"Hardware and software requirements for upgrading to the V7.1 server" on page 17

Scenario 3: Preparing space for the upgrade process

Determine the amount and type of space that is required for the upgrade process before beginning the process.

Procedure

- 1. Verify that the system has the amount of space that was estimated in the planning step. Use the planning worksheet that you completed with your information. See "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.
- **2**. Ensure that you have space available for storing the database and the manifest file that the extraction process creates.
 - a. Identify the device class to which you will extract the original database. The definition must exist in the server database, not just in the device configuration file. View information about devices classes by issuing the command:

query devclass format=detailed

The device class must be a sequential device class that has volumes or space available. Define a new device class if necessary. The device class type cannot be **NAS** or **CENTERA**.

Important: You must confirm *now* that the definition that is in the server database for the device class is correct. After you prepare the database for upgrade (by completing the **Prepare Database** phase in the upgrade wizard, or by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility), you cannot update this device class definition. For example, check the path for a FILE device class. If you copied the original server to a different system to extract the data, the path might be different on the current system.

b. Ensure that space or volumes are available in the selected device class. The amount of space that you need is about the same as the current size of the original database.

For example, if the device class is FILE, ensure that the directory has sufficient space for your environment. If the device class is TAPE, ensure that sufficient scratch volumes are available for your environment. Ensure that the instance user ID that you create for the upgraded server has access permission to the location of the extracted data.

c. Check that the access permissions are correct for the location that you plan to specify for the manifest file.

The user ID that will run the database preparation and extraction utilities (**DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** and **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB**) must have write access to this file. This is typically the root user ID.

When the data is later inserted into the V7.1 database, the instance user ID that you use for the upgraded server must have access permission for the manifest file.

The manifest file is typically less than 1 KB.

Related tasks:

"Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39

Scenario 3: Modifying the server before the upgrade

A command must be run on the server to prevent one type of problem during the upgrade process. Some modifications to typical server settings can be useful to prepare for the upgrade.

Procedure

1. From a Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command line, issue the command:

convert ussfilespace

This command fixes a problem that might exist in older Tivoli Storage Manager databases. If the problem does not exist in your database, the command is completed and you might see error ANR2034E. This error can be ignored. For more information, see Technote 1408895 (http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg21408895). If the problem exists in your database, the command might take some time to run.

Important: Do not skip this step. If your database has the problem and you do not run this command now, the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility fails when you run it. You must then restart the V5 server and run the **CONVERT USSFILESPACE** command before you continue the upgrade process.

2. Review the steps for reverting to the earlier version of the server in the section, "Reverting from V7.1 to the previous V5 server version" on page 351.

If you must revert to the earlier version after the upgrade to V7.1, the results of the reversion will be better if you understand the steps and prepare for the possibility now.

- **3**. Make the following adjustments to settings on your server and clients. These adjustments must be done to make it possible for you to revert to the original server after the upgrade, if problems occur.
 - a. For each sequential-access storage pool, set the **REUSEDELAY** parameter to the number of days during which you want to be able to revert to the original server, if necessary.

For example, if you want to be able to revert to the original server for up to 30 days after the upgrade to V7.1, set the **REUSEDELAY** parameter to 31 days. Issue the following administrative command:

update stgpool sequential_access_storage_pool reusedelay=31

b. For each copy storage pool, set the **RECLAIM** parameter to 100 (meaning 100%). Issue the following administrative command:

update stgpool copy_storage_pool reclaim=100

c. If you typically use a **DELETE VOLHISTORY** command to delete database backups, ensure that the command does not delete database backups too frequently. The interval between backups should be at least the same number of days that you set for the **REUSEDELAY** period for sequential-access storage pools. For example, to delete database backups every 45 days, issue the following administrative command:

delete volhist type=dbbackup todate=-45

d. For important clients that use the server, verify that the value for the schedlogretention client option is set to retain the client schedule log for a sufficient time. Update the option for clients if needed.

The entries in the client schedule log might be useful if the server must revert to the original version. If the retention period for the schedule log is too short, the schedule log information might be deleted too soon.

For example, to prune the log every 45 days and save the log entries, add the following option:

schedlogretention 45 S

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Add the option to the dsm.sys file within a server stanza.

Windows Add the option to the client options file, dsm.opt.

Scenario 3: Disabling sessions

In preparation for the upgrade, prevent activity on the server by disabling new sessions. Cancel any existing sessions.

About this task

The commands in the following procedure are Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands.

Procedure

1. Prevent all clients, storage agents, and other servers from starting new sessions with the server. Use the commands:

disable sessions client disable sessions server

For more information about these commands and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

- Verify whether any sessions exist, and notify the users that the server is going to be stopped. To check for existing sessions, use the command: query session
- 3. Cancel sessions that are still running. Use the command:

cancel session all

Scenario 3: Backing up storage pools and the server database

Immediately before upgrading the server, back up primary storage pools to copy storage pools, and perform a full database backup.

Before you begin

Back up storage pools and the server database by using Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands:

Procedure

1. Back up primary storage pools to copy storage pools by using the **BACKUP STGPOOL** command:

backup stgpool primary_pool copy_stg

where *primary_pool* specifies the primary storage pool and *copy_stg* specifies the copy storage pool. If you have been performing regular backups of the storage pools, this step backs up only the data that was added to the primary storage pools since they were last backed up.

2. Back up the database. The preferred method is to use a snapshot backup. A snapshot backup is a full database backup that does not interrupt any scheduled database backups. Issue the command:

backup db type=dbsnapshot devclass=device_class_name

The device class that you specify must exist and have volumes that are available to it. For example, to perform a snapshot backup of your database to the TAPECLASS device class by using scratch volumes, enter:

backup db type=dbsnapshot devclass=tapeclass

To use specific volumes instead of scratch volumes, specify the volume names in the command.

Tip: Consider making two copies of the backup to protect the backup from media failures. Ensure that at least one full database backup is available onsite. If you must restore the database after a failed upgrade, having an onsite backup database saves time.

Scenario 3: Moving the NODELOCK file

To ensure that licensing information is updated during the upgrade process, move the NODELOCK file from the server instance directory to another directory.

About this task

The NODELOCK file contains the licensing information from the previous Tivoli Storage Manager installation. This licensing information is replaced when the upgrade is complete.

Procedure

- 1. In the server instance directory of your installation, locate the NODELOCK file.
- 2. Move the NODELOCK file to another directory. For example, you can save it to a directory where you are saving configuration files from the previous release.

Scenario 3: Backing up configuration information

Before you install the new version, back up critical files and information for each server instance. Store the files in a safe place, on a different system from the system that is being upgraded or on offline media, such as a CD. The files are required after the installation of the new software version is complete. You also need these files if you must revert to the previous version after the upgrade.

Procedure

1. Back up device configuration information to another directory by using the following Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command:

backup devconfig filenames=file_name

where *file_name* specifies the file in which to store device configuration information.

2. Back up volume history information to another directory by using the following Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command:

backup volhistory filenames=file_name

where *file_name* specifies the file in which to store volume history information. Ensure that the volume history includes information about the database backup that you completed in the preceding steps. For example, issue the following command:

query volhistory type=dbsnapshot

Review the query output to verify that the time stamp for the database backup matches the actual time of the backup.

- 3. Save copies of the following files, which are in the server instance directory:
 - Server options file, typically named dsmserv.opt
 - dsmserv.dsk

Important: The dsmserv.dsk file is not available in Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1. Save a copy of the dsmserv.dsk file in case you must revert to V5.5.

- 4. In the server instance directory, look for the accounting log file, dsmaccnt.log. If the file exists, save a copy.
- 5. Back up any scripts that were used to complete daily housekeeping for the server. Examine the scripts for changes that are needed after the upgrade.
- 6. Store the device configuration file, the volume history file, the server options file, and the other files in a safe place. Ensure that the files are stored on a different system from the system that is being upgraded, or on offline media.

Scenario 3: Creating a summary of database contents

Create a summary of the contents of the original database. After the upgrade, you can use the same commands to compare the results and to confirm that the database contents are intact.

Procedure

Run commands that give a summary of information about your database contents. For example, issue commands that summarize the file spaces that are being protected, and save the results. For a list of commands, see "Sample commands to run for validation of the database upgrade" on page 546.

Related reference:

"Sample commands to run for validation of the database upgrade" on page 546

Scenario 3: Stopping the server before installing the upgrade

Stop all server processes and unmount any tapes that are mounted. Then, stop the server.

Procedure

Use Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands to stop the server:

1. Determine whether server processes are running. Either cancel processes, or allow them to complete. Use the following commands:

query process
cancel process process_number

Allow time for the processes to be stopped. Some processes, such as storage pool migration, might take some time to stop.

For more information about the **QUERY PROCESS** and **CANCEL PROCESS** commands and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

2. After all sessions and processes are stopped, determine whether any tapes are mounted. Unmount any tapes that are mounted. Use the following commands: query mount

dismount volume volume_name

 Stop the server. Use the following command: halt

Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities

You must install the upgrade utilities on the system where the V5 server is located. The installation package for the utilities must be downloaded from a website.

Before you begin

The preferred method is to install the latest available version of the upgrade utilities. For more information about selecting the version, see "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36.

Procedure

Use the procedure for your operating system:

- Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities on AIX systems" on page 187
- HP-UX "Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities on HP-UX systems" on page 188
- **Linux** "Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities on Linux systems" on page 189
- Solaris "Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities on Oracle Solaris systems" on page 191
- Windows "Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 193

Related concepts:

"DSMUPGRD upgrade utilities" on page 16

Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities on AIX systems

Install the upgrade utilities on the system where the V5 server is located. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

Procedure

AIX

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.x.x directory. The 5.5.x.x number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c**. Select the package that matches your operating system, and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x.x*-TIV-TSMUPG-AIX.tar.gz

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- **3**. Ensure that the system has the following file sets installed:

```
xlC.rte 8.0.0.5, or later
gsksa.rte 7.0.4.11
```

You can use the following commands to check for these file sets: lslpp -L xlC.rte

lslpp -L gsksa.rte

If needed, you can obtain the gsksa.rte file set from any of the regular V5.5 maintenance packages for the AIX server. The maintenance packages are available on the FTP downloads site: ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/maintenance/server/v5r5/AIX/

- 4. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. If you downloaded a language package, also extract the contents of that package.
- 5. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- 6. Access the System Management Interface Tool (SMIT).
 - a. Enter smitty install_update
 - b. Select Install and Update Software > Install and Update from ALL Available Software.
- 7. Select the **INPUT** device. Specify the directory location of the upgrade utilities package on the system.
- **8**. Select **Software to Install**. Press F4 or Esc+4 for the list of available file sets in the directory.

- 9. Select the file sets for the upgrade utilities, the device driver, and optionally the language package. The file set for the upgrade utilities is tivoli.tsmupg.server. Optional language packages include messages for languages other than US English.
- 10. Set COMMIT software updates to Yes. Press F4 or Esc+4.
- 11. Set SAVE replaced files to No.
- **12**. Ensure that the default settings for the options in the window for all the selected file sets show success.
- **13**. Press Enter, and respond to the ARE YOU SURE? question by pressing Enter again. The installation begins.
- 14. When the installation is complete, exit the SMIT program.
- 15. Optional: If you installed a language package, ensure that the locale environment variable is set to use it. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages: export LC MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- **16.** After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 3: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 192

Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities on HP-UX systems

HP-UX

Install the upgrade utilities on the system where the V5 server is located. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.x.x directory. The 5.5.x.x number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c.** Select the package that matches your operating system, and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x.x*-TIV-TSMUPG-*platform*.tar.gz

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the command:
 gzip -dc package name.tar.gz | tar -xvf -
- 4. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- 5. Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the source argument (-s) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

swinstall -s /tmp/TSM package_name

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin.

- 6. Optional: Install the language package.
 - a. Extract the contents of the package.

gzip -d package_name.img.gz

b. Install the package. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

swinstall -s /tmp/TSM/package_name.img package_name

c. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- 7. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 3: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 192

Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities on Linux systems

Linux

Install the upgrade utilities on the system where the V5 server is located. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/

- b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.x.x directory. The 5.5.x.x number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
- **c**. Open the directory for your operating system and download the package. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.x.x-TIV-TSMUPG-platform.tar.bz2

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the commands: bunzip2 package_name.tar.bz2 tar xvf package name.tar
- 4. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system, for example, x86_64.
- 5. Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the following command: rpm -ivh package_name.rpm

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin by default.

- 6. Optional: Install the language package.
 - a. Extract the contents of the downloaded package. bunzip2 package_name.tar.bz2 tar xvf package_name.tar
 - b. Install the package for the language that you want to use. rpm -ivh package_name.rpm
 - **c.** Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- 7. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 3: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 192

Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities on Oracle Solaris systems

Solaris

Install the upgrade utilities on the system where the V5 server is located. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

About this task

Restriction: Do *not* install the utilities in the installation directory of the server that must be upgraded. Install the utilities package in its own directory.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.x.x directory. The 5.5.x.x number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c.** Select the package that matches your operating system, and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x*.*x*-TIV-TSMUPG-*platform*.tar.Z

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- 3. Change to the directory where the upgrade utilities package was downloaded.
- 4. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the command: uncompress -c package_name.tar.Z | tar -xvf -
- 5. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the source argument (-d) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

pkgadd -d . /tmp/TSM package_name

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin by default.

- 7. Optional: Install the language package.
 - Extract the contents of the downloaded package. uncompress package_name.pkg.Z
 - b. Install the package for the language that you want to use. Use the source argument (-d) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

pkgadd -d /tmp/TSM package_name.pkg package_name

c. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- 8. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 3: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems"

Scenario 3: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

After installing the upgrade utility package, you must set environment variables in the shell from which you will run the utilities. An environment variable describes the operating environment of a process, such as the home directory or terminal in use.

About this task

The **DSMSERV_DIR** variable specifies the installed location of the upgrade utilities. By default, the location is the following directory:

AIX

/usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin

HP-UX Linux Solaris

/opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin

Procedure

Use the appropriate command for your system to set the environment variable for running the utilities. If the shell is in the ksh or bash family, enter the following command to set the **DSMSERV_DIR** variable:

export DSMSERV_DIR=upgrade_utilities_directory

If your shell is in the csh family, use the following command: setenv DSMSERV_DIR upgrade_utilities_directory

where *upgrade_utilities_directory* is the directory where the upgrade utilities are installed.

What to do next

After you set the environment variables, continue the upgrade process using one of the following topics:

- "Scenario 3: Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard" on page 194
- "Scenario 3: Upgrading the server manually by using utilities" on page 202

Scenario 3: Installing the upgrade utilities on Microsoft Windows systems

Windows

Install the upgrade utilities on the system where the V5 server is located. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

Procedure

1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.

- a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/WIN
- b. Open the 5.5.*x*.*x* directory. The 5.5.*x*.*x* number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
- **c.** Select the package and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x*.*x*-TIV-TSMUPG-Windows.exe

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, install the language package that your installation requires.
- 2. Log on with an administrator ID.
- 3. Run the executable package for the upgrade utilities.

The default location for the installation of the utilities is based on the location where the V5 server was last installed. For example, if the V5 server was installed using the default path, C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server, the upgrade utilities are installed in C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade.

Restriction: Do *not* install the utilities in the same directory as the original server that must be upgraded. Install the utilities package in its own directory.

What to do next

After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue the upgrade process using one of the following topics:

- "Scenario 3: Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard" on page 194
- "Scenario 3: Upgrading the server manually by using utilities" on page 202

Tip: When you use the upgrade utilities, if you have multiple servers running on the system, you must use the -k option to specify the name of the Windows registry key from which to retrieve information about the server being upgraded. The default value for the option is SERVER1.

Scenario 3: Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard

The wizard offers a guided approach to upgrading a server. By using the wizard, you can avoid some configuration steps that are complex when done manually. Start the wizard on the system where you installed the V7.1 server program.

Before you begin

You must complete all preceding steps to prepare for the upgrade and to install the upgrade utilities. The V7.1 server must be installed, and directories and the user ID must be created before you start the upgrade wizard.

Procedure

Complete the following steps:

- 1. Scenario 3: Installing the V7.1 server
- **2**. Scenario 3: Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance
- 3. "Scenario 3: Starting the upgrade wizard" on page 201

Scenario 3, wizard: Installing the V7.1 server

You can install the server by using the installation wizard, console mode, or silent mode.

Before you begin

You can obtain the installation package from the product DVD or from an IBM download site such as Passport Advantage or the Tivoli Storage Manager support site.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris If you plan to download the files, set the system user limit for maximum file size to unlimited to ensure that the files can be downloaded correctly.

- To query the maximum file size value, issue the following command: ulimit -Hf
- 2. If the system user limit for maximum file size is not set to unlimited, change it to unlimited by following the instructions in the documentation for your operating system.

Procedure

1. Log on to the system.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Log in by using the root user ID.

Windows Log on as an administrator. You must be logged on to the system with the administrative user ID that was used to install the V5 server.

- 2. If you are obtaining the package from an IBM download site, download the appropriate package file from one of the following websites:
 - For a new release, go to Passport Advantage at http://www.ibm.com/ software/lotus/passportadvantage/. Passport Advantage is the only website from which you can download a licensed package file.
 - For a maintenance fix, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager support site at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager.

3. If you are downloading the package from one of the download sites, complete the following steps:



- a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:
 - Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035122
 - Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http:// www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035635
 - System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035637
- b. Download the package file to the directory of your choice. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files.

Also, ensure that you have executable permission for the package file.

c. If necessary, change the file permissions by issuing the following command:

chmod a+x package_name.bin

where *package_name* is like the following example:

AIX

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-AIX.bin

HP-UX

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-HP-UX.bin

Linux

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxx86_64.bin 7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxs390x.bin

Solaris

Windows

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-SolarisSPARC.bin

In the examples, 7.1.0.000 represents the product release level.

d. Extract the installation files by issuing the following command: ./package name.bin

The package is large. Therefore, the extraction takes some time.

a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:

- Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035121
- Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http:// www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035636

- System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035638
- b. Change to the directory where you placed the executable file. In the next step, the files are extracted to the current directory. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files.
- c. To extract the installation files, double-click the executable file: package name.exe

where *package_name* is like this example:

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Windows.exe

- The package is large. Therefore, the extraction takes some time.
- 4. **AIX HP-UX Solaris** To ensure that the Tivoli Storage Manager wizards work correctly, verify that the following command is enabled:

AIX lsuser HP-UX Solaris logins

By default, the command is enabled.

- 5. If you plan to install the server by using the graphical wizard of IBM Installation Manager, review the following information and verify that your system meets the requirements:
 - Verify that all required RPM files are installed. For a list of required RPM files and instructions about installing RPM files, see the section about installing Tivoli Storage Manager by using the installation wizard in the *Installation Guide*.
 - Verify that the operating system is set to the language that you require. By default, the language of the operating system is the language of the installation wizard.
 - Windows The user ID that you use during installation must be a user with local Administrator authority.
 - Solaris Ensure that the LD_LIBRARY_PATH_64 environment variable is not set.

On test servers only: Use the following command to bypass prerequisite checks such as the operating system and the required memory. Do not issue this command on a production server.



./install.sh -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS_TSM_REQ_CHECKS=true"

Windows

install.bat -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS_TSM_REQ_CHECKS=true"

6. If you use the installation wizard, complete the following steps to begin the installation:

Option	Description
Installing from a downloaded package file:	 Change to the directory where you downloaded the package file. Change to the intervention of the int
	AIX HP-UX Linux
	./install.sh
	Windows install.bat
Installing from DVD media:	 Insert the DVD into the DVD drive. Tip: Ensure that the installation files are visible on the DVD drive.
	2. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command:
	AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris
	./install.sh
	Windows install.bat
	Windows Or, in the directory where the installation files were extracted, double-click the install.bat file.

- 7. If you are installing the server by using the wizard, follow these instructions:
 - a. In the IBM Installation Manager window, click the **Install** icon; do not click the **Update** or **Modify** icon.
 - b. Select the components to install. You must install the license package. If you select the storage agent, you must accept the Tivoli Storage Manager for Storage Area Networks license.
- **8**. Alternatively, install the server in console mode. Review the information about installing the server in console mode and then complete the installation procedure, as described in the *Installation Guide*.
- **9**. Alternatively, to install the server in silent mode, follow the instructions for an installation in silent mode in the *Installation Guide*. Review the information about installing the server in silent mode. Then, complete Steps 1 and 2 of the installation procedure.
- Correct any errors that are detected during the installation process. To view installation log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click File > View Log. To collect log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click Help > Export Data for Problem Analysis.
- Obtain any applicable fixes by going to the following website: http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager. Click Fixes (downloads) and apply any applicable fixes.

12. HP-UX Linux Solaris To prevent server failures during interaction with DB2, tune the kernel parameters.

For instructions, see the section about tuning kernel parameters in the *Installation Guide*.

- **13**. Optional: To install an additional language package, use the modify function of the IBM Installation Manager.
- 14. Optional: To upgrade to a newer version of a language package, use the update function of the IBM Installation Manager.

Related concepts:

Appendix E, "Services associated with the Tivoli Storage Manager server," on page 555

Scenario 3, wizard: Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance

Create the directories that the server instance needs for database and recovery logs, and create the user ID that will own the server instance.

Before you begin

Review the information about planning space for the server before you complete this task. See "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

Procedure

1. Create the user ID that will own the server instance. You use this user ID when you create the server instance in a later step.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Create a user ID and group that will be the owner of the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance.

a. Create the user ID and group.

Restriction: In the user ID, only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_) can be used. The user ID and group name must comply with the following rules:

- The length must be 8 characters or less.
- The user ID and group name cannot start with *ibm*, *sql*, *sys*, or a numeral.
- The user ID and group name cannot be *user*, *admin*, *guest*, *public*, *local*, or any SQL reserved word.

For example, create user ID tsminst1 in group tsmsrvrs. The following examples show how to create this user ID and group by using operating system commands:

mkgroup id=1001 tsmsrvrs

- # mkuser id=1002 pgrp=tsmsrvrs home=/home/tsminst1 tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1

HP-UX

AIX

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
- # useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs
- -s /bin/ksh tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1
Linux

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
- # useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/bash tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1

Solaris

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
- # useradd -d /export/home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs
 -s /bin/ksh tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1
- b. Log out and then log in to your system by using the new user ID and password. Use an interactive login program, such as telnet, so that you are prompted for the password and can change it if necessary.
- c. If a configuration profile does not exist for the user ID, create the file. For example, create a .profile file if you are using the Korn shell (ksh).

Windows

Identify the user account that will own the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance. When the server is started as a Windows service, this is the account that the service will log on to. The user account must have administrative authority on the system. One user account can own more than one server instance.

You can create a user account, or use an existing account.

If you have multiple servers on one system and want to run each server with a different user account, create a user account in this step.

a. Create the user ID.

Restriction: The user ID can contain only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_). The user ID must be 30 characters or less, and cannot start with *ibm*, *sql*, *sys*, or a numeral. The user ID and group name cannot be *user*, *admin*, *guest*, *public*, *local*, or any SQL reserved word.

Use the following command to create the user ID:

net user user_ID * /add

You are prompted to create and verify a password for the new user ID.

b. Issue the following operating system commands to add the new user ID to the Administrators groups:

net localgroup Administrators $user_ID$ /add net localgroup DB2ADMNS $user_ID$ /add

- c. Log in to your system, by using the new user ID and password.
- d. For all directories that were created for the server instance, ensure that the user ID for the server instance has read/write access. The directories to check include the instance directory and all database and log directories.
- 2. Create the directories that the server requires. Ensure that you are logged in under the new user ID that you created.

You need a unique, empty directory for each item in the following table. Create the database directories, the active log directory, and the archive log directory

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

on different physical volumes. For space requirements, see "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.



Table 44. Worksheet for creating required directories

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsminst1	
The database directories	<pre>mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb001 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb002 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb003 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb004</pre>	
Active log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmlog	
Archive log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmlogmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlogfailover	

Windows

Table 45. Worksheet for creating required directories

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir d:\tsm\server1	
The database directories	mkdir d:\tsm\db001 mkdir e:\tsm\db002 mkdir f:\tsm\db003 mkdir g:\tsm\db004	
Active log directory	mkdir h:\tsm\log	
Archive log directory	mkdir i:\tsm\archlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir j:\tsm\logmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir k:\tsm\archlogfailover	

When a server is initially created by using the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility or the configuration wizard, a server database and recovery log are created. In addition, files are created to hold database information that is used by the database manager.

3. Create additional logical volumes and mount the volumes on the directories that were created in the previous step.

Related tasks:

"Planning space for the upgrade process and the upgraded server" on page 37

Related reference:

"Server naming best practices" on page 70

Scenario 3: Starting the upgrade wizard

The wizard offers a guided approach to upgrading a server. By using the wizard, you can avoid some configuration steps that are complex when done manually. Start the wizard on the system where you installed the V7.1 server program.

Before you begin

You must complete all preceding steps to prepare for the upgrade, to install the upgrade utilities, to install the V7.1 server program, and to create the directories and user ID for the server instance.

Procedure

1. Ensure that the following requirements are met.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

- The system where you installed the V7.1 server program must have the X Window client. You must also be running an X Window server on your desktop.
- The systems must have one of the following protocols enabled. Ensure that the port that the protocol uses is not blocked by a firewall.
 - Secure Shell (SSH). Ensure that the port is set to the default value,
 22. Also, ensure that the SSH daemon service has access rights for connecting to the system by using localhost.
 - Remote shell (rsh).
 - Remote Execution Protocol (REXEC).
- You must be able to log in to the V7.1 system with the user ID that you created for the server instance, using the SSH, RSH, or REXEC protocol. When using the wizard, you must provide this user ID and password to access that system.

Windows

- The system where you installed the V7.1 server program must have the Windows server message block (SMB) protocol enabled. SMB is the interface that is used by File and Print Sharing (also known as CIFS). To use the SMB protocol, you must ensure that File and Print Sharing is enabled, and that port 445 is not blocked by your firewall.
- If the V5 server is on a different system than the V7.1 server, that system must also have SMB enabled.
- You must be able to log on to the system that has SMB enabled by using either the user ID that you created for the server instance, or

another user ID that exists on the system. When you use the wizard, you must provide the user ID and password to access the system.

- 2. Windows If the system is running on Windows Server 2008, complete the following steps to disable User Account Control:
 - a. Ensure that the Remote Registry in Windows Services is started, and ports 445, 137, and 139 are unblocked in the firewall.
 - b. Configure both the framework server and the targets as members of a Windows domain. Use a user account in that domain, or in a trusted domain, when you connect to the target.
 - c. Connect to the target workstation by enabling and using the built-in administrator account. To enable the built-in administrator account, click Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Local Security Policy > Security Settings > Local Policies > Security Options. Double-click the Accounts: Administrator account status section. Select Enable and click OK.
 - d. Click Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Local Security Policy > Security Settings > Local Policies > Security Options. Double-click the User Account Control: Run all administrators in Admin Approval Mode section. Select Disable and click OK.
- 3. Start the upgrade wizard, dsmupgdx, from the V7.1 server installation directory.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Log in using the root user ID. Issue the command: /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmupgdx

Windows

Open a new Command Prompt window, and issue the command: "c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmupgdx.exe"

4. Follow the instructions to complete the upgrade. The upgrade wizard can be stopped and restarted, but the server will not be operational until the entire upgrade process is complete.

Important: Read all messages that appear for each phase of the upgrade process, in the message display area within the wizard. Informational messages might show actions that occurred during the process that are important to you.

What to do next

To complete the upgrade, perform the steps described in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Scenario 3: Upgrading the server manually by using utilities

Use the utilities to upgrade the server by using a command interface.

Before you begin

Complete all preceding steps to prepare for the upgrade and to install the upgrade utilities.

Procedure

Complete the following steps:

- 1. "Scenario 3: Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade" on page 203
- 2. "Scenario 3: Extracting the data to media" on page 204

- 3. Scenario 3: Installing the V7.1 server
- 4. Scenario 3: Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance
- 5. "Scenario 3: Creating and formatting the new database" on page 212
- 6. "Scenario 3: Loading the extracted data into the new database" on page 216
- 7. "Scenario 3: Creating a Windows service for the server instance" on page 218
- 8. "Scenario 3: Configuring the system for database backup" on page 219

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323. **Related concepts**:

"The manifest file for the data extraction to media" on page 531 "DSMUPGRD upgrade utilities" on page 16

Scenario 3: Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade

Before you extract the data from the database, you must prepare the server database by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility. If you have multiple servers on a single system, you must repeat this task for each server.

Procedure

- 1. Ensure that you have completed all preparation steps.
- 2. Log in using the root user ID on the system that has the original server. Log on with the administrator ID on a Windows system.
- **3**. Change to the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading. The instance directory is the directory that contains the files such as dsmserv.dsk for the server.

Important: The dsmserv.dsk file is not available in Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1. Save a copy of the dsmserv.dsk file in case you must revert to V5.5.

4. Prepare the database. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring.

AIX

From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process in the background and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

nohup /usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd preparedb >prepare.out 2>&1 &

HP-UX Linux Solaris

From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process in the background and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd preparedb >prepare.out 2>&1 &

Windows

From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd" preparedb 1>>prepare.out 2>&1 If multiple servers exist on the system, issue the command from the instance directory for the server that you want to prepare. Specify the registry key for that server. For example, if the server is SERVER2:

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd" -k server2
 preparedb 1>>prepare.out 2>&1

5. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages. The final message indicates success or failure of the operation. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to monitor the process:

tail -f prepare.out

Tip: On Windows systems, use the **tail** command or an equivalent utility with which you can monitor the contents of a file as it changes. For example, the Windows Server 2003 Resource Kit Tools includes the **tail** command, which can be used as shown in the preceding example.

6. Ensure that the prepare operation is completed successfully before you continue to the next step. If the prepare operation fails, you might need to restart the V5 server to fix the problem and run the prepare operation again. If the server that is being upgraded is a V5.3 or V5.4 server, you might need to restore the database by using a backup before you can restart the server to correct the problem.

Related reference:

"DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB (Prepare a V5 database for upgrade)" on page 523

Scenario 3: Extracting the data to media

You can extract the data from the original server database to sequential media. The sequential media can be tape, or disk space that is defined with the FILE device class.

Procedure

- 1. Log in using the root user ID on the system that has the original server. Log on with the administrator ID on a Windows system.
- 2. Ensure that the device that you want to use to store the extracted data is available. The server database and the device configuration file must contain a valid device class definition for the device.
- **3**. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the command to start the extraction. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring. For example, issue the following command on one line:

AIX

nohup /usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd extractdb \
devclass=file manifest=./manifest.txt >extract.out 2>&1 &

HP-UX Linux Solaris

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd extractdb \
devclass=file manifest=./manifest.txt >extract.out 2>&1 &

Windows

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd" extractdb devclass=file manifest=.\manifest.txt 1>>extract.out 2>&1

Tip: Messages that are issued during the extract operation are *not* saved in the server activity log. Direct the output of the utility to a file, as shown in the examples, to record the messages.

4. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages, and for items that you might need to take action on. A message near the end of the process output indicates success or failure of the operation:

Success message: ANR1382I EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed.

Failure message: ANR1396E EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed with errors.

For example, from the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to monitor the process:

tail -f extract.out

The length of time that the process runs depends on the size of the database. The time will be approximately as much as the time required for a full backup of the database.

Tip: On Windows systems, use the **tail** command or an equivalent utility with which you can monitor the contents of a file as it changes. For example, the Windows Server 2003 Resource Kit Tools includes the **tail** command, which can be used as shown in the preceding example.

Related concepts:

"The manifest file for the data extraction to media" on page 531

Related tasks:

"Scenario 3: Preparing space for the upgrade process" on page 181

Related reference:

"DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB (Extract data from a V5 server database)" on page 529

Scenario 3, manual: Installing the V7.1 server

You can install the server by using the installation wizard, console mode, or silent mode.

Before you begin

You can obtain the installation package from the product DVD or from an IBM download site such as Passport Advantage or the Tivoli Storage Manager support site.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris If you plan to download the files, set the system user limit for maximum file size to unlimited to ensure that the files can be downloaded correctly.

- To query the maximum file size value, issue the following command: ulimit -Hf
- 2. If the system user limit for maximum file size is not set to unlimited, change it to unlimited by following the instructions in the documentation for your operating system.

Procedure

1. Log on to the system.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Log in by using the root user ID.

Windows Log on as an administrator. You must be logged on to the system with the administrative user ID that was used to install the V5 server.

- 2. If you are obtaining the package from an IBM download site, download the appropriate package file from one of the following websites:
 - For a new release, go to Passport Advantage at http://www.ibm.com/ software/lotus/passportadvantage/. Passport Advantage is the only website from which you can download a licensed package file.
 - For a maintenance fix, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager support site at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager.
- **3**. If you are downloading the package from one of the download sites, complete the following steps:

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

- a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:
 - Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035122
 - Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http:// www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035635
 - System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035637
- b. Download the package file to the directory of your choice. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files.

Also, ensure that you have executable permission for the package file.

c. If necessary, change the file permissions by issuing the following command:

chmod a+x package_name.bin

where *package_name* is like the following example:

AIX

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-AIX.bin

HP-UX

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-HP-UX.bin

Linux

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxx86_64.bin 7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxs390x.bin

Solaris

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-SolarisSPARC.bin

In the examples, 7.1.0.000 represents the product release level.

d. Extract the installation files by issuing the following command: ./package_name.bin

The package is large. Therefore, the extraction takes some time.

Windows

- a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:
 - Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035121
 - Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http:// www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035636
 - System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035638
- b. Change to the directory where you placed the executable file.

In the next step, the files are extracted to the current directory. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files.

c. To extract the installation files, double-click the executable file: package name.exe

where *package_name* is like this example:

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Windows.exe

The package is large. Therefore, the extraction takes some time.

4. AIX HP-UX Solaris To ensure that the Tivoli Storage Manager wizards work correctly, verify that the following command is enabled:

AIX lsuser HP-UX Solaris logins

By default, the command is enabled.

- 5. If you plan to install the server by using the graphical wizard of IBM Installation Manager, review the following information and verify that your system meets the requirements:
 - Verify that all required RPM files are installed. For a list of required RPM files and instructions about installing RPM files, see the section about installing Tivoli Storage Manager by using the installation wizard in the *Installation Guide*.
 - Verify that the operating system is set to the language that you require. By default, the language of the operating system is the language of the installation wizard.
 - Windows The user ID that you use during installation must be a user with local Administrator authority.
 - **Solaris** Ensure that the LD_LIBRARY_PATH_64 environment variable is not set.

On test servers only: Use the following command to bypass prerequisite checks such as the operating system and the required memory. Do not issue this command on a production server.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

./install.sh -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS_TSM_REQ_CHECKS=true"

Windows

install.bat -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS_TSM_REQ_CHECKS=true"

6. If you use the installation wizard, complete the following steps to begin the installation:

Option	Description
Installing from a downloaded package file:	 Change to the directory where you downloaded the package file.
	 2. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command: AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris
	./install.sh Windows install.bat
Installing from DVD media:	 Insert the DVD into the DVD drive. Tip: Ensure that the installation files are visible on the DVD drive.
	2. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command:
	AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris
	./install.sh
	Windows install.bat
	Windows Or, in the directory where the installation files were extracted, double-click the install.bat file.

- 7. If you are installing the server by using the wizard, follow these instructions:
 - a. In the IBM Installation Manager window, click the **Install** icon; do not click the **Update** or **Modify** icon.
 - b. Select the components to install. You must install the license package. If you select the storage agent, you must accept the Tivoli Storage Manager for Storage Area Networks license.
- 8. Alternatively, install the server in console mode. Review the information about installing the server in console mode and then complete the installation procedure, as described in the *Installation Guide*.
- **9**. Alternatively, to install the server in silent mode, follow the instructions for an installation in silent mode in the *Installation Guide*. Review the information about installing the server in silent mode. Then, complete Steps 1 and 2 of the installation procedure.
- Correct any errors that are detected during the installation process. To view installation log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click File > View Log. To collect log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click Help > Export Data for Problem Analysis.

- Obtain any applicable fixes by going to the following website: http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager. Click Fixes (downloads) and apply any applicable fixes.
- 12. HP-UX Linux Solaris To prevent server failures during interaction with DB2, tune the kernel parameters.

For instructions, see the section about tuning kernel parameters in the *Installation Guide*.

- **13**. Optional: To install an additional language package, use the modify function of the IBM Installation Manager.
- 14. Optional: To upgrade to a newer version of a language package, use the update function of the IBM Installation Manager.

Related concepts:

Appendix E, "Services associated with the Tivoli Storage Manager server," on page 555

Scenario 3, manual: Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance

Create the directories that the server instance needs for database and recovery logs, and create the user ID that will own the server instance.

Before you begin

Review the information about planning space for the server before you complete this task. See "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

Procedure

1. Create the user ID that will own the server instance. You use this user ID when you create the server instance in a later step.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Create a user ID and group that will be the owner of the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance.

a. Create the user ID and group.

Restriction: In the user ID, only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_) can be used. The user ID and group name must comply with the following rules:

- The length must be 8 characters or less.
- The user ID and group name cannot start with *ibm*, *sql*, *sys*, or a numeral.
- The user ID and group name cannot be *user*, *admin*, *guest*, *public*, *local*, or any SQL reserved word.

For example, create user ID tsminst1 in group tsmsrvrs. The following examples show how to create this user ID and group by using operating system commands:

mkgroup id=1001 tsmsrvrs

passwd tsminst1

AIX

[#] mkuser id=1002 pgrp=tsmsrvrs home=/home/tsminst1 tsminst1

HP-UX

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
- # useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs
- -s /bin/ksh tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1

Linux

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
- # useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/bash tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1

Solaris

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
- # passwd tsminst1
- b. Log out and then log in to your system by using the new user ID and password. Use an interactive login program, such as telnet, so that you are prompted for the password and can change it if necessary.
- c. If a configuration profile does not exist for the user ID, create the file. For example, create a .profile file if you are using the Korn shell (ksh).

Windows

Identify the user account that will own the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance. When the server is started as a Windows service, this is the account that the service will log on to. The user account must have administrative authority on the system. One user account can own more than one server instance.

You can create a user account, or use an existing account.

If you have multiple servers on one system and want to run each server with a different user account, create a user account in this step.

a. Create the user ID.

Restriction: The user ID can contain only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_). The user ID must be 30 characters or less, and cannot start with *ibm*, *sql*, *sys*, or a numeral. The user ID and group name cannot be *user*, *admin*, *guest*, *public*, *local*, or any SQL reserved word.

Use the following command to create the user ID:

net user user_ID * /add

You are prompted to create and verify a password for the new user ID.

b. Issue the following operating system commands to add the new user ID to the Administrators groups:

net localgroup Administrators $user_ID$ /add net localgroup DB2ADMNS $user_ID$ /add

c. Log in to your system, by using the new user ID and password.

- d. For all directories that were created for the server instance, ensure that the user ID for the server instance has read/write access. The directories to check include the instance directory and all database and log directories.
- 2. Create the directories that the server requires. Ensure that you are logged in under the new user ID that you created.

You need a unique, empty directory for each item in the following table. Create the database directories, the active log directory, and the archive log directory on different physical volumes. For space requirements, see "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.



Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsminst1	
The database directories	<pre>mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb001 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb002 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb003 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb004</pre>	
Active log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmlog	
Archive log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmlogmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlogfailover	

Table 46. Worksheet for creating required directories

Windows

Table 47. W	/orksheet	for	creating	required	directories
-------------	-----------	-----	----------	----------	-------------

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir d:\tsm\server1	
The database directories	mkdir d:\tsm\db001 mkdir e:\tsm\db002 mkdir f:\tsm\db003 mkdir g:\tsm\db004	
Active log directory	mkdir h:\tsm\log	
Archive log directory	mkdir i:\tsm\archlog	

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir j:\tsm\logmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir k:\tsm\archlogfailover	

Table 47. Worksheet for creating required directories (continued)

When a server is initially created by using the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility or the configuration wizard, a server database and recovery log are created. In addition, files are created to hold database information that is used by the database manager.

3. Create additional logical volumes and mount the volumes on the directories that were created in the previous step.

Related tasks:

"Planning space for the upgrade process and the upgraded server" on page 37 **Related reference**:

"Server naming best practices" on page 70

Scenario 3: Creating and formatting the new database

Create the server instance and format files for an empty V7.1 database.

Procedure

1. Log on to the system where you installed the V7.1 program.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Log in by using the root user ID. Verify the following items:

• The home directory for the user, /home/tsminst1, exists. If there is no home directory, you must create it.

The instance directory stores the following core files that are generated by the Tivoli Storage Manager server:

- The server options file, dsmserv.opt
- The server key database file, cert.kdb, and the .arm files, which are used by clients and other servers to import the Secure Sockets Layer certificates of the server
- Device configuration file, if the DEVCONFIG server option does not specify a fully qualified name
- Volume history file, if the VOLUMEHISTORY server option does not specify a fully qualified name
- Volumes for DEVTYPE=FILE storage pools, if the directory for the device class is not fully specified, or not fully qualified
- User exits
- Trace output, if it is not fully qualified
- A shell configuration file, for example, .profile, exists in the home directory. The root user and instance user ID must have write permission to this file. For more information, go to the DB2

Information Center (http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/ v10r5), and search for information about Linux and UNIX environment variable settings.

Windows

Log on as an administrator.

2. Create a Tivoli Storage Manager instance by using the **db2icrt** command.

 AIX
 HP-UX
 Linux
 Solaris

 Enter the following command on one line. For the instance name, specify the user ID that you created to own the instance:
 Image: Solaris

AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris

/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2icrt -a server -s ese -u
instance_name instance_name

For example, if the user ID for this instance is tsminst1, use the following command to create the instance:

AIX HP-UX	Linux Solaris
-----------	---------------

/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2icrt -a server -s ese -u
tsminst1 tsminst1

Remember: From this point on, use this new user ID when you configure the Tivoli Storage Manager server. Log out of the root user ID, and log in using the user ID that is the instance owner.

Windows

Enter the following command on one line. The user account that you specify becomes the user ID that owns the V7.1 server; this ID is the instance user ID.

db2icrt -s ese -u user_account instance_name

For example, if the user account is *tsminst1* and the server instance is *Server1*, enter the following command:

db2icrt -s ese -u tsminst1 server1

The database service for the server instance logs on to the user account that is specified in this command.

Use the registry key name of the V5 server as the instance name for the V7.1 server. You are prompted to enter the password for the user account.

The instance name that you specify on this **db2icrt** command is the name that you later specify with the -k option on the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** command, when you create and format the database and recovery log.

- **3**. Log on to the system by using the user ID that owns the V7.1 server instance (the instance user ID).
- 4. Copy the configuration files to the instance directory that you created for the new server. The files are the configuration files that you saved from the original V5 server:
 - Device configuration
 - Server options file, which is typically named dsmserv.opt

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

For example, if you created the instance directory that is shown in the example in the step to create directories for the V7.1 server, copy the files into the following directory:



Ensure that the user ID that owns the V7.1 server (the instance user ID) has ownership or read/write permission to the files that you copied.

- 5. Edit the server options file.
 - a. Remove any options that are not supported for V7.1. For the list of deleted options, see Table 29 on page 67.
 - b. Verify that the server options file contains at least one VOLUMEHISTORY option and at least one DEVCONFIG option. By specifying these options, you ensure that a volume history file and a device configuration file are generated and updated automatically. If you must restore the database, these files are required.
 - c. Check whether the server options file includes the TXNGROUPMAX option with a value, and if it does, what the value is. You might want to change the current value because the default value for this option changed from 256 to 4096, starting in V6. The increased value can improve the performance for data movement operations such as storage pool migration and storage pool backup.
 - If the server options file does not include this option, the server automatically uses the new default value of 4096.
 - If the server options file includes a value for this option, the server uses that specified value. If the specified value is less than 4096, consider increasing the value, or removing the option so that the new default value is applied.
- 6. Change the default path for the database.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Change the default path for the database to be the same as the instance directory for the server. Issue the command: db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath *instance directory*

For example:

db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath /tsminst1

Windows

Change the default path for the database to be the drive where the instance directory for the server is located. Complete the following steps:

- a. Click Start > Programs > IBM DB2 > DB2TSM1 > Command Line Tools > Command Line Processor.
- b. Enter quit to exit the command line processor.

A window with a command prompt opens, with the environment correctly set up to successfully issue the commands in the next steps.

c. From the command prompt in that window, issue the following command to set the environment variable for the server instance that you are working with:

set db2instance=instance_name

The *instance_name* is the same as the instance name that you specified when you issued the **db2icrt** command. For example, to set the environment variable for the Server1 server instance, issue the following command:

- set db2instance=server1
- d. Issue the command to set the default drive:
 db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath *instance location*

For example, if the instance directory is d:\tsm\server1, the instance location is drive d:. Enter the command:

db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath d:

7. Modify the library path to use the version of the IBM Global Security Kit (GSKit) that is installed with the Tivoli Storage Manager server:

AIX Issue the following command:

export LIBPATH=/usr/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LIBPATH

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris You must update the following files to set the library path when DB2 or the Tivoli Storage Manager server is started:

- instance_directory/sqllib/usercshrc
- instance_directory/sqllib/userprofile

For the *instance_directory*/sqllib/usercshrc file, add the following lines:

- AIX setenv LIBPATH /usr/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LIBPATH
- HP-UX Solaris
 - setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH /opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
- Linux
 - setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH /usr/local/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH

For the *instance_directory*/sqllib/userprofile file, add the following lines:

- AIX LIBPATH=/usr/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LIBPATH export LIBPATH
- HP-UX Solaris

LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH export LD_LIBRARY_PATH

- Linux
 - LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/usr/local/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH export LD_LIBRARY_PATH

Verify the library path settings and ensure that the GSKit version is 8.0.14.14 or later. Issue the following commands:

• AIX

echo \$LIBPATH gsk8capicmd_64 -version gsk8ver_64

HP-UX Linux Solaris

echo \$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
gsk8capicmd_64 -version
gsk8ver_64

If the GSKit version is not 8.0.14.14 or later, you must reinstall the Tivoli Storage Manager server. The reinstallation ensures that the correct GSKit version is available.

- 8. Change to the instance directory that you created for the server.
- **9**. Create and format the database and recovery logs. In the command, specify the directories that you created for the database and logs. The directories must be empty.

AIX	HF	P-UX	Linux	Solaris	
	For ex size),	kample issue	e, to get the follow	an active ving com	log size of 16 GB (16384 MB, the default mand, on one line:
	<pre>/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmserv loadformat \ dbdir=/tsmdb001,/tsmdb002,/tsmdb003,/tsmdb004 \ activelogsize=16384 activelogdirectory=/tsmlog \ mirrorlogdirectory=/tsmlogmirror archlogdirectory=/tsmarchlog</pre>				
Window	S				

For example, to get an active log size of 16 GB (16384 MB, the default size) for the Server1 server instance, issue the following command, on one line:

```
"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmserv" loadformat
dbdir=d:\tsm\db001,e:\tsm\db002,f:\tsm\db003,g:\tsm\db004
activelogsize=16384 activelogdirectory=h:\tsm\log
mirrorlogdirectory=j:\tsm\logmirror archlogdirectory=i:\tsm\archlog
```

If you have already created the first server instance on the system (server1) and are creating more, then you must use the -k option. The -k option specifies the instance name for running this utility. For example, if the instance name for the server is server2, issue the command:

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmserv" -k server2 loadformat dbdir=d:\tsm\db001,e:\tsm\db002,f:\tsm\db003,g:\tsm\db004 activelogsize=16384 activelogdirectory=h:\tsm\log mirrorlogdirectory=j:\tsm\logmirror archlogdirectory=i:\tsm\archlog

10. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages. The final message indicates success or failure of the operation.

Related tasks:

"Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39

Related reference:

DSMSERV LOADFORMAT (Format a database)

"Deleted server commands, utilities, and options" on page 65

Scenario 3: Loading the extracted data into the new database

After you format an empty database by using the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** utility, load the data that you extracted from the original server database.

Before you begin

Ensure that the following requirements are met before you begin to load the data:

- The manifest file from the DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB operation must be available.
- The server options file must contain an entry for the device configuration file.
- The device configuration file must have information about the device class that is specified in the manifest file.

• The media that contains the extracted database must be available to the V7.1 server. The device must be physically attached to the system. The permissions must be set to grant access to the media for the user ID that owns the V7.1 server instance.

Procedure

- 1. Verify that the V7.1 server can access the extracted data.
 - If the extracted data is on tape, the tape drive must be physically attached to the system.
 - If the extracted data was stored by using a FILE or DISK device class, complete the following steps:
 - a. Log on to the system by using the root user ID.
 - b. Ensure that the user ID that owns the V7.1 server (the instance user ID) has ownership or read/write permission for the extracted files.
- 2. Log on with the instance user ID on the system where you installed the V7.1 server.
- **3**. Copy the manifest file that was created by the extraction process to the V7.1 system. Ensure that the instance user ID has ownership or read/write permission for the manifest file.
- 4. On the V7.1 server, complete the following steps:
 - a. Verify that the server options file from the V5 server includes the DEVCONFIG option, and that the option specifies the full path of the device configuration file.
 - **b**. Verify that the device configuration file from the V5 server is available in the location that is specified by the DEVCONFIG option.
 - **c.** Verify that the permissions on the device configuration file allow read access for the instance user ID.
- 5. Verify that the contents of the device configuration file are correct. The device class that was used for the extraction step is recorded in the manifest file, and that device class must exist and be valid on the V7.1 system.
 - a. Verify entries for FILE device classes. For example, paths might be different on the system.
 - b. Verify entries for tape and other devices. For example, the device names might have changed.
- 6. Verify the contents of the manifest file and edit the file if necessary:
 - a. Ensure that the device names in the manifest file are valid for the V7.1 system. Device names for the same device might be different on V5 and V7 systems.
 - b. Ensure that the manifest file contains a list of volumes to be used when the extracted data is loaded into the new database. For example, if the manifest file contains a list of volumes that belong to a FILE device class, ensure that the fully qualified path to the volumes is correct for the system.
- 7. Issue the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** command to load an extracted server database into the prepared, empty V7.1 database. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring. For example, enter the following command on one line:

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmserv insertdb \
manifest=./manifest.txt >insert.out 2>&1 &

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Windows

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmserv" insertdb \
manifest=.\manifest.txt 1>>insert.out 2>&1

8. Monitor the process for error messages, warning messages, and any items that you might need to address. The system displays interim statistics about the process of loading the database. However, there might be time periods when no messages are issued. During this time, DB2 operations are running in the background. The length of time that the process runs depends on the size of the database. For more information, see "Example: Estimating the upgrade time based on the database size" on page 43.

Optional: Verify that the database is being loaded by monitoring the processor and I/O usage for the server process and the corresponding DB2 process. For example, issue the following command to monitor the process:

tail -f insert.out

Tip: Windows On Windows systems, use the **tail** command or an equivalent utility with which you can monitor the contents of a file as it changes. For example, the Windows Server 2003 Resource Kit Tools includes the **tail** command, which can be used as shown in the preceding example.

A message in the output of the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** command indicates the status of the operation:

Success message: ANR1395I INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed.

Failure message: ANR1396E INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed with errors.

9. If you used a tape device, after the insertion operation is complete remove or check out from the library the tape that holds the extracted data. Prevent the tape from being reused until you are sure that you do not need to run the insertion operation again.

Related concepts:

"The manifest file for the data extraction to media" on page 531

Related reference:

"DSMSERV INSERTDB (Move a server database into an empty database)" on page 538

Scenario 3: Creating a Windows service for the server instance

Windows

A Windows service is created for the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server automatically if you use the upgrade wizard (**dsmupgdx**). If you do not use the wizard, you must create the Windows service for the Tivoli Storage Manager server manually.

Procedure

- Change to the installation directory for the server program. By default, the directory is C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\console. If you installed the server in a different directory, change to the console subdirectory of the server installation directory.
- 2. Install the Windows service by using the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance name and password in the service name. Issue the following command:

```
install "TSM server_instance_name"
   "C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmsvc.exe"
instance_owner instance_owner_password
```

where:

"TSM *server_instance_name*" is the name of the service that is being installed.

server_instance_name is the instance name that was specified when you issued the **db2icrt** command.

instance_owner is the instance owner account; this account will own the service.

instance_owner_password is the password for the instance owner account.

Example

To install the Windows service for the server1 server instance, enter the following command on one line. The example uses rudy as the instance owner and s21ret as the password for the instance owner account.

install "TSM server1" "C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmsvc.exe" rudy s21ret

3. Optional: Manually change the service to an automatic startup type by using Windows administrative tools (**Administrative Tools** > **Services**).

Related tasks:

"Starting the server on Windows systems" on page 331

Scenario 3: Configuring the system for database backup

The database manager and the Tivoli Storage Manager API must be configured so that the database manager can back up the server database. The configuration is completed for you automatically if you use the upgrade wizard (**dsmupgdx**). If you do not use the wizard, you must complete the configuration manually.

Procedure

- "Scenario 3: Configuring the system for database backup on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems"
- "Scenario 3: Configuring the system for database backup on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 222

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Scenario 3: Configuring the system for database backup on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

If you did not use the upgrade wizard, you must complete the configuration for the database backup manually.

About this task

Starting with Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1, it is no longer necessary to set the API password during a manual configuration of the server. If you set the API password during the manual configuration process, attempts to back up the database might fail.

Complete the following steps before you issue either the **BACKUP DB** or the **RESTORE DB** command.

Attention: If the database is unusable, the entire Tivoli Storage Manager server is unavailable. If a database is lost and cannot be recovered, it might be difficult or impossible to recover data that was managed by that server. Therefore, it is critically important to back up the database.

In the following commands, replace the example values with your actual values. The examples use tsminst1 for the server instance user ID, /tsminst1 for the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance directory, and /home/tsminst1 as the home directory of the server instance user.

Procedure

- 1. Set the Tivoli Storage Manager API environment-variable configuration for the database instance:
 - a. Log in by using the tsminst1 user ID.
 - b. When user tsminst1 is logged in, ensure that the DB2 environment is correctly initialized. The DB2 environment is initialized by running the /home/tsminst1/sqllib/db2profile script, which normally runs automatically from the profile of the user ID. Ensure that the .profile file exists in the home directory of the instance user, for example, /home/tsminst1/.profile. If .profile does not run the db2profile script, add the following lines:

```
fi
```

c. In the *instance_directory*/sqllib/userprofile file, add the following lines: DSMI CONFIG=server instance directory/tsmdbmgr.opt

```
DSMI_DIR=server_bin_directory/dbbkapi
DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory
export DSMI_CONFIG_DSMI_DIR_DSMI_LOG
```

- d. In the instance_directory/sqllib/usercshrc file, add the following lines: setenv DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory/tsmdbmgr.opt setenv DSMI_DIR=server_bin_directory/dbbkapi setenv DSMI_LOG=server instance directory
- 2. Log out and log in again as tsminst1, or issue this command:
 - . ~/.profile

Ensure that you enter a space after the initial dot (.) character.

3. Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.opt in the server instance directory, which is in the /tsminst1 directory in this example, and add the following line: SERVERNAME TSMDBMGR_TSMINST1

The value for SERVERNAME must be consistent in the tsmdbmgr.opt and dsm.sys files.

4. Locate the Tivoli Storage Manager API dsm.sys configuration file. By default, the dsm.sys file is in the following location:

server_bin_directory/dbbkapi/dsm.sys

5. As root user, add the following lines to the dsm.sys configuration file:

servername TSMDBMGR_TSMINST1
commmethod tcpip
tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport 1500
errorlogname /tsminst1
nodename \$\$ TSMDBMGR \$\$

where

- servername matches the servername value in the tsmdbmgr.opt file.
- commmethod specifies the client API that is used to contact the server for database backup. This value can be tcpip or sharedmem. For more information about shared memory, see Step 6.
- tcpserveraddr specifies the server address that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be localhost.
- tcpport specifies the port number that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. Ensure that you enter the same tcpport value that is specified in the dsmserv.opt server options file.
- errorlogname specifies the error log where the client API logs errors that are encountered during a database backup. This log is typically in the server instance directory. However, this log can be placed in any location where the instance user ID has write-permission.
- nodename specifies the node name that the client API uses to connect to the server during a database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be \$\$_TSMDBMGR_\$\$.

Linux Do not add the PASSWORDACCESS generate option to the dsm.sys configuration file. This option can cause the database backup to fail.

- 6. Optional: Configure the server to back up the database by using shared memory. In this way, you might be able to reduce the processor load and improve throughput. Complete the following steps:
 - a. Review the dsmserv.opt file. If the following lines are not in the file, add them:

commmethod sharedmem
shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port that you use for shared memory.

b. In the dsm.sys configuration file, locate the following lines:

commmethod tcpip
tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport port number

Replace the specified lines with the following lines: commmethod sharedmem shmport *port number*

where *port_number* specifies the port that you use for shared memory.

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Scenario 3: Configuring the system for database backup on Microsoft Windows systems

Windows

If you did not use the upgrade wizard, you must complete the configuration for the database backup manually.

About this task

Complete the following steps before you issue either the **BACKUP DB** or the **RESTORE DB** command.

Attention: If the database is unusable, the entire Tivoli Storage Manager server is unavailable. If a database is lost and cannot be recovered, it might be difficult or impossible to recover data that was managed by that server. Therefore, it is critically important to back up the database.

In the following commands, the examples use server1 for the database instance and d:\tsmserver1 for the Tivoli Storage Manager server directory. When you issue the commands, replace these values with your actual values.

Procedure

 Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.env in the d:\tsmserver1 directory with the following contents:

DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory\tsmdbmgr.opt DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory

- 2. Set the DSMI_ api environment-variable configuration for the database instance:
 - a. Open a DB2 command window. One method is to go to the C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\db2\bin directory, or if you installed Tivoli Storage Manager in a different location, go to the db2\bin subdirectory in your main installation directory. Then, issue the following command: db2cmd
 - b. Issue the following command:

db2set -i server1 DB2_VENDOR_INI=d:\tsmserver1\tsmdbmgr.env

c. Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.opt in the d:\tsmserver1 directory with the following contents:

where

- nodename specifies the node name that the client API uses to connect to the server during a database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be \$\$_TSMDBMGR_\$\$.
- commethod specifies the client API that is used to contact the server for database backup. This value can be tcpip or sharedmem. For more information about shared memory, see Step 3 on page 223.
- tcpserveraddr specifies the server address that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be localhost.

- tcpport is the port number that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. Ensure that you enter the same tcpport value that is specified in the dsmserv.opt server options file.
- passwordaccess is required to ensure that the backup node can connect to the server.
- errorlogname is the error log where the client API logs errors that are encountered during a database backup. This log is typically in the server instance directory. However, this log can be placed in any location where the instance user ID has write-permission.
- **3**. Optional: Configure the server to back up the database by using shared memory. In this way, you might be able to reduce the processor load and improve throughput. Complete the following steps:
 - a. Review the dsmserv.opt file. If the following lines are not in the file, add them:

commmethod sharedmem
shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port to use for shared memory.

b. In the tsmdbmgr.opt file, locate the following lines:

commmethod tcpip tcpserveraddr localhost tcpport 1500

Replace the specified lines with the following lines: commmethod sharedmem shmport *port_number*

where *port_number* specifies the port to use for shared memory.

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Chapter 7. Scenario 4: New system, network method

Use this procedure if you are upgrading the Tivoli Storage Manager server on a different system than your V5 server, and you are using the network method to move the data.

Procedure

The procedure for upgrading the server includes the following tasks:

- 1. "Scenario 4: Preparing for the upgrade"
- 2. "Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities" on page 233
- 3. Upgrading the server, by using one of the following methods:
 - "Scenario 4: Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard" on page 241
 - "Scenario 4: Upgrading the server manually by using utilities" on page 250
- 4. The following tasks are completed after the upgrade:
 - a. "Verifying access to storage pools on disk" on page 323
 - b. "Setting up Solaris services for the server instance" on page 324
 - c. "Configuring server options for server database maintenance" on page 324
 - d. "Starting the server instance after the upgrade" on page 325
 - e. "Registering licenses" on page 334
 - f. "Backing up the database after upgrading the server" on page 335
 - g. "Verifying the upgraded server" on page 336
 - h. "Changing the host name for the Tivoli Storage Manager server" on page 336
 - i. "Updating automation" on page 338
 - j. "Monitoring the upgraded server" on page 339
 - K. "Removing GSKit Version 7 after upgrading to Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1" on page 340

Scenario 4: Preparing for the upgrade

Prepare for the upgrade by checking requirements, preparing the space that is required, backing up the server, and modifying certain server settings.

About this task

Follow the preparation steps carefully to protect your server and its data.

Important: It is possible, after the upgrade to V7.1 is complete, that conditions might cause the need to temporarily revert to the previous version of the server. Successfully reverting to the previous version of the server is possible only if you have completed all preparation steps. To understand why it is important to complete all preparation steps, review the procedure for reverting an upgraded server to its previous version.

Procedure

- 1. "Scenario 4: Checking the prerequisites for the upgrade" on page 226
- 2. "Scenario 4: Preparing space for the upgrade process" on page 229

- 3. "Scenario 4: Modifying the server before the upgrade" on page 229
- 4. "Scenario 4: Disabling sessions" on page 230
- 5. "Scenario 4: Backing up storage pools and the server database" on page 231
- 6. "Scenario 4: Moving the NODELOCK file" on page 232
- 7. "Scenario 4: Backing up configuration information" on page 232
- 8. "Scenario 4: Creating a summary of database contents" on page 233
- 9. "Scenario 4: Stopping the server before installing the upgrade" on page 233 **Related tasks**:

"Reverting from V7.1 to the previous V5 server version" on page 351

Scenario 4: Checking the prerequisites for the upgrade

Check your system against requirements for the server.

Procedure

- 1. Ensure that the server that you plan to upgrade is at the V5.5 release level, and that the latest interim fix is installed. For example, if the server is at V5.5.6, install the latest interim fix for V5.5.6. Take the following actions:
 - a. Select the appropriate server level. For detailed guidelines, see "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36. If the server is at an appropriate level, no action is required.
 - b. If the server is not at an appropriate level, download the appropriate server fix pack and the latest interim fix from the FTP downloads site at ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server/. Locate the appropriate version of Tivoli Storage Manager and install it.
- 2. Ensure that the system where the V5 server is located meets the minimum requirements. Review the information in "Hardware and software requirements for the V5 server system that is being upgraded" on page 17 to determine whether you must update your system before you continue.
- 3. Ensure that the system where you plan to install the V7.1 server meets requirements for the operating system type and level. For the latest information about system requirements, see Tivoli Storage Manager Supported Operating Systems (http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21243309).

If you are upgrading Tivoli Storage Manager to a different operating system, a limited set of migration paths is available. For instructions about migrating a server that is running on a z/OS operating system, see Part 3, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on z/OS systems to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z," on page 437. For instructions about migrating a server that is running on an AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris operating system, see Part 2, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux," on page 355.

Some platforms that were supported for earlier versions of the server are not supported for V7.1. If the server that you want to upgrade is running on one of these platforms, you cannot upgrade your server to V7.1 on the same platform. You must install your V7.1 server on a system that is a specific supported platform, depending on the original platform. For required platforms, see the following table.

Table 48. Required platforms for upgrading from V5 to V7.1

Platform for V5 server	Required platform for upgrade to V7.1	
HP-UX running on a PA-RISC system	HP-UX running on an Intel Itanium system	

Platform for V5 server	Required platform for upgrade to V7.1
Linux running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Linux running on an x86_64 system
Linux running on an x86_32 system	Linux running on an x86_64 system
Solaris running on an x86_64 system	Linux running on an x86_64 system
Windows running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Windows running on an x86_64 system

Table 48. Required platforms for upgrading from V5 to V7.1 (continued)

If you are upgrading from Tivoli Storage Manager V5 to V7.1 on a new system, restrictions apply. Ensure that you install the V7.1 server in a compatible hardware and software environment, as described in the following table.

V5 server	V7.1 server	Comments
AIX running on an IBM POWER system	AIX running on an IBM POWER system	
HP-UX running on an Itanium system	HP-UX running on an Itanium system	
HP-UX running on a PA-RISC system	HP-UX running on an Itanium system	HP-UX running on PA-RISC is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux running on an IBM POWER system	Linux running on an IBM POWER system	
Linux running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Linux running on an x86_64 system	Linux running on Itanium is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux running on an x86_32 system	Linux running on an x86_64 system	Linux running on x86_32 is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux on System z	Linux on System z	

Table 49. Requirements for upgrading from V5 to V7.1 on a new system

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

V5 server	V7.1 server	Comments
Solaris running on an x86_64 system	Operating system depends on the migration method	A V7.1 server cannot be installed on a Solaris x86_64 system. However, you can migrate a V5 server that is running on a Solaris x86_64 operating system to V7.1 on a Linux x86_64 operating system. For instructions, see Part 2, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux," on page 355. Alternatively, you can migrate the Solaris x86_64 system by installing a V7.1 server on any operating system that is supported for V7.1. Then, use Tivoli Storage Manager server EXPORT and IMPORT commands to move the server from the V5 source system.
Windows running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Windows running on an x86_64 system	Windows running on Itanium is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Windows running on an x86_32 system	Windows running on an x86_64 system	Windows running on x86_32 is not supported for V7.1 servers.
z/OS	AIX or Linux on System z	See the section on migrating from V5 on z/OS to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z.

Table 49. Requirements for upgrading from V5 to V7.1 on a new system (continued)

4. Verify that the system memory meets the server requirements. If you plan to run multiple instances of the V7.1 server on the system, each instance requires the memory that is listed for one server. Multiply the memory for one server by the number of instances that are planned for the system.

For specific information about memory requirements, see the section for your operating system:

Operating system	Memory requirements
AIX	"Server requirements on AIX systems" on page 21
HP-UX	"Server requirements on HP-UX systems" on page 24
Linux	"Server requirements on Linux systems" on page 26
Solaris	"Server requirements on Solaris systems" on page 31

Table 50. Memory requirements for the V7.1 system

Table 50. Memory requirements for the V7.1 system (continued)

Operating system	Memory requirements
Windows	"Server requirements on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 33

5. Ensure that the system has enough disk storage for the database and recovery logs. Review the planning information for requirements and guidance.

If you are adding new hardware for the server, such as new disk storage for the database, ensure that the hardware is installed and running.

6. Ensure that the new system can access the storage devices that are used on the original system. This includes disk and tape devices that are used to store client data.

Related concepts:

"Hardware and software requirements for upgrading to the V7.1 server" on page 17

Scenario 4: Preparing space for the upgrade process

Determine the amount and type of space that is required for the upgrade process before beginning the process.

Procedure

Verify that the system has the amount of space that was estimated in the planning step. Use the planning worksheet that you completed with your information. See "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

Related tasks:

"Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39

Scenario 4: Modifying the server before the upgrade

A command must be run on the server to prevent one type of problem during the upgrade process. Some modifications to typical server settings can be useful to prepare for the upgrade.

Procedure

1. From a Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command line, issue the command:

convert ussfilespace

This command fixes a problem that might exist in older Tivoli Storage Manager databases. If the problem does not exist in your database, the command is completed and you might see error ANR2034E. This error can be ignored. For more information, see Technote 1408895 (http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg21408895). If the problem exists in your database, the command might take some time to run.

Important: Do not skip this step. If your database has the problem and you do not run this command now, the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility fails when you run it. You must then restart the V5 server and run the **CONVERT USSFILESPACE** command before you continue the upgrade process.

2. Review the steps for reverting to the earlier version of the server in the section, "Reverting from V7.1 to the previous V5 server version" on page 351.

If you must revert to the earlier version after the upgrade to V7.1, the results of the reversion will be better if you understand the steps and prepare for the possibility now.

- **3**. Make the following adjustments to settings on your server and clients. These adjustments must be done to make it possible for you to revert to the original server after the upgrade, if problems occur.
 - a. For each sequential-access storage pool, set the **REUSEDELAY** parameter to the number of days during which you want to be able to revert to the original server, if necessary.

For example, if you want to be able to revert to the original server for up to 30 days after the upgrade to V7.1, set the **REUSEDELAY** parameter to 31 days. Issue the following administrative command:

update stgpool sequential_access_storage_pool reusedelay=31

b. For each copy storage pool, set the **RECLAIM** parameter to 100 (meaning 100%). Issue the following administrative command:

update stgpool copy_storage_pool reclaim=100

c. If you typically use a **DELETE VOLHISTORY** command to delete database backups, ensure that the command does not delete database backups too frequently. The interval between backups should be at least the same number of days that you set for the **REUSEDELAY** period for sequential-access storage pools. For example, to delete database backups every 45 days, issue the following administrative command:

delete volhist type=dbbackup todate=-45

d. For important clients that use the server, verify that the value for the schedlogretention client option is set to retain the client schedule log for a sufficient time. Update the option for clients if needed.

The entries in the client schedule log might be useful if the server must revert to the original version. If the retention period for the schedule log is too short, the schedule log information might be deleted too soon.

For example, to prune the log every 45 days and save the log entries, add the following option:

schedlogretention 45 S

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Add the option to the dsm.sys file within a server stanza.

Windows Add the option to the client options file, dsm.opt.

Scenario 4: Disabling sessions

In preparation for the upgrade, prevent activity on the server by disabling new sessions. Cancel any existing sessions.

About this task

The commands in the following procedure are Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands.

Procedure

1. Prevent all clients, storage agents, and other servers from starting new sessions with the server. Use the commands:

disable sessions client disable sessions server

For more information about these commands and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

- Verify whether any sessions exist, and notify the users that the server is going to be stopped. To check for existing sessions, use the command: query session
- Cancel sessions that are still running. Use the command: cancel session all

Scenario 4: Backing up storage pools and the server database

Immediately before upgrading the server, back up primary storage pools to copy storage pools, and perform a full database backup.

Before you begin

Back up storage pools and the server database by using Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands:

Procedure

1. Back up primary storage pools to copy storage pools by using the **BACKUP STGPOOL** command:

backup stgpool primary_pool copy_stg

where *primary_pool* specifies the primary storage pool and *copy_stg* specifies the copy storage pool. If you have been performing regular backups of the storage pools, this step backs up only the data that was added to the primary storage pools since they were last backed up.

2. Back up the database. The preferred method is to use a snapshot backup. A snapshot backup is a full database backup that does not interrupt any scheduled database backups. Issue the command:

backup db type=dbsnapshot devclass=device_class_name

The device class that you specify must exist and have volumes that are available to it. For example, to perform a snapshot backup of your database to the TAPECLASS device class by using scratch volumes, enter:

backup db type=dbsnapshot devclass=tapeclass

To use specific volumes instead of scratch volumes, specify the volume names in the command.

Tip: Consider making two copies of the backup to protect the backup from media failures. Ensure that at least one full database backup is available onsite. If you must restore the database after a failed upgrade, having an onsite backup database saves time.

Scenario 4: Moving the NODELOCK file

To ensure that licensing information is updated during the upgrade process, move the NODELOCK file from the server instance directory to another directory.

About this task

The NODELOCK file contains the licensing information from the previous Tivoli Storage Manager installation. This licensing information is replaced when the upgrade is complete.

Procedure

- 1. In the server instance directory of your installation, locate the NODELOCK file.
- 2. Move the NODELOCK file to another directory. For example, you can save it to a directory where you are saving configuration files from the previous release.

Scenario 4: Backing up configuration information

Before you install the new version, back up critical files and information for each server instance. Store the files in a safe place, on a different system from the system that is being upgraded or on offline media, such as a CD. The files are required after the installation of the new software version is complete. You also need these files if you must revert to the previous version after the upgrade.

Procedure

 Back up device configuration information to another directory by using the following Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command: backup devconfig filenames=file name

where *file_name* specifies the file in which to store device configuration information.

 Back up volume history information to another directory by using the following Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command: backup volhistory filenames=file_name

where *file_name* specifies the file in which to store volume history information. Ensure that the volume history includes information about the database backup that you completed in the preceding steps. For example, issue the following command:

query volhistory type=dbsnapshot

Review the query output to verify that the time stamp for the database backup matches the actual time of the backup.

- 3. Save copies of the following files, which are in the server instance directory:
 - Server options file, typically named dsmserv.opt
 - dsmserv.dsk

Important: The dsmserv.dsk file is not available in Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1. Save a copy of the dsmserv.dsk file in case you must revert to V5.5.

- 4. In the server instance directory, look for the accounting log file, dsmaccnt.log. If the file exists, save a copy.
- 5. Back up any scripts that were used to complete daily housekeeping for the server. Examine the scripts for changes that are needed after the upgrade.

6. Store the device configuration file, the volume history file, the server options file, and the other files in a safe place. Ensure that the files are stored on a different system from the system that is being upgraded, or on offline media.

Scenario 4: Creating a summary of database contents

Create a summary of the contents of the original database. After the upgrade, you can use the same commands to compare the results and to confirm that the database contents are intact.

Procedure

Run commands that give a summary of information about your database contents. For example, issue commands that summarize the file spaces that are being protected, and save the results. For a list of commands, see "Sample commands to run for validation of the database upgrade" on page 546.

Related reference:

"Sample commands to run for validation of the database upgrade" on page 546

Scenario 4: Stopping the server before installing the upgrade

Stop all server processes and unmount any tapes that are mounted. Then, stop the server.

Procedure

Use Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands to stop the server:

1. Determine whether server processes are running. Either cancel processes, or allow them to complete. Use the following commands:

query process
cancel process process_number

Allow time for the processes to be stopped. Some processes, such as storage pool migration, might take some time to stop.

For more information about the **QUERY PROCESS** and **CANCEL PROCESS** commands and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

2. After all sessions and processes are stopped, determine whether any tapes are mounted. Unmount any tapes that are mounted. Use the following commands: query mount

dismount volume volume_name

 Stop the server. Use the following command: halt

Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities

You must install the upgrade utilities on the system where the V5 server is located. The installation package for the utilities must be downloaded from a website.

Before you begin

The preferred method is to install the latest available version of the upgrade utilities. For more information about selecting the version, see "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36.

Procedure

Use the procedure for your operating system:

- AIX "Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities on AIX systems"
- HP-UX "Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities on HP-UX systems" on page 236
- **Linux** "Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities on Linux systems" on page 237
- Solaris "Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities on Oracle Solaris systems" on page 238
- Windows "Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 240

Related concepts:

"DSMUPGRD upgrade utilities" on page 16

Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities on AIX systems

AIX

Install the upgrade utilities on the system where the V5 server is located. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.*x*.*x* directory. The 5.5.*x*.*x* number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c.** Select the package that matches your operating system, and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x*.*x*-TIV-TSMUPG-AIX.tar.gz

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- 3. Ensure that the system has the following file sets installed:

x1C.rte 8.0.0.5, or later

gsksa.rte 7.0.4.11

You can use the following commands to check for these file sets: lslpp -L xlC.rte

lslpp -L gsksa.rte
If needed, you can obtain the gsksa.rte file set from any of the regular V5.5 maintenance packages for the AIX server. The maintenance packages are available on the FTP downloads site: ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/maintenance/server/v5r5/AIX/

- 4. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. If you downloaded a language package, also extract the contents of that package.
- 5. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- 6. Access the System Management Interface Tool (SMIT).
 - a. Enter smitty install_update
 - b. Select Install and Update Software > Install and Update from ALL Available Software.
- 7. Select the **INPUT** device. Specify the directory location of the upgrade utilities package on the system.
- **8**. Select **Software to Install**. Press F4 or Esc+4 for the list of available file sets in the directory.
- 9. Select the file sets for the upgrade utilities, the device driver, and optionally the language package. The file set for the upgrade utilities is tivoli.tsmupg.server. Optional language packages include messages for languages other than US English.
- 10. Set COMMIT software updates to Yes. Press F4 or Esc+4.
- 11. Set SAVE replaced files to No.
- **12.** Ensure that the default settings for the options in the window for all the selected file sets show success.
- **13.** Press Enter, and respond to the ARE YOU SURE? question by pressing Enter again. The installation begins.
- 14. When the installation is complete, exit the SMIT program.
- 15. Optional: If you installed a language package, ensure that the locale environment variable is set to use it. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages: export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- **16**. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 4: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 239.

Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities on HP-UX systems

HP-UX

Install the upgrade utilities on the system where the V5 server is located. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.*x*.*x* directory. The 5.5.*x*.*x* number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c.** Select the package that matches your operating system, and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.x.x-TIV-TSMUPG-*platform*.tar.gz

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- 3. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the command: gzip -dc package_name.tar.gz | tar -xvf -
- 4. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- 5. Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the source argument (-s) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command: swinstall -s /tmp/TSM package name

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin.

- 6. Optional: Install the language package.
 - Extract the contents of the package.
 gzip -d package_name.img.gz
 - b. Install the package. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

swinstall -s /tmp/TSM/package_name.img package_name

c. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- 7. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 4: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 239.

Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities on Linux systems

Linux

Install the upgrade utilities on the system where the V5 server is located. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.x.x directory. The 5.5.x.x number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c.** Open the directory for your operating system and download the package. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x*.*x*-TIV-TSMUPG-*platform*.tar.bz2

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- 3. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the commands: bunzip2 package_name.tar.bz2 tar xvf package_name.tar
- 4. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system, for example, x86_64.
- 5. Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the following command: rpm -ivh package name.rpm

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin by default.

- 6. Optional: Install the language package.
 - a. Extract the contents of the downloaded package. bunzip2 package_name.tar.bz2 tar xvf package_name.tar
 - b. Install the package for the language that you want to use. rpm -ivh package_name.rpm

c. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- 7. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 4: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 239.

Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities on Oracle Solaris systems

Solaris

Install the upgrade utilities on the system where the V5 server is located. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

About this task

Restriction: Do *not* install the utilities in the installation directory of the server that must be upgraded. Install the utilities package in its own directory.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.x.x directory. The 5.5.x.x number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c**. Select the package that matches your operating system, and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x*.*x*-TIV-TSMUPG-*platform*.tar.Z

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- 3. Change to the directory where the upgrade utilities package was downloaded.
- 4. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the command: uncompress -c package_name.tar.Z | tar -xvf -

238 IBM Tivoli Storage Manager: Upgrade and Migration Guide for V5 Servers

- 5. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- 6. Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the source argument (-d) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

pkgadd -d . /tmp/TSM package_name

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin by default.

- 7. Optional: Install the language package.
 - Extract the contents of the downloaded package. uncompress package_name.pkg.Z
 - b. Install the package for the language that you want to use. Use the source argument (-d) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

pkgadd -d /tmp/TSM package_name.pkg package_name

c. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- 8. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Scenario 4: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems."

Scenario 4: Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

After installing the upgrade utility package, you must set environment variables in the shell from which you will run the utilities. An environment variable describes the operating environment of a process, such as the home directory or terminal in use.

About this task

The **DSMSERV_DIR** variable specifies the installed location of the upgrade utilities. By default, the location is the following directory:



/usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin

HP-UX Linux Solaris

/opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin

Procedure

Use the appropriate command for your system to set the environment variable for running the utilities. If the shell is in the ksh or bash family, enter the following command to set the **DSMSERV_DIR** variable:

export DSMSERV_DIR=upgrade_utilities_directory

If your shell is in the csh family, use the following command: setenv DSMSERV_DIR upgrade_utilities_directory

where *upgrade_utilities_directory* is the directory where the upgrade utilities are installed.

What to do next

After you set the environment variables, continue the upgrade process using one of the following topics:

- "Scenario 4: Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard" on page 241
- "Scenario 4: Upgrading the server manually by using utilities" on page 250

Scenario 4: Installing the upgrade utilities on Microsoft Windows systems

Windows

Install the upgrade utilities on the system where the V5 server is located. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site. The upgrade utilities are used to prepare and extract the database from the original server.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/WIN
 - b. Open the 5.5.*x*.*x* directory. The 5.5.*x*.*x* number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c.** Select the package and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.x.x-TIV-TSMUPG-Windows.exe

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, install the language package that your installation requires.
- 2. Log on with an administrator ID.
- 3. Run the executable package for the upgrade utilities.

The default location for the installation of the utilities is based on the location where the V5 server was last installed. For example, if the V5 server was installed using the default path, C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server, the upgrade utilities are installed in C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade.

Restriction: Do *not* install the utilities in the same directory as the original server that must be upgraded. Install the utilities package in its own directory.

What to do next

After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue the upgrade process using one of the following topics:

- "Scenario 4: Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard"
- "Scenario 4: Upgrading the server manually by using utilities" on page 250

Tip: When you use the upgrade utilities, if you have multiple servers running on the system, you must use the -k option to specify the name of the Windows registry key from which to retrieve information about the server being upgraded. The default value for the option is SERVER1.

Scenario 4: Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard

The wizard offers a guided approach to upgrading a server. By using the wizard, you can avoid some configuration steps that are complex when done manually. Start the wizard on the system where you installed the V7.1 server program.

Before you begin

You must complete all preceding steps to prepare for the upgrade and to install the upgrade utilities. The V7.1 server must be installed, and directories and the user ID must be created before you start the upgrade wizard.

Procedure

Complete the following steps:

- 1. Scenario 4: Installing the V7.1 server
- **2.** Scenario 4: Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance
- 3. "Scenario 4: Starting the upgrade wizard" on page 248

Scenario 4, wizard: Installing the V7.1 server

You can install the server by using the installation wizard, console mode, or silent mode.

Before you begin

You can obtain the installation package from the product DVD or from an IBM download site such as Passport Advantage or the Tivoli Storage Manager support site.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris If you plan to download the files, set the system user limit for maximum file size to unlimited to ensure that the files can be downloaded correctly.

- To query the maximum file size value, issue the following command: ulimit -Hf
- 2. If the system user limit for maximum file size is not set to unlimited, change it to unlimited by following the instructions in the documentation for your operating system.

Procedure

1. Log on to the system.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Log in by using the root user ID.

Windows Log on as an administrator. You must be logged on to the system with the administrative user ID that was used to install the V5 server.

- 2. If you are obtaining the package from an IBM download site, download the appropriate package file from one of the following websites:
 - For a new release, go to Passport Advantage at http://www.ibm.com/ software/lotus/passportadvantage/. Passport Advantage is the only website from which you can download a licensed package file.
 - For a maintenance fix, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager support site at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/Tivoli_Storage_Manager.
- **3**. If you are downloading the package from one of the download sites, complete the following steps:

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

- a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:
 - Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035122
 - Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http:// www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035635
 - System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035637
- b. Download the package file to the directory of your choice. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files.

Also, ensure that you have executable permission for the package file.

c. If necessary, change the file permissions by issuing the following command:

chmod a+x package_name.bin

where *package_name* is like the following example:

AIX

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-AIX.bin

HP-UX

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-HP-UX.bin

Linux

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxx86_64.bin 7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxs390x.bin

Solaris

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-SolarisSPARC.bin

In the examples, 7.1.0.000 represents the product release level.

d. Extract the installation files by issuing the following command: ./package_name.bin

The package is large. Therefore, the extraction takes some time.

Windows

- a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:
 - Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035121
 - Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http:// www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035636
 - System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035638
- b. Change to the directory where you placed the executable file.

In the next step, the files are extracted to the current directory. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files.

c. To extract the installation files, double-click the executable file: *package name*.exe

where *package_name* is like this example:

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Windows.exe

The package is large. Therefore, the extraction takes some time.

4. AIX HP-UX Solaris To ensure that the Tivoli Storage Manager wizards work correctly, verify that the following command is enabled:

AIX lsuser

HP-UX Solaris logins

By default, the command is enabled.

- 5. If you plan to install the server by using the graphical wizard of IBM Installation Manager, review the following information and verify that your system meets the requirements:
 - Verify that all required RPM files are installed. For a list of required RPM files and instructions about installing RPM files, see the section about installing Tivoli Storage Manager by using the installation wizard in the *Installation Guide*.
 - Verify that the operating system is set to the language that you require. By default, the language of the operating system is the language of the installation wizard.
 - Windows The user ID that you use during installation must be a user with local Administrator authority.
 - Solaris Ensure that the LD_LIBRARY_PATH_64 environment variable is not set.

On test servers only: Use the following command to bypass prerequisite checks such as the operating system and the required memory. Do not issue this command on a production server.



install.bat -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS TSM REQ CHECKS=true"

6. If you use the installation wizard, complete the following steps to begin the installation:

Option	Description
Installing from a downloaded package file:	 Change to the directory where you downloaded the package file.
	2. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command: AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris ./install.sh Windows install.bat
Installing from DVD media:	 Insert the DVD into the DVD drive. Tip: Ensure that the installation files are visible on the DVD drive. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command:

- 7. If you are installing the server by using the wizard, follow these instructions:
 - a. In the IBM Installation Manager window, click the **Install** icon; do not click the **Update** or **Modify** icon.
 - b. Select the components to install. You must install the license package. If you select the storage agent, you must accept the Tivoli Storage Manager for Storage Area Networks license.
- **8**. Alternatively, install the server in console mode. Review the information about installing the server in console mode and then complete the installation procedure, as described in the *Installation Guide*.

- **9**. Alternatively, to install the server in silent mode, follow the instructions for an installation in silent mode in the *Installation Guide*. Review the information about installing the server in silent mode. Then, complete Steps 1 and 2 of the installation procedure.
- Correct any errors that are detected during the installation process. To view installation log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click File > View Log. To collect log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click Help > Export Data for Problem Analysis.
- Obtain any applicable fixes by going to the following website: http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager. Click Fixes (downloads) and apply any applicable fixes.
- 12. HP-UX Linux Solaris To prevent server failures during interaction with DB2, tune the kernel parameters.

For instructions, see the section about tuning kernel parameters in the *Installation Guide*.

- **13**. Optional: To install an additional language package, use the modify function of the IBM Installation Manager.
- 14. Optional: To upgrade to a newer version of a language package, use the update function of the IBM Installation Manager.

Related concepts:

Appendix E, "Services associated with the Tivoli Storage Manager server," on page 555

Scenario 4, wizard: Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance

Create the directories that the server instance needs for database and recovery logs, and create the user ID that will own the server instance.

Before you begin

Review the information about planning space for the server before completing this task. See "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

Procedure

1. Create the user ID that will own the server instance. You use this user ID when you create the server instance in a later step.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Create a user ID and group that will be the owner of the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance.

a. Create the user ID and group.

Restriction: In the user ID, only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_) can be used. The user ID and group name must comply with the following rules:

- The length must be 8 characters or less.
- The user ID and group name cannot start with *ibm, sql, sys,* or a numeral.
- The user ID and group name cannot be *user*, *admin*, *guest*, *public*, *local*, or any SQL reserved word.

For example, create user ID tsminst1 in group tsmsrvrs. The following examples show how to create this user ID and group by using operating system commands:

AIX

- # mkgroup id=1001 tsmsrvrs
- # mkuser id=1002 pgrp=tsmsrvrs home=/home/tsminst1 tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1

HP-UX

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
 # useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs
 -s /bin/ksh tsminst1
 # passwd tsminst1
- " passwa commo

Linux

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
- # useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/bash tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1

Solaris

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
- # useradd -d /export/home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/ksh tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1
- b. Log out and then log in to your system by using the new user ID and password. Use an interactive login program, such as telnet, so that you are prompted for the password and can change it if necessary.
- c. If a configuration profile does not exist for the user ID, create the file. For example, create a .profile file if you are using the Korn shell (ksh).

Windows

Identify the user account that will own the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance. When the server is started as a Windows service, this is the account that the service will log on to. The user account must have administrative authority on the system. One user account can own more than one server instance.

You can create a user account, or use an existing account.

If you have multiple servers on one system and want to run each server with a different user account, create a user account in this step.

a. Create the user ID.

Restriction: The user ID can contain only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_). The user ID must be 30 characters or less, and cannot start with *ibm*, *sql*, *sys*, or a numeral. The user ID and group name cannot be *user*, *admin*, *guest*, *public*, *local*, or any SQL reserved word.

Use the following command to create the user ID:

net user user_ID * /add

You are prompted to create and verify a password for the new user ID.

Issue the following operating system commands to add the new user ID to the Administrators groups:
 net localgroup Administrators user ID /add

net localgroup DB2ADMNS user_ID /add

- c. Log in to your system, by using the new user ID and password.
- d. For all directories that were created for the server instance, ensure that the user ID for the server instance has read/write access. The directories to check include the instance directory and all database and log directories.
- 2. Create the directories that the server requires. Ensure that you are logged in under the new user ID that you created.

You need a unique, empty directory for each item in the following table. Create the database directories, the active log directory, and the archive log directory on different physical volumes. For space requirements, see "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Table 51. Worksheet for creating required directories

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsminst1	
The database directories	<pre>mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb001 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb002 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb003 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb004</pre>	
Active log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmlog	
Archive log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmlogmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlogfailover	

Windows

Table 52. Worksheet for creating required directories

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir d:\tsm\server1	

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The database directories	mkdir d:\tsm\db001 mkdir e:\tsm\db002 mkdir f:\tsm\db003 mkdir g:\tsm\db004	
Active log directory	mkdir h:\tsm\log	
Archive log directory	mkdir i:\tsm\archlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir j:\tsm\logmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir k:\tsm\archlogfailover	

Table 52. Worksheet for creating required directories (continued)

When a server is initially created by using the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility or the configuration wizard, a server database and recovery log are created. In addition, files are created to hold database information that is used by the database manager.

3. Create additional logical volumes and mount the volumes on the directories that were created in the previous step.

Related tasks:

"Planning space for the upgrade process and the upgraded server" on page 37

Related reference:

"Server naming best practices" on page 70

Scenario 4: Starting the upgrade wizard

The wizard offers a guided approach to upgrading a server. By using the wizard, you can avoid some configuration steps that are complex when done manually. Start the wizard on the system where you installed the V7.1 server program.

Before you begin

You must complete all preceding steps to prepare for the upgrade, to install the upgrade utilities, to install the V7.1 server program, and to create the directories and user ID for the server instance.

Procedure

1. Ensure that the following requirements are met.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

- The system where you installed the V7.1 server program must have the X Window client. You must also be running an X Window server on your desktop.
- The systems must have one of the following protocols enabled. Ensure that the port that the protocol uses is not blocked by a firewall.

- Secure Shell (SSH). Ensure that the port is set to the default value,
 22. Also, ensure that the SSH daemon service has access rights for connecting to the system by using localhost.
- Remote shell (rsh).
- Remote Execution Protocol (REXEC).
- You must be able to log in to the V7.1 system with the user ID that you created for the server instance, using the SSH, RSH, or REXEC protocol. When using the wizard, you must provide this user ID and password to access that system.

Windows

- The system where you installed the V7.1 server program must have the Windows server message block (SMB) protocol enabled. SMB is the interface that is used by File and Print Sharing (also known as CIFS). To use the SMB protocol, you must ensure that File and Print Sharing is enabled, and that port 445 is not blocked by your firewall.
- If the V5 server is on a different system than the V7.1 server, that system must also have SMB enabled.
- You must be able to log on to the system that has SMB enabled by using either the user ID that you created for the server instance, or another user ID that exists on the system. When you use the wizard, you must provide the user ID and password to access the system.
- 2. Windows If the system is running on Windows Server 2008, complete the following steps to disable User Account Control:
 - a. Ensure that the Remote Registry in Windows Services is started, and ports 445, 137, and 139 are unblocked in the firewall.
 - b. Configure both the framework server and the targets as members of a Windows domain. Use a user account in that domain, or in a trusted domain, when you connect to the target.
 - c. Connect to the target workstation by enabling and using the built-in administrator account. To enable the built-in administrator account, click Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Local Security Policy > Security Settings > Local Policies > Security Options. Double-click the Accounts: Administrator account status section. Select Enable and click OK.
 - d. Click Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Local Security Policy > Security Settings > Local Policies > Security Options. Double-click the User Account Control: Run all administrators in Admin Approval Mode section. Select Disable and click OK.
- 3. Start the upgrade wizard, dsmupgdx, from the V7.1 server installation directory.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Log in using the root user ID. Issue the command: /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmupgdx

Windows

Open a new Command Prompt window, and issue the command: "c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmupgdx.exe"

4. Follow the instructions to complete the upgrade. The upgrade wizard can be stopped and restarted, but the server will not be operational until the entire upgrade process is complete.

Important: Read all messages that appear for each phase of the upgrade process, in the message display area within the wizard. Informational messages might show actions that occurred during the process that are important to you.

What to do next

To complete the upgrade, perform the steps described in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Scenario 4: Upgrading the server manually by using utilities

Use the utilities to upgrade the server by using a command interface.

Before you begin

Complete all preceding steps to prepare for the upgrade and to install the upgrade utilities.

Procedure

Complete the following steps:

- 1. "Scenario 4: Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade"
- 2. Scenario 4: Installing the V7.1 server
- **3**. Scenario 4: Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance
- 4. "Scenario 4: Creating and formatting the new database" on page 259
- 5. "Scenario 4: Moving the server database over a network" on page 263
- 6. "Scenario 4: Creating a Windows service for the server instance" on page 265
- 7. "Scenario 4: Configuring the system for database backup" on page 265

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Related concepts:

"DSMUPGRD upgrade utilities" on page 16

Scenario 4: Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade

Before you extract the data from the database, you must prepare the server database by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility. If you have multiple servers on a single system, you must repeat this task for each server.

Procedure

- 1. Ensure that you have completed all preparation steps.
- **2**. Log in using the root user ID on the system that has the original server. Log on with the administrator ID on a Windows system.
- **3**. Change to the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading. The instance directory is the directory that contains the files such as dsmserv.dsk for the server.

Important: The dsmserv.dsk file is not available in Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1. Save a copy of the dsmserv.dsk file in case you must revert to V5.5.

4. Prepare the database. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring.

From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process in the background and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

nohup /usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd preparedb >prepare.out 2>&1 &

HP-UX Linux Solaris

From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process in the background and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd preparedb >prepare.out 2>&1 &

Windows

AIX

From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd"
 preparedb 1>>prepare.out 2>&1

If multiple servers exist on the system, issue the command from the instance directory for the server that you want to prepare. Specify the registry key for that server. For example, if the server is SERVER2:

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd" -k server2
 preparedb 1>>prepare.out 2>&1

5. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages. The final message indicates success or failure of the operation. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to monitor the process:

tail -f prepare.out

Tip: On Windows systems, use the **tail** command or an equivalent utility with which you can monitor the contents of a file as it changes. For example, the Windows Server 2003 Resource Kit Tools includes the **tail** command, which can be used as shown in the preceding example.

6. Ensure that the prepare operation is completed successfully before you continue to the next step. If the prepare operation fails, you might need to restart the V5 server to fix the problem and run the prepare operation again. If the server that is being upgraded is a V5.3 or V5.4 server, you might need to restore the database by using a backup before you can restart the server to correct the problem.

Related reference:

"DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB (Prepare a V5 database for upgrade)" on page 523

Scenario 4, manual: Installing the V7.1 server

You can install the server by using the installation wizard, console mode, or silent mode.

Before you begin

You can obtain the installation package from the product DVD or from an IBM download site such as Passport Advantage or the Tivoli Storage Manager support site.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris If you plan to download the files, set the system user limit for maximum file size to unlimited to ensure that the files can be downloaded correctly.

- To query the maximum file size value, issue the following command: ulimit -Hf
- 2. If the system user limit for maximum file size is not set to unlimited, change it to unlimited by following the instructions in the documentation for your operating system.

Procedure

1. Log on to the system.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Log in by using the root user ID.

Windows Log on as an administrator. You must be logged on to the system with the administrative user ID that was used to install the V5 server.

- 2. If you are obtaining the package from an IBM download site, download the appropriate package file from one of the following websites:
 - For a new release, go to Passport Advantage at http://www.ibm.com/ software/lotus/passportadvantage/. Passport Advantage is the only website from which you can download a licensed package file.
 - For a maintenance fix, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager support site at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager.
- **3**. If you are downloading the package from one of the download sites, complete the following steps:

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

- a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:
 - Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035122
 - Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http:// www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035635
 - System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035637
- b. Download the package file to the directory of your choice. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files.

Also, ensure that you have executable permission for the package file.

c. If necessary, change the file permissions by issuing the following command:

chmod a+x package_name.bin

where *package_name* is like the following example:



- docview.wss?uid=swg24035121Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http://
- www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035636
 System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035638
- b. Change to the directory where you placed the executable file. In the next step, the files are extracted to the current directory. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other
- c. To extract the installation files, double-click the executable file: *package name*.exe

where *package_name* is like this example:

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Windows.exe

The package is large. Therefore, the extraction takes some time.

4. AIX HP-UX Solaris To ensure that the Tivoli Storage Manager wizards work correctly, verify that the following command is enabled:

AIX lsuser

files.

HP-UX Solaris logins

By default, the command is enabled.

- 5. If you plan to install the server by using the graphical wizard of IBM Installation Manager, review the following information and verify that your system meets the requirements:
 - **NAX** Verify that all required RPM files are installed. For a list of required RPM files and instructions about installing RPM files, see the section about installing Tivoli Storage Manager by using the installation wizard in the *Installation Guide*.
 - Verify that the operating system is set to the language that you require. By default, the language of the operating system is the language of the installation wizard.
 - Windows The user ID that you use during installation must be a user with local Administrator authority.
 - Solaris Ensure that the LD_LIBRARY_PATH_64 environment variable is not set.

On test servers only: Use the following command to bypass prerequisite checks such as the operating system and the required memory. Do not issue this command on a production server.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

./install.sh -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS_TSM_REQ_CHECKS=true"

Windows

install.bat -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS_TSM_REQ_CHECKS=true"

6. If you use the installation wizard, complete the following steps to begin the installation:

Option	Description
Installing from a downloaded package file:	 Change to the directory where you downloaded the package file.
	2. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command:
	AIX HP-UX Linux
	Solaris
	./install.sh
	Windows install.bat

Option	Description
Installing from DVD media:	 Insert the DVD into the DVD drive. Tip: Ensure that the installation files are visible on the DVD drive.
	2. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command:
	AIX HP-UX Linux
	Solaris
	./install.sh
	Windows
	install.bat
	Windows Or, in the directory where the installation files were extracted, double-click the install.bat file.

- 7. If you are installing the server by using the wizard, follow these instructions:
 - a. In the IBM Installation Manager window, click the **Install** icon; do not click the **Update** or **Modify** icon.
 - b. Select the components to install. You must install the license package. If you select the storage agent, you must accept the Tivoli Storage Manager for Storage Area Networks license.
- 8. Alternatively, install the server in console mode. Review the information about installing the server in console mode and then complete the installation procedure, as described in the *Installation Guide*.
- **9**. Alternatively, to install the server in silent mode, follow the instructions for an installation in silent mode in the *Installation Guide*. Review the information about installing the server in silent mode. Then, complete Steps 1 and 2 of the installation procedure.
- Correct any errors that are detected during the installation process. To view installation log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click File > View Log. To collect log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click Help > Export Data for Problem Analysis.
- 11. Obtain any applicable fixes by going to the following website: http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager. Click **Fixes (downloads)** and apply any applicable fixes.
- 12. HP-UX Linux Solaris To prevent server failures during interaction with DB2, tune the kernel parameters.

For instructions, see the section about tuning kernel parameters in the *Installation Guide*.

- **13**. Optional: To install an additional language package, use the modify function of the IBM Installation Manager.
- 14. Optional: To upgrade to a newer version of a language package, use the update function of the IBM Installation Manager.

Related concepts:

Appendix E, "Services associated with the Tivoli Storage Manager server," on page 555

Scenario 4, manual: Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance

Create the directories that the server instance needs for database and recovery logs, and create the user ID that will own the server instance.

Before you begin

Review the information about planning space for the server before you complete this task. See "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

Procedure

1. Create the user ID that will own the server instance. You use this user ID when you create the server instance in a later step.



Create a user ID and group that will be the owner of the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance.

a. Create the user ID and group.

Restriction: In the user ID, only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_) can be used. The user ID and group name must comply with the following rules:

- The length must be 8 characters or less.
- The user ID and group name cannot start with *ibm*, *sql*, *sys*, or a numeral.
- The user ID and group name cannot be *user*, *admin*, *guest*, *public*, *local*, or any SQL reserved word.

For example, create user ID tsminst1 in group tsmsrvrs. The following examples show how to create this user ID and group by using operating system commands:

AIX

- # mkgroup id=1001 tsmsrvrs
- # mkuser id=1002 pgrp=tsmsrvrs home=/home/tsminst1 tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1

HP-UX

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
- # useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/ksh tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1

Linux

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
- # useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/bash tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1

Solaris

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
- # useradd -d /export/home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/ksh tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1

- b. Log out and then log in to your system by using the new user ID and password. Use an interactive login program, such as telnet, so that you are prompted for the password and can change it if necessary.
- c. If a configuration profile does not exist for the user ID, create the file. For example, create a .profile file if you are using the Korn shell (ksh).

Windows

Identify the user account that will own the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance. When the server is started as a Windows service, this is the account that the service will log on to. The user account must have administrative authority on the system. One user account can own more than one server instance.

You can create a user account, or use an existing account.

If you have multiple servers on one system and want to run each server with a different user account, create a user account in this step.

a. Create the user ID.

Restriction: The user ID can contain only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_). The user ID must be 30 characters or less, and cannot start with *ibm*, *sql*, *sys*, or a numeral. The user ID and group name cannot be *user*, *admin*, *guest*, *public*, *local*, or any SQL reserved word.

Use the following command to create the user ID:

net user user_ID * /add

You are prompted to create and verify a password for the new user ID.

b. Issue the following operating system commands to add the new user ID to the Administrators groups:

net localgroup Administrators $user_ID$ /add net localgroup DB2ADMNS $user_ID$ /add

- c. Log in to your system, by using the new user ID and password.
- d. For all directories that were created for the server instance, ensure that the user ID for the server instance has read/write access. The directories to check include the instance directory and all database and log directories.
- 2. Create the directories that the server requires. Ensure that you are logged in under the new user ID that you created.

You need a unique, empty directory for each item in the following table. Create the database directories, the active log directory, and the archive log directory on different physical volumes. For space requirements, see "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsminst1	
The database directories	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb001 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb002 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb003 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb004	
Active log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmlog	
Archive log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmlogmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlogfailover	

Table 53. Worksheet for creating required directories

Windows

Table 54. Worksheet for creating required directories

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir d:\tsm\server1	
The database directories	mkdir d:\tsm\db001 mkdir e:\tsm\db002 mkdir f:\tsm\db003 mkdir g:\tsm\db004	
Active log directory	mkdir h:\tsm\log	
Archive log directory	mkdir i:\tsm\archlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir j:\tsm\logmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir k:\tsm\archlogfailover	

When a server is initially created by using the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility or the configuration wizard, a server database and recovery log are created. In addition, files are created to hold database information that is used by the database manager.

3. Create additional logical volumes and mount the volumes on the directories that were created in the previous step.

Related tasks:

"Planning space for the upgrade process and the upgraded server" on page 37 **Related reference**:

"Server naming best practices" on page 70

Scenario 4: Creating and formatting the new database

Create the server instance and format files for an empty V7.1 database.

Procedure

1. Log on to the system where you installed the V7.1 program.



Log in by using the root user ID. Verify the following items:

• The home directory for the user, /home/tsminst1, exists. If there is no home directory, you must create it.

The instance directory stores the following core files that are generated by the Tivoli Storage Manager server:

- The server options file, dsmserv.opt
- The server key database file, cert.kdb, and the .arm files, which are used by clients and other servers to import the Secure Sockets Layer certificates of the server
- Device configuration file, if the DEVCONFIG server option does not specify a fully qualified name
- Volume history file, if the VOLUMEHISTORY server option does not specify a fully qualified name
- Volumes for DEVTYPE=FILE storage pools, if the directory for the device class is not fully specified, or not fully qualified
- User exits
- Trace output, if it is not fully qualified
- A shell configuration file, for example, .profile, exists in the home directory. The root user and instance user ID must have write permission to this file. For more information, go to the DB2 Information Center (http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/v10r5), and search for information about Linux and UNIX environment variable settings.

Windows

Log on as an administrator.

2. Create a Tivoli Storage Manager instance by using the **db2icrt** command.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Enter the following command on one line. For the instance name, specify the user ID that you created to own the instance:

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2icrt -a server -s ese -u
instance_name instance_name

For example, if the user ID for this instance is tsminst1, use the following command to create the instance:

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2icrt -a server -s ese -u
tsminst1 tsminst1

Remember: From this point on, use this new user ID when you configure the Tivoli Storage Manager server. Log out of the root user ID, and log in using the user ID that is the instance owner.

Windows

Enter the following command on one line. The user account that you specify becomes the user ID that owns the V7.1 server; this ID is the instance user ID.

db2icrt -s ese -u user_account instance_name

For example, if the user account is *tsminst1* and the server instance is *Server1*, enter the following command:

db2icrt -s ese -u tsminst1 server1

The database service for the server instance logs on to the user account that is specified in this command.

Use the registry key name of the V5 server as the instance name for the V7.1 server. You are prompted to enter the password for the user account.

The instance name that you specify on this **db2icrt** command is the name that you later specify with the -k option on the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** command, when you create and format the database and recovery log.

- **3.** Log on to the system by using the user ID that owns the V7.1 server instance (the instance user ID).
- 4. Copy the configuration files to the instance directory that you created for the new server. The files are the configuration files that you saved from the original V5 server:
 - Device configuration
 - Server options file, which is typically named dsmserv.opt

For example, if you created the instance directory that is shown in the example in the step to create directories for the V7.1 server, copy the files into the following directory:



Ensure that the user ID that owns the V7.1 server (the instance user ID) has ownership or read/write permission to the files that you copied.

- 5. Edit the server options file.
 - a. Remove any options that are not supported for V7.1. For the list of deleted options, see Table 29 on page 67.
 - b. Verify that the server options file contains at least one VOLUMEHISTORY option and at least one DEVCONFIG option. By specifying these options, you ensure that a volume history file and a device configuration file are generated and updated automatically. If you must restore the database, these files are required.

- **c.** Check whether the server options file includes the TXNGROUPMAX option with a value, and if it does, what the value is. You might want to change the current value because the default value for this option changed from 256 to 4096, starting in V6. The increased value can improve the performance for data movement operations such as storage pool migration and storage pool backup.
 - If the server options file does not include this option, the server automatically uses the new default value of 4096.
 - If the server options file includes a value for this option, the server uses that specified value. If the specified value is less than 4096, consider increasing the value, or removing the option so that the new default value is applied.
- 6. Change the default path for the database.



For example:

db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath /tsminst1

Windows

Change the default path for the database to be the drive where the instance directory for the server is located. Complete the following steps:

- a. Click Start > Programs > IBM DB2 > DB2TSM1 > Command Line Tools > Command Line Processor.
- b. Enter quit to exit the command line processor.

A window with a command prompt opens, with the environment correctly set up to successfully issue the commands in the next steps.

c. From the command prompt in that window, issue the following command to set the environment variable for the server instance that you are working with:

set db2instance=instance_name

The *instance_name* is the same as the instance name that you specified when you issued the **db2icrt** command. For example, to set the environment variable for the Server1 server instance, issue the following command:

set db2instance=server1

d. Issue the command to set the default drive:

db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath instance_location

For example, if the instance directory is d:\tsm\server1, the instance location is drive d:. Enter the command:

db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath d:

7. Modify the library path to use the version of the IBM Global Security Kit (GSKit) that is installed with the Tivoli Storage Manager server:

AIX Issue the following command:

export LIBPATH=/usr/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LIBPATH

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

•

•

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris You must update the following files to set the library path when DB2 or the Tivoli Storage Manager server is started:

- instance directory/sqllib/usercshrc
- instance_directory/sqllib/userprofile

For the *instance directory*/sqllib/usercshrc file, add the following lines:

```
AIX
•
  setenv LIBPATH /usr/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:$LIBPATH
  HP-UX Solaris
  setenv LD LIBRARY PATH /opt/ibm/gsk8 64/lib64:$LD LIBRARY PATH
  Linux
•
  setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH /usr/local/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
For the instance directory/sqllib/userprofile file, add the following lines:
  AIX
  LIBPATH=/usr/opt/ibm/gsk8 64/lib64:$LIBPATH
  export LIBPATH
  HP-UX Solaris
  LD LIBRARY PATH=/opt/ibm/gsk8 64/lib64:$LD LIBRARY PATH
  export LD LIBRARY PATH
  Linux
  LD LIBRARY PATH=/usr/local/ibm/gsk8 64/lib64:$LD LIBRARY PATH
  export LD LIBRARY PATH
Verify the library path settings and ensure that the GSKit version is 8.0.14.14
or later. Issue the following commands:
• AIX
  echo $LIBPATH
  gsk8capicmd 64 -version
  gsk8ver_64

    HP-UX Linux Solaris

  echo $LD LIBRARY PATH
  gsk8capicmd 64 -version
  gsk8ver 64
If the GSKit version is not 8.0.14.14 or later, you must reinstall the Tivoli
Storage Manager server. The reinstallation ensures that the correct GSKit
version is available.
```

- 8. Change to the instance directory that you created for the server.
- 9. Create and format the database and recovery logs. In the command, specify the directories that you created for the database and logs. The directories must be empty.

AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris	
-	For exampl size), issue	le, to get a the follow	n active	og size of 16 GB (16384 MB, the default mand, on one line:
	/opt/tivoli dbdir=/tsmd activelogsi nirrorlogdi	/tsm/serve b001,/tsmd ze=16384 a rectory=/t	r/bin/dsm b002,/tsm ctivelogd smlogmirr	serv loadformat \ db003,/tsmdb004 \ irectory=/tsmlog \ or archlogdirectory=/tsmarchlog
Windows				

For example, to get an active log size of 16 GB (16384 MB, the default size) for the Server1 server instance, issue the following command, on one line:

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmserv" loadformat dbdir=d:\tsm\db001,e:\tsm\db002,f:\tsm\db003,g:\tsm\db004 activelogsize=16384 activelogdirectory=h:\tsm\log mirrorlogdirectory=j:\tsm\logmirror archlogdirectory=i:\tsm\archlog

If you have already created the first server instance on the system (server1) and are creating more, then you must use the -k option. The -k option specifies the instance name for running this utility. For example, if the instance name for the server is server2, issue the command:

```
"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmserv" -k server2
loadformat dbdir=d:\tsm\db001,e:\tsm\db002,f:\tsm\db003,g:\tsm\db004
activelogsize=16384 activelogdirectory=h:\tsm\log
mirrorlogdirectory=j:\tsm\logmirror archlogdirectory=i:\tsm\archlog
```

10. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages. The final message indicates success or failure of the operation.

Related tasks:

"Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39

Related reference:

DSMSERV LOADFORMAT (Format a database)

"Deleted server commands, utilities, and options" on page 65

Scenario 4: Moving the server database over a network

Move the database by starting the insertion process for the V7.1 server to accept the server database. Then, start the extraction process for the V5 server to extract and send the database.

Before you begin

Ensure that the V5 server and the V7.1 server are not running.

Procedure

- 1. Verify that there is a good network connection between the two systems.
- 2. Start the insertion process on the V7.1 server to accept the database. To monitor the process, direct the output of the process to a file. For example, start the server, allowing 60 minutes (the default time) for the other server to contact the V7.1 server and directing the process output to insert.out, by using this command:

AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris		
nohup /opt sesswait=6	/tivoli/t 0 >insert	sm/server/ .out 2>&1	bin/dsmsen &	rv insertdb	١

Windows

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmserv" insertdb sesswait=60 1>>insert.out 2>&1

The server starts and waits up to 60 minutes to be contacted by the original server. Some time might pass during which no messages are issued. During this time, DB2 operations are running in the background. Optional: To verify

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

that operations are continuing as expected, monitor the CPU and I/O usage for the server process and the corresponding DB2 process.

3. Monitor the output of the DSMSERV INSERTDB process. Verify that the DSMSERV INSERTDB process has issued the following message before continuing to the next step:

ANR1336I INSERTDB: Ready for connections from the source server

Issue the following command to monitor the process output in the insert.out file:

tail -f insert.out

Tip: On Windows systems, use the **tail** command or an equivalent utility with which you can monitor the contents of a file as it changes. For example, the Windows Server 2003 Resource Kit Tools includes the **tail** command, which can be used as shown in the preceding example.

4. Start the extraction from the original server. Specify the TCP/IP address and port for the V7.1 server. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring. For example, enter the following command on one line:

AIX

nohup /usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd extractdb \
hladdress=127.0.0.1 lladdress=1500 >extract.out 2>&1 &

HP-UX Linux Solaris

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd extractdb \
hladdress=127.0.0.1 lladdress=1500 >extract.out 2>&1 &

Windows

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd" extractdb hladdress=127.0.0.1 lladdress=1500 1>>extract.out 2>&1

5. Monitor the processes for errors and warning messages, and for items that you might need to act on. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to monitor the extraction process: tail -f extract.out

The length of time that the process runs depends on the size of the database, the hardware being used, and the network.

6. Examine the process outputs for the extraction and insertion processes to find the messages that indicate the success or failure of the operations.

Process	Success message	Failure message	
Extraction	ANR1382I EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed.	ANR1396E EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed with errors.	
Insertion	ANR1395I INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed.	ANR1396E INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed with errors.	

Related reference:

"DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB (Extract data from a V5 server database)" on page 529

"DSMSERV INSERTDB (Move a server database into an empty database)" on page 538

Scenario 4: Creating a Windows service for the server instance

Windows

A Windows service is created for the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server automatically if you use the upgrade wizard (**dsmupgdx**). If you do not use the wizard, you must create the Windows service for the Tivoli Storage Manager server manually.

Procedure

- Change to the installation directory for the server program. By default, the directory is C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\console. If you installed the server in a different directory, change to the console subdirectory of the server installation directory.
- 2. Install the Windows service by using the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance name and password in the service name. Issue the following command:

```
install "TSM server_instance_name"
    "C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmsvc.exe"
instance owner instance owner password
```

where:

"TSM *server_instance_name*" is the name of the service that is being installed.

server_instance_name is the instance name that was specified when you issued the **db2icrt** command.

instance_owner is the instance owner account; this account will own the service.

instance_owner_password is the password for the instance owner account.

Example

To install the Windows service for the server1 server instance, enter the following command on one line. The example uses rudy as the instance owner and s21ret as the password for the instance owner account. install "TSM server1" "C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmsvc.exe" rudy s21ret

3. Optional: Manually change the service to an automatic startup type by using Windows administrative tools (**Administrative Tools** > **Services**).

Related tasks:

"Starting the server on Windows systems" on page 331

Scenario 4: Configuring the system for database backup

The database manager and the Tivoli Storage Manager API must be configured so that the database manager can back up the server database. The configuration is completed for you automatically if you use the upgrade wizard (**dsmupgdx**). If you do not use the wizard, you must complete the configuration manually.

Procedure

- "Scenario 4: Configuring the system for database backup on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 266
- "Scenario 4: Configuring the system for database backup on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 268

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Scenario 4: Configuring the system for database backup on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

If you did not use the upgrade wizard, you must complete the configuration for the database backup manually.

About this task

Starting with Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1, it is no longer necessary to set the API password during a manual configuration of the server. If you set the API password during the manual configuration process, attempts to back up the database might fail.

Complete the following steps before you issue either the **BACKUP DB** or the **RESTORE DB** command.

Attention: If the database is unusable, the entire Tivoli Storage Manager server is unavailable. If a database is lost and cannot be recovered, it might be difficult or impossible to recover data that was managed by that server. Therefore, it is critically important to back up the database.

In the following commands, replace the example values with your actual values. The examples use tsminst1 for the server instance user ID, /tsminst1 for the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance directory, and /home/tsminst1 as the home directory of the server instance user.

Procedure

- 1. Set the Tivoli Storage Manager API environment-variable configuration for the database instance:
 - a. Log in by using the tsminst1 user ID.
 - b. When user tsminst1 is logged in, ensure that the DB2 environment is correctly initialized. The DB2 environment is initialized by running the /home/tsminst1/sqllib/db2profile script, which normally runs automatically from the profile of the user ID. Ensure that the .profile file exists in the home directory of the instance user, for example, /home/tsminst1/.profile. If .profile does not run the db2profile script, add the following lines:
 - c. In the *instance_directory*/sqllib/userprofile file, add the following lines:

DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory/tsmdbmgr.opt DSMI_DIR=server_bin_directory/dbbkapi DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory export DSMI_CONFIG DSMI_DIR DSMI_LOG

- d. In the *instance_directory*/sqllib/usercshrc file, add the following lines:
 - setenv DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory/tsmdbmgr.opt
 setenv DSMI_DIR=server_bin_directory/dbbkapi
 setenv DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory

 Log out and log in again as tsminst1, or issue this command: . ~/.profile

Ensure that you enter a space after the initial dot (.) character.

3. Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.opt in the server instance directory, which is in the /tsminstl directory in this example, and add the following line: SERVERNAME TSMDBMGR_TSMINST1

The value for SERVERNAME must be consistent in the tsmdbmgr.opt and dsm.sys files.

4. Locate the Tivoli Storage Manager API dsm.sys configuration file. By default, the dsm.sys file is in the following location:

server_bin_directory/dbbkapi/dsm.sys

5. As root user, add the following lines to the dsm.sys configuration file:

```
servername TSMDBMGR_TSMINST1
commmethod tcpip
tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport 1500
errorlogname /tsminst1
nodename $$ TSMDBMGR $$
```

where

- servername matches the servername value in the tsmdbmgr.opt file.
- commethod specifies the client API that is used to contact the server for database backup. This value can be tcpip or sharedmem. For more information about shared memory, see Step 6.
- tcpserveraddr specifies the server address that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be localhost.
- tcpport specifies the port number that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. Ensure that you enter the same tcpport value that is specified in the dsmserv.opt server options file.
- errorlogname specifies the error log where the client API logs errors that are encountered during a database backup. This log is typically in the server instance directory. However, this log can be placed in any location where the instance user ID has write-permission.
- nodename specifies the node name that the client API uses to connect to the server during a database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be \$\$_TSMDBMGR_\$\$.

Linux Do not add the PASSWORDACCESS generate option to the dsm.sys configuration file. This option can cause the database backup to fail.

- 6. Optional: Configure the server to back up the database by using shared memory. In this way, you might be able to reduce the processor load and improve throughput. Complete the following steps:
 - a. Review the dsmserv.opt file. If the following lines are not in the file, add them:

commmethod sharedmem
shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port that you use for shared memory.

b. In the dsm.sys configuration file, locate the following lines:

commmethod tcpip
tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport port number

Replace the specified lines with the following lines: commmethod sharedmem shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port that you use for shared memory.

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Scenario 4: Configuring the system for database backup on Microsoft Windows systems

Windows

If you did not use the upgrade wizard, you must complete the configuration for the database backup manually.

About this task

Complete the following steps before you issue either the **BACKUP DB** or the **RESTORE DB** command.

Attention: If the database is unusable, the entire Tivoli Storage Manager server is unavailable. If a database is lost and cannot be recovered, it might be difficult or impossible to recover data that was managed by that server. Therefore, it is critically important to back up the database.

In the following commands, the examples use server1 for the database instance and d:\tsmserver1 for the Tivoli Storage Manager server directory. When you issue the commands, replace these values with your actual values.

Procedure

1. Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.env in the d:\tsmserver1 directory with the following contents:

DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory\tsmdbmgr.opt DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory

- 2. Set the DSMI_ api environment-variable configuration for the database instance:
 - a. Open a DB2 command window. One method is to go to the C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\db2\bin directory, or if you installed Tivoli Storage Manager in a different location, go to the db2\bin subdirectory in your main installation directory. Then, issue the following command: db2cmd
 - b. Issue the following command:
 - db2set -i server1 DB2_VENDOR_INI=d:\tsmserver1\tsmdbmgr.env
 - c. Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.opt in the d:\tsmserver1 directory with the following contents:

tcpserveraddr localhost tcpport 1500 passwordaccess generate errorlogname d:\tsmserver1

where

- nodename specifies the node name that the client API uses to connect to the server during a database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be \$\$_TSMDBMGR_\$\$.
- commethod specifies the client API that is used to contact the server for database backup. This value can be tcpip or sharedmem. For more information about shared memory, see Step 3.
- tcpserveraddr specifies the server address that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be localhost.
- tcpport is the port number that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. Ensure that you enter the same tcpport value that is specified in the dsmserv.opt server options file.
- passwordaccess is required to ensure that the backup node can connect to the server.
- errorlogname is the error log where the client API logs errors that are encountered during a database backup. This log is typically in the server instance directory. However, this log can be placed in any location where the instance user ID has write-permission.
- **3**. Optional: Configure the server to back up the database by using shared memory. In this way, you might be able to reduce the processor load and improve throughput. Complete the following steps:
 - a. Review the dsmserv.opt file. If the following lines are not in the file, add them:

commmethod sharedmem
shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port to use for shared memory.

b. In the tsmdbmgr.opt file, locate the following lines:

commmethod tcpip tcpserveraddr localhost tcpport 1500

Replace the specified lines with the following lines: commmethod sharedmem shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port to use for shared memory.

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.
Chapter 8. Clustered environments: Upgrade procedures

To upgrade a Tivoli Storage Manager server from V5 to V7.1 in a clustered environment, you must complete planning, preparation, installation, and configuration tasks. The procedures vary, depending on the operating system.

About this task

Follow the procedure for your operating system:

Operating system	Procedure
AIX	"Upgrading the server to V7.1 in an AIX clustered environment"
Windows	"Upgrading the server to V7.1 in a Windows clustered environment" on page 273

Upgrading the server to V7.1 in an AIX clustered environment

AIX

To upgrade Tivoli Storage Manager from V5.5 to V7.1 in a clustered environment on an AIX operating system, you must mount all shared resources on the primary node. Install the V7.1 server on the primary node and upgrade each instance. Then, install the V7.1 server on each secondary node.

Before you begin

If you are planning an in-place upgrade on the same system, ensure that you retain the installation media from the base release of the installed V5 server. If you installed Tivoli Storage Manager from a DVD, ensure that the DVD is available. If you installed Tivoli Storage Manager from a downloaded package, ensure that the downloaded files are available. If the upgrade fails, and the server license module is uninstalled, the installation media from the V5 server base release are required to reinstall the license.

Procedure

- 1. Mount all shared resources on the primary node. If your environment includes multiple instances of Tivoli Storage Manager, shared resources for all instances must be accessible to the primary node during the upgrade.
- 2. Select a scenario for upgrading the server:
 - Chapter 4, "Scenario 1: Same system, media method," on page 91
 - Chapter 5, "Scenario 2: Same system, network method," on page 135
 - Chapter 6, "Scenario 3: New system, media method," on page 177
 - Chapter 7, "Scenario 4: New system, network method," on page 225
- **3**. On the primary node, for each instance, prepare the system for the upgrade. Complete the steps for your scenario:
 - "Scenario 1: Preparing for the upgrade" on page 91
 - "Scenario 2: Preparing for the upgrade" on page 135
 - "Scenario 3: Preparing for the upgrade" on page 177

- "Scenario 4: Preparing for the upgrade" on page 225
- 4. If you are upgrading Tivoli Storage Manager on the same system, complete the following steps on the primary node:
 - a. "Installing the upgrade utilities on AIX systems" on page 287
 - b. "Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 292
 - c. "Uninstalling the V5 program before installing V7.1" on page 295
 - d. "Installing the V7.1 server" on page 297
- 5. If you are upgrading Tivoli Storage Manager on a different system, complete the following steps on the primary node:
 - a. "Installing the upgrade utilities on AIX systems" on page 287
 - b. "Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 292
 - c. "Installing the V7.1 server" on page 297
- 6. For each instance, complete the following steps:
 - a. "Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade" on page 294
 - b. "Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance" on page 302
 - c. "Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard" on page 305

Ensure that you upgrade the server for each instance. Do not configure the server instance to start automatically following a system restart. Upon completion of the upgrade wizard, the instance is started.

7. Adjust the cluster start and stop scripts to use the correct instance directories. Each instance requires its own set of scripts. Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 uses a different start and stop script framework than V5.5. Use the following V7 framework:

/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/startserver /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/stopserver

- 8. Test the start and stop scripts to ensure that they work as expected.
- 9. On the primary node, stop all server instances.
- **10.** For each secondary node, install the V7.1 server. Follow the instructions in "Installing the V7.1 server" on page 297.
- **11**. For each secondary node, adjust the cluster start and stop scripts to use the correct instance directories. Each instance requires its own set of scripts. Use the following V7 framework:

/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/startserver
/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/stopserver

- 12. If the DB2 instance directory is shared between the nodes in the cluster, continue with Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.
- **13.** If the DB2 instance directory is not shared between the nodes in the cluster, for each secondary node, complete the following steps:
 - a. Create the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance. Follow the instructions in "Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance" on page 302.
 - b. Mount all shared resources for all server instances on the secondary node.
 - c. As root user, run the configuration wizard:

/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmicfgx

Specify the correct instance directory for each server instance. Select the box to indicate that the server instance is being configured for a secondary

node of a cluster. By selecting this box, you create the required database instances and catalog the database in each instance.

- d. Test the start and stop scripts to ensure that they work as expected.
- e. Complete the verification and configuration steps, as described in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Upgrading the server to V7.1 in a Windows clustered environment

Windows

To upgrade the Tivoli Storage Manager server from V5.5 to V7.1 in a clustered environment on a Windows system, plan the upgrade. Then, install the V7.1 server on all nodes in the cluster. Finally, run the upgrade wizard, which inserts the new database and configures the system.

Before you begin

If you are planning an in-place upgrade on the same system, ensure that you retain the installation media from the base release of the installed V5 server. If you installed Tivoli Storage Manager from a DVD, ensure that the DVD is available. If you installed Tivoli Storage Manager from a downloaded package, ensure that the downloaded files are available. If the upgrade fails, and the server license module is uninstalled, the installation media from the V5 server base release are required to reinstall the license.

Procedure

- 1. Plan the upgrade and prepare the system, as described in "Planning the upgrade and preparing the system."
- 2. Run the upgrade wizard, as described in "Installing the V7.1 server and running the upgrade wizard" on page 274.

Planning the upgrade and preparing the system

Windows

Before you upgrade the server from V5.5 to V7.1 in a clustered environment on a Windows system, select an upgrade scenario and prepare the system.

Procedure

- 1. Select a scenario for upgrading the server:
 - Chapter 4, "Scenario 1: Same system, media method," on page 91
 - Chapter 5, "Scenario 2: Same system, network method," on page 135
 - Chapter 6, "Scenario 3: New system, media method," on page 177
 - Chapter 7, "Scenario 4: New system, network method," on page 225
- 2. If the Tivoli Storage Manager server is installed on a Windows Server 2012 operating system, install the failover cluster automation server and the failover cluster command interface. To install these components, issue the following commands from Windows 2.0 PowerShell on each node in the cluster: Install-WindowsFeature -Name RSAT-Clustering-AutomationServer Install-WindowsFeature -Name RSAT-Clustering-CmdInterface
- **3**. If you are upgrading on a new system, set up the nodes for the cluster and create a resource group.

- 4. On the primary node, for each instance, prepare the system for the upgrade. Complete the steps for your scenario:
 - "Scenario 1: Preparing for the upgrade" on page 91
 - "Scenario 2: Preparing for the upgrade" on page 135
 - "Scenario 3: Preparing for the upgrade" on page 177
 - "Scenario 4: Preparing for the upgrade" on page 225
- 5. Install the upgrade utilities on the V5 system. For instructions, see "Installing the upgrade utilities on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 293.
- 6. For each server instance, prepare the database of the V5 server as described in "Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade" on page 294.
- 7. If you are upgrading on the same system, delete the V5.5 cluster resources:
 - a. Ensure that the primary node owns the cluster resources.
 - b. Record the values of the TCP/IP address and the network name of the server items in the group by using Microsoft Failover Cluster Manager.
 - c. Delete the Tivoli Storage Manager resource and the network name.
- 8. If you are upgrading on the same system, uninstall the V5.5 server. For each node in the cluster, uninstall the V5.5 server, server license, and device driver. Do not remove the database, recovery log, server options file, or any other related files or directories. Follow the instructions in "Uninstalling the V5 program on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 297.
- 9. Edit the V5.5 server options file:
 - a. Remove any options that are not supported for V7.1. For a list of deleted options, see "Deleted server commands, utilities, and options" on page 65.
 - b. Ensure that the server options file contains at least one VOLUMEHISTORY option and at least one DEVCONFIG option. A volume history file and a device configuration file are required when you restore the database.
 - **c**. Determine whether the server options file includes the TXNGROUPMAX option with a value. If the option is included and the value is less than 4096, consider increasing the value, or removing the option so that the server uses the new default value. The increased value can improve the performance for data movement operations such as storage pool migration and storage pool backup.

What to do next

After you plan the upgrade and prepare the system, complete the steps in "Installing the V7.1 server and running the upgrade wizard."

Installing the V7.1 server and running the upgrade wizard

Windows

To complete the upgrade, you must install the V7.1 server on all nodes in the cluster. Then, run the upgrade wizard, which inserts the new database and configures the system.

Procedure

1. Install the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server on all nodes. For instructions, see "Installing the V7.1 server" on page 297.

- 2. On the primary node, create the user ID for the upgraded server instance. The user ID for the instance must be defined to the domain controller. For instructions, see "Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance" on page 302.
- **3**. On the primary node, create the directories for the upgraded server instance. Ensure that all database and recovery log directories are on a shared disk in the resource group. For instructions, see "Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance" on page 302. Create the directories that the server instance requires for database and recovery logs, as identified in the table in that section.
- On the primary node, start the upgrade wizard by clicking Start > All Programs > Tivoli Storage Manager > Upgrade Wizard.

Follow the steps in the upgrade wizard:

- a. When you are prompted to enter the instance name, enter the name of the instance that you are reclustering.
- b. When you are prompted to enter the instance user ID, enter the user ID in this format: domain\userid.
- **c.** When you are prompted to select the nodes for the cluster, select the primary node and any other nodes that you want to include.
- d. When you are prompted to specify directories for the instance, database, and logs, specify directories that are on a shared disk.
- e. When you are prompted to specify cluster network information, select a public network connection.
- f. Review the selections in the Summary panel. If they are correct, click **Next** to format and insert the database.
- 5. If the system includes more than one server instance to be upgraded, run the upgrade wizard for each instance.

After you have followed the steps in the upgrade wizard, the upgrade is complete and the system is configured.

6. Optional: If the upgrade was done on the existing system, delete the Tivoli Storage Manager V5.5 database files.

What to do next

If a native device driver is available on Windows for the tape drives or medium changers that you plan to use, use the native device driver. If a native device driver is not available on Windows for the tape drives or medium changers that you plan to use, install the Tivoli Storage Manager device driver by issuing the **dpinst.exe /a** command. The dpinst.exe file is in the device driver directory. The default directory is C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\device\drivers.

Complete the verification and configuration steps, as described in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Chapter 9. General procedures for upgrading a server to V7.1

Utilities and a wizard are provided to assist in the upgrade of the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager server. This general set of procedures can be used for any upgrade scenario. You can instead select the scenario that matches your upgrade plan and use the set of procedures that is specifically for that scenario.

Procedure

The procedure for upgrading the server includes the following tasks:

- 1. "Preparing for the upgrade"
- 2. "Installing the upgrade utilities on the original server" on page 287
- 3. "Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade" on page 294
- 4. Same-system upgrade only: "Uninstalling the V5 program before installing V7.1" on page 295
- 5. "Installing the V7.1 server" on page 297
- 6. "Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance" on page 302
- 7. Upgrading the server by using one of the following methods:
 - "Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard" on page 305
 - "Upgrading the server manually by using utilities" on page 307
- 8. The following tasks are completed after the upgrade:
 - a. "Verifying access to storage pools on disk" on page 323
 - b. "Setting up Solaris services for the server instance" on page 324
 - c. "Configuring server options for server database maintenance" on page 324
 - d. "Starting the server instance after the upgrade" on page 325
 - e. "Registering licenses" on page 334
 - f. "Backing up the database after upgrading the server" on page 335
 - g. "Verifying the upgraded server" on page 336
 - h. "Changing the host name for the Tivoli Storage Manager server" on page 336
 - i. "Updating automation" on page 338
 - j. "Monitoring the upgraded server" on page 339
 - k. "Removing GSKit Version 7 after upgrading to Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1" on page 340

Preparing for the upgrade

Prepare for the upgrade by checking requirements, preparing the space that is required, backing up the server, and modifying certain server settings.

About this task

Follow the preparation steps carefully to protect your server and its data.

Important: It is possible, after the upgrade to V7.1 is complete, that conditions might cause the need to temporarily revert to the previous version of the server. Successfully reverting to the previous version of the server is possible only if you

have completed all preparation steps. To understand why it is important to complete all preparation steps, review the procedure for reverting an upgraded server to its previous version.

Procedure

To prepare for the upgrade, complete the following steps:

- 1. "Checking the prerequisites for the upgrade"
- 2. "Preparing space for the upgrade process" on page 281
- 3. "Modifying the server before the upgrade" on page 282
- 4. "Disabling sessions" on page 284
- 5. "Backing up storage pools and the server database" on page 284
- 6. "Moving the NODELOCK file" on page 285
- 7. "Backing up configuration information" on page 285
- 8. "Creating a summary of database contents" on page 286
- **9**. "Stopping the server before installing the upgrade" on page 286

Related tasks:

"Reverting from V7.1 to the previous V5 server version" on page 351

Checking the prerequisites for the upgrade

Check your system against requirements for the server.

Before you begin

Requirement: If you are upgrading the Tivoli Storage Manager server on the same system, the system must meet the minimum requirements for both the V5 and V7.1 servers.

Procedure

- 1. Ensure that the server that you plan to upgrade is at the V5.5 release level, and that the latest interim fix is installed. For example, if the server is at V5.5.6, install the latest interim fix for V5.5.6. Take the following actions:
 - a. Select the appropriate server level. For detailed guidelines, see "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36. If the server is at an appropriate level, no action is required.
 - b. If the server is not at an appropriate level, download the appropriate server fix pack and the latest interim fix from the FTP downloads site at ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server/. Locate the appropriate version of Tivoli Storage Manager and install it.
- 2. Ensure that the system where the V5 server is located meets the minimum requirements. Review the information in "Hardware and software requirements for the V5 server system that is being upgraded" on page 17 to determine whether you must update your system before you continue.
- **3**. Ensure that the system where you plan to install the V7.1 server meets requirements for the operating system type and level. For the latest information about system requirements, see Tivoli Storage Manager Supported Operating Systems (http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21243309).

If you are upgrading Tivoli Storage Manager to a different operating system, a limited set of migration paths is available. For instructions about migrating a server that is running on a z/OS operating system, see Part 3, "Migrating Tivoli

Storage Manager V5 servers on z/OS systems to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z," on page 437. For instructions about migrating a server that is running on an AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris operating system, see Part 2, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux," on page 355.

Some platforms that were supported for earlier versions of the server are not supported for V7.1. If the server that you want to upgrade is running on one of these platforms, you cannot upgrade your server to V7.1 on the same platform. You must install your V7.1 server on a system that is a specific supported platform, depending on the original platform. For required platforms, see the following table.

Table 55. Required platforms for upgrading from V5 to V7.1

Platform for V5 server	Required platform for upgrade to V7.1
HP-UX running on a PA-RISC system	HP-UX running on an Intel Itanium system
Linux running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Linux running on an x86_64 system
Linux running on an x86_32 system	Linux running on an x86_64 system
Solaris running on an x86_64 system	Linux running on an x86_64 system
Windows running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Windows running on an x86_64 system

If you are upgrading from Tivoli Storage Manager V5 to V7.1 on a new system, restrictions apply. Ensure that you install the V7.1 server in a compatible hardware and software environment, as described in the following table.

V5 server	V7.1 server	Comments
AIX running on an IBM POWER system	AIX running on an IBM POWER system	
HP-UX running on an Itanium system	HP-UX running on an Itanium system	
HP-UX running on a PA-RISC system	HP-UX running on an Itanium system	HP-UX running on PA-RISC is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux running on an IBM POWER system	Linux running on an IBM POWER system	
Linux running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Linux running on an x86_64 system	Linux running on Itanium is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux running on an x86_32 system	Linux running on an x86_64 system	Linux running on x86_32 is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Linux on System z	Linux on System z	

Table 56. Requirements for upgrading from V5 to V7.1 on a new system

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

V5 server	V7.1 server	Comments
Solaris running on an x86_64 system	Operating system depends on the migration method	A V7.1 server cannot be installed on a Solaris x86_64 system. However, you can migrate a V5 server that is running on a Solaris x86_64 operating system to V7.1 on a Linux x86_64 operating system. For instructions, see Part 2, "Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux," on page 355. Alternatively, you can migrate the Solaris x86_64 system by installing a V7.1 server on any operating system that is supported for V7.1. Then, use Tivoli Storage Manager server EXPORT and IMPORT commands to move the server from the V5 source system.
Windows running on an Itanium system (IA64)	Windows running on an x86_64 system	Windows running on Itanium is not supported for V7.1 servers.
Windows running on an x86_32 system	Windows running on an x86_64 system	Windows running on x86_32 is not supported for V7.1 servers.
z/OS	AIX or Linux on System z	See the section on migrating from V5 on z/OS to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z.

Table 56. Requirements for upgrading from V5 to V7.1 on a new system (continued)

- 4. Verify that the system memory meets the server requirements.
 - If you plan to upgrade the server on the same system, and use the network method for moving the database, you must ensure that the system memory is sufficient.

When you run the process that extracts the database from the existing server and inserts the database for the new server, the net effect is that two servers are running.

• If you plan to run multiple instances of the V7.1 server on the system, each instance requires the memory that is listed for one server. Multiply the memory for one server by the number of instances that are planned for the system.

For specific information about memory requirements, see the section for your operating system:

Operating system	Memory requirements
AIX	"Server requirements on AIX systems" on page 21
HP-UX	"Server requirements on HP-UX systems" on page 24
Linux	"Server requirements on Linux systems" on page 26
Solaris	"Server requirements on Solaris systems" on page 31
Windows	"Server requirements on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 33

Table 57. Memory requirements for the V7.1 system

5. Ensure that the system has enough disk storage for the database and recovery logs. Review the planning information for requirements and guidance.

If you are adding new hardware for the server, such as new disk storage for the database, ensure that the hardware is installed and running.

If you plan to upgrade the server on the same system, you can take one of two approaches:

- Ensure that the system has enough disk storage for storing database and recovery logs for both the original server and the new V7.1 server. Both are stored on disk storage during the upgrade process.
- After you back up the V5 database and extract the data to media, reconfigure the disk subsystem that is used for the database storage. Then, insert the data to the new database from the media. You must take this approach if you do not have enough disk space for both servers.
- 6. If you are moving the server to a new system, ensure that the new system can access the storage devices that are used on the original system. These storage devices include the disk and tape devices that are used to store client data.

If you are moving the database by using the media method, it might be necessary to leave a storage device attached to the original system to extract the database. Then, move the storage device to the new system.

Related concepts:

"Hardware and software requirements for upgrading to the V7.1 server" on page 17

Preparing space for the upgrade process

The amount and type of space that is required for the upgrade process depends on whether you are upgrading to the new version on the same system or a different system. Another factor is whether you will be using the media method or the network method for moving data into the new database.

Procedure

- 1. Verify that the system has the amount of space that was estimated in the planning step. Use the planning worksheet that you completed with your information. See "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.
- 2. If you plan to extract the original server database to media for later insertion into the new database, ensure that you have space available for storing the database and the manifest file that the extraction process creates.

a. Identify the device class to which you will extract the original database. The definition must exist in the server database, not just in the device configuration file. View information about devices classes by issuing the command:

query devclass format=detailed

The device class must be a sequential device class that has volumes or space available. Define a new device class if necessary. The device class type cannot be **NAS** or **CENTERA**.

Important: You must confirm *now* that the definition that is in the server database for the device class is correct. After you prepare the database for upgrade (by completing the **Prepare Database** phase in the upgrade wizard, or by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility), you cannot update this device class definition. For example, check the path for a FILE device class. If you copied the original server to a different system to extract the data, the path might be different on the current system.

b. Ensure that space or volumes are available in the selected device class. The amount of space that you need is about the same as the current size of the original database.

For example, if the device class is FILE, ensure that the directory has sufficient space for your environment. If the device class is TAPE, ensure that sufficient scratch volumes are available for your environment.

Ensure that the instance user ID that you create for the upgraded server has access permission to the location of the extracted data.

c. Check that the access permissions are correct for the location that you plan to specify for the manifest file.

The user ID that will run the database preparation and extraction utilities (**DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** and **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB**) must have write access to this file. This is typically the root user ID.

When the data is later inserted into the V7.1 database, the instance user ID that you use for the upgraded server must have access permission for the manifest file.

The manifest file is typically less than 1 KB.

Related tasks:

"Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39

Modifying the server before the upgrade

A command must be run on the server to prevent one type of problem during the upgrade process. Some modifications to typical server settings can be useful to prepare for the upgrade.

Procedure

1. From a Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command line, issue the command:

convert ussfilespace

This command fixes a problem that might exist in older Tivoli Storage Manager databases. If the problem does not exist in your database, the command is completed and you might see error ANR2034E. This error can be ignored. For

more information, see Technote 1408895 (http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg21408895). If the problem exists in your database, the command might take some time to run.

Important: Do not skip this step. If your database has the problem and you do not run this command now, the DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB utility fails when you run it. You must then restart the V5 server and run the CONVERT USSFILESPACE command before you continue the upgrade process.

2. Review the steps for reverting to the earlier version of the server in the section, "Reverting from V7.1 to the previous V5 server version" on page 351.

If you must revert to the earlier version after the upgrade to V7.1, the results of the reversion will be better if you understand the steps and prepare for the possibility now.

- **3**. Make the following adjustments to settings on your server and clients. These adjustments must be done to make it possible for you to revert to the original server after the upgrade, if problems occur.
 - a. For each sequential-access storage pool, set the **REUSEDELAY** parameter to the number of days during which you want to be able to revert to the original server, if necessary.

For example, if you want to be able to revert to the original server for up to 30 days after the upgrade to V7.1, set the **REUSEDELAY** parameter to 31 days. Issue the following administrative command:

update stgpool sequential access storage pool reusedelay=31

b. For each copy storage pool, set the **RECLAIM** parameter to 100 (meaning 100%). Issue the following administrative command:

update stgpool copy_storage_pool reclaim=100

c. If you typically use a **DELETE VOLHISTORY** command to delete database backups, ensure that the command does not delete database backups too frequently. The interval between backups should be at least the same number of days that you set for the **REUSEDELAY** period for sequential-access storage pools. For example, to delete database backups every 45 days, issue the following administrative command:

delete volhist type=dbbackup todate=-45

d. For important clients that use the server, verify that the value for the schedlogretention client option is set to retain the client schedule log for a sufficient time. Update the option for clients if needed.

The entries in the client schedule log might be useful if the server must revert to the original version. If the retention period for the schedule log is too short, the schedule log information might be deleted too soon.

For example, to prune the log every 45 days and save the log entries, add the following option:

schedlogretention 45 S

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Add the option to the dsm.sys file

within a server stanza.

Windows Add the option to the client options file, dsm.opt.

Disabling sessions

In preparation for the upgrade, prevent activity on the server by disabling new sessions. Cancel any existing sessions.

About this task

The commands in the following procedure are Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands.

Procedure

1. Prevent all clients, storage agents, and other servers from starting new sessions with the server. Use the commands:

```
disable sessions client disable sessions server
```

For more information about these commands and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

- Verify whether any sessions exist, and notify the users that the server is going to be stopped. To check for existing sessions, use the command: query session
- Cancel sessions that are still running. Use the command: cancel session all

Backing up storage pools and the server database

Immediately before upgrading the server, back up primary storage pools to copy storage pools, and perform a full database backup.

Before you begin

Back up storage pools and the server database by using Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands:

Procedure

1. Back up primary storage pools to copy storage pools by using the **BACKUP STGPOOL** command:

backup stgpool primary_pool copy_stg

where *primary_pool* specifies the primary storage pool and *copy_stg* specifies the copy storage pool. If you have been performing regular backups of the storage pools, this step backs up only the data that was added to the primary storage pools since they were last backed up.

2. Back up the database. The preferred method is to use a snapshot backup. A snapshot backup is a full database backup that does not interrupt any scheduled database backups. Issue the command:

backup db type=dbsnapshot devclass=device_class_name

The device class that you specify must exist and have volumes that are available to it. For example, to perform a snapshot backup of your database to the TAPECLASS device class by using scratch volumes, enter:

backup db type=dbsnapshot devclass=tapeclass

To use specific volumes instead of scratch volumes, specify the volume names in the command.

Tip: Consider making two copies of the backup to protect the backup from media failures. Ensure that at least one full database backup is available onsite. If you must restore the database after a failed upgrade, having an onsite backup database saves time.

Moving the NODELOCK file

To ensure that licensing information is updated during the upgrade process, move the NODELOCK file from the server instance directory to another directory.

About this task

The NODELOCK file contains the licensing information from the previous Tivoli Storage Manager installation. This licensing information is replaced when the upgrade is complete.

Procedure

- 1. In the server instance directory of your installation, locate the NODELOCK file.
- 2. Move the NODELOCK file to another directory. For example, you can save it to a directory where you are saving configuration files from the previous release.

Backing up configuration information

Before you install the new version, back up critical files and information for each server instance. Store the files in a safe place, on a different system from the system that is being upgraded or on offline media, such as a CD. The files are required after the installation of the new software version is complete. You also need these files if you must revert to the previous version after the upgrade.

Procedure

 Back up device configuration information to another directory by using the following Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command: backup devconfig filenames=file name

where *file_name* specifies the file in which to store device configuration information.

 Back up volume history information to another directory by using the following Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command: backup volhistory filenames=file name

where *file_name* specifies the file in which to store volume history information. Ensure that the volume history includes information about the database backup that you completed in the preceding steps. For example, issue the command: query volhistory type=dbsnapshot

Review the query output to verify that the time stamp for the database backup matches the actual time of the backup.

- 3. Save copies of the following files, which are in the server instance directory:
 - Server options file, typically named dsmserv.opt
 - dsmserv.dsk

Important: The dsmserv.dsk file is not available in Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1. Save a copy of the dsmserv.dsk file in case you must revert to V5.5.

- 4. In the server instance directory, look for the accounting log file, dsmaccnt.log. If the file exists, save a copy.
- 5. Back up any scripts that were used to complete daily housekeeping for the server. Examine the scripts for changes that are needed after the upgrade.
- 6. Store the device configuration file, the volume history file, the server options file, and the other files in a safe place. Ensure that the files are stored on a different system from the system that is being upgraded, or on offline media.

Creating a summary of database contents

Create a summary of the contents of the original database. After the upgrade, you can use the same commands to compare the results and to confirm that the database contents are intact.

Procedure

Run commands that give a summary of information about your database contents. For example, issue commands that summarize the file spaces that are being protected, and save the results. For a list of commands, see "Sample commands to run for validation of the database upgrade" on page 546.

Related reference:

"Sample commands to run for validation of the database upgrade" on page 546

Stopping the server before installing the upgrade

Stop all server processes and unmount any tapes that are mounted. Then, stop the server.

Procedure

Use Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands to stop the server:

1. Determine whether server processes are running. Either cancel processes, or allow them to complete. Use the following commands:

query process
cancel process process_number

Allow time for the processes to be stopped. Some processes, such as storage pool migration, might take some time to stop.

For more information about the **QUERY PROCESS** and **CANCEL PROCESS** commands and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

2. After all sessions and processes are stopped, determine whether any tapes are mounted. Unmount any tapes that are mounted. Use the following commands: query mount

dismount volume volume_name

3. Stop the server. Use the following command:

halt

Installing the upgrade utilities on the original server

You must install the upgrade utilities on the system where the V5 server is located. The installation package for the utilities must be downloaded from a website.

Before you begin

The preferred method is to install the latest available version of the upgrade utilities. For more information about selecting the version, see "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36.

Procedure

Use the procedure for your operating system:

- **AIX** "Installing the upgrade utilities on AIX systems"
- **HP-UX** "Installing the upgrade utilities on HP-UX systems" on page 289
- Linux "Installing the upgrade utilities on Linux systems" on page 290
- Solaris "Installing the upgrade utilities on Oracle Solaris systems" on page 291
- Windows "Installing the upgrade utilities on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 293

Installing the upgrade utilities on AIX systems

AIX

You must install the upgrade utilities on the system that has the original server and its database. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.*x*.*x* directory. The 5.5.*x*.*x* number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c**. Select the package that matches your operating system, and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x*.*x*-TIV-TSMUPG-AIX.tar.gz

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- 3. Ensure that the system has the following file sets installed:

x1C.rte 8.0.0.5, or later

gsksa.rte 7.0.4.11

You can use the following commands to check for these file sets: lslpp -L xlC.rte

lslpp -L gsksa.rte

If needed, you can obtain the gsksa.rte file set from any of the regular V5.5 maintenance packages for the AIX server. The maintenance packages are available on the FTP downloads site: ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivolistorage-management/maintenance/server/v5r5/AIX/

- 4. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. If you downloaded a language package, also extract the contents of that package.
- 5. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- 6. Access the System Management Interface Tool (SMIT).
 - a. Enter smitty install_update
 - b. Select Install and Update Software > Install and Update from ALL Available Software.
- 7. Select the **INPUT** device. Specify the directory location of the upgrade utilities package on the system.
- **8**. Select **Software to Install**. Press F4 or Esc+4 for the list of available file sets in the directory.
- 9. Select the file sets for the upgrade utilities, the device driver, and optionally the language package. The file set for the upgrade utilities is tivoli.tsmupg.server. Optional language packages include messages for languages other than US English.
- 10. Set COMMIT software updates to Yes. Press F4 or Esc+4.
- 11. Set SAVE replaced files to No.
- **12**. Ensure that the default settings for the options in the window for all the selected file sets show success.
- **13**. Press Enter, and respond to the ARE YOU SURE? question by pressing Enter again. The installation begins.
- 14. When the installation is complete, exit the SMIT program.
- **15**. Optional: If you installed a language package, ensure that the locale environment variable is set to use it. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- **16.** After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 292.

Installing the upgrade utilities on HP-UX systems

HP-UX

You must install the upgrade utilities on the system that has the original server and its database. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.x.x directory. The 5.5.x.x number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c.** Select the package that matches your operating system, and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x*.*x*-TIV-TSMUPG-*platform*.tar.gz

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- **3**. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the command:

gzip -dc *package_name*.tar.gz | tar -xvf -

- 4. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- 5. Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the source argument (-s) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

swinstall -s /tmp/TSM package_name

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin.

- 6. Optional: Install the language package.
 - a. Extract the contents of the package.

gzip -d package_name.img.gz

b. Install the package. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

swinstall -s /tmp/TSM/package_name.img package_name

c. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

• The locale is installed on the system.

- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- 7. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 292.

Installing the upgrade utilities on Linux systems

Linux

You must install the upgrade utilities on the system that has the original server and its database. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site.

About this task

Restriction: Do *not* install the utilities in the installation directory for the original server that must be upgraded. Install the utilities package in its own directory.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.x.x directory. The 5.5.x.x number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c.** Open the directory for your operating system and download the package. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.x.x-TIV-TSMUPG-platform.tar.bz2

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- 3. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the commands: bunzip2 package_name.tar.bz2 tar xvf package_name.tar
- 4. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system, for example, x86_64.
- 5. Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the following command: rpm -ivh package name.rpm

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin by default.

- 6. Optional: Install the language package.
 - a. Extract the contents of the downloaded package. bunzip2 package_name.tar.bz2 tar xvf package_name.tar
 - b. Install the package for the language that you want to use.

rpm -ivh package_name.rpm

c. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- 7. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 292.

Installing the upgrade utilities on Oracle Solaris systems

You must install the upgrade utilities on the system that has the original server and its database. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site.

About this task

Restriction: Do *not* install the utilities in the installation directory of the server that must be upgraded. Install the utilities package in its own directory.

Procedure

Solaris

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the directory that names the operating system that your V5 server runs on. From that directory, open the 5.5.x.x directory. The 5.5.x.x number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c**. Select the package that matches your operating system, and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x*.*x*-TIV-TSMUPG-*platform*.tar.Z

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- 3. Change to the directory where the upgrade utilities package was downloaded.
- 4. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the command: uncompress -c package_name.tar.Z | tar -xvf -

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

- **5**. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the source argument (-d) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

pkgadd -d . /tmp/TSM package_name

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin by default.

- 7. Optional: Install the language package.
 - a. Extract the contents of the downloaded package. uncompress *package_name.*pkg.Z
 - b. Install the package for the language that you want to use. Use the source argument (-d) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

pkgadd -d /tmp/TSM package_name.pkg package_name

c. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.
- 8. After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems."

Setting environment variables for the upgrade utilities on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

After installing the upgrade utility package, you must set environment variables in the shell from which you will run the utilities. An environment variable describes the operating environment of a process, such as the home directory or terminal in use.

About this task

The **DSMSERV_DIR** variable specifies the installed location of the upgrade utilities. By default, the location is the following directory:

AIX

/usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin

HP-UX Linux Solaris

/opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin

Procedure

Use the appropriate command for your system to set the environment variable for running the utilities. If the shell is in the ksh or bash family, enter the following command to set the **DSMSERV_DIR** variable:

export DSMSERV_DIR=upgrade_utilities_directory

If your shell is in the csh family, use the following command: setenv DSMSERV_DIR upgrade_utilities_directory

where *upgrade_utilities_directory* is the directory where the upgrade utilities are installed.

What to do next

After you set the environment variable, continue at "Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade" on page 294.

Installing the upgrade utilities on Microsoft Windows systems

Windows

You must install the upgrade utilities on the system that has the original server and its database. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/WIN
 - b. Open the 5.5.*x*.*x* directory. The 5.5.*x*.*x* number must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c.** Select the package and download it to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.x.x-TIV-TSMUPG-Windows.exe

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, install the language package that your installation requires.
- 2. Log on with an administrator ID.
- 3. Run the executable package for the upgrade utilities.

The default location for the installation of the utilities is based on the location where the V5 server was last installed. For example, if the V5 server was installed using the default path, C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server, the upgrade utilities are installed in C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade.

Restriction: Do *not* install the utilities in the same directory as the original server that must be upgraded. Install the utilities package in its own directory.

What to do next

After the upgrade utilities are installed, continue at "Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade" on page 294.

Tip: When you use the upgrade utilities, if you have multiple servers running on the system, you must use the -k option to specify the name of the Windows registry key from which to retrieve information about the server being upgraded. The default value for the option is SERVER1.

If you are upgrading the server on the same system as the earlier version, and using the network method to extract and insert the data into the V7.1 database, use the -o option with the **DSMUPGRD** command to specify the location of the server options file.

Preparing the database of a V5 server for upgrade

Before you extract the data from the database, you must prepare the server database by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility. If you have multiple servers on a single system, you must repeat this task for each server.

Before you begin

The upgrade utilities must be installed on the system where the database is located.

About this task

Important: After you prepare a V5.3 or V5.4 database by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility, the version of the server database is V5.5. You can no longer use that database to run with a V5.3 or V5.4 server program. After you upgrade the server to V7.1, if you decide to revert to the earlier version, you must reinstall the earlier version of the server code. Then, you must restore the backed-up server database that matches that version.

Procedure

- 1. Ensure that you have completed all preparation steps.
- 2. Log in using the root user ID on the system that has the original server. Log on with the administrator ID on a Windows system.
- **3**. Change to the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading. The instance directory is the directory that contains the files such as dsmserv.dsk for the server.

Important: The dsmserv.dsk file is not available in Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1. Save a copy of the dsmserv.dsk file in case you must revert to V5.5.

4. Prepare the database. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring.

AIX

From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process in the background and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

nohup /usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd preparedb >prepare.out 2>&1 &

HP-UX Linux Solaris

From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process in the background and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd preparedb >prepare.out 2>&1 &

Windows

From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd" preparedb 1>>prepare.out 2>&1

If multiple servers exist on the system, issue the command from the instance directory for the server that you want to prepare. Specify the registry key for that server. For example, if the server is SERVER2:

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd" -k server2
 preparedb 1>>prepare.out 2>&1

5. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages. The final message indicates success or failure of the operation. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to monitor the process:

tail -f prepare.out

Tip: On Windows systems, use the **tail** command or an equivalent utility with which you can monitor the contents of a file as it changes. For example, the Windows Server 2003 Resource Kit Tools includes the **tail** command, which can be used as shown in the preceding example.

6. Ensure that the prepare operation is completed successfully before you continue to the next step. If the prepare operation fails, you might need to restart the V5 server to fix the problem and run the prepare operation again. If the server that is being upgraded is a V5.3 or V5.4 server, you might need to restore the database by using a backup before you can restart the server to correct the problem.

Related reference:

"DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB (Prepare a V5 database for upgrade)" on page 523

Uninstalling the V5 program before installing V7.1

For best results when you are upgrading the server to V7.1 on the same system where the V5 server is located, uninstall the V5 server program. Then, install the V7.1 server program.

Uninstalling the V5 program on AIX systems

AIX

Uninstall the V5 server, server license, and device driver, if available. Do *not* remove the database, recovery log, or any other related files or directories, such as the server options file.

Procedure

• For a V5.4 or V5.5 server, issue the following commands:

/usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.license.aix5.rte64
/usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.devices.aix5.rte
/usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.server.aix5.rte64

• For a V5.3 server, issue the following commands:

/usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.license /usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.devices /usr/sbin/installp -ug tivoli.tsm.server

What to do next

After the V5 server program is uninstalled, continue at "Installing the V7.1 server" on page 297.

Uninstalling the V5 program on HP-UX systems

HP-UX

Uninstall the V5 server, server license, and device driver, if available. Do *not* remove the database, recovery log, or any other related files or directories, such as the server options file.

Procedure

• For a V5.4 or V5.5 server, issue the following commands:

```
swremove TIVsmS64IA.server
swremove TIVsmS64IA.license
swremove TIVsmDD64_IA11_23.tsmscsi
```

• For a V5.3 server, issue the following commands:

```
swremove TIVsmS64.server
swremove TIVsmS64.license
swremove TIVsmDD64_HP11_11.tsmscsi
```

What to do next

After the V5 server program is uninstalled, continue at "Installing the V7.1 server" on page 297.

Uninstalling the V5 program on Linux systems

Linux

Uninstall the V5 server, server license, and device driver, if available. Do *not* remove the database, recovery log, or any other related files or directories, such as the server options file.

Procedure

1. To determine the Tivoli Storage Manager packages that are installed, issue the following command:

rpm -qa | grep TIVsm

2. Remove the server, server license, and device driver packages. Issue the following commands:

```
rpm -e TIVsm-server
rpm -e TIVsm-license
rpm -e TIVsm-tsmscsi
```

What to do next

After the V5 server program is uninstalled, continue at "Installing the V7.1 server" on page 297.

Uninstalling the V5 program on Oracle Solaris systems

Uninstall the V5 server, server license, and device driver, if available. Do *not* remove the database, recovery log, or any other related files or directories, such as the server options file.

Procedure

Solaris

Issue the following commands:

/usr/sbin/pkgrm TIVsmS /usr/sbin/pkgrm TIVsmSlic /usr/sbin/pkgrm TIVsmSdev

What to do next

After the V5 server program is uninstalled, continue at "Installing the V7.1 server."

Uninstalling the V5 program on Microsoft Windows systems

Windows

Uninstall the V5 server, server license, and device driver, if available. Do *not* remove the database, recovery log, or any other related files or directories, such as the server options file.

About this task

Do not remove registry entries for the server.

Procedure

- 1. Click Start > Control Panel > Add or Remove Programs.
- 2. Select the Tivoli Storage Manager server component, and click **Remove**. Repeat for the license and the device driver.

If you see any messages that suggest that you restart the system, ignore them until the selected Tivoli Storage Manager components are removed.

What to do next

After the V5 server program is uninstalled, continue at "Installing the V7.1 server."

Installing the V7.1 server

You can install the server by using the installation wizard, console mode, or silent mode.

Before you begin

If you are installing the V7.1 server on the same system as the V5 server, take the following actions:

• Ensure that you have completed all upgrade preparation steps, including the database backup. The server that you are upgrading will not be available until after the installation and upgrade steps are completed.

• Ensure that you retain the installation media from the V5 base release of the installed server. If you installed Tivoli Storage Manager from a DVD, ensure that the DVD is available. If you installed Tivoli Storage Manager from a downloaded package, ensure that the downloaded files are available. If the upgrade fails, and the server license module is uninstalled, the installation media from the server base release are required to reinstall the license.

You can obtain the installation package from the product DVD or from an IBM download site such as Passport Advantage or the Tivoli Storage Manager support site.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris If you plan to download the files, set the system user limit for maximum file size to unlimited to ensure that the files can be downloaded correctly.

- To query the maximum file size value, issue the following command: ulimit -Hf
- 2. If the system user limit for maximum file size is not set to unlimited, change it to unlimited by following the instructions in the documentation for your operating system.

About this task

By using the Tivoli Storage Manager installation software, you can install the following Tivoli Storage Manager components:

- server
- server languages
- license
- devices
- · Operations Center
- storage agent

Tip: The database (DB2) and the Global Security Kit are automatically installed when you select the Tivoli Storage Manager server component.

For more information about storage agents, see the Storage Agent User's Guide.

Procedure

1. Log on to the system.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Log in by using the root user ID.

Windows Log on as an administrator. You must be logged on to the system with the administrative user ID that was used to install the V5 server.

- 2. If you are obtaining the package from an IBM download site, download the appropriate package file from one of the following websites:
 - For a new release, go to Passport Advantage at http://www.ibm.com/ software/lotus/passportadvantage/. Passport Advantage is the only website from which you can download a licensed package file.
 - For a maintenance fix, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager support site at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/Tivoli_Storage_Manager.
- **3.** If you are downloading the package from one of the download sites, complete the following steps:

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

- a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:
 - Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035122
 - Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http:// www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035635
 - System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035637
- b. Download the package file to the directory of your choice. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files.

Also, ensure that you have executable permission for the package file.

c. If necessary, change the file permissions by issuing the following command:

chmod a+x package_name.bin

where *package_name* is like the following example:

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-AIX.bin

HP-UX

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-HP-UX.bin

Linux

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxx86_64.bin 7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxs390x.bin

Solaris

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-SolarisSPARC.bin

In the examples, 7.1.0.000 represents the product release level.

d. Extract the installation files by issuing the following command: ./package_name.bin

The package is large. Therefore, the extraction takes some time.

Windows

- a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:
 - Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035121
 - Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http:// www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035636
 - System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035638

- b. Change to the directory where you placed the executable file. In the next step, the files are extracted to the current directory. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files.
- c. To extract the installation files, double-click the executable file: package_name.exe

where *package_name* is like this example:

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Windows.exe

The package is large. Therefore, the extraction takes some time.

4. AIX HP-UX Solaris To ensure that the Tivoli Storage Manager wizards work correctly, verify that the following command is enabled:

AIX lsuser HP-UX Solaris logins

By default, the command is enabled.

- 5. If you plan to install the server by using the graphical wizard of IBM Installation Manager, review the following information and verify that your system meets the requirements:
 - **AIX** Verify that all required RPM files are installed. For a list of required RPM files and instructions about installing RPM files, see the section about installing Tivoli Storage Manager by using the installation wizard in the *Installation Guide*.
 - Verify that the operating system is set to the language that you require. By default, the language of the operating system is the language of the installation wizard.
 - Windows The user ID that you use during installation must be a user with local Administrator authority.
 - Solaris Ensure that the LD_LIBRARY_PATH_64 environment variable is not set.

On test servers only: Use the following command to bypass prerequisite checks such as the operating system and the required memory. Do not issue this command on a production server.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

./install.sh -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS_TSM_REQ_CHECKS=true"

Windows

install.bat -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS_TSM_REQ_CHECKS=true"

6. If you use the installation wizard, complete the following steps to begin the installation:

Option	Description
Installing from a downloaded package file:	 Change to the directory where you downloaded the package file. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command: AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris ./install.sh Windows install.bat
Installing from DVD media:	1 Insert the DVD into the DVD drive
	Tip: Ensure that the installation files are visible on the DVD drive.
	2. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command:
	AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris
	./install.sh
	Windows
	install.bat
	Windows Or, in the directory where the installation files were extracted, double-click the install.bat file.

- 7. If you are installing the server by using the wizard, follow these instructions:
 - a. In the IBM Installation Manager window, click the **Install** icon; do not click the **Update** or **Modify** icon.
 - b. Select the components to install. You must install the license package. If you select the storage agent, you must accept the Tivoli Storage Manager for Storage Area Networks license.
- **8**. Alternatively, install the server in console mode. Review the information about installing the server in console mode and then complete the installation procedure, as described in the *Installation Guide*.
- **9**. Alternatively, to install the server in silent mode, follow the instructions for an installation in silent mode in the *Installation Guide*. Review the information about installing the server in silent mode. Then, complete Steps 1 and 2 of the installation procedure.
- Correct any errors that are detected during the installation process. To view installation log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click File > View Log. To collect log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click Help > Export Data for Problem Analysis.
- Obtain any applicable fixes by going to the following website: http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager. Click Fixes (downloads) and apply any applicable fixes.

12. HP-UX Linux Solaris To prevent server failures during interaction with DB2, tune the kernel parameters.

For instructions, see the section about tuning kernel parameters in the *Installation Guide*.

- **13**. Optional: To install an additional language package, use the modify function of the IBM Installation Manager.
- 14. Optional: To upgrade to a newer version of a language package, use the update function of the IBM Installation Manager.

Windows

What to do next

If a native device driver is available on Windows for the tape drives or medium changers that you plan to use, use the native device driver. If a native device driver is not available on Windows for the tape drives or medium changers that you plan to use, install the Tivoli Storage Manager device driver by issuing the **dpinst.exe /a** command. The dpinst.exe file is in the device driver directory. The default directory is C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\device\drivers.

Related concepts:

Appendix E, "Services associated with the Tivoli Storage Manager server," on page 555

Creating the directories and the user ID for the upgraded server instance

Create the directories that the server instance needs for database and recovery logs, and create the user ID that will own the server instance.

Before you begin

Review the information about planning space for the server before you complete this task. See "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

Procedure

1. Create the user ID that will own the server instance. You use this user ID when you create the server instance in a later step.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Create a user ID and group that will be the owner of the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance.

a. Create the user ID and group.

Restriction: In the user ID, only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_) can be used. The user ID and group name must comply with the following rules:

- The length must be 8 characters or less.
- The user ID and group name cannot start with *ibm*, *sql*, *sys*, or a numeral.
- The user ID and group name cannot be *user, admin, guest, public, local,* or any SQL reserved word.

For example, create user ID tsminst1 in group tsmsrvrs. The following examples show how to create this user ID and group by using operating system commands:

AX # mkgroup id=1001 tsmsrvrs # mkuser id=1002 pgrp=tsmsrvrs home=/home/tsminst1 tsminst1 # passwd tsminst1 # passwd tsmsrvrs # useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/ksh tsminst1 # passwd tsminst1 # groupadd tsmsrvrs # useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/bash tsminst1 # passwd tsminst1 # passwd tsminst1 # groupadd tsmsrvrs # useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/bash tsminst1 # passwd tsminst1 # groupadd tsmsrvrs

- # useradd -d /export/home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/ksh tsminst1 # passwd tsminst1
- b. Log out and then log in to your system by using the new user ID and password. Use an interactive login program, such as telnet, so that you are prompted for the password and can change it if necessary.
- c. If a configuration profile does not exist for the user ID, create the file. For example, create a .profile file if you are using the Korn shell (ksh).

Windows

Identify the user account that will own the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance. When the server is started as a Windows service, this is the account that the service will log on to. The user account must have administrative authority on the system. One user account can own more than one server instance.

You can create a user account, or use an existing account.

If you have multiple servers on one system and want to run each server with a different user account, create a user account in this step.

a. Create the user ID.

Restriction: The user ID can contain only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_). The user ID must be 30 characters or less, and cannot start with *ibm*, *sql*, *sys*, or a numeral. The user ID and group name cannot be *user*, *admin*, *guest*, *public*, *local*, or any SQL reserved word.

Use the following command to create the user ID:

net user user_ID * /add

You are prompted to create and verify a password for the new user ID.

- b. Issue the following operating system commands to add the new user ID to the Administrators groups: net localgroup Administrators user_ID /add net localgroup DB2ADMNS user ID /add
- c. Log in to your system, by using the new user ID and password.
- d. For all directories that were created for the server instance, ensure that the user ID for the server instance has read/write access. The directories to check include the instance directory and all database and log directories.
- 2. Create the directories that the server requires. Ensure that you are logged in under the new user ID that you created.

You need a unique, empty directory for each item in the following table. Create the database directories, the active log directory, and the archive log directory on different physical volumes. For space requirements, see "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Table 58. Worksheet for creating required directories

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsminst1	
The database directories	<pre>mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb001 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb002 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb003 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb004</pre>	
Active log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmlog	
Archive log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmlogmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlogfailover	

Windows

Table 59. Worksheet for creating required directories

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir d:\tsm\server1	

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The database directories	mkdir d:\tsm\db001 mkdir e:\tsm\db002 mkdir f:\tsm\db003 mkdir g:\tsm\db004	
Active log directory	mkdir h:\tsm\log	
Archive log directory	mkdir i:\tsm\archlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir j:\tsm\logmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir k:\tsm\archlogfailover	

Table 59. Worksheet for creating required directories (continued)

When a server is initially created by using the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility or the configuration wizard, a server database and recovery log are created. In addition, files are created to hold database information that is used by the database manager.

3. Create additional logical volumes and mount the volumes on the directories that were created in the previous step.

What to do next

Continue the upgrade process by using one of the following topics:

"Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard"

"Upgrading the server manually by using utilities" on page 307

Related tasks:

"Planning space for the upgrade process and the upgraded server" on page 37

Related reference:

"Server naming best practices" on page 70

Upgrading the server by using the upgrade wizard

The wizard offers a guided approach to upgrading a server. By using the wizard, you can avoid some configuration steps that are complex when done manually. Start the wizard on the system where you installed the V7.1 server program.

Before you begin

You must complete all preceding steps to prepare for the upgrade, to install the upgrade utilities, to install the V7.1 server program, and to create the directories and user ID for the server instance.

Procedure

1. Ensure that the following requirements are met:

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

- The system where you installed the V7.1 server program must have the X Window client. You must also be running an X Window server on your desktop.
- The system must have one of the following protocols enabled. Ensure that the port that the protocol uses is not blocked by a firewall.
 - Secure Shell (SSH). Ensure that the port is set to the default value,
 22. Also, ensure that the SSH daemon service has access rights for connecting to the system by using localhost.
 - Remote shell (rsh).
 - Remote Execution Protocol (REXEC).

If the V5 server is on a different system than the V7.1 server, that system must also have one of the protocols enabled.

• You must be able to log in to the V7.1 system with the user ID that you created for the server instance, by using the SSH, rsh, or REXEC protocol. When you use the wizard, you must provide this user ID and password to access that system.

Windows

- The system where you installed the V7.1 server program must have the Windows server message block (SMB) protocol enabled. SMB is the interface that is used by File and Print Sharing (also known as CIFS). To use the SMB protocol, you must ensure that File and Print Sharing is enabled, and that port 445 is not blocked by your firewall.
- If the V5 server is on a different system than the V7.1 server, that system must also have SMB enabled.
- You must be able to log on to the system that has SMB enabled by using either the user ID that you created for the server instance, or another user ID that exists on the system. When you use the wizard, you must provide the user ID and password to access the system.
- 2. Windows If the system is running on Windows Server 2008, complete the following steps to disable User Account Control:
 - a. Ensure that the Remote Registry in Windows Services is started, and ports 445, 137, and 139 are unblocked in the firewall.
 - b. Configure both the framework server and the targets as members of a Windows domain. Use a user account in that domain, or in a trusted domain, when you connect to the target.
 - c. Connect to the target workstation by enabling and using the built-in administrator account. To enable the built-in administrator account, click Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Local Security Policy > Security Settings > Local Policies > Security Options. Double-click the Accounts: Administrator account status section. Select Enable and click OK.
 - d. Click Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Local Security Policy > Security Settings > Local Policies > Security Options. Double-click the User Account Control: Run all administrators in Admin Approval Mode section. Select Disable and click OK.
- 3. Start the upgrade wizard, dsmupgdx, from the V7.1 server installation directory.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Log in using the root user ID. Issue the command: /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmupgdx

Windows

Open a new Command Prompt window, and issue the command:
"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmupgdx.exe"

4. Follow the instructions to complete the upgrade. The upgrade wizard can be stopped and restarted, but the server will not be operational until the entire upgrade process is complete.

Important: Read all messages that appear for each phase of the upgrade process, in the message display area within the wizard. Informational messages might show actions that occurred during the process that are important to you.

What to do next

To complete the upgrade, perform the steps described in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Related tasks:

"Upgrading the server manually by using utilities"

Upgrading the server manually by using utilities

Use the utilities to upgrade the server by using a command interface.

Before you begin

Complete all preceding steps to prepare for the upgrade. Ensure that you have installed the upgrade utilities, installed the V7.1 server program, and created the directories and user ID for the server instance.

Procedure

Complete the following steps:

- 1. "Creating and formatting the new database" on page 308
- 2. Use one of the following methods to move the database:
 - "Moving the server database using media" on page 312
 - "Moving the server database over a network" on page 316
- 3. "Creating a Windows service for the server instance" on page 318
- 4. "Configuring the system for database backup" on page 318

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323. **Related concepts**:

"DSMUPGRD upgrade utilities" on page 16

Creating and formatting the new database

Create the server instance and format files for an empty V7.1 database.

Procedure

1. Log on to the system where you installed the V7.1 program.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Log in by using the root user ID. Verify the following items:

• The home directory for the user, /home/tsminst1, exists. If there is no home directory, you must create it.

The instance directory stores the following core files that are generated by the Tivoli Storage Manager server:

- The server options file, dsmserv.opt
- The server key database file, cert.kdb, and the .arm files, which are used by clients and other servers to import the Secure Sockets Layer certificates of the server
- Device configuration file, if the DEVCONFIG server option does not specify a fully qualified name
- Volume history file, if the VOLUMEHISTORY server option does not specify a fully qualified name
- Volumes for DEVTYPE=FILE storage pools, if the directory for the device class is not fully specified, or not fully qualified
- User exits
- Trace output, if it is not fully qualified
- A shell configuration file, for example, .profile, exists in the home directory. The root user and instance user ID must have write permission to this file. For more information, go to the DB2 Information Center (http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/ v10r5), and search for information about Linux and UNIX environment variable settings.

Windows

Log on as an administrator.

2. Create a Tivoli Storage Manager instance by using the **db2icrt** command.



/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2icrt -a server -s ese -u
tsminst1 tsminst1

Remember: From this point on, use this new user ID when you configure the Tivoli Storage Manager server. Log out of the root user ID, and log in using the user ID that is the instance owner.

Windows

Enter the following command on one line. The user account that you specify becomes the user ID that owns the V7.1 server; this ID is the instance user ID.

db2icrt -s ese -u user_account instance_name

For example, if the user account is *tsminst1* and the server instance is *Server1*, enter the following command:

db2icrt -s ese -u tsminst1 server1

The database service for the server instance logs on to the user account that is specified in this command.

Use the registry key name of the V5 server as the instance name for the V7.1 server. You are prompted to enter the password for the user account.

The instance name that you specify on this **db2icrt** command is the name that you later specify with the -k option on the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** command, when you create and format the database and recovery log.

- **3**. Log on to the system by using the user ID that owns the V7.1 server instance (the instance user ID).
- 4. Copy the configuration files to the instance directory that you created for the new server. The files are the configuration files that you saved from the original V5 server:
 - Device configuration
 - Server options file, which is typically named dsmserv.opt

For example, if you created the instance directory that is shown in the example in the step to create directories for the V7.1 server, copy the files into the following directory:

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris /tsminst1

Windows d:\tsm\server1

Ensure that the user ID that owns the V7.1 server (the instance user ID) has ownership or read/write permission to the files that you copied.

- 5. Edit the server options file.
 - a. Remove any options that are not supported for V7.1. For the list of deleted options, see Table 29 on page 67.
 - b. Verify that the server options file contains at least one VOLUMEHISTORY option and at least one DEVCONFIG option. By specifying these options, you ensure that a volume history file and a device configuration file are generated and updated automatically. If you must restore the database, these files are required.
 - c. Check whether the server options file includes the TXNGROUPMAX option with a value, and if it does, what the value is. You might want to change the current value because the default value for this option changed from 256 to 4096, starting in V6. The increased value can improve the performance for data movement operations such as storage pool migration and storage pool backup.
 - If the server options file does not include this option, the server automatically uses the new default value of 4096.

- If the server options file includes a value for this option, the server uses that specified value. If the specified value is less than 4096, consider increasing the value, or removing the option so that the new default value is applied.
- 6. Change the default path for the database.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

Change the default path for the database to be the same as the instance directory for the server. Issue the command: db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath *instance directory*

For example:

db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath /tsminst1

Windows

Change the default path for the database to be the drive where the instance directory for the server is located. Complete the following steps:

- a. Click Start > Programs > IBM DB2 > DB2TSM1 > Command Line Tools > Command Line Processor.
- b. Enter quit to exit the command line processor.

A window with a command prompt opens, with the environment correctly set up to successfully issue the commands in the next steps.

c. From the command prompt in that window, issue the following command to set the environment variable for the server instance that you are working with:

set db2instance=instance_name

The *instance_name* is the same as the instance name that you specified when you issued the **db2icrt** command. For example, to set the environment variable for the Server1 server instance, issue the following command:

set db2instance=server1

d. Issue the command to set the default drive:

db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath instance_location

For example, if the instance directory is d:\tsm\server1, the instance location is drive d:. Enter the command:

db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath d:

7. Modify the library path to use the version of the IBM Global Security Kit (GSKit) that is installed with the Tivoli Storage Manager server:

AIX Issue the following command:

export LIBPATH=/usr/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LIBPATH

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris You must update the following files to set the library path when DB2 or the Tivoli Storage Manager server is started:

- *instance_directory*/sqllib/usercshrc
- *instance_directory*/sqllib/userprofile

For the *instance_directory*/sqllib/usercshrc file, add the following lines:

• AIX

setenv LIBPATH /usr/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LIBPATH

- HP-UX Solaris setenv LD LIBRARY PATH /opt/ibm/gsk8 64/lib64:\$LD LIBRARY PATH
- Linux
 - setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH /usr/local/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH

For the *instance_directory*/sqllib/userprofile file, add the following lines:

• AIX

```
LIBPATH=/usr/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:$LIBPATH
export LIBPATH
```

HP-UX Solaris

LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/opt/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH export LD_LIBRARY_PATH

• Linux

LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/usr/local/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH export LD_LIBRARY_PATH

Verify the library path settings and ensure that the GSKit version is 8.0.14.14 or later. Issue the following commands:

```
    AIX
    echo $LIBPATH
    gsk8capicmd_64 -version
    gsk8ver_64
    HP-UX
    Linux
    Solaris
```

echo \$LD_LIBRARY_PATH gsk8capicmd_64 -version gsk8ver 64

If the GSKit version is not 8.0.14.14 or later, you must reinstall the Tivoli Storage Manager server. The reinstallation ensures that the correct GSKit version is available.

- 8. Change to the instance directory that you created for the server.
- **9**. Create and format the database and recovery logs. In the command, specify the directories that you created for the database and logs. The directories must be empty.



For example, to get an active log size of 16 GB (16384 MB, the default size), issue the following command, on one line:

```
/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmserv loadformat \
dbdir=/tsmdb001,/tsmdb002,/tsmdb003,/tsmdb004 \
activelogsize=16384 activelogdirectory=/tsmlog \
mirrorlogdirectory=/tsmlogmirror archlogdirectory=/tsmarchlog
```

Windows

For example, to get an active log size of 16 GB (16384 MB, the default size) for the Server1 server instance, issue the following command, on one line:

```
"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmserv" loadformat
dbdir=d:\tsm\db001,e:\tsm\db002,f:\tsm\db003,g:\tsm\db004
activelogsize=16384 activelogdirectory=h:\tsm\log
mirrorlogdirectory=j:\tsm\logmirror archlogdirectory=i:\tsm\archlog
```

If the server that you are upgrading is not Server1, you must use the -k option. The -k option specifies the instance name for running this utility. For example, if the system has more than one server instance and the instance that you are upgrading is Server2, issue the command:

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmserv" -k server2 loadformat dbdir=d:\tsm\db001,e:\tsm\db002,f:\tsm\db003,g:\tsm\db004 activelogsize=16384 activelogdirectory=h:\tsm\log mirrorlogdirectory=j:\tsm\logmirror archlogdirectory=i:\tsm\archlog

Important: The server instance that you specify must have already been through all preceding steps for the upgrade process, including the creation of the database instance (**db2icrt** command).

10. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages. The final message indicates success or failure of the operation.

What to do next

Continue the upgrade process by following the instructions in one of the following topics:

"Moving the server database using media"

"Moving the server database over a network" on page 316

Related tasks:

"Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39

Related reference:

DSMSERV LOADFORMAT (Format a database)

"Deleted server commands, utilities, and options" on page 65

Moving the server database using media

Use media to move the server database if the V7.1 server is installed on a different system and no network connection is available. Also, use the media method if the server system does not have enough space for both databases, or if you want to test the upgrade process and set up a test server.

About this task

The process creates a manifest file during the data extraction, which contains information about the media that is used to store the data. The process requires the manifest file for loading the data into the new database.

Procedure

1. "Extracting the data to media" on page 313

2. "Loading the extracted data into the new database" on page 314

Related concepts:

"The manifest file for the data extraction to media" on page 531

Extracting the data to media

You can extract the data from the original server database to sequential media. The sequential media can be tape, or disk space that is defined with the FILE device class.

Procedure

- 1. Log in using the root user ID on the system that has the original server. Log on with the administrator ID on a Windows system.
- 2. Ensure that the device that you want to use to store the extracted data is available. The server database and the device configuration file must contain a valid device class definition for the device.
- 3. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the command to start the extraction. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring. For example, issue the following command on one line:

AIX							
nohup /us	r/tivoli/t	sm/upgra	de/bin/	dsmupgrd	extr	actd	b∖
d a a . a	f:1	aa+_ /ma	nifest	+++ +++++		a+	2~0

devclass=file manifest=./manifest.txt >extract.out 2>&1 &

HP-UX Linux Solaris nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd extractdb \

devclass=file manifest=./manifest.txt >extract.out 2>&1 &

Windows

n

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd" extractdb devclass=file manifest=.\manifest.txt 1>>extract.out 2>&1

Tip: Messages that are issued during the extract operation are *not* saved in the server activity log. Direct the output of the utility to a file, as shown in the examples, to record the messages.

4. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages, and for items that you might need to take action on. A message near the end of the process output indicates success or failure of the operation:

Success message: ANR1382I EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed.

Failure message: ANR1396E EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed with errors.

For example, from the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to monitor the process:

```
tail -f extract.out
```

The length of time that the process runs depends on the size of the database. The time will be approximately as much as the time required for a full backup of the database.

Tip: On Windows systems, use the **tail** command or an equivalent utility with which you can monitor the contents of a file as it changes. For example, the Windows Server 2003 Resource Kit Tools includes the tail command, which can be used as shown in the preceding example.

Related concepts:

"The manifest file for the data extraction to media" on page 531

Related tasks:

"Preparing space for the upgrade process" on page 281

Related reference:

"DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB (Extract data from a V5 server database)" on page 529

Loading the extracted data into the new database

After you format an empty database by using the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** utility, load the data that you extracted from the original server database.

Before you begin

Ensure that the following requirements are met before you begin to load the data:

- The manifest file from the **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB** operation must be available.
- The server options file must contain an entry for the device configuration file.
- The device configuration file must have information about the device class that is specified in the manifest file.
- The media that contains the extracted database must be available to the V7.1 server. The device must be physically attached to the system. The permissions must be set to grant access to the media for the user ID that owns the V7.1 server instance.

Procedure

Complete the following steps:

- 1. Verify that the V7.1 server can access the extracted data.
 - If the extracted data is on tape, the tape drive must be physically attached to the system.
 - If the extracted data was stored by using a FILE or DISK device class, complete the following steps:
 - a. Log on to the system by using the root user ID.
 - **b.** Ensure that the user ID that owns the V7.1 server (the instance user ID) has ownership or read/write permission for the extracted files.
- **2**. Ensure that the instance user ID has ownership or read/write permission for the manifest file that was created by the extraction process.
- **3.** Log on with the instance user ID on the system where you installed the V7.1 server.
- 4. If the V7.1 server is on a different system than the original server, copy the manifest file that was created by the extraction process to the V7.1 system.
- 5. On the V7.1 server, complete the following steps:
 - a. Verify that the server options file from the V5 server includes the DEVCONFIG option, and that the option specifies the full path of the device configuration file.
 - b. Verify that the device configuration file from the V5 server is available in the location that is specified by the DEVCONFIG option.
 - **c**. Verify that the permissions on the device configuration file allow read access for the instance user ID.
- 6. Verify that the contents of the device configuration file are correct. The device class that was used for the extraction step is recorded in the manifest file, and that device class must exist and be valid on the V7.1 system.
 - a. Verify entries for FILE device classes. For example, paths might be different on the system.

- b. Verify entries for tape and other devices. For example, the device names might have changed.
- 7. Verify the contents of the manifest file and edit the file if necessary:
 - **a**. Ensure that the device names in the manifest file are valid for the V7.1 system. Device names for the same device might be different on V5 and V7 systems.
 - b. Ensure that the manifest file contains a list of volumes to be used when the extracted data is loaded into the new database. For example, if the manifest file contains a list of volumes that belong to a FILE device class, ensure that the fully qualified path to the volumes is correct for the system.
- 8. Issue the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** command to load an extracted server database into the prepared, empty V7.1 database. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring. For example, enter the following command on one line:



Windows

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmserv" insertdb \
manifest=.\manifest.txt 1>>insert.out 2>&1

9. Monitor the process for error messages, warning messages, and any items that you might need to address. The system displays interim statistics about the process of loading the database. However, there might be time periods when no messages are issued. During this time, DB2 operations are running in the background. The length of time that the process runs depends on the size of the database. For more information, see "Example: Estimating the upgrade time based on the database size" on page 43.

Optional: Verify that the database is being loaded by monitoring the processor and I/O usage for the server process and the corresponding DB2 process. For example, issue the following command to monitor the process:

tail -f insert.out

Tip: Windows On Windows systems, use the **tail** command or an equivalent utility with which you can monitor the contents of a file as it changes. For example, the Windows Server 2003 Resource Kit Tools includes the **tail** command, which can be used as shown in the preceding example.

A message in the output of the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** command indicates the status of the operation:

Success message: ANR1395I INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed.

Failure message: ANR1396E INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed with errors.

10. If you used the media method to upgrade the system *and* used a tape device, after the data is loaded into the database, remove or check out from the library the tape that holds the extracted data. Prevent the tape from being reused until you are sure that you do not need to run the database-loading operation again.

What to do next

Continue the upgrade process by completing the steps in "Creating a Windows service for the server instance" on page 318.

Related concepts:

"The manifest file for the data extraction to media" on page 531

Related reference:

"DSMSERV INSERTDB (Move a server database into an empty database)" on page 538

Moving the server database over a network

Move the database by starting the insertion process for the V7.1 server to accept the server database. Then, start the extraction process for the V5 server to extract and send the database.

Before you begin

Ensure that the V5 server and the V7.1 server are not running.

Procedure

- 1. Verify that there is a good network connection between the two systems.
- 2. On the V7.1 server, complete the following steps:
 - a. Verify that the server options file from the V5 server includes the DEVCONFIG option, and that the option specifies the full path of the device configuration file.
 - b. Verify that the device configuration file from the V5 server is available in the location that is specified by the DEVCONFIG option.
 - **c**. Verify that the permissions on the device configuration file allow read access for the instance user ID.
- 3. Start the insertion process on the V7.1 server to accept the database. To monitor the process, direct the output of the process to a file. For example, start the server, allowing 60 minutes (the default time) for the other server to contact the V7.1 server and directing the process output to insert.out, by using this command:



"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmserv" insertdb
sesswait=60 1>>insert.out 2>&1

The server starts and waits up to 60 minutes to be contacted by the original server. Some time might pass during which no messages are issued. During this time, DB2 operations are running in the background. Optional: To verify that operations are continuing as expected, monitor the CPU and I/O usage for the server process and the corresponding DB2 process.

4. Monitor the output of the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** process. Verify that the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** process has issued the following message before continuing to the next step:

ANR1336I INSERTDB: Ready for connections from the source server

Issue the following command to monitor the process output in the insert.out file:

tail -f insert.out

Tip: On Windows systems, use the **tail** command or an equivalent utility with which you can monitor the contents of a file as it changes. For example, the Windows Server 2003 Resource Kit Tools includes the **tail** command, which can be used as shown in the preceding example.

5. Start the extraction from the original server. Specify the TCP/IP address and port for the V7.1 server. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring. For example, enter the following command on one line:

AIX

nohup /usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd extractdb \
hladdress=127.0.0.1 lladdress=1500 >extract.out 2>&1 &

HP-UX Linux Solaris

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd extractdb \
hladdress=127.0.0.1 lladdress=1500 >extract.out 2>&1 &

Windows

"c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd" extractdb hladdress=127.0.0.1 lladdress=1500 1>>extract.out 2>&1

6. Monitor the processes for errors and warning messages, and for items that you might need to act on. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to monitor the extraction process: tail -f extract.out

The length of time that the process runs depends on the size of the database, the hardware being used, and the network.

7. Examine the process outputs for the extraction and insertion processes to find the messages that indicate the success or failure of the operations.

Process	Success message	Failure message		
Extraction	ANR1382I EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed.	ANR1396E EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed with errors.		
Insertion	ANR1395I INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed.	ANR1396E INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed with errors.		

Related reference:

"DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB (Extract data from a V5 server database)" on page 529

"DSMSERV INSERTDB (Move a server database into an empty database)" on page 538

Creating a Windows service for the server instance

Windows

A Windows service is created for the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server automatically if you use the upgrade wizard (**dsmupgdx**). If you do not use the wizard, you must create the Windows service for the Tivoli Storage Manager server manually.

Procedure

- Change to the installation directory for the server program. By default, the directory is C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\console. If you installed the server in a different directory, change to the console subdirectory of the server installation directory.
- 2. Install the Windows service by using the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance name and password in the service name. Issue the following command:

```
install "TSM server_instance_name"
    "C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmsvc.exe"
instance_owner instance_owner_password
```

where:

"TSM *server_instance_name*" is the name of the service that is being installed.

server_instance_name is the instance name that was specified when you issued the **db2icrt** command.

instance_owner is the instance owner account; this account will own the service.

instance_owner_password is the password for the instance owner account.

Example

To install the Windows service for the server1 server instance, enter the following command on one line. The example uses rudy as the instance owner and s21ret as the password for the instance owner account. install "TSM server1" "C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dsmsvc.exe"

rudy s21ret

3. Optional: Manually change the service to an automatic startup type by using Windows administrative tools (**Administrative Tools** > **Services**).

Related tasks:

"Starting the server on Windows systems" on page 331

Configuring the system for database backup

The database manager and the Tivoli Storage Manager API must be configured so that the database manager can back up the server database. The configuration is completed for you automatically if you use the upgrade wizard (**dsmupgdx**). If you do not use the wizard, you must complete the configuration manually.

Procedure

- "Configuring the system for database backup on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 319
- "Configuring the system for database backup on Microsoft Windows systems" on page 321

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Configuring the system for database backup on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

If you did not use the upgrade wizard, you must complete the configuration for the database backup manually.

About this task

Starting with Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1, it is no longer necessary to set the API password during a manual configuration of the server. If you set the API password during the manual configuration process, attempts to back up the database might fail.

Complete the following steps before you issue either the **BACKUP DB** or the **RESTORE DB** command.

Attention: If the database is unusable, the entire Tivoli Storage Manager server is unavailable. If a database is lost and cannot be recovered, it might be difficult or impossible to recover data that was managed by that server. Therefore, it is critically important to back up the database.

In the following commands, replace the example values with your actual values. The examples use tsminst1 for the server instance user ID, /tsminst1 for the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance directory, and /home/tsminst1 as the home directory of the server instance user.

Procedure

- 1. Set the Tivoli Storage Manager API environment-variable configuration for the database instance:
 - a. Log in by using the tsminst1 user ID.
 - b. When user tsminst1 is logged in, ensure that the DB2 environment is correctly initialized. The DB2 environment is initialized by running the /home/tsminst1/sqllib/db2profile script, which normally runs automatically from the profile of the user ID. Ensure that the .profile file exists in the home directory of the instance user, for example, /home/tsminst1/.profile. If .profile does not run the db2profile script, add the following lines:
 - - fi
 - c. In the *instance_directory*/sqllib/userprofile file, add the following lines:

DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory/tsmdbmgr.opt DSMI_DIR=server_bin_directory/dbbkapi DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory export DSMI_CONFIG DSMI_DIR DSMI_LOG

d. In the *instance_directory*/sqllib/usercshrc file, add the following lines:

setenv DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory/tsmdbmgr.opt
setenv DSMI_DIR=server_bin_directory/dbbkapi
setenv DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1

Log out and log in again as tsminst1, or issue this command:
 . ~/.profile

Ensure that you enter a space after the initial dot (.) character.

3. Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.opt in the server instance directory, which is in the /tsminstl directory in this example, and add the following line: SERVERNAME TSMDBMGR_TSMINST1

The value for SERVERNAME must be consistent in the tsmdbmgr.opt and dsm.sys files.

4. Locate the Tivoli Storage Manager API dsm.sys configuration file. By default, the dsm.sys file is in the following location:

server_bin_directory/dbbkapi/dsm.sys

5. As root user, add the following lines to the dsm.sys configuration file:

```
servername TSMDBMGR_TSMINST1
commmethod tcpip
tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport 1500
errorlogname /tsminst1
nodename $$ TSMDBMGR $$
```

where

- servername matches the servername value in the tsmdbmgr.opt file.
- commmethod specifies the client API that is used to contact the server for database backup. This value can be tcpip or sharedmem. For more information about shared memory, see Step 6.
- tcpserveraddr specifies the server address that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be localhost.
- tcpport specifies the port number that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. Ensure that you enter the same tcpport value that is specified in the dsmserv.opt server options file.
- errorlogname specifies the error log where the client API logs errors that are encountered during a database backup. This log is typically in the server instance directory. However, this log can be placed in any location where the instance user ID has write-permission.
- nodename specifies the node name that the client API uses to connect to the server during a database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be \$\$_TSMDBMGR_\$\$.

Linux Do not add the PASSWORDACCESS generate option to the dsm.sys configuration file. This option can cause the database backup to fail.

- 6. Optional: Configure the server to back up the database by using shared memory. In this way, you might be able to reduce the processor load and improve throughput. Complete the following steps:
 - a. Review the dsmserv.opt file. If the following lines are not in the file, add them:

commmethod sharedmem
shmport port number

where *port_number* specifies the port that you use for shared memory.

b. In the dsm.sys configuration file, locate the following lines:

commmethod tcpip
tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport port number

Replace the specified lines with the following lines: commmethod sharedmem shmport *port_number*

where *port_number* specifies the port that you use for shared memory.

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Configuring the system for database backup on Microsoft Windows systems

Windows

If you did not use the upgrade wizard, you must complete the configuration for the database backup manually.

About this task

Complete the following steps before you issue either the **BACKUP DB** or the **RESTORE DB** command.

Attention: If the database is unusable, the entire Tivoli Storage Manager server is unavailable. If a database is lost and cannot be recovered, it might be difficult or impossible to recover data that was managed by that server. Therefore, it is critically important to back up the database.

In the following commands, the examples use server1 for the database instance and d:\tsmserver1 for the Tivoli Storage Manager server directory. When you issue the commands, replace these values with your actual values.

Procedure

1. Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.env in the d:\tsmserver1 directory with the following contents:

DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory\tsmdbmgr.opt DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory

- 2. Set the DSMI_ api environment-variable configuration for the database instance:
 - a. Open a DB2 command window. One method is to go to the C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\db2\bin directory, or if you installed Tivoli Storage Manager in a different location, go to the db2\bin subdirectory in your main installation directory. Then, issue the following command: db2cmd
 - b. Issue the following command:
 - db2set -i server1 DB2_VENDOR_INI=d:\tsmserver1\tsmdbmgr.env
 - c. Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.opt in the d:\tsmserver1 directory with the following contents:

tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport 1500
passwordaccess generate
errorlogname d:\tsmserver1
vub.cms

where

- nodename specifies the node name that the client API uses to connect to the server during a database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be \$\$_TSMDBMGR_\$\$.
- commethod specifies the client API that is used to contact the server for database backup. This value can be tcpip or sharedmem. For more information about shared memory, see Step 3.
- tcpserveraddr specifies the server address that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be localhost.
- tcpport is the port number that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. Ensure that you enter the same tcpport value that is specified in the dsmserv.opt server options file.
- passwordaccess is required to ensure that the backup node can connect to the server.
- errorlogname is the error log where the client API logs errors that are encountered during a database backup. This log is typically in the server instance directory. However, this log can be placed in any location where the instance user ID has write-permission.
- **3**. Optional: Configure the server to back up the database by using shared memory. In this way, you might be able to reduce the processor load and improve throughput. Complete the following steps:
 - a. Review the dsmserv.opt file. If the following lines are not in the file, add them:

commmethod sharedmem
shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port to use for shared memory.

b. In the tsmdbmgr.opt file, locate the following lines:

commmethod tcpip tcpserveraddr localhost tcpport 1500

Replace the specified lines with the following lines: commmethod sharedmem shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port to use for shared memory.

What to do next

After you configure the system for database backup, complete the upgrade. Follow the instructions in Chapter 10, "Taking the first steps after upgrade," on page 323.

Chapter 10. Taking the first steps after upgrade

Verify that the server was upgraded successfully and can operate normally. The verification steps include starting the server, registering licenses, and backing up the database. Also, configure available server options.

Procedure

Complete the tasks that are described in the following sections:

- 1. "Verifying access to storage pools on disk"
- 2. "Setting up Solaris services for the server instance" on page 324
- 3. "Configuring server options for server database maintenance" on page 324
- 4. "Starting the server instance after the upgrade" on page 325
- 5. "Registering licenses" on page 334
- 6. "Backing up the database after upgrading the server" on page 335
- 7. "Verifying the upgraded server" on page 336
- 8. "Changing the host name for the Tivoli Storage Manager server" on page 336
- 9. "Updating automation" on page 338
- 10. "Monitoring the upgraded server" on page 339
- 11. "Removing GSKit Version 7 after upgrading to Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1" on page 340

What to do next

After you upgrade the server to V7.1, you can authenticate passwords with the LDAP directory server, or authenticate passwords with the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager server. Passwords that are authenticated with the LDAP directory server can provide enhanced system security. For details, see the section about managing passwords and logon procedures in the *Administrator's Guide*.

Verifying access to storage pools on disk

For all disk space that was used for storage pools (device types of FILE or DISK) by the V5 server, verify that the user ID that owns the upgraded server instance has ownership or read/write permission. Also ensure that the instance user ID has access to all devices that are used, including raw logical devices.

Procedure

1. Display information about FILE device classes and DISK volumes.

 AIX
 HP-UX
 Linux
 Solaris
 In each path that is listed for the FILE

 device class or DISK volume, run the following command:

ls -1

Windows In each directory that is listed for the FILE device class or DISK volume, run the following command:

dir /Q

2. Verify that the owner of the FILE device class or DISK volume is the server instance owner and that permissions are set to allow the owner to read and write the files.

Setting up Solaris services for the server instance

Solaris

If you are running a Tivoli Storage Manager server on a Solaris system, you can use the Solaris Service Management Facility (SMF) to set up and control the Tivoli Storage Manager server as a service.

About this task

For more information, see Technote 7021102 (http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg27021102).

Configuring server options for server database maintenance

To help avoid problems with database growth and server performance, the server automatically monitors its database tables and reorganizes them when needed. Before starting the server for production use, set server options to control when reorganization runs. If you plan to use data deduplication, ensure that the option to run index reorganization is enabled.

About this task

Table and index reorganization requires significant processor resources, active log space, and archive log space. Because database backup takes precedence over reorganization, select the time and duration for reorganization to ensure that the processes do not overlap and reorganization can complete. For more information about scheduling reorganization, see the *Administrator's Guide*.

If you update these server options while the server is running, you must stop and restart the server before the updated values take effect.

Procedure

1. Modify the server options.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Edit the server options file,

dsmserv.opt, in the server instance directory. Follow these guidelines when you edit the server options file:

- To activate an option, remove the asterisk at the beginning of the line.
- Create an option on any line.
- Enter only one option per line. The entire option with its value must be on one line.
- If you have multiple entries for an option in the file, the server uses the last entry.
- To view available server options, see the sample file, dsmserv.opt.smp, in the /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin directory.

Windows Edit the server options file, dsmserv.opt, in the server instance directory by using a text editor. Follow these guidelines when you edit the server options file:

- To activate an option, remove the asterisk at the beginning of the line.
- Create an option on any line.
- Enter only one option per line. The entire option with its value must be on one line.

- If you have multiple entries for an option in the file, the server uses the last entry.
- To view available server options, see the sample file, dsmserv.opt.smp, in the c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM directory.
- 2. If you plan to use data deduplication, enable the **ALLOWREORGINDEX** server option. Add the following option and value to the server options file: allowreorgindex yes
- **3**. Set the **REORGBEGINTIME** and **REORGDURATION** server options to control when reorganization starts and how long it runs. Select a time and duration so that reorganization runs when you expect that the server is least busy. These server options control both table and index reorganization processes.
 - a. Set the time for reorganization to start by using the **REORGBEGINTIME** server option. Specify the time by using the 24-hour system. For example, to set the start time for reorganization as 8:30 p.m., specify the following option and value in the server options file:

reorgbegintime 20:30

- b. Set the interval during which the server can start reorganization. For example, to specify that the server can start reorganization for four hours after the time set by the **REORGBEGINTIME** server option, specify the following option and value in the server options file:
 - reorgduration 4
- 4. If the server was running while you updated the server options file, stop and restart the server.

Starting the server instance after the upgrade

You can select different methods for starting the Tivoli Storage Manager server, depending on the operating system on which the server is installed.

Procedure

Follow the instructions for your operating system:

- AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris To start the server on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, or Solaris, follow the instructions in "Starting the server on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems."
- Windows To start the server on Windows, follow the instructions in "Starting the server on Windows systems" on page 331.

Starting the server on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

You can start the Tivoli Storage Manager server by using the instance user ID or the root user ID.

Procedure

To start the server, take one of the following actions:

- To start the server by using the instance user ID, complete the following steps:
 - 1. Ensure that you set access permissions and user limits correctly, as described in "Verifying access rights and user limits" on page 326.

- 2. Start the server as described in "Starting the server from the instance user ID" on page 328.
- To start the server by using the root user ID, complete the following steps:
 - 1. Ensure that you set access permissions and user limits correctly, as described in "Verifying access rights and user limits."
 - 2. Authorize the root user ID and start the server, as described in "Starting the server from the root user ID" on page 329.
- AIX HP-UX Solaris To start the server automatically, follow the steps in "Automatically starting servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris" on page 329.
- **Linux** To start the server automatically, follow the steps in "Automatically starting servers on Linux systems" on page 330.

For information about other options for starting the server, see the *Administrator's Guide*.

Related concepts:

"Startup of server instances (AIX, HP-UX, Linux, Solaris)" on page 8

Verifying access rights and user limits

AIX Linux HP-UX Solaris

Before you start the Tivoli Storage Manager server on an AIX, HP-UX, Linux, or Solaris operating system, verify access rights and user limits.

About this task

If you do not verify user limits, also known as *ulimits*, you might experience server instability or a failure of the server to respond. You must also verify the system-wide limit for the maximum number of open files. The system-wide limit must be greater than or equal to the user limit.

Procedure

- 1. Verify that the server instance user ID has permissions to start the server.
- 2. For the server instance that you plan to start, ensure that you have authority to read and write files in the server instance directory. Verify that the dsmserv.opt file exists in the server instance directory, and that the file includes parameters for the server instance.
- **3**. If the server is attached to a tape drive, medium changer, or removable media device, and you plan to start the server by using the instance user ID, grant read/write access to the instance user ID for these devices. To set permissions, take one of the following actions:
 - If the system is dedicated to Tivoli Storage Manager and only the Tivoli Storage Manager administrator has access, make the device special file world-writable:

chmod +w /dev/rmtX

- If the system has multiple users, you can restrict access by making the Tivoli Storage Manager instance user ID the owner of the special device files: chmod u+w /dev/rmtX
- If multiple user instances are running on the same system, change the group name, for example TAPEUSERS, and add each Tivoli Storage Manager instance user ID to that group. Then, change the ownership of the device special files to belong to the group TAPEUSERS, and make them group writable:

chmod g+w /dev/rmtX

- 4. **Linux** If you are using the Tivoli Storage Manager device driver and the **autoconf** utility, use the **-a** option to grant read/write access to the instance user ID.
- 5. HP-UX Linux Solaris To prevent server failures during interaction with DB2, tune the kernel parameters.

For instructions, see the section about tuning kernel parameters in the *Installation Guide*.

6. Verify the following user limits based on the guidelines in the table.

Table 60. User limit (ulimit) values

User limit type	Standard value	Command to query value
Maximum size of core files created	Unlimited	ulimit -Hc
Maximum size of a data segment for a process	Unlimited	ulimit -Hd
Maximum file size	Unlimited	ulimit -Hf
Maximum number of open files	65536	ulimit -Hn
Maximum amount of processor time in seconds	Unlimited	ulimit -Ht

To modify user limits, follow the instructions in the documentation for your operating system.

Tip: If you plan to start the server automatically by using a script, you can set the user limits in the script.

- 7. Verify the system-wide value for the maximum number of open files. The system-wide value must be equal to or greater than the user limit for the maximum number of open files.
- 8. Ensure that the user limit of maximum user processes (nproc) is set to the minimum suggested value of 16384.
 - a. To verify the current user limit, issue the following command by using the instance user ID:

ulimit -Hu

HP-UX

For example: [user@Machine ~]\$ ulimit -Hu 16384

b. If the limit of maximum user processes is not set to 16384, set the value to 16384:

Alx Add a line to /etc/security/limits.

Linux Solaris Add a line to /etc/security/limits.conf.

Linux If the server is installed on the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 operating system, set the user limit by editing the /etc/security/limits.d/ 90-nproc.conf file in the /etc/security/limits.d directory. This file overrides the settings in the /etc/security/limits.conf file.

Tip: The default value for the user limit of maximum user processes has changed on some distributions and versions of the Linux operating system.

The default value is 1024. If you do not change the value to the minimum suggested value of 16384, the server might fail or hang.

Starting the server from the instance user ID

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

To start the server from the instance user ID, log in with the instance user ID and issue the appropriate command from the server instance directory.

Before you begin

Ensure that access rights and user limits are set correctly. For instructions, see "Verifying access rights and user limits" on page 326.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the system where Tivoli Storage Manager is installed by using the instance user ID for the Tivoli Storage Manager server.
- 2. If you do not have a user profile that runs the db2profile script, issue the following command:
 - . /home/tsminst1/sqllib/db2profile

Tip: For instructions about updating the user ID login script to run the db2profile script automatically, see the DB2 documentation.

3. Start the server by issuing the following command from the server instance directory:

/usr/bin/dsmserv

Tip: The command runs in the foreground so that you can set an administrator ID and connect to the server instance.

For example, if the name of the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance is tsminst1 and the server instance directory is /tsminst1, you can start the instance by issuing the following commands:

cd /tsminst1
 . ~/sqllib/db2profile
/usr/bin/dsmserv

Solaris Alternatively, if you set up the Tivoli Storage Manager server as a service by using the Solaris Service Management Facility (SMF), you can start the service by issuing the **svcadm enable** command. For instructions, see Technote 7021102 (http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg27021102).

Example

In this example, the name for the instance of the Tivoli Storage Manager server is tsminst1 and the instance directory is /tsminst1. To start tsminst1, issue the following commands:

```
cd /tsminst1
/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmserv
```

To start the server in the background, issue the following commands:

```
cd /tsminst1
/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmserv -q &
```

Starting the server from the root user ID

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

The standard way to start the server is by using the instance user ID. However, in some cases, it might be necessary to use another user ID to start the server. For example, you might want to use the root user ID to ensure that the server can access specific devices.

Before you begin

For instructions about starting the server from the root user ID, see the *Administrator's Guide*.

Automatically starting servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

AIX HP-UX Solaris

You can configure the server to start automatically at system startup. Use the rc.dsmserv script, which is provided for this purpose.

Before you begin

Ensure that access rights and user limits are set correctly. Follow the instructions in "Verifying access rights and user limits" on page 326.

About this task

The rc.dsmserv script is in the server installation directory, for example, in the /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin directory.

Tip: AX If you used either the upgrade wizard or the configuration wizard, you might have chosen to start the server automatically when the system is restarted. If you selected that choice, an entry for starting the server was added automatically to the /etc/inittab file.

Procedure

If you did not use a wizard to configure the Tivoli Storage Manager server, add an entry to the /etc/inittab file for each server that you want to automatically start:

- Set the run level to the value that corresponds to multiuser mode, with networking enabled. Typically, the run level to use is 2, 3, or 5, depending on the operating system and its configuration. For more information about multiuser mode and run levels, see the documentation for your operating system.
- On the rc.dsmserv command, specify the instance owner name with the -u option, and the location of the server instance directory with the -i option.

Verify correct syntax for the entry by consulting documentation for your operating system.

Example

Automatically starting a server instance

In this example, the instance user ID is tsminst1; the server instance directory is /home/tsminst1/tsminst1; the run level is 3; and the process ID is tsm1. The following entry is added to the /etc/inittab file, on one line:

```
tsm1:3:once:/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/rc.dsmserv -u tsminst1
    -i /home/tsminst1/tsminst1 -q >/dev/console 2>&1
```

Automatically starting several server instances

This example uses the following instance user IDs:

- tsminst1
- tsminst2

This example uses the following instance directories:

- /home/tsminst1/tsminst1
- /home/tsminst2/tsminst2

This example uses the following process IDs:

- tsm1
- tsm2

The run level is 3. In this example, the following entries are added to the /etc/inittab file. Each entry is on one line.

```
tsm1:3:once:/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/rc.dsmserv -u tsminst1
-i /home/tsminst1/tsminst1 -q >/dev/console 2>&1
tsm2:3:once:/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/rc.dsmserv -u tsminst2
-i /home/tsminst2/tsminst2 -q >/dev/console 2>&1
```

Related reference:

"Server startup script: rc.dsmserv" on page 544

Automatically starting servers on Linux systems

Linux

To automatically start a Tivoli Storage Manager server on a Linux operating system, use the dsmserv.rc script.

Before you begin

Ensure that kernel parameters are set correctly. For instructions, see the section about tuning kernel parameters in the *Installation Guide*.

Ensure that the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance runs under the instance owner user ID.

Ensure that access rights and user limits are set correctly. For instructions, see "Verifying access rights and user limits" on page 326.

About this task

The dsmserv.rc script is in the server installation directory, for example, /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin.

The dsmserv.rc script can be used either to start the server manually or to start the server automatically by adding entries to the /etc/rc.d/init.d directory. The script works with Linux utilities such as CHKCONFIG and SERVICE.

Procedure

For each server instance that you want to automatically start, complete the following steps:

 Place a copy of the dsmserv.rc script in the /init.d directory, for example, /etc/rc.d/init.d.

Ensure that you make any changes in the copy of the script. Do not change the original script.

2. Rename the script copy so that it matches the name of the server instance owner, for example, tsminst1.

The script was created under the assumption that the server instance directory is *home_directory*/tsminst1, for example: /home/tsminst1/tsminst1.

3. If the server instance directory is not *home_directory*/tsminst1, locate the following line in the script copy:

instance_dir="\${instance_home}/tsminst1"

Change the line so that it points to your server instance directory, for example: instance dir="/tsminst1"

- 4. Use tools such as the **CHKCONFIG** utility to configure the run level in which the server automatically starts. Specify a value that corresponds to a multiuser mode, with networking turned on. Typically, the run level to use is 3 or 5, depending on the operating system and its configuration. For more information about multiuser mode and run levels, see the documentation for your operating system.
- 5. Optional: You can start or stop the server by issuing one of the following commands:
 - To start the server:

service tsminst1 start

• To stop the server:

service tsminst1 stop

Example

In this example, the instance owner is tsminst1 and the server instance directory is /home/tsminst1/tsminst1. The dsmserv.rc script copy is named tsminst1, and the CHKCONFIG utility is used to configure the script to start at run levels 3, 4, and 5.

```
cp /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmserv.rc /etc/rc.d/init.d/tsminst1
chkconfig --list tsminst1
service tsminst1 supports chkconfig, but is not referenced in
any runlevel (run 'chkconfig --add tsminst1')
chkconfig --add tsminst1
chkconfig --list tsminst1
tsminst1 0:off 1:off 2:off 3:off 4:off 5:off 6:off
chkconfig --level 345 tsminst1 on
chkconfig --list tsminst1
tsminst1 0:off 1:off 2:off 3:on 4:on 5:on 6:off
```

Starting the server on Windows systems

Windows

You can start the Tivoli Storage Manager server as a Windows service, which is the preferred method, or in the foreground.

About this task

On the Windows operating system, you must close all applications before you log off. As a production server, Tivoli Storage Manager must be available to clients 24 hours a day. At many sites, it is a security exposure to leave an administrator ID

logged on at an unattended computer. The solution is to run the server as a Windows service. When you run the server as a service, it can be configured to start automatically when the system is restarted.

Alternatively, if you plan to configure the server or use it in a test environment, you might want to start the server in the foreground. When you start the server in the foreground, Tivoli Storage Manager provides a special administrator user ID that is named SERVER_CONSOLE. All server messages are displayed directly on the screen. The messages can be useful for debugging startup problems.

If you install a Tivoli Storage Manager server and run it in the foreground, you must stop the server in the foreground before you start the server as a service. Similarly, if you start the server as a Windows service, you must stop the server before you can successfully start it in the foreground.

Procedure

Select one of the following methods for starting the server:

- To start the server by using Windows services, follow the instructions in "Starting the server by using Windows services."
- To start the server in the foreground, follow the instructions in "Starting the server in the foreground" on page 333.

Related concepts:

"Startup of server instances (Windows)" on page 9

Appendix E, "Services associated with the Tivoli Storage Manager server," on page 555

Starting the server by using Windows services

Windows

If you are running Tivoli Storage Manager on a Windows operating system, you can start the server as a service.

Before you begin

You must configure the options for starting the server as a service. Complete the following steps:

- 1. From the Windows Start menu, click Run, type services.msc, and click OK.
- 2. In the Services window, select the server instance that you want to start as a service, and click **Properties**. For example, select **TSM INST1**, and click **Properties**.
- **3**. To ensure that the server service starts automatically, click the **General** tab. From the **Startup type** list, select **Automatic**.
- 4. To set the user for starting the server service, complete the following actions:
 - a. Click the Log On tab.
 - b. Select **This account**, and browse for the user ID that owns the server DB2 instance and has permissions for starting the server.
 - **c.** In the Select User window, in the **Enter the object name to select** field, enter the user ID.
 - d. Click Check Names.
 - e. Click OK.

If the server service is configured to run under the Local System account, you must explicitly grant the Local System account access to the Tivoli Storage Manager database. To grant database access to the Local System account, complete the following steps:

- 1. Log on with the user ID that was used to create the Tivoli Storage Manager server database. This is the user ID that was used to run the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility to initialize the server database. Alternatively, if you configured the server with the **dsmicfgx** configuration wizard, this is the user ID that was used to create the instance.
- 2. Open a DB2 command window by taking one of the following actions:
 - If the Tivoli Storage Manager server is installed on Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2, click Start > All Programs > IBM DB2 DB2TSM1
 > DB2 Command Window - Administrator.
 - If the Tivoli Storage Manager server is installed on Windows Server 2012, open the Start window, and click **DB2 Command Window Administrator**.
- 3. In the DB2 command window, enter the following commands:

```
set DB2INSTANCE=server1
db2 connect to TSMDB1
db2 grant dbadm with dataaccess with accessctr1 on database to user system
db2 grant secadm on database to user system
```

Tip: When the server service is configured to run under the Local System account, the database can be accessed by any administrator on the system. In addition, any administrator who can log on to the system can run the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

Procedure

To start the server as a Windows service, complete the following steps:

- 1. Log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server under an account in the Administrators group.
- 2. From the Windows Start menu, click Run, type services.msc, and click OK.
- **3**. In the Services window, select the server instance that you want to start, and click **Start**.

What to do next

Because the server service can issue requests that require action, it is important to monitor server activity with the Operations Center or the administrative client.

To view start and stop completion messages that are logged in the Windows application log, use the Event Viewer tool in the Administrative Tools folder.

Starting the server in the foreground

Windows

To directly interact with a Tivoli Storage Manager server, start the server in the foreground. For example, if you want to enter commands, start the server in the foreground.

Procedure

- Change to the directory where the server is installed. For example, change to the c:\program files\tivoli\tsm\server directory.
- 2. Enter the following command:

dsmserv -k instance_name

where *instance_name* specifies the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance.

Registering licenses

Immediately register any Tivoli Storage Manager licensed functions that you purchased so that you do not lose data after you begin to use the server.

Before you begin

Verify that the server instance directory of your installation does not include a NODELOCK file. The NODELOCK file contains the previous licensing information for your installation. This licensing information is replaced when the upgrade is complete. If the directory includes a NODELOCK file, move the file to another directory.

Procedure

1. AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Register the licenses for the Tivoli Storage Manager server components that are installed on your system by issuing the **REGISTER LICENSE** command:

register license file=installation_directory/server/bin/component_name.lic

where *installation_directory* specifies the directory in which you installed the component, and *component_name* specifies the abbreviation for the component.

For example, if you installed the server in the default directory, /opt/tivoli/tsm, register the license by issuing the following command: register license file=/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/tsmbasic.lic

For example, if you installed Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition in the /opt/tivoli/tsm directory, issue the following command: register license file=/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/tsmee.lic

For example, if you installed System Storage Archive Manager in the /opt/tivoli/tsm directory, issue the following command: register license file=/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dataret.lic

Restriction: You cannot register licenses for Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail, Tivoli Storage Manager for Databases, Tivoli Storage Manager for ERP, and Tivoli Storage Manager for Space Management.

2. Windows Register the licenses for the Tivoli Storage Manager server components that are installed on your system by issuing the **REGISTER LICENSE** command:

register license file=installation_directory\server\component_name.lic

where *installation_directory* specifies the directory in which you installed the component, and *component_name* specifies the abbreviation for the component.

For example, if you installed the server in the default directory, c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM, register the license by issuing the following command: register license file=c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\tsmbasic.lic

For example, if you installed Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition in the c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM directory, issue the following command: register license file=c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\tsmee.lic

For example, if you installed System Storage Archive Manager in the c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM directory, issue the following command: register license file=c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server\dataret.lic

Restriction: You cannot register licenses for Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail, Tivoli Storage Manager for Databases, Tivoli Storage Manager for ERP, and Tivoli Storage Manager for Space Management.

Backing up the database after upgrading the server

After you successfully upgrade the server, perform a full backup of its database as soon as possible.

Procedure

- 1. Complete the following steps:
 - a. If you did not use the upgrade wizard (dsmupgdx) to upgrade the server, ensure that you have completed the steps to manually configure the system for database backups.
 - b. If you used the media method for upgrade *and* used a tape device, remove or check out from the library the tape that was used to hold the extracted data. Prevent the tape from being reused until you are sure that the upgraded server is running properly and you do not need to repeat the database insertion step.
- 2. Select the device class to be used for automatic backups of the database. Issue the following command from a IBM Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command line.

set dbrecovery device_class_name

The device class that you specify is used by the database manager for all automatic database backups.

3. Back up the database.

backup db devclass=device class name type=full

The device class can be the same as or different from the device class that you specified with the **SET DBRECOVERY** command. If the device class is different, you receive a warning message, but the backup operation continues.

Related tasks:

"Configuring the system for database backup" on page 318

Verifying the upgraded server

Verify the operation of the server. If the server was installed on a new system as part of the upgrade, check and update connections to storage devices and other components.

Procedure

- 1. Monitor the messages that the server issues as it starts. Watch for error and warning messages.
- 2. If the server is running on a new system as a result of the upgrade, check the following items:
 - a. Ensure that all of the original server's storage devices are accessible to the upgraded server.
 - b. Compare the device names on the new system with the names for the devices on the original system. Update definitions for the devices on the server if needed. For example, update path definitions.
 - c. Update the network address that is used by backup-archive clients, storage agents, library client servers, and other servers for communicating with the upgraded server.

Optionally, instead of making these updates, consider whether you can use the network address of the original system as the address of the new system. You might also be able to update domain name service (DNS) to point to the new system instead of the original system. Consult your network administrator.

- **3**. Verify that you can connect to the server using an administrative client as you did for the earlier version of the server.
- 4. Run commands to get a summary of information in the database. Compare the summary with the results for the same commands before the upgrade.
- 5. Perform backups for typical client nodes and verify that the backups work as expected.
- 6. Verify that operations such as LAN-free data movement and library sharing work correctly.
- 7. After you are satisfied that the server is performing as expected and you will not need to revert to the previous version of the server, remember to return any settings that you changed to prepare for the upgrade back to the original values.

Related reference:

"Sample commands to run for validation of the database upgrade" on page 546

Changing the host name for the Tivoli Storage Manager server

If you must change the host name of the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server, ensure that you also update the database configuration. If you fail to update the database configuration, the Tivoli Storage Manager server might not start.

Changing the host name for a server running on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, or Solaris systems

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

To change the host name of a Tivoli Storage Manager server running on an AIX, HP-UX, Linux, or Solaris system, several steps are required.

Procedure

Change the host name by completing the following steps:

- 1. Stop any Tivoli Storage Manager servers that are running on the system.
- 2. Change the host name by using the procedures that are defined for your operating system.
- From the root user ID on the system, issue the following command: db2set -g DB2SYSTEM=newhostname where newhostname is the new host name for the server.

Tip: The db2set command is in the /opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/adm directory.

4. Verify that the DB2SYSTEM value was changed by issuing the following command:

```
db2set -all
```

This command shows all configuration settings that are used by the database.

- 5. In the *instance directory*/sqllib directory, locate the db2nodes.cfg file. The file contains an entry that shows the previous host name, for example:
 - 0 tsmmon TSMMON 0
 - a. Update the entry with the new host name. The entry is similar to the following entry:
 - 0 tsmnew newhostname 0
 - b. Save and close the changed file.

Changing the host name for a server running on Windows

Windows

To change the host name of a Tivoli Storage Manager server running on a Windows system, back up the database, stop the server, edit the DB2 configuration file, and restart the server.

Procedure

Use the following steps to change a host name when the Tivoli Storage Manager server is installed.

- 1. Back up the Tivoli Storage Manager database.
- 2. Stop the Tivoli Storage Manager server.
- **3.** Change the startup service of the Tivoli Storage Manager server to manual startup:
 - a. In the Windows Services Management Console, select TSM Server service.
 - b. Right-click the service and click Properties.
 - c. In the Startup Type field, select Manual.

4. Issue the following commands from the DB2 command prompt window to update the DB2SYSTEM registry variable, turn off extended security, and verify the settings:

```
db2set -g DB2SYSTEM=new_host_name
db2set -g DB2_EXTSECURITY=NO
db2set -all
```

Tip: The **DB2_EXTSECURITY** parameter is reset to YES when you restart the system.

- 5. Check for the presence of the db2nodes.cfg file. Depending on your version of Windows, the db2nodes.cfg file might be in one of the following directories:
 - Windows 2008 or later:

C:\ProgramData\IBM\DB2\DB2TSM1\<DB2 Instance name>

• Other versions of Windows:

C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\IBM\DB2\DB2TSM1\ <DB2 Instance name>

Tip: The db2nodes.cfg file is a hidden file. Ensure that you show all files by going to Windows Explorer and selecting **Tools** > **Folder Options** and specifying to view hidden files.

If the db2nodes.cfg file does not exist on your system, proceed to the next step. If the file does exist, issue the following command to update the host name:

db2nchg /n:0 /i:<instance> /h:<new host name>

- 6. Change the Windows host name, as described in the documentation for the Windows system that you are using.
- 7. Restart the server.
- Update the security settings by running the following command: db2extsec -a new_host_name\DB2ADMNS -u new_host_name\DB2USERS
- 9. Start the Tivoli Storage Manager server.
- 10. Reset the startup service for Tivoli Storage Manager server to be automatic:
 - a. In the Windows Services Management Console, select TSM Server service.
 - b. Right-click the service and click Properties.
 - c. In the Startup Type field, select Automatic.

Updating automation

After an upgrade, administrative schedules that were defined in V5 might not work without modification because of changes in command syntax. Implement and verify changes to any automation or scripts that were identified as needing modification in the planning process.

About this task

Important: Ensure that automation includes a backup of the database. Back up the database at least once per day.

Monitoring the upgraded server

When you start to use the upgraded server in production operation, monitor the space that is used by the server to ensure that the amount of space is adequate. Adjust the space if needed.

Procedure

To monitor the V7.1 server and make any required adjustments, complete the following steps:

1. Monitor the active log to ensure that the size is correct for the workload that is handled by the server instance.

When the server workload reaches its typical expected level, the space that is used by the active log is 80% - 90% of the space that is available to the active log directory. At that point, you might need to increase the amount of space. Whether you must increase the space depends on the types of transactions in the server workload. Transaction characteristics affect how the active log space is used.

The following transaction characteristics can affect the space usage in the active log:

- The number and size of files in backup operations
 - Clients such as file servers that back up large numbers of small files can cause large numbers of transactions that are completed quickly. The transactions might use a large amount of space in the active log, but for a short time.
 - Clients such as a mail server or a database server that back up large chunks of data in a few transactions can cause small numbers of transactions that take a long time. The transactions might use a small amount of space in the active log, but for a long time.
- Network connection types
 - Backup operations that occur over fast network connections cause transactions that are completed more quickly. The transactions use space in the active log for a shorter time.
 - Backup operations that occur over relatively slower connections cause transactions that take a longer time to be completed. The transactions use space in the active log for a longer time.

If the server is handling transactions with a wide variety of characteristics, the space that is used for the active log might increase and decrease significantly over time. For such a server, you might need to ensure that the active log typically has a smaller percentage of its space used. The extra space allows the active log to grow for transactions that take a long time.

2. Monitor the archive log to ensure that space is always available.

Remember: If the archive log becomes full, and the archive failover log becomes full, the active log can become full, and the server stops. The goal is to make enough space available to the archive log so that it never uses all available space.

You are likely to notice the following pattern:

- a. Initially, the archive log grows rapidly as typical client-backup operations occur.
- b. Database backups occur regularly, either as scheduled or done manually.

- **c.** After full database backups occur, log pruning occurs automatically. The space that is used by the archive log decreases when the pruning occurs.
- d. Normal client operations continue, and the archive log grows again.
- e. Database backups occur regularly, and log pruning occurs as often as full database backups occur.

With this pattern, the archive log grows initially, decreases, and then might grow again. Over time, as normal operations continue, the amount of space that is used by the archive log should reach a relatively constant level.

If the archive log continues to grow, consider taking one or both of these actions:

• Add space to the archive log. You might need to move the archive log to a different file system.

For information about moving the archive log, see the Administrator's Guide.

- Increase the frequency of full database backups so that log pruning occurs more frequently.
- 3. If you defined a directory for the archive failover log, determine whether any logs are stored in that directory during normal operations. If the failover log space is being used, consider increasing the size of the archive log. The goal is to use the archive failover log only under unusual conditions, not in normal operation.

Related concepts:

"Recovery log space requirements" on page 39 "Database operations" on page 4

Removing GSKit Version 7 after upgrading to Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1

Windows

The Tivoli Storage Manager installation wizard upgrades GSKit Version 8 and later. GSKit Version 7 is not removed or upgraded when you upgrade to Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1, even if it was installed with an earlier version of Tivoli Storage Manager.

About this task

If you no longer need GSKit Version 7 and want to free up space on your system, you can remove it after the upgrade to Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1.

Attention: Removing GSKit Version 7 might affect other programs on your system that rely on it.

Procedure

- 1. Back up your registry.
 - a. Click **Start**, and then click **Run**.
 - b. Type Regedit. Click OK.
 - c. To save a copy of your registry, select File > Export.
 - d. If you must later restore the registry, select **File** > **Import**.

For additional details, see your Windows documentation.

- 2. Locate the directory where the GSKit is installed. The default directory is C:\Program Files\IBM\gsk7\.
- **3**. Remove the GSKit installation directory, gsk7, and all subfiles and directories. Right-click the folder and click **Delete**.
- 4. Remove the GSKit Version 7 registry key and all subkeys and values.

Attention: Removing the wrong key can cause system problems such as not being able to restart the workstation.

- a. Click Start, and then click Run.
- b. Type **Regedit**. Click **OK**.
- c. The GSKit registry key is located in this directory: HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\ SOFTWARE\IBM. Right-click the registry key, HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\ IBM\GSK7, and click **Delete**.

Upgrading the server from V5 to V7.1
Chapter 11. Troubleshooting the database upgrade

Review this section for tips to troubleshoot common problems. A procedure that explains how to return to the previous version of the server is also included.

About this task

For the latest information about issues that might occur during an upgrade and how to resolve them, go to the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager support site: http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/Tivoli_Storage_Manager.

Server upgrade phase: warnings about unsupported server options

When running the upgrade wizard or one of the upgrade utilities, warning messages about server options that are not supported are issued.

Symptoms

Warning messages about the server options appear, but the process continues.

Causes

The server options file includes options that are not valid for a V5.5 server. For example, the options file might include some options that are valid only for a V5.4 or earlier server.

If you already updated the server options file to add options that are valid only for a V7.1 server, you might also see warning messages during upgrade processes.

Resolving the problem

You can ignore the warning messages until after the upgrade process is complete.

After the upgrade process is complete, and before starting the V7.1 server, edit the server options file and remove any options that are not valid for V7.1.

Database extraction phase: connection refusal message

When using the network method to move the V5 server database to the V7 server database, connection refusal messages are received when starting the extraction operation.

Symptoms

You might see the following messages: ANR8214E Session open with *host_address* failed due to connection refusal.

ANR0454E Session rejected by server *server_name*, reason: Communication Failure.

Causes

A connection refusal message usually means that the system is trying to connect to a host or port where no process is listening for a connection.

Resolving the problem

Before trying the extraction process again, check the following items:

- Ensure that the TCP/IP communication method is enabled for the target server. The communication method is set using the COMMMETHOD option in the server options file. TCP/IP is the default setting for the server communication method, but the server options file for the target server might have a different value. Check whether the server options file for the target server has COMMMETHOD NONE, or has only COMMMETHOD SHMEM specified. Remove COMMMETHOD NONE if it appears in the server options file. Add COMMMETHOD TCPIP if it is not in the server options file.
- Ensure that the values that you specified with the **HLADDRESS** and **LLADDRESS** parameters on the **DSMSERV EXTRACTDB** command are correct. The **LLADDRESS** parameter must match the value that is specified for the TCPPORT option in the server options file for the target server.
- Before issuing the **DSMSERV EXTRACTDB** command again, ensure that you wait for the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** process to issue the following message:

ANR1336I INSERTDB: Ready for connections from the source server

Database formatting phase: failure with rc=499

Windows

When the upgrade wizard is used to upgrade a Tivoli Storage Manager server on Windows from V5 to V7.1, the system fails to format the new database.

Symptoms

The database formatting operation fails with the return code rc=499.

Causes

This issue might be caused by a Sophos antivirus program. If a Sophos antivirus program is installed on the system that is being upgraded, the program might scan the Tivoli Storage Manager instance database during the upgrade. The scanning operation can affect the creation of database files.

Resolving the problem

To diagnose the problem, review the dsmupgdx.trc file in the c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM directory. If you see the rc=499 message, the database was not correctly formatted. The following example shows trace output with the rc=499 message:

timestamp com.tivoli.dsm.ServerConfig.ServerDB\$FormatThread.run(): Issuing cmd: "C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\Server\dsmserv" -k Server1 LOADFORMAT dbfile=\ "C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server1\dbfile.1\" activelogdir=\"D:\ActiveLog\" archlogdir=\"E:\ArchiveLog\" activelogsize=16384 >Format.Out 2>&1 on id tsminst1 timestamp com.tivoli.dsm.ServerConfig.ProcessMonitor.run(): enter, Monitoring file C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server1\Format.Out timestamp 2012 com.tivoli.dsm.ServerConfig.ProcessMonitor.read(): File C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server1\Format.Out not created yet. timestamp com.tivoli.dsm.ServerConfig.ProcessMonitor.read(): File C:\Program Files \Tivoli\TSM\server1\Format.Out now being read. ... timestamp com.tivoli.dsm.ServerConfig.ProcessMonitor.read(): File C:\Program Files \Tivoli\TSM\server1\Format.Out now being read. ... timestamp com.tivoli.dsm.ServerConfig.ProcessMonitor.read(): File C:\Program Files \Tivoli\TSM\server1\Format.Out now being read. timestamp com.tivoli.dsm.ServerConfig.ServerDB\$FormatThread.run(): Format rc: 9994 timestamp com.tivoli.dsm.ServerConfig.ServerDB\$FormatThread.run(): format stderr: timestamp com.tivoli.dsm.ServerConfig.ProcessMonitor.cancel(): enter timestamp com.tivoli.dsm.ServerConfig.ProcessMonitor.read(): File C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server1\Format.Out now being read. timestamp com.tivoli.dsm.ServerConfig.ProcessMonitor.run(): exit timestamp com.tivoli.dsm.ServerConfig.ProcessMonitor.cancel(): exit timestamp com.tivoli.dsm.ConfigWizard.DoFormatPanel.signalEvent(): enter, event=formatDone, rc=499

If the dsmupgdx.trc file is not available, review the db2diaglog file to see whether the following error is reported:

Invalid collation ID

The following sample db2diaglog file indicates a failure to format the database:

timestamp LEVEL: Severe PID : 2304 TID : 2008 PROC : db2syscs.exe INSTANCE: SERVER1 NODE : 000 DB : TSMDB1 APPHDL : 0-8 APPID: *LOCAL.SERVER1.121107195909 AUTHID : TSMINST1 EDUID : 2008 EDUNAME: db2agent (TSMDB1) 0 FUNCTION: DB2 UDB, relation data serv, sqlrr dump ffdc, probe:300 DATA #1 : SQLCA, PD DB2 TYPE SQLCA, 136 bytes sqlcaid : SQLCA sqlcabc: 136 sqlcode: -901 sqlerrml: 20 sqlerrmc: Invalid collation ID sqlerrp : SQLNQB6E sqlerrd : (1) 0x00000000 (2) 0x00000000 (3) 0x00000000 (4) 0x00000000 (5) 0xFFFFF9C (6) 0x0000000 sqlwarn : (1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9) (10) (11) sqlstate:

If you determine that the database was not correctly formatted, and if the Sophos antivirus program is installed, complete the following steps:

- 1. To ensure that the antivirus program does not affect the database formatting operation, complete one of the following steps:
 - Configure the antivirus program to ensure that it does not scan the Tivoli Storage Manager instance database or files.
 - Disable the antivirus program for a limited time so that it does not affect the database formatting process.

Remember: Before you reconfigure or disable the antivirus program, review the antivirus documentation so that you are aware of potential risks and how to mitigate them.

- 2. Run the upgrade wizard again.
- 3. If you disabled the antivirus program, reenable it.

Database insertion phase: ANR1338E messages from the upgrade utility

One or more ANR1338E messages about constraint violations or other data problems are issued during the database insertion phase, when running the upgrade wizard or the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** upgrade utility.

Symptoms

The messages about constraint violations appear, and processing continues. Data that has a problem is not inserted into the V7 database.

Causes

The insertion process encountered one or more problems with values from the V5 database that were being inserted into the V7 database. The values did not meet constraints for a data type or data format, or were not valid for some other reason.

Resolving the problem

Because some data was not inserted into the database, the database is in an inconsistent state.

Attention: Do not start the server until the data problems are investigated. Data damage might occur if you start the server. Contact IBM Support to get assistance in determining the extent of the problem, and what action to take next.

The IBM Support team will require you to provide the construction file, which contains details about the problems.

Database insertion phase: ANR1525I messages with no apparent progress

The **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility repeatedly issues status message ANR1525I with no sign that any progress is being made.

Symptoms

You might see messages such as the following set while the insertion process is running.

```
ANR1524I INSERTDB: Beginning database update phase.
ANR1525I INSERTDB: Updated 0 of 25,185,883 database entries in 0:23:10.
ANR1525I INSERTDB: Updated 0 of 25,185,883 database entries in 0:53:13.
ANR1525I INSERTDB: Updated 0 of 25,185,883 database entries in 1:23:16.
ANR1525I INSERTDB: Updated 0 of 25,185,883 database entries in 1:53:19.
ANR1525I INSERTDB: Updated 0 of 25,185,883 database entries in 1:53:19.
ANR1525I INSERTDB: Updated 0 of 25,185,883 database entries in 2:23:22.
```

The count of updated database entries might not increase for a long time.

Causes

In the database update phase of the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility, information from multiple sets of source tables are merged into a smaller number of target tables. Each operation that merges multiple source tables into one target table is a single, long-running DB2 **UPDATE** operation. An **UPDATE** operation does not provide status until it completes. Because the status is not updated until completion, the ANR1525I message repeatedly shows an unchanging value for the number of entries that have been updated.

After each set of tables is merged into one target table, the ANR1525I message changes to reflect the progress up to that point. However, the merge operation for each set of tables can take a considerable amount of time, during which the status remains the same. This lack of change in status is not the sign of a problem. The repeated issuance of the ANR1525I message is an indication that the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility is still running, even if the statistics that the messages report do not change.

Resolving the problem

After the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility enters the database update phase, most of the remaining work is done by DB2. You can use only indirect methods to determine if the operation is progressing. One such method is to use a system monitor, such as **topas** on AIX, to confirm that the DB2 db2sysc process is operating. The use of processor resource and I/O to the database directories by the db2sysc process are good indications that the update phase is progressing.

Database insertion phase: problems with restarting the upgrade process

After the upgrade process fails at the database insertion step, restarting the process results in errors.

Symptoms

When you try to restart the process, by using either the upgrade wizard (dsmupgdx) or commands, you receive messages that the database already exists, or that directories are not empty.

Causes

The problem occurs because a database instance was already created, despite the failure. Directories that you specified in the wizard or with the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** command might no longer be empty because the failed process started to write information in these directories. To do the formatting operation again, the directories must be empty.

Resolving the problem

Try the following actions to resolve the problem.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris

1. Ensure that you are logged in with the same user ID that you were using when the insertion operation failed. This should be the user ID that you created specifically for the server instance that you were upgrading when the failure occurred.

Attention: Ensure that you are using the correct user ID. The database that is owned by the user ID that you log in with now is the database that will be destroyed in the following step. Do not take the following steps when you are logged in with a user ID that owns a valid, working V7 server instance.

2. Remove the database instance that was created. dsmserv removedb TSMDB1

Alternate method: If the DSMSERV REMOVEDB command fails for some reason, use the DB2 command to drop the database. Issue the following commands:

db2start

- db2 drop db tsmdb1
- **3**. To reuse the database and log directories that you specified in the failed attempt to create the server instance, verify that each directory is now empty.

4. Restart the upgrade wizard for the server instance that you are upgrading.

If you are using commands, restart at the step in which you issue the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** command.

Windows

 Remove the database instance that was created. Issue the command: dsmserv removedb -k server_instance_name TSMDB1

The *server_instance_name* is the name of the registry key for the server instance that you were upgrading when the failure occurred. For example, if you were upgrading Server2, issue the command: dsmserv removedb -k server2 TSMDB1

Attention: Ensure that you specify the name of the server instance for which the process failed. The database for the specified server instance is destroyed by issuing this command.

Alternate method: If the DSMSERV REMOVEDB command fails for some reason, use the DB2 command to drop the database:

- a. Click Start > Programs > IBM DB2 > DB2TSM1 > Command Line Tools > Command Line Processor.
- b. Enter quit to exit the command-line processor.

A window with a command prompt opens, with the environment properly set up to successfully issue the commands in the next steps.

c. From the command prompt in that window, issue the following command to set the environment variable for the server instance that you are working with:

set db2instance=server_instance_name

For example, to set the environment variable for the Server1 server instance, issue the following command:

set db2instance=server1

d. Issue the command to drop the database:

db2 drop db tsmdb1

- **2.** To reuse the database and log directories that you specified in the failed attempt to create the server instance, verify that each directory is now empty.
- **3**. Restart the upgrade wizard for the server instance that you are upgrading.

If you are using commands, restart at the step in which you issue the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** command.

Server startup phase: error ANR0162W

Windows

After the Tivoli Storage Manager server is upgraded from V5 to V7.1 on Windows, the server instance fails to start.

Symptoms

The server startup fails with error message ANR0162W.

Causes

This issue might be caused by a Sophos antivirus program. If a Sophos antivirus program is installed on the system that is being upgraded, the antivirus program might scan the Tivoli Storage Manager instance database during the upgrade. The scanning operation can affect the startup of the server instance.

Resolving the problem

To diagnose the problem, attempt to start the server. To start the server from the default directory, C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server, issue the following command:

```
dsmserv -k server_instance
```

where *server_instance* is the name of the server instance. Server1 is the default for the first instance of the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

If the server fails to start, the output includes message ANR0162W, as in the following example:

C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server>dsmserv -k server1 ANR7800I DSMSERV generated at 02:08:06 on Jul 26 2012. Tivoli Storage Manager for Windows Version 7, Release 3, Level 2.000 Licensed Materials - Property of IBM (C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1990, 2011. All rights reserved. U.S. Government Users Restricted Rights - Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corporation. ANR0900I Processing options file c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\server1\dsmserv.opt. ANR4726I The ICC support module has been loaded. ANR0990I Server restart-recovery in progress. ANR0984I Process 1 for AUDIT LICENSE started in the BACKGROUND at 13:14:09. ANR2820I Automatic license audit started as process 1. ANR2560I Schedule manager started. ANR0162W Supplemental database diagnostic information: -1:42884:-440 ([IBM][CLI Driver][DB2/NT64] SQL0440N No authorized routine named "COLLATIONNAME" of type "FUNCTION" having compatible arguments was found. SQLSTATE=42884). ANR0162W Supplemental database diagnostic information: -1:42884:-440 ([IBM][CLI Driver][DB2/NT64] ANR0171I tbtbl.c(14146): Error detected on x:y, database in evaluation mode. ANR9999D 3937368011 LmLcAuditThread(lmlcaud.c:864) Thread<31>: Error in committing audit license transaction. ANR9999D Thread<31> issued message 9999 from: ANR9999D Thread<31> 000007FEE95CE599 OutDiagToCons()+159 ANR9999D Thread<31> 000007FEE95C7FFC outDiagfExt()+fc ANR9999D Thread<31> 000007FEE91EC95B LmLcAuditThread()+13fb

Troubleshooting the database upgrade

ANR9999D Thread<31> 000007FEE8DE6384 startThread()+124 ANR9999D Thread<31> 0000000071F41D9F endthreadex()+43 ANR9999D Thread<31> 0000000071F41E3B endthreadex()+df ANR9999D Thread<31> 0000000076C2BE3D BaseThreadInitThunk()+d ANR9999D Thread<31> 0000000076E36A51 RtlUserThreadStart()+21 ... ANR0369I Stopping the database manager because of a server shutdown. ANR0991I Server shutdown complete.

If you determine that the server instance failed to start, and the Sophos antivirus program is installed, complete the following steps:

- 1. To ensure that the antivirus program does not affect the startup of the server instance, complete one of the following steps:
 - Configure the antivirus program to ensure that it does not scan the Tivoli Storage Manager instance database or files.
 - Disable the antivirus program for a limited time so that the server instance can be started.

Remember: Before you reconfigure or disable the antivirus program, review the antivirus program documentation so that you are aware of potential risks and how to mitigate them.

- 2. Start the server instance again.
- 3. If you disabled the antivirus program, reenable it.

Server startup phase: warnings about unsupported server options

When you start the V7.1 server, you receive warning messages about server options that are not supported. However, the options do not appear in the list of server options that were deleted for V7.1.

Symptoms

ANR0902W messages about the server options appear, but the server starts.

Causes

V5 releases tolerated the presence of some server options that were not supported by the server. The V7.1 server flags such options by issuing warning messages.

The list of server options that were deleted for V7.1 contains options that were deleted since V5.5 was released. If the server option that causes a warning on your system is not in the list of deleted server options, the option was likely deleted in some earlier release, for example, V5.4.

Resolving the problem

You can ignore the error, or update the server options file and restart the server. **Related reference**:

"Deleted server commands, utilities, and options" on page 65

Postupgrade phase: dsmserv.dsk file no longer available

After running the upgrade wizard or one of the upgrade utilities, you cannot locate the dsmserv.dsk file.

Symptoms

The dsmserv.dsk file is no longer in the default directory for the server.

Causes

The dsmserv.dsk file is not used in Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1.

Resolving the problem

No action is required. However, if you are planning to upgrade the server from V5 to V7.1, you might want to save the dsmserv.dsk file in case you need to revert to Tivoli Storage Manager V5.

Postupgrade phase: VARY command fails

After completing an upgrade of Tivoli Storage Manager server, the **VARY** command fails.

Symptoms

You are unable to use this command to bring a random access storage pool online for the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

Causes

This issue can have various causes. One possible cause is that the user ID that is running the server does not have write access to the server disks.

Resolving the problem

Ensure that the user ID that will be used to run the server has write access to the server disks. Then, run the **VARY** command again.

Reverting from V7.1 to the previous V5 server version

If you must revert the Tivoli Storage Manager server to the previous version after an upgrade, you must have a full database backup and the server installation media from your original version, and key configuration files. By carefully following the preparation steps before you upgrade the server, it might be possible to revert to the previous version of the server with minimal loss of data.

Before you begin

You must have the following items from the earlier version of the server:

- Server database backup
- Volume history file
- Device configuration file
- Server options file

• The dsmserv.dsk file

About this task

Attention: Specify the **REUSEDELAY** parameter to help prevent backup-archive client data loss when you revert the server to a previous version.

Steps for reverting to the previous server version Procedure

On the system where the V7.1 server is installed, complete the following steps:

- 1. Back up the V7.1 database and save the contents of the instance directory, including the volume history file, the device configuration file, and server options file. Keep these files in case you must return to the V7.1 server.
- 2. Remove the database from the database manager, then delete the database and recovery log directories.
 - a. Manually remove the database. Issue the command:
 - dsmserv removedb tsmdb1

You can also use the following command to remove the database: db2 drop db tsmdb1 $% \left(\frac{1}{2}\right) =0$

- b. If you must reuse the space that is occupied by the database and recovery log directories, you can now delete these directories.
- **3**. Use the installation program to uninstall the V7.1 server. Uninstallation removes the server and the database manager software with their directories. For instructions about uninstalling the server, see the *Installation Guide*.
- 4. Reinstall the version of the server program that you were using before the upgrade to V7.1. This version must match the version that your server was running when you created the database backup that you will restore in a later step.

For example, if the server was at version 5.4.4.0 before the upgrade, and you intend to use the database backup that was in use on this server, you must install the V5.4.0.0 server program. After that, you must install the V5.4.4.0 fix pack to be able to restore the database backup.

- a. Reinstall the base version of the server that was in use before the upgrade to V7.1.
- b. Reinstall any fix packs that were installed on the base server version before the upgrade to V7.1.
- 5. Copy the following files to the directory for server information:
 - Device configuration file
 - Volume history file
 - The dsmserv.dsk file
 - The server options file (typically, dsmserv.opt)
- 6. Format the database by using the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility. For details, see the information for the version of the server that you are reinstalling. Information for V5.5 is available at this information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v1r1

Information for V5.4 and V5.3 is available in the same information center. In the navigation pane, scroll down and expand **Previous versions**.

7. Restore the database by using the backup that was created in the preparation steps before the upgrade.

- 8. If you enabled data deduplication for any FILE-type storage pools that existed before the upgrade, or if you moved data that existed before the upgrade into new storage pools while using the V7.1 server, you must complete additional recovery steps. See "Additional recovery steps if you created new storage pools or enabled data deduplication."
- 9. If the **REUSEDELAY** setting on storage pools is less than the age of the database that you restored, restore volumes on any sequential-access storage pools that were reclaimed after that database backup. Use the **RESTORE VOLUME** command. If you do not have a backup of a storage pool, audit the reclaimed volumes by using the **AUDIT VOLUME** command, and specifying the FIX=YES parameter

to resolve inconsistencies. Use the command:

audit volume volume_name fix=yes

- **10.** If client backup or archive operations were performed by using the V7.1 server, you might need to audit the storage pool volumes on which the data was stored.
- **11**. If you were using active-data pools before upgrading to V7.1, recreate them. The amount of time required to recreate the active-data pools might be significant, depending on the number and size of the active-data pools to be recreated.

Additional recovery steps if you created new storage pools or enabled data deduplication

If you created new storage pools, enabled data deduplication for any FILE-type storage pools, or did both while your server was running as a V7.1 server, you must complete additional steps to return the server to the previous version.

About this task

Use this information if you did either or both of the following actions while your server was running as a V7.1 server:

- You enabled the data deduplication function for any storage pools that existed before the upgrade to V7.1. Data deduplication applies only to storage pools that use a FILE device type.
- You created primary storage pools after the upgrade, *and* moved data that was stored in other storage pools into the new storage pools.

Perform these steps after the server is restored to V5.

Procedure

- For each storage pool for which you enabled the data deduplication function, restore the entire storage pool by using the **RESTORE STGPOOL** command. To complete this task, you must have a complete backup of the storage pool, which must have been created before the upgrade to V7.1.
- For storage pools that you created after the upgrade, review the following information to determine what action to take.

Data that was moved from existing V5 storage pools into the new storage pools might be lost because the new storage pools no longer exist in your restored V5 server. Possible recovery depends on the type of storage pool:

If data was moved from V5 DISK-type storage pools into a new storage pool, space that was occupied by the data that was moved was probably reused. Therefore, you must restore the original V5 storage pools by using the storage pool backups that were created before the upgrade to V7.1.

If *no* data was moved from V5 DISK-type storage pools into a new storage pool, audit the storage pool volumes in these DISK-type storage pools.

- If data was moved from V5 sequential-access storage pools into a new storage pool, that data might exist and be usable in storage pool volumes on the restored V5 server. The data might be usable if the **REUSEDELAY** parameter for the storage pool was set to a value that prevented reclamation while the server was running as a V7.1 server. If any volumes were reclaimed while the server was running as a V7.1 server, restore those volumes from storage pool backups that were created before the upgrade to V7.1.

Part 2. Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux

An IBM Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server that runs on an AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris operating system can be migrated to V7.1 on a Linux x86_64 operating system.

About this task

Depending on your hardware and software environment, this migration procedure might be useful for achieving server consolidation, load balancing, or standardization on the Linux operating system.

Chapter 12. Migration overview

Before you migrate the server, review the migration options, migration roadmap, the scenarios for migration, and related information.

You can use one of the following migration options:

- Follow the cross-platform migration procedure, starting with the "Migration roadmap."
- Follow the cross-platform migration procedure, starting with the "Migration roadmap," and facilitate the process by using Migration Engine from Butterfly Software.

Migration Engine from Butterfly Software automates the process of migrating backup data from one or more Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers to a Tivoli Storage Manager V6 server. Migration Engine from Butterfly Software also provides planning options for migration and real-time reports about migration progress. Only IBM Software Services and IBM Business Partners are authorized to use Migration Engine from Butterfly Software. For more information, contact IBM Software Services or your IBM Business Partner.

Migration roadmap

The migration roadmap provides links to information to help you plan, prepare, and complete the migration process.

To plan the migration, complete the following steps:

- 1. Review the migration scenarios. See "Scenarios for migrating a server from an AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris system to V7.1 on Linux" on page 358.
- 2. Become familiar with the commands and utilities that you can use during the migration process. See "Utilities and commands for data migration" on page 363.
- **3**. Review the guidelines for moving data that cannot be accessed or is not readable by the target system. See "Data movement" on page 363.
- 4. Review the information about migrating devices. See "Device availability" on page 364.
- 5. Review the guidelines about protecting client data and the server during the migration process. See "Protection for client data and the server during the process" on page 364.
- 6. Select the migration method to use, and plan for the hardware, software, and storage space requirements for your server and environment. See Chapter 13, "Planning the migration," on page 365.

To prepare for the migration, see Chapter 14, "Preparing for the migration," on page 373.

To migrate the system, see Chapter 15, "Migrating the server database to the V7.1 server," on page 385.

To prepare the system for operation, see Chapter 16, "Taking the first steps after migration," on page 425.

Scenarios for migrating a server from an AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris system to V7.1 on Linux

Several scenarios are available for migrating a Tivoli Storage Manager server from V5 on an AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris operating system to V7.1 on a Linux x86_64 operating system. In addition to migrating the server, you must migrate data from the V5 database to the V7.1 database.

Review the scenarios so that you can select the one that works best in your hardware and software environment.

The following scenarios are available:

- Migration scenario 1: Media method, upgrade wizard
- Migration scenario 2: Media method, command line
- Migration scenario 3: Network method, upgrade wizard
- Migration scenario 4: Network method, command line

To migrate the server database, you can use one of the following methods:

Media method

You extract data from the original database to media, and then load the data into the new database.

Network method

You simultaneously extract data from the original database and load the data into the new database over a network connection.

For information about when to use the media method and when to use the network method, see "Comparison of methods for moving data to the V7.1 database" on page 15.

To migrate the server, you can use the upgrade wizard or the command line:

Upgrade wizard

The wizard guides you through the process. You can avoid some steps that are complex when done manually.

Command line

You issue administrative commands to upgrade the system manually.

Migration scenario 1: Media method, upgrade wizard

The following figure illustrates how to migrate a server by using the media method and the upgrade wizard.

Migrate to V7 by using the media method

Migrate by using the upgrade wizard





For information about selecting an appropriate level for a V5 server before a migration, see "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36.

Migration scenario 2: Media method, command line

The following figure illustrates how to migrate a server by using the media method and the command line.

Migrate to V7 by using the media method

Migrate by using the command line



For information about selecting an appropriate level for a V5 server before a migration, see "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36.

Migration scenario 3: Network method, upgrade wizard

The following figure illustrates how to migrate a server by using the network method and the upgrade wizard.

Migrate to V7 by using the network method

Migrate by using the upgrade wizard





For information about selecting an appropriate level for a V5 server before a migration, see "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36.

Migration scenario 4: Network method, command line

The following figure illustrates how to migrate a server by using the network method and the command line.

Migrate to V7 by using the network method

Migrate by using the command line





For information about selecting an appropriate level for a V5 server before a migration, see "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36.

The migration process

You can use utilities and commands to facilitate the migration process. Restrictions apply to the movement of data during the migration process and to device availability afterward. During the migration process, you must protect client data and the server.

Utilities and commands for data migration

Tivoli Storage Manager provides utilities and commands to help you move data from a V5 system that is running on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris to V7.1 on Linux x86_64.

You can use the following utilities for data migration:

DSMUPGRD QUERYDB

The **DSMUPGRD QUERYDB** utility displays information about the database and recovery log for a V5 server.

DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB

The **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility prepares the database for migration by verifying that all premigration tasks are completed.

DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB

The **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB** utility extracts data from the server database.

DSMSERV LOADFORMAT

The **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** utility formats an empty database in preparation for inserting extracted data into the empty database.

DSMSERV INSERTDB

The **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility moves extracted data into a new database.

Many of the utilities and commands that are used for server upgrade are also used for server migration. For more information, see Appendix B, "Utilities, scripts, and commands for server upgrade and migration," on page 521.

You can run commands to validate the database upgrade. For more information, see "Sample commands to run for validation of the database upgrade" on page 546.

Data movement

As part of the migration process, you must move data from the source system to the target system. As you plan the data movement, be aware of the preferred method for migrating data and the restrictions that apply.

The most reliable way to move data to the new system is to migrate the data to a non-GENERICTAPE tape device. The tape device must be accessible to both V5 and V7.1 systems.

The following restrictions apply to data movement:

- Raw logical volumes that are used on a V5 system will not be available on a V7.1 system. Raw logical volumes cannot be used on Linux systems.
- Data that is stored on GENERICTAPE devices will not be available on a V7.1 system. GENERICTAPE devices cannot be used on Linux systems.
- Volumes that are stored on DISK and FILE devices might not be available on a V7.1 system, depending on target system restrictions.

- A device driver that is required to access a specific type of storage hardware might not be compatible with a V7.1 system.
- Storage hardware that is attached to a V5 system might not be compatible with a V7.1 system.

After the server migration, you are not required to maintain the data on tape devices. You can move the data from tape devices to any DISK or FILE devices that are compatible with the V7.1 system.

Device availability

Devices that are used on a V5 system might not be accessible to a V7.1 server database.

If a device cannot be accessed, you must plan to migrate the data from the V5 device to a device that is accessible to a V7.1 server database.

For a list of devices and operating systems that you can use, see the following websites:

AIX HP-UX Solaris IBM Tivoli Storage Manager Supported Devices website for AIX, HP-UX, Solaris, and Windows systems (http://www.ibm.com/ software/sysmgmt/products/support/ IBM_TSM_Supported_Devices_for_AIXHPSUNWIN.html)

Linux IBM Tivoli Storage Manager Supported Devices website for Linux systems (http://www.ibm.com/software/sysmgmt/products/support/ IBM_TSM_Supported_Devices_for_Linux.html)

Protection for client data and the server during the process

To protect client data and the server, you must complete several tasks during the preparation phase. Plan to back up or migrate some types of data to non-GENERICTAPE tape devices and back up the server database.

Backing up data is required to ensure that you can revert to the previous Tivoli Storage Manager version if necessary.

For information about backup tasks, see the following topics:

- "Backing up or migrating data stored on DISK and FILE devices" on page 375
- "Migrating data that is stored on GENERICTAPE devices" on page 376
- "Moving backup sets that are stored on FILE devices" on page 376
- "Backing up the server database" on page 377
- "Creating a summary of database contents" on page 377

Tip: When you back up the database, make two copies to protect the backup from media failures. Ensure that at least one full database backup is available onsite. If you must restore the database, you can save time by having a backup that is immediately available.

Do not uninstall the V5 server until you verify that the migration to V7.1 was successful.

For more information about protecting the database, see "Database protection and recovery" on page 5.

Chapter 13. Planning the migration

Plan the migration carefully to minimize the time during which the Tivoli Storage Manager system will be unavailable. During the migration, you must install the new software and move the contents of the V5 server database into the new V7.1 database.

About this task

Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers can be upgraded directly to V7.1. However, Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 servers cannot be used with V5 clients or with other servers in the system that are at V5. Unless all V5 clients and V5 servers can be upgraded at the same time, consider upgrading the server to a level that can be used with V5 clients and V5 servers. Then, upgrade all servers and clients to V7.1 when possible. For information about the levels of the Tivoli Storage Manager server that can be used with V5 clients and V5 servers, see the following technotes:

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager Server-Client Compatibility and Upgrade Considerations

(http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21053218)

Storage-agent and library-client compatibility with the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager server

(http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21302789)

When you move data from a V5 server database to a V7.1 database, a large amount of system processing capacity is used. The move also requires a large amount of I/O activity.

In your planning, consider testing the migration process on nonproduction systems. Testing provides information about how long the migration of the server database will take, which helps you plan for the time that the server will be unavailable. Some databases might take much longer than others to migrate.

Testing also gives you more information about the size of the new database compared to the original, giving you more precise information about database storage needs.

If you have multiple servers, consider migrating one server first to determine how the migration process will work for your data. Use the results of the first migration process to plan for migrating the remaining servers.

Procedure

To plan the migration, complete the following steps:

- 1. Select a migration scenario. For more information, see "Scenarios for migrating a server from an AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris system to V7.1 on Linux" on page 358.
- **2**. Review the hardware and software requirements. For more information, see "Hardware and software requirements for the V5 and V7.1 servers" on page 366.
- 3. Complete the following tasks:
 - a. "Estimating database and recovery log requirements" on page 366
 - b. "Estimating the time required for migration" on page 367

Migrating V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux

- c. "Planning data movement" on page 368
- d. "Planning for upgrading multiple servers and components" on page 368
- e. "Preparing for operational changes" on page 368
- f. "Estimating storage and device requirements" on page 369
- 4. To help you plan the migration, review the following information:
 - "Performance tips for the V5 database extraction process" on page 369
 - "Performance tips for inserting data into the V7.1 database" on page 370
 - "Reference information for planning the migration" on page 371
- 5. Optional: Test the migration process in a limited or nonproduction environment.

Hardware and software requirements for the V5 and V7.1 servers

Review the hardware and software requirements for the V5 and V7.1 servers.

During the migration process, you must upgrade the V5 server to V5.5.6 or later. To optimize the migration process and avert potential issues, consider upgrading the V5 server to the latest available level and installing the latest interim fix for that level. Follow the guidelines in "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36. For information about the V5.5 server, see the Tivoli Storage Manager V5.5 Information Center at http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v1r1.

For information about hardware and software requirements for a V7.1 server on Linux x86_64, see "Server requirements for Linux on x86_64 systems" on page 26. For the latest information about hardware and software requirements, see the Tivoli Storage Manager Supported Operating Systems technote (http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21243309).

A manual tape drive or a tape library with at least one tape drive must be installed. The tape device must be supported on both the source and target operating systems.

Estimating database and recovery log requirements

Estimate the space requirements for the migration process, and the space requirements for the server databases and recovery log for the V7.1 server. The space requirements for a cross-platform migration from V5 to V7.1 are similar to the space requirements for an upgrade from V5 to V7.1 on the same operating system.

Procedure

- 1. Estimate the space requirements for the V5 server system. For details, see "Space requirements for the V5 server system" on page 37.
- 2. Estimate the space requirements for the V7.1 server system. For details, see "Space requirements for the V7 server system" on page 38.
- **3**. Estimate the total space for the migration process and the V7.1 server. For details, see "Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39.
- 4. Optional: Use a worksheet to plan the amount and location of space for the V7.1 server. For details, see "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

Estimating the time required for migration

The V5 server is not available for use during migration operations. To help plan for the amount of time that the server will be unavailable, estimate the migration time. The time that is required to complete the migration of a V5 server depends on several factors.

About this task

The following factors can affect the migration time:

- The size of the database that is being migrated.
- The number and speed of system processors.
- The configuration of storage devices. If new hardware is being introduced, time is required to define the new devices to the server, test the configuration, and adjust storage pools.
- The method for moving the data from the V5 database to the V7 database: media or network. The network method for data movement overlaps the extraction time with the insertion time. Using the network method might help reduce the total time that is required for the migration because of the overlap.
- The type of workload that the server has handled. A workload that consists of large numbers of small files, or files with long file names, can cause a relatively longer migration time.

Procedure

When you estimate the time it might take to migrate the system, consider the data that is available for upgrade operations from Tivoli Storage Manager V5 to V6 on the same operating system. This information might help you estimate the time that is required for a cross-platform migration.

For example, in benchmark environments in IBM labs, upgrade operations achieved 5 - 10 GB per hour by using the network method. This rate is based on the amount of space that is used by the V5 database, not the allocated space for the database. Your environment might produce different results. Results are dependent on system configuration. If you use the media method, the rate is decreased.

Estimate the time that is required to migrate your system based on the amount of data in the server database.

Results

Your estimate might be higher than the actual time that is required. Because of the way that databases are structured, the amount of data that the extraction utility extracts might be much less than the total amount of space that is used by the database.

What to do next

Test migration operations for Tivoli Storage Manager servers that are used by essential systems.

Planning data movement

Any data that is stored on DISK or FILE devices must be migrated or backed up to non-GENERICTAPE tape devices before the migration begins. Data that is stored on GENERICTAPE devices must be migrated to non-GENERICTAPE tape devices.

About this task

As you plan the data movement, ensure that you have tape volumes available for backing up and storing data:

- At a minimum, tape volumes must be available to back up the primary storage pool.
- The tape devices must be accessible to both the V5 and the V7 system.
- The tape devices must be usable on both the V5 and the V7 system. For information about the devices that can be used, see the website for your operating system:
 - AIX HP-UX Solaris Supported Devices for AIX, HP-UX, Solaris, and Windows systems (http://www.ibm.com/software/sysmgmt/products/ support/IBM_TSM_Supported_Devices_for_AIXHPSUNWIN.html)
 - Linux Supported Devices for Linux systems (http://www.ibm.com/ software/sysmgmt/products/support/ IBM_TSM_Supported_Devices_for_Linux.html)
- To optimize the process, tape volumes should be available to create a second, onsite backup of the primary storage pool. By creating one backup storage pool offsite and another onsite, you fulfill disaster recovery requirements for offsite storage. At the same time, volumes from the second pool are available onsite to restore data immediately after migration.

Planning for upgrading multiple servers and components

If your environment includes multiple servers and storage agents, evaluate the compatibility of the current versions with an upgraded V7.1 server. Plan to upgrade one server first in a test environment. Then, stage the upgrade of more servers and storage agents.

Before you begin

For information about storage-agent and library client compatibility with Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 servers, see Technote 1302789 (http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21302789).

Preparing for operational changes

As you migrate your system from V5 to V7.1, the method for backing up and monitoring the server database changes.

Procedure

Verify the operating procedures, scripts, and administrative schedules that you use for server operations:

• Plan to back up the server database regularly by using administrative schedules, a maintenance script, or your own scripts. Back up the server database at least once per day. For best results, consider scheduling more frequent backups for

Migrating V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux

the V7.1 database than you did for the V5 database. To ensure that archive log space is pruned, consider scheduling more full database backups and fewer incremental backups.

For more information about scheduling database backups, see the section about backing up the database in the *Administrator's Guide*.

- Understand how database and recovery log space is used, and how monitoring will change.
- Verify scripts and administrative schedules. Starting with the Tivoli Storage Manager V7 server, new commands were added, some commands were changed, and some commands that were no longer needed were deleted. These changes will affect your automated operations. For information about new and changed commands, see "Command and option changes" on page 51.
- Verify the SELECT commands that you use regularly. Some parameters and syntax that were previously allowed are not accepted by the database manager program. For information about SELECT command updates, see "Changes to the SELECT command" on page 68. To resolve problems that are related to SELECT commands, see Technote 1380830 (http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg21380830).
- If you use products from independent software vendors to interface with the server, ensure that the products are compatible with the V7.1 server.

What to do next

To use the new functions that are available in Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1, install the latest version of the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager Operations Center.

Estimating storage and device requirements

Estimate the amount of space that will be required for data storage on the new Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 system. Plan the devices to be used for storage.

Procedure

To plan for storage and devices, complete the following steps:

- 1. Estimate the storage requirements for the new Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 system. For details, see the section that describes estimating space needs for sequential-access storage pools in the *Administrator's Guide*.
- 2. Plan the device requirements for the new Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 system. For instructions, see the section about configuring and managing storage devices in the *Administrator's Guide*.

Performance tips for the V5 database extraction process

Review the performance tips for the V5 database extraction process so that you can minimize the time that is required for the migration. In this way, you can reduce the time that the Tivoli Storage Manager server is unavailable.

The speed of the extraction process is typically limited by the speed of I/O to the destination for the extracted data. The length of time that the process runs also depends on the size of the database. The time is approximately as long as the time required for a full backup of the database.

Do not reorganize the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 database before the migration. The extraction process achieves faster throughput when the source database does

Migrating V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux

not contain long sequences of pages that are allocated to a single database table. Follow this guideline for both the media method and the network method.

The following performance tips depend on the method that you choose for moving the data from the V5 database:

Media method

If you are using the media method, and are extracting the data to tape, use a high-speed tape device. For example, select a device with a transfer rate of at least 1000 MB per second.

Network method

If you are using the network method, use a high-speed link. If you are migrating a database that is larger than 2 - 3 GB, use at least a 1-gigabit (Gb) Ethernet network.

Performance tips for inserting data into the V7.1 database

The process for inserting the V5 extracted data into the V7.1 database is the longest-running part of a migration process, and is the most sensitive to the configuration of the system.

On a system that meets only the minimum requirements, the insertion process runs, but performance might be slow. For better performance, set up the system as described in the following tips:

Processors

The insertion process is designed to use multiple processors or cores. The insertion process typically performs better on a system with a relatively small number of fast processors. If the system has many slow processors, you might experience reduced performance levels.

Disk storage

The insertion process is designed to use high-bandwidth disk storage subsystems. The speed of the process is dependent on the disk storage that is used.

For best performance, use multiple LUNs that map to multiple independent disks, or that map to redundant arrays of independent disks (RAIDs) with a large stripe size (for example, 128 KB). Use a different file system on each LUN.

The following table shows an example of good usage of LUNs.

Table 61. Example of LUN usage

LUN	Usage
1	Active log
2	Archive log
3, 4, 5	Database directories
6	Extracted V5 database, which is required only if the media method is used to extract the V5 database to a sequential device class

If the disk storage is supplied by a virtualization device (high-end storage controller, or a SAN virtualization device), ensure that none of the virtual LUNs are on the same physical disk drive. Ensure that the directories are on different physical disk drives within the virtualization device.

Reference information for planning the migration

Information about new, changed, and deleted administrative commands, server options, and server messages can help you plan the migration.

For more information, see "Reference information for planning" on page 51.

Chapter 14. Preparing for the migration

To prepare a system for a server migration from V5 to V7.1, you must complete several steps. Ensure that you verify the prerequisites for the migration and upgrade the V5 server to V5.5.6 or later. Then, prepare data that is stored on DISK, FILE, and GENERICTAPE devices for migration and back up the server database.

Preparing space for the migration process

Verify that you have sufficient space on the V7.1 system for the migration process.

Procedure

- 1. Verify that the system has the amount of space that was estimated in the planning step. If you used a worksheet to plan the space requirements, refer to the worksheet. For more information, see "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.
- 2. If you plan to extract the original server database to media for later insertion into the new database, ensure that you have enough storage space. Storage space is required for the database and the manifest file that the extraction process creates. Complete the following steps:
 - a. Identify the device class to which you will extract the original database. The definition must exist in the server database, not only in the device configuration file.

The device class must be sequential, and the device class type must be tape. The tape device must be compatible with the V5 and the V7.1 system. Define a new device class if necessary.

b. Ensure that space or volumes are available in the selected device class. The amount of space that you need is about the same as the current size of the original database.

Ensure that the instance user ID that you create for the upgraded server has access permission to the location of the extracted data.

c. Verify that the access permissions are correct for the location that you plan to specify for the manifest file.

When the data is later inserted into the V7.1 database, the instance user ID that you use for the upgraded server must have access permission for the manifest file.

The manifest file might be less than 1 KB. However, for a complex configuration, it might exceed 1 KB.

Upgrading the V5 server to V5.5.6 or later

Upgrade the V5 server to V5.5.6 or later so that you can use the utilities that help to prepare the system for the migration.

Before you begin

The Tivoli Storage Manager server must not be running during installation of the V5.5.6 or later fix pack.

Migrating V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux

To install a fix pack to the server, you must have the Tivoli Storage Manager license package installed. The license package is provided when you purchase a base release.

Ensure that you retain the installation media from the base release of the installed server. If you installed Tivoli Storage Manager from a DVD, ensure that the DVD is available. If you installed Tivoli Storage Manager from a downloaded package, ensure that the downloaded files are available. If the upgrade fails, and the server license module is uninstalled, the installation media from the server base release are required to reinstall the license.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the package file for the V5.5.6 or later fix pack from the Tivoli Storage Manager FTP downloads site at ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/maintenance/server/v5r5/MVS/LATEST.
- For installation information, review the README.txt file, which is available in the package file.
- 3. Install the fix pack.

What to do next

For more information about the Tivoli Storage Manager server V5.5 release, see the Tivoli Storage Manager V5.5 information center at http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/ infocenter/tivihelp/v1r1/index.jsp.

Disabling sessions

In preparation for the migration, prevent activity on the server by disabling new sessions. Cancel any existing sessions.

About this task

The commands in the following procedure are Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands.

Procedure

To disable sessions, complete the following steps:

1. Prevent all clients, storage agents, and other servers from starting new sessions with the server. Use the commands:

disable sessions client disable sessions server

For more information about the **DISABLE SESSIONS** command and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

2. Determine whether server processes are running. Either cancel processes, or allow them to complete. Use the commands:

query process
cancel process process_number

where *process_number* specifies the number of the process. Allow time for the processes to be stopped. Some processes, such as storage pool migration, might require considerable time.

3. Verify whether sessions exist, and notify the users that the server will be stopped. To detect existing sessions, use the command:

query session

4. Cancel sessions that are still running. Use the command: cancel session all

Backing up or migrating data stored on DISK and FILE devices

Before you migrate the server, ensure that all data that is stored on DISK or FILE devices is backed up or migrated to non-GENERICTAPE tape devices. This step is required because data that is stored on DISK and FILE devices cannot be migrated as part of the cross-platform migration.

Procedure

 Create a copy storage pool for a tape device by issuing the DEFINE STGPOOL command. For example, to create a copy storage pool named ltocopypool, which is assigned to the LTOCLASS device class, issue the following command: define stgpool ltocopypool ltoclass pooltype=copy

For more information about the **DEFINE STGPOOL** command and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

 Back up a primary storage pool on a DISK or FILE device by issuing the BACKUP STGPOOL command. For example, to back up a primary storage pool named primary_pool to a copy storage pool named ltocopypool, issue the following command:

backup stgpool primary_pool ltocopypool

3. Vary any disk-based primary storage pool volumes offline by using the VARY command. For example, to vary a storage pool named primary_disk_pool offline, issue the following command:

vary offline primary_disk_pool

4. To mark the original volumes as destroyed, change the access mode of each volume of primary storage pools to destroyed. Use the UPDATE VOLUME command. For example, if the name of the primary storage pool is primary_pool, mark the volumes in the pool as destroyed by issuing the following command:

update volume * wherestgpool=primary_pool access=destroyed

Results

If you prefer to migrate the data, you can use the **MIGRATE STGPOOL** command, the **MOVE DATA** command, or the **MOVE NODEDATA** command, depending on where the data is stored and how you plan to move it.

What to do next

After the server is migrated to V7.1, you can move the data from tape back to a storage pool that has faster access to data. For example, you can migrate the data to a random-access storage pool that uses a DISK device class. You can also migrate or restore the data to a storage pool that uses a FILE device class.

Migrating data that is stored on GENERICTAPE devices

Before you migrate the server, migrate all data that is stored on GENERICTAPE devices to non-GENERICTAPE tape devices. This step is required because data that is stored on GENERICTAPE devices cannot be migrated as part of the cross-platform migration.

Procedure

1. Create a primary sequential-access storage pool on a non-GENERICTAPE tape device by issuing the **DEFINE STGPOOL** command.

For example, to create a storage pool named ltopool that is assigned to the LTOCLASS device class, issue the following command:

define stgpool ltopool ltoclass

For more information about creating storage pools, see the **DEFINE STGPOOL** command in the *Administrator's Reference*.

2. To provide a location for the files that will be migrated, set up the next primary storage pool. Use the **UPDATE STGPOOL** command.

For example, to update a primary storage pool named gentapepool by adding a next storage pool named ltopool with a high migration threshold of 100, issue the following command:

update stgpool gentapepool nextstgpool=ltopool highmig=100

For more information about setting up the next primary storage pool, see the **UPDATE STGPOOL** command in the *Administrator's Reference*.

3. Migrate the data from the GENERICTAPE storage pool to the non-GENERICTAPE storage pool by using the **MIGRATE STGPOOL** command. For example, to migrate a storage pool named gentapepool to the next storage pool and specify a low migration threshold of 0, issue the following command:

migrate stgpool gentapepool lowmig=0

For more information about migrating storage pools, see the section that describes how to move data in the *Administrator's Guide*. Also, see the **MIGRATE STGPOOL** command in the *Administrator's Reference*.

Moving backup sets that are stored on FILE devices

Before you migrate the server, move any backup sets that are stored on FILE devices to the system where you plan to install the V7.1 server.

Procedure

1. Obtain a detailed list of the volumes that are associated with a backup set by issuing the **QUERY BACKUPSET** command:

query backupset f=d

For more information about the **QUERY BACKUPSET** command and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

- 2. Review the output to determine which backup sets are stored on FILE devices.
- **3**. Copy the volumes that are associated with backup sets on FILE devices to the target system. For example, copy the volumes to an FTP server on the target system. The volumes must be copied to a location where they can be accessed by the server instance user ID. If possible, retain the file structure that was used on the source system. If it is not possible to retain the file structure from the source system, copy the volumes to any location on the target system.

Migrating V5 servers on AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris systems to V7.1 on Linux

Remember: If you cannot retain the file structure that was used on the source system, you must complete more steps after the server migration. Use the **DELETE BACKUPSET** command to remove the previous volume entries from the database, and then the **DEFINE BACKUPSET** command to re-create the backup sets by using the volumes in their new location.

Backing up the server database

Immediately before you migrate the Tivoli Storage Manager server, back up the server database to a non-GENERICTAPE tape device.

Procedure

Run a snapshot backup, which provides a full backup of the database without interrupting any scheduled backups. Use the following command: backup db *type*=dbsnapshot devclass=*device_class_name*

where *type* specifies the type of database backup and *device_class_name* specifies the name of the device class. The device class that you specify must exist and have volumes that are available to it.

For example, to back up a database by using scratch volumes to a device that belongs to the TAPECLASS device class, issue the command: backup db type=dbsnapshot devclass=tapeclass

To use specific volumes instead of scratch volumes, specify the volume names in the command.

Tip: To protect the backup from media failures, make two copies of the backup. Ensure that at least one full database backup is available onsite. If you must restore the original database, having an onsite backup saves time because it is immediately available.

For more information about backing up databases, see the **BACKUP DB** command in the *Administrator's Reference*.

Creating a summary of database contents

Create a summary of the contents of the original database. After the upgrade, you can use the same commands to compare the results and to confirm that the database contents are intact.

Procedure

Run commands that give a summary of information about your database contents. For example, issue commands that summarize the file spaces that are being protected, and save the results. For a list of commands, see "Sample commands to run for validation of the database upgrade" on page 546.

Modifying the server to prevent potential issues

To prevent potential issues during and after the migration, modify the V5 server.

Before you begin

Before you modify the server, review the steps for reverting to the earlier version of the server in the section, "Reverting from V7.1 to the previous V5 server version" on page 435.

Procedure

 To prevent an issue with UNIX System Services file spaces, from a Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command line, issue the command: convert ussfilespace

This command fixes a problem that might exist in older Tivoli Storage Manager databases. If the problem does not exist in your database, the command is completed and you might see error ANR2034E. This error can be ignored. For more information, see Technote 1408895 (http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg21408895). If the problem exists in your database, the command might take some time to run.

Important: If you do not run this command, the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility might fail. You must then restart the V5 server and run the **CONVERT USSFILESPACE** command before you continue the upgrade process.

- 2. Make the following adjustments to settings on your server and clients. These adjustments must be done so that you can revert your system to the original server after the migration, if a problem occurs.
 - a. For each sequential-access storage pool on tape, use the **UPDATE STGPOOL** command to set the **REUSEDELAY** parameter. Set the parameter to the number of days during which you want to be able to revert to the original server, if necessary.

For example, if you want to be able to revert to the original server for up to 30 days after the migration, set the **REUSEDELAY** parameter to 31 days: update stgpool *sequential_access_storage_pool* reusedelay=31

where *sequential_access_storage_pool* specifies the name of the storage pool. For more information about the **UPDATE STGPOOL** command and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

b. For each copy storage pool on tape, use the QUERY STGPOOL command to determine the value of the RECLAIM parameter. Note the value for future reference. If you must revert to the V5 server at any time during the migration process, it is useful to know the value of the RECLAIM parameter so that you can restore the setting. Issue the following command: query stgpool sequential access storage pool format=detailed

where *sequential_access_storage_pool* specifies the name of the copy storage pool. In the system output, the value of the **RECLAIM** parameter can be found in the Reclamation Threshold field.

c. For each copy storage pool on tape, use the **UPDATE STGPOOL** command to set the **RECLAIM** parameter to 100, meaning 100%. For example, issue the following command:

update stgpool copy storage pool reclaim=100
where *copy_storage_pool* specifies the name of the copy storage pool.

d. For all tape volumes that were used by the V5 server, specify the read-only access mode. Issue the following administrative command: update volume tape volume access=readonly

where *tape_volume* specifies the name of the tape volume.

e. For clients that play an essential role in your system, verify that the value for the schedlogretention client option is set to retain the client schedule log for a sufficient time.

The client schedule log can be useful if you must revert the system to the original server. If the retention period for the schedule log is too short, the schedule log information might be deleted too soon.

For example, to prune the log every 45 days and save the log entries, add the following option:

schedlogretention 45 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{S}}$

where 45 specifies the number of days and S specifies that the log entries will be saved.

Add the schedlogretention client option to the dsm.sys file within a server stanza.

For more information about pruning the log, see the schedlogretention client option in the *Backup-Archive Clients Installation and User's Guide*.

Stopping the server before the migration

On the Tivoli Storage Manager V5.5.6 or later server, stop all server processes. Then, unmount any tapes that are mounted and stop the server.

Procedure

Use Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands to stop the server:

1. Determine whether server processes are running. Either cancel processes, or allow them to complete. Use the following commands:

query process
cancel process process_number

Allow time for the processes to be stopped. Some processes, such as storage pool migration, might take some time to stop.

For more information about the **QUERY PROCESS** and **CANCEL PROCESS** commands and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

 After all sessions and processes are stopped, determine whether any tapes are mounted. Unmount any tapes that are mounted. Use the following commands: query mount

dismount volume volume_name

3. Stop the server. Use the following command:

halt

Installing the upgrade utilities

You must install the upgrade utilities on the system where the V5 server is located. The upgrade utilities prepare and extract data from a V5 server database for insertion into an empty V7 server database.

Procedure

Use the procedure for your operating system:

- AIX "Installing the upgrade utilities on AIX systems"
- HP-UX "Installing the upgrade utilities on HP-UX systems" on page 381
- Solaris "Installing the upgrade utilities on Oracle Solaris systems" on page 382

Installing the upgrade utilities on AIX systems

AIX

You must install the V5.5.6 or later upgrade utilities on the system that has the original server and its database. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the AIX directory. From that directory, open the V5.5.6 or later directory. The level must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c.** Download the package to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x.x*-TIV-TSMUPG-AIX.tar.gz

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- **3**. Ensure that the system has the following file sets installed:

x1C.rte 8.0.0.5, or later

gsksa.rte 7.0.4.11

You can use the following commands to check for these file sets: lslpp -L xlC.rte

lslpp -L gsksa.rte

If needed, you can obtain the gsksa.rte file set from any of the regular V5.5 maintenance packages for the AIX server. The maintenance packages are available on the FTP downloads site: ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/maintenance/server/v5r5/AIX/

- 4. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. If you downloaded a language package, also extract the contents of that package.
- 5. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- 6. Access the System Management Interface Tool (SMIT).
 - a. Enter smitty install_update
 - b. Select Install and Update Software > Install and Update from ALL Available Software.
- 7. Select the **INPUT** device. Specify the directory location of the upgrade utilities package on the system.
- **8**. Select **Software to Install**. Press F4 or Esc+4 for the list of available file sets in the directory.
- 9. Select the file sets for the upgrade utilities, the device driver, and optionally the language package. The file set for the upgrade utilities is tivoli.tsmupg.server. Optional language packages include messages for languages other than US English.
- 10. Set COMMIT software updates to Yes. Press F4 or Esc+4.
- 11. Set SAVE replaced files to No.
- **12**. Ensure that the default settings for the options in the window for all the selected file sets show success.
- **13**. Press Enter, and respond to the ARE YOU SURE? question by pressing Enter again. The installation begins.
- 14. When the installation is complete, exit the SMIT program.
- 15. Optional: If you installed a language package, ensure that the locale environment variable is set to use it. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages: export LC MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.

Installing the upgrade utilities on HP-UX systems

HP-UX

You must install the V5.5.6 or later upgrade utilities on the system that has the original server and its database. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the HP-UX directory. From that directory, open the V5.5.6 or later directory. The level must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.

c. Download the package to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.x.x-TIV-TSMUPG-platform.tar.gz

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the command:
 gzip -dc package name.tar.gz | tar -xvf -
- 4. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the source argument (-s) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

swinstall -s /tmp/TSM package_name

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin.

- 6. Optional: Install the language package.
 - a. Extract the contents of the package.

gzip -d package_name.img.gz

b. Install the package. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

swinstall -s /tmp/TSM/package_name.img package_name

c. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.

Installing the upgrade utilities on Oracle Solaris systems

Solaris

You must install the V5.5.6 or later upgrade utilities on the system that has the original server and its database. The package to install is available for download from the FTP downloads site.

About this task

Restriction: Do not install the utilities in the installation directory for the original server that must be upgraded. Install the utilities package in its own directory.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the upgrade utilities package from the FTP downloads site.
 - a. Go to ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/ maintenance/server-upgrade/v5r5/
 - b. Navigate to the Solaris directory. From that directory, open the V5.5.6 or later directory. The level must be the same as or later than the level of the V5 server that you are upgrading.
 - **c.** Download the package to a convenient location on the server system. The name of the package has the following form:

5.5.*x*.*x*-TIV-TSMUPG-*platform*.tar.Z

The numbers at the beginning of the package name identify the release level of the upgrade utilities package.

- d. Optional: To install messages in a language other than English, open the LANG directory, and download a language package. Translated messages are available in the usual set of languages for a V5 server.
- 2. Log in with the root user ID.
- 3. Change to the directory where the upgrade utilities package was downloaded.
- 4. Extract the contents of the upgrade utilities package. For example, from the directory where you saved the download package, issue the command: uncompress -c package_name.tar.Z | tar -xvf -
- 5. Navigate to the directory that corresponds to the processor architecture of the operating system.
- Install the upgrade utilities and the device driver. Use the source argument (-d) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

pkgadd -d . /tmp/TSM package_name

The utilities are installed in the directory /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin by default.

- 7. Optional: Install the language package.
 - a. Extract the contents of the downloaded package.

uncompress *package_name*.pkg.Z

b. Install the package for the language that you want to use. Use the source argument (-d) to specify the directory where the package was extracted. For example, if the directory is /tmp/TSM, issue the command:

pkgadd -d /tmp/TSM package_name.pkg package_name

c. Enter the following command to set the locale environment variable for messages:

export LC_MESSAGES=xxxx

where *xxxx* is the locale that you want to use. For example, use it_IT for Italian. The upgrade utilities run with the locale that you specify if the following statements are true:

- The locale is installed on the system.
- The upgrade utilities support the locale.
- The language package that you installed for the upgrade utilities matches the locale.

Chapter 15. Migrating the server database to the V7.1 server

Migrate the server database by using the scenario that works best for your hardware and software environment. The original server cannot be running while the data is being extracted from the server database.

Before you begin

For an overview of migration scenarios, see "Scenarios for migrating a server from an AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris system to V7.1 on Linux" on page 358.

About this task

Follow the instructions for your selected scenario:

- "Migration scenario 1: Using the media method and the upgrade wizard"
- "Migration scenario 2: Using the media method and the command line" on page 391
- "Migration scenario 3: Using the network method and the upgrade wizard" on page 406
- "Migration scenario 4: Using the network method and the command line" on page 412

Migration scenario 1: Using the media method and the upgrade wizard

Use this procedure if you are upgrading the server by using the media method and the upgrade wizard. By applying the media method, you extract data from the original database to media, and then load the data into the new database. By using the wizard, you simplify the configuration process.

Procedure

To migrate the system by using Migration scenario 1, complete the following steps:

- 1. Ensure that you have completed the planning tasks. See Chapter 13, "Planning the migration," on page 365.
- 2. Ensure that you have completed the preparation tasks. See Chapter 14, "Preparing for the migration," on page 373.
- 3. Complete the tasks that are described in the following topics:
 - a. "Migration scenario 1: Installing the V7.1 server" on page 386
 - b. "Migration scenario 1: Setting up devices" on page 388
 - c. "Migration scenario 1: Creating the user ID and directories for the server instance" on page 389
 - d. "Migration scenario 1: Running the upgrade wizard" on page 390

What to do next

After you complete the planning, preparation, and migration steps, complete the post migration tasks. See Chapter 16, "Taking the first steps after migration," on page 425.

Migration scenario 1: Installing the V7.1 server

You can install the server by using the installation wizard, console mode, or silent mode.

Before you begin

You can obtain the installation package from the product DVD or from an IBM download site such as Passport Advantage or the Tivoli Storage Manager support site.

If you plan to download the files, set the system user limit for maximum file size to unlimited to ensure that the files can be downloaded correctly.

- To query the maximum file size value, issue the following command: ulimit -Hf
- 2. If the system user limit for maximum file size is not set to unlimited, change it to unlimited by following the instructions in the documentation for your operating system.

About this task

By using the Tivoli Storage Manager installation software, you can install the following Tivoli Storage Manager components:

- server
- server languages
- license
- devices
- Operations Center
- storage agent

Tip: The database (DB2) and the Global Security Kit are automatically installed when you select the Tivoli Storage Manager server component.

For more information about storage agents, see the Storage Agent User's Guide.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the system by using the root user ID.
- **2**. If you are obtaining the package from an IBM download site, download the appropriate package file from one of the following websites:
 - For a new release, go to Passport Advantage at http://www.ibm.com/ software/lotus/passportadvantage/. Passport Advantage is the only website from which you can download a licensed package file.
 - For a maintenance fix, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager support site at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/Tivoli_Storage_Manager.
- **3**. If you are downloading the package from one of the download sites, complete the following steps:
 - a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:
 - Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035122

- Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035635
- System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035637
- b. Download the package file to the directory of your choice. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files. Also, ensure that you have executable permission for the package file.
- **c**. If necessary, change the file permissions by issuing the following command:

chmod a+x package_name.bin

where *package_name* is like the following example: 7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxx86 64.bin

In the examples, 7.1.0.000 represents the product release level. The package is large, so the download takes some time.

d. Extract the installation files by issuing the following command:

./package_name.bin

where *package_name* is like the following example:

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxx86_64.bin

The package is large, so the extraction takes some time.

4. If you plan to install the server by using the graphical interface of the IBM Installation Manager, verify that the operating system is set to the language that you require. By default, the language of the operating system is the language of the installation wizard.

On test servers only: Use the following command to bypass prerequisite checks such as the operating system and the required memory. Do not issue this command on a production server.

./install.sh -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS_TSM_REQ_CHECKS=true"

5. If you use the installation wizard, complete the following steps to begin the installation:

Option	Description
Installing from a downloaded package file:	 Change to the directory where you downloaded the package file.
	2. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command:
	./install.sh
Installing from DVD media:	 Insert the DVD into the DVD drive. Tip: Ensure that the installation files are visible on the DVD drive.
	2. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command:
	./install.sh

- 6. If you install the server by using the wizard, follow these instructions:
 - a. In the IBM Installation Manager window, click the **Install** icon; do not click the **Update** or **Modify** icon.
 - b. Select the components to install. You must install the license package. If you select the storage agent, you must accept the Tivoli Storage Manager for Storage Area Networks license.
- 7. Alternatively, install the server in console mode. Review the information about installing the server in console mode and then complete the installation procedure, as described in the *Installation Guide*.
- 8. Alternatively, to install the server in silent mode, follow the instructions for an installation in silent mode in the *Installation Guide*. Review the information about installing the server in silent mode. Then, complete Steps 1 and 2 of the installation procedure.
- Correct any errors that are detected during the installation process. To view installation log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click File > View Log. To collect log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click Help > Export Data for Problem Analysis.
- Obtain any applicable fixes by going to the following website: http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager. Click Fixes (downloads) and apply any applicable fixes.
- **11.** To prevent server failures during interaction with DB2, tune the kernel parameters.

For instructions, see the section about tuning kernel parameters in the *Installation Guide*.

- **12**. Optional: To install an additional language package, use the modify function of the IBM Installation Manager.
- **13**. Optional: To upgrade to a newer version of a language package, use the update function of the IBM Installation Manager.

Migration scenario 1: Setting up devices

Set up the storage devices that you plan to use with the V7.1 server. Ensure that you set access permissions correctly for users and groups.

Procedure

To set up storage devices, follow these instructions:

- If the devices that you plan to use are controlled by the IBM device driver, complete the following steps:
 - 1. Install the IBM device driver and configure devices. Follow the instructions in the *IBM Tape Device Drivers Installation and User's Guide* at http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=ssg1S7002972.
 - 2. To set access permissions, complete one of the following actions:
 - If the system is dedicated to Tivoli Storage Manager and only the Tivoli Storage Manager administrator has access, make the device special files readable and writable to all users. Issue the following command: chmod a+rw /dev/IBMtapex

where x is a number that is assigned to a device. For example, a device drive can be named /dev/IBMtape0, where 0 is the device number.

 Restrict access to a group by creating a group and adding each instance user ID for Tivoli Storage Manager to that group. Then, change the

ownership of the device special files to belong to the group, and make the device special files readable and writable to the group. Issue the following command:

chmod g+rw /dev/IBMtapex

where *x* is a number that is assigned to a device.

- If the devices that you plan to use are controlled by the Tivoli Storage Manager device driver, complete the following steps:
 - 1. Log in as the root user.
 - 2. Grant read and write access.
 - To grant read and write access to all users, issue the following command: /opt/tivoli/tsm/devices/bin/autoconf -a
 - To grant read and write access to only the group, issue the following command:

/opt/tivoli/tsm/devices/bin/autoconf -g

For more information about setting up devices, see the section about attaching devices to the server in the *Administrator's Guide*.

Migration scenario 1: Creating the user ID and directories for the server instance

Create the user ID that will own the server instance. Also, create the directories that the server instance will use for database and recovery logs.

Before you begin

To review the information about planning space for the server, see "Estimating database and recovery log requirements" on page 366.

Procedure

1. Create a user ID and group that will be the owner of the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance. You will use this user ID when you create the server instance in a later step.

Restriction: In the user ID, only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_) can be used. The user ID and group name must comply with the following rules:

- The length must be 8 characters or less.
- The user ID and group name cannot start with ibm, sql, sys, or a numeral.
- The user ID and group name cannot be user, admin, guest, public, local, or any SQL reserved word.

For example, create user ID tsminst1 in group tsmsrvrs. The following examples show how to create this user ID and group by using operating system commands:

- # groupadd tsmsrvrs
- # useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/bash tsminst1
- # passwd tsminst1
- 2. Log out and log in to your system again by using the new user ID and password. Use an interactive login program, such as telnet, so that you are prompted for the password and can change it if necessary.
- **3**. If a configuration profile does not exist for the user ID, create the file. For example, create a .profile file if you are using the Korn shell (ksh).

4. Ensure that you are logged in with the user ID that you created. Then, create the directories that the server requires.

Unique, empty directories are required for each item that is shown in the following table. Create the database directories, the active log directory, and the archive log directory on different physical volumes. For space requirements, see "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The instance directory for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsminst1	
The database directories	<pre>mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb001 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb002 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb003 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb004</pre>	
Active log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmlog	
Archive log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmlogmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlogfailover	

Table 62. Worksheet for creating required directories

When a server is initially created by using the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility or the configuration wizard, a server database and recovery log are created. In addition, files are created to hold database information that is used by the database manager.

5. Create more logical volumes and mount the volumes on the directories that were created in the previous step.

Migration scenario 1: Running the upgrade wizard

The wizard offers a guided approach to upgrading a server. Start the wizard on the system where you installed the V7.1 server program.

Before you begin

Before you start the upgrade wizard, complete all preceding steps to prepare for the upgrade. Ensure that you backed up the server database and configuration files. Also, ensure that you installed the V7.1 server program, and created the directories and user ID for the server instance.

Procedure

- 1. Verify that the following requirements are met:
 - The system where you installed the V7.1 server program must have the X Window client. You also must be running an X Window server on your desktop.

- The system must have one of the following protocols enabled. Ensure that the port that the protocol uses is not blocked by a firewall.
 - Secure Shell (SSH). Ensure that the port is set to the default value, 22.
 Also, ensure that the SSH daemon service has access rights for connecting to the system by using localhost.
 - Remote shell (rsh).
 - Remote Execution Protocol (REXEC).
 - The V5 server also must have one of the protocols enabled.
- You must be able to log in to the V7.1 system with the user ID that you created for the server instance by using the SSH, rsh, or REXEC protocol. When you use the wizard, you must provide this user ID and password to access that system.
- 2. Start the upgrade wizard, dsmupgdx, from the V7.1 server installation directory. Log in by using the root user ID and issue this command: /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmupgdx
- **3**. Follow the instructions to complete the upgrade. The upgrade wizard can be stopped and restarted, but the server will not be operational until the entire upgrade process is complete. Read all messages that are displayed for each phase of the upgrade process in the message display area within the wizard. Informational messages might require your attention.

Migration scenario 2: Using the media method and the command line

Use this procedure if you are migrating the server database by using the media method and the command line. By applying the media method, you extract data from the original database to media and load the data into the new database. By using the command line, you issue administrative commands to upgrade the system manually.

Procedure

To migrate the system by using Migration scenario 2, complete the following steps:

- 1. Ensure that you have completed the planning tasks. See Chapter 13, "Planning the migration," on page 365.
- 2. Ensure that you have completed the preparation tasks. See Chapter 14, "Preparing for the migration," on page 373.
- 3. Complete the tasks that are described in the following topics:
 - a. "Migration scenario 2: Preparing the database of the V5 server" on page 392
 - b. "Migration scenario 2: Extracting the data to media" on page 393
 - c. "Migration scenario 2: Installing the V7.1 server" on page 393
 - d. "Migration scenario 2: Setting up devices" on page 396
 - e. "Migration scenario 2: Configuring devices" on page 397
 - f. "Migration scenario 2: Creating the user ID and directories for the server instance" on page 398
 - g. "Migration scenario 2: Creating the server instance and database" on page 400
 - h. "Migration scenario 2: Loading the extracted data into the V7.1 database" on page 402
 - i. "Migration scenario 2: Configuring the system for database backup" on page 404

What to do next

After you complete the planning, preparation, and migration steps, complete the post migration tasks. See Chapter 16, "Taking the first steps after migration," on page 425.

Migration scenario 2: Preparing the database of the V5 server

Before you extract the data from the V5 server database, you must prepare the database by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility. If you have multiple servers on a single system, you must repeat this task for each server.

Before you begin

The upgrade utilities must be installed on the V5 system.

Procedure

- 1. Ensure that you completed the initial preparation steps. For instructions, see Chapter 14, "Preparing for the migration," on page 373.
- 2. Log in by using the root user ID on the V5 system.
- **3**. Change to the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading. The instance directory is the directory that contains the files such as dsmserv.dsk for the server.
- 4. Prepare the database. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process in the background and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

AIX

nohup /usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd preparedb >prepare.out 2>&1 &

HP-UX Solaris

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd preparedb >prepare.out 2>&1 &

5. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages. The final message indicates the success or failure of the operation. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to monitor the process:

```
tail -f prepare.out
```

What to do next

Ensure that the prepare operation is completed successfully before you continue to the next step. If the prepare operation fails, you might have to restart the V5 server to fix the problem and run the prepare operation again. If the server that is being upgraded is a V5.3 or V5.4 server, you might have to restore the database by using a backup. Then, you can restart the server to correct the problem.

Migration scenario 2: Extracting the data to media

Use the **DSMUPGRD** utility to extract data from the V5 server database and store it on a tape device.

Procedure

- 1. Log in by using the root user ID on the system that has the V5 server.
- **2**. Ensure that the storage device is available. The server database and the device configuration file must contain a valid device class definition for the device.
- **3**. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the command to start the extraction. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring. For example, issue the following command on one line:

```
AX
nohup /usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd extractdb \
devclass=tape manifest=./manifest.txt >extract.out 2>&1 &
```

HP-UX Solaris

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd extractdb \
devclass=tape manifest=./manifest.txt >extract.out 2>&1 &

Tip: Messages that are issued during the extract operation are not saved in the server activity log. Direct the output of the utility to a file, as shown in the examples, to record the messages.

4. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages, and for items that might require attention. A message near the end of the process output indicates the success or failure of the operation:

Success message: ANR1382I EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed.

Failure message: ANR1396E EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed with errors.

For example, from the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to monitor the process:

tail -f extract.out

The length of time that the process runs depends on the database size. The time is approximately the length of time that is required for a full database backup.

Migration scenario 2: Installing the V7.1 server

You can install the server by using the installation wizard, console mode, or silent mode.

Before you begin

You can obtain the installation package from the product DVD or from an IBM download site such as Passport Advantage or the Tivoli Storage Manager support site.

If you plan to download the files, set the system user limit for maximum file size to unlimited to ensure that the files can be downloaded correctly.

 To query the maximum file size value, issue the following command: ulimit -Hf

2. If the system user limit for maximum file size is not set to unlimited, change it to unlimited by following the instructions in the documentation for your operating system.

About this task

By using the Tivoli Storage Manager installation software, you can install the following Tivoli Storage Manager components:

- server
- server languages
- license
- devices
- · Operations Center
- storage agent

Tip: The database (DB2) and the Global Security Kit are automatically installed when you select the Tivoli Storage Manager server component.

For more information about storage agents, see the Storage Agent User's Guide.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the system by using the root user ID.
- 2. If you are obtaining the package from an IBM download site, download the appropriate package file from one of the following websites:
 - For a new release, go to Passport Advantage at http://www.ibm.com/ software/lotus/passportadvantage/. Passport Advantage is the only website from which you can download a licensed package file.
 - For a maintenance fix, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager support site at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/Tivoli_Storage_Manager.
- **3**. If you are downloading the package from one of the download sites, complete the following steps:
 - a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:
 - Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035122
 - Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035635
 - System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035637
 - b. Download the package file to the directory of your choice. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files. Also, ensure that you have executable permission for the package file.
 - c. If necessary, change the file permissions by issuing the following command:

chmod a+x package_name.bin

where *package_name* is like the following example:

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxx86_64.bin

In the examples, 7.1.0.000 represents the product release level. The package is large, so the download takes some time.

d. Extract the installation files by issuing the following command: ./package_name.bin

where *package_name* is like the following example:

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxx86_64.bin

The package is large, so the extraction takes some time.

4. If you plan to install the server by using the graphical interface of the IBM Installation Manager, verify that the operating system is set to the language that you require. By default, the language of the operating system is the language of the installation wizard.

On test servers only: Use the following command to bypass prerequisite checks such as the operating system and the required memory. Do not issue this command on a production server.

./install.sh -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS_TSM_REQ_CHECKS=true"

5. If you use the installation wizard, complete the following steps to begin the installation:

Option	Description
Installing from a downloaded package file:	 Change to the directory where you downloaded the package file. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command: ./install.sh
Installing from DVD media:	 Insert the DVD into the DVD drive. Tip: Ensure that the installation files are visible on the DVD drive. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command: ./install.sh

- 6. If you install the server by using the wizard, follow these instructions:
 - a. In the IBM Installation Manager window, click the **Install** icon; do not click the **Update** or **Modify** icon.
 - b. Select the components to install. You must install the license package. If you select the storage agent, you must accept the Tivoli Storage Manager for Storage Area Networks license.
- 7. Alternatively, install the server in console mode. Review the information about installing the server in console mode and then complete the installation procedure, as described in the *Installation Guide*.
- 8. Alternatively, to install the server in silent mode, follow the instructions for an installation in silent mode in the *Installation Guide*. Review the information about installing the server in silent mode. Then, complete Steps 1 and 2 of the installation procedure.

- Correct any errors that are detected during the installation process. To view installation log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click File > View Log. To collect log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click Help > Export Data for Problem Analysis.
- Obtain any applicable fixes by going to the following website: http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager. Click Fixes (downloads) and apply any applicable fixes.
- **11**. To prevent server failures during interaction with DB2, tune the kernel parameters.

For instructions, see the section about tuning kernel parameters in the *Installation Guide*.

- **12**. Optional: To install an additional language package, use the modify function of the IBM Installation Manager.
- **13**. Optional: To upgrade to a newer version of a language package, use the update function of the IBM Installation Manager.

Migration scenario 2: Setting up devices

Set up the storage devices that you plan to use with the V7.1 server. Ensure that you set access permissions correctly for users and groups.

Procedure

To set up storage devices, follow these instructions:

- If the devices that you plan to use are controlled by the IBM device driver, complete the following steps:
 - 1. Install the IBM device driver and configure devices. Follow the instructions in the *IBM Tape Device Drivers Installation and User's Guide* at http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=ssg1S7002972.
 - 2. To set access permissions, complete one of the following actions:
 - If the system is dedicated to Tivoli Storage Manager and only the Tivoli Storage Manager administrator has access, make the device special files readable and writable to all users. Issue the following command: chmod a+rw /dev/IBMtapex

where x is a number that is assigned to a device. For example, a device drive can be named /dev/IBMtape0, where 0 is the device number.

 Restrict access to a group by creating a group and adding each instance user ID for Tivoli Storage Manager to that group. Then, change the ownership of the device special files to belong to the group, and make the device special files readable and writable to the group. Issue the following command:

chmod g+rw /dev/IBMtapex

where *x* is a number that is assigned to a device.

- If the devices that you plan to use are controlled by the Tivoli Storage Manager device driver, complete the following steps:
 - 1. Log in as the root user.
 - 2. Grant read and write access.
 - To grant read and write access to all users, issue the following command: /opt/tivoli/tsm/devices/bin/autoconf -a

- To grant read and write access to only the group, issue the following command:
 - /opt/tivoli/tsm/devices/bin/autoconf -g

For more information about setting up devices, see the section about attaching devices to the server in the *Administrator's Guide*.

Migration scenario 2: Configuring devices

On the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server, configure the devices that you plan to use. Obtain the library device names and the drive device names for the V7.1 server. Then, update the manifest file with these names.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to configure the devices:

1. Obtain the library serial numbers from the manifest file on the V5 system.

Tip: The manifest file was created in an earlier step, "Migration scenario 2: Extracting the data to media" on page 393.

The following example is from the manifest file on a V5 server: DEFINE LIBRARY LTO_LIB LIBTYPE=SCSI WWN="500143800329CAD8" SERIAL="DEC91503HW" SHARED=NO AUTOLABEL=NO RESETDRIVE=NO

In the preceding example, the library serial number is DEC91503HW.

- 2. Obtain the library device names:
 - If the devices are controlled by the Tivoli Storage Manager device driver, take the following actions:
 - a. On the V7 system, issue the command:

cat /dev/tsmscsi/lbinfo

In the output, look for any library serial numbers that you identified in Step 1.

The output is similar to the following example:

Index Minor Host CHN IDLUN TypeVendor_IDDevice_Serial_Numberproduct_IDRev.000006001000003001008HPDEC91503HWMSL G3 Series5.80

In the sample output, the library serial number is DEC91503HW and the index number is 000.

b. Use the index number to define the library name.

A library name has the following format:

/dev/tsmscsi/lbx

where x is the index number without leading zeros. If the index number is 000, remove only the first two leading zeros. In this example, the index number is 000. When the first two leading zeros are removed, the number becomes 0, and the library name is defined as /dev/tsmscsi/lb0.

• If the devices are controlled by IBM tape device drivers, obtain library device names by following the instructions in the *IBM Tape Device Drivers Installation and User's Guide*:

http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=ssg1S7002972

The names of library devices that are controlled by an IBM device driver on a Linux system have the following format:

/dev/IBMchanger*x*

where x is an integer. For example, a library device can be named /dev/IBMchanger0.

3. Obtain the serial numbers for the drive devices from the manifest file on the V5 system. The following example is from the manifest file of a V5 server: DEFINE DRIVE LTO_LIB LTO_DRIVE ELEMENT=1 ONLINE=Yes WWN="500143800329CAD9" SERIAL="HU171200NG"

In the preceding example, the serial number is HU171200NG.

- 4. Obtain the names of the device drives:
 - If the devices are controlled by the Tivoli Storage Manager device driver, take the following actions:
 - a. On the V7 system, issue the following command:

cat /dev/tsmscsi/mtinfo

In the output, look for the device serial numbers that you identified in Step 3.

The output is similar to the following example:

 Index
 Minor
 Host
 CHN
 ID
 LUN
 Type
 Vendor_ID
 Device_Serial_Number
 Product_ID
 Rev.

 000
 005
 001
 000
 003
 000
 001
 HP
 HU171200NG
 Ultrium
 4-SCSI
 H68W

In the sample output, the index number is 000.

 b. Use the index number from the output in Step 4a to define the name of the device drive. The name of a device drive has the following format: /dev/tsmscsi/mtx

where x is the index number without leading zeros. In this example, the index number is 000. After you remove the leading zeros, the number is 0, and the name of the device drive is defined as /dev/tsmscsi/mt0.

• If the devices are controlled by IBM tape device drivers, obtain drive device names by following the instructions in the *IBM Tape Device Drivers Installation and User's Guide*:

http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=ssg1S7002972

Names of device drives that are controlled by IBM tape device drivers have the following format:

/dev/IBMtapex

where x is a number that is assigned to a device. For example, a device drive can be named /dev/IBMtape0, where 0 is the device number.

5. Update the manifest file with the library device names and drive device names, and save the file.

Migration scenario 2: Creating the user ID and directories for the server instance

Create the user ID that will own the server instance. Also, create the directories that the server instance will use for database and recovery logs.

Before you begin

To review the information about planning space for the server, see "Estimating database and recovery log requirements" on page 366.

Procedure

1. Create a user ID and group that will be the owner of the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance. You will use this user ID when you create the server instance in a later step.

Restriction: In the user ID, only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_) can be used. The user ID and group name must comply with the following rules:

- The length must be 8 characters or less.
- The user ID and group name cannot start with ibm, sql, sys, or a numeral.
- The user ID and group name cannot be user, admin, guest, public, local, or any SQL reserved word.

For example, create user ID tsminst1 in group tsmsrvrs. The following examples show how to create this user ID and group by using operating system commands:

```
# groupadd tsmsrvrs
# useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/bash tsminst1
# passwd tsminst1
```

- 2. Log out and log in to your system again by using the new user ID and password. Use an interactive login program, such as telnet, so that you are prompted for the password and can change it if necessary.
- 3. If a configuration profile does not exist for the user ID, create the file. For example, create a .profile file if you are using the Korn shell (ksh).
- 4. Ensure that you are logged in with the user ID that you created. Then, create the directories that the server requires.

Unique, empty directories are required for each item that is shown in the following table. Create the database directories, the active log directory, and the archive log directory on different physical volumes. For space requirements, see "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

1 (

Item	example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The instance directory for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsminst1	
The database directories	<pre>mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb001 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb002 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb003 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb004</pre>	
Active log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmlog	
Archive log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmlogmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlogfailover	

Table 63. Worksheet for creating required directories

1

When a server is initially created by using the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility or the configuration wizard, a server database and recovery log are created. In addition, files are created to hold database information that is used by the database manager.

5. Create more logical volumes and mount the volumes on the directories that were created in the previous step.

Migration scenario 2: Creating the server instance and database

Create the server instance and format files for an empty V7.1 database. Later, you can migrate data from the V5 server database to the new V7.1 database.

Procedure

1. Log in to the system where you installed the V7.1 program by using the root user ID.

Verify the following items:

- The home directory for the user, /home/tsminst1, exists. If there is no home directory, you must create it.
- The instance directory stores the following core files that are generated by the Tivoli Storage Manager server:
 - The server options file, dsmserv.opt
 - The server key database file, cert.kdb, and the .arm files, which are used by clients and other servers to import the Secure Sockets Layer certificates of the server
 - The device configuration file, if the DEVCONFIG server option does not specify a fully qualified name
 - The volume history file, if the VOLUMEHISTORY server option does not specify a fully qualified name
 - Volumes for storage pools of the FILE device type, if the directory for the device class is not fully specified, or not fully qualified
 - User exits
 - Trace output, if it is not fully qualified
- A shell configuration file, for example, a .profile file, exists in the home directory. The root user and instance user ID must have write permission to this file. For more information about the shell configuration file, go to the DB2 information center at: http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/v10r5. Search for information about Linux and UNIX environment variable settings.
- 2. Create a Tivoli Storage Manager instance by using the db2icrt command.

Enter the following command on one line. For the instance name, specify the user ID that you created to own the instance:

/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2icrt -a server -s ese -u
user_id instance_name

For example, if the user ID for this instance is tsminst1, use the following command to create the instance:

/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2icrt -a server -s ese -u
tsminst1 tsminst1

Remember: From this point on, use this new user ID when you configure the Tivoli Storage Manager server. Log out of the root user ID, and log in by using the user ID that is the instance owner.

- **3**. Log in to the system by using the user ID that owns the V7.1 server instance (the instance user ID).
- 4. Copy the configuration files to the instance directory that you created for the new server. The files are the configuration files that you saved from the original V5 server:
 - The device configuration file
 - The server options file, which is typically named dsmserv.opt

For example, if you created the instance directory that is shown in the example in the step to create directories, copy the files into the following directory:

/tsminst1

Ensure that the instance user ID has ownership or read/write permission to the files that you copied.

- 5. Edit the server options file.
 - a. Remove any options that are not supported for V7.1. For the list of deleted options, see Table 29 on page 67.
 - b. Verify that the server options file contains at least one VOLUMEHISTORY option and at least one DEVCONFIG option. By specifying these options, you ensure that a volume history file and a device configuration file are generated and updated automatically. If you must restore the database, these files are required.
 - **c.** Verify that the server options file includes the TXNGROUPMAX option with a value, and if it does, what the value is. You might want to change the current value because the default value for this option changed from 256 to 4096, starting in V6. The increased value can improve the performance for data movement operations such as storage pool migration and storage pool backup.
 - If the server options file does not include this option, the server automatically uses the new default value, 4096.
 - If the specified value is less than 4096, consider increasing the value, or removing the option so that, when the server is restarted, the new default value is applied.
- 6. Change the default path for the database to be the same as the instance directory for the server. Issue the command:

db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath instance_directory

For example:

db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath /tsminst1

7. Modify the library path to use the version of the IBM Global Security Kit (GSKit) that is installed with the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

You must update the following files to set the library path when DB2 or the Tivoli Storage Manager server is started:

- instance_directory/sqllib/usercshrc
- instance_directory/sqllib/userprofile

For the *instance_directory*/sqllib/usercshrc file, add the following line: setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH /usr/local/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH

For the *instance_directory*/sqllib/userprofile file, add the following lines: LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/usr/local/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH export LD_LIBRARY_PATH

Verify the library path settings and ensure that the GSKit version is 8.0.14.14 or later. Issue the following commands from the instance home directory, for example, /home/tsminst1:

echo \$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
gsk8capicmd_64 -version
gsk8ver_64

If the GSKit version is not 8.0.14.14 or later, you must reinstall the Tivoli Storage Manager server. The reinstallation ensures that the correct GSKit version is available.

- 8. Change to the instance directory that you created for the server.
- 9. Create and format the database and recovery logs by using the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** command. In the command, specify the directories that you created for the database and logs. The directories must be empty.

For example, to get an active log size of 16 GB or 16384 MB, which is the default size, issue the following command, on one line:

```
/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmserv loadformat \
dbdir=/tsmdb001,/tsmdb002,/tsmdb003,/tsmdb004 \
activelogsize=16384 activelogdirectory=/tsmlog \
mirrorlogdirectory=/tsmlogmirror archlogdirectory=/tsmarchlog
```

For more information about creating and formatting a database, see Appendix B, "Utilities, scripts, and commands for server upgrade and migration," on page 521.

10. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages. The final message indicates the success or failure of the operation.

Migration scenario 2: Loading the extracted data into the V7.1 database

After you format an empty database by using the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** utility, load the data that you extracted from the original server database.

Before you begin

Ensure that the following requirements are met before you begin to load the data:

- The manifest file from the DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB operation must be available.
- The server options file must contain an entry for the device configuration file.
- The device configuration file must have information about the device class that is specified in the manifest file.
- The media that contains the extracted database must be available to the V7.1 server. The device must be physically attached to the system. The permissions must be set to grant access to the media for the user ID that owns the V7.1 server instance.

Procedure

Complete the following steps:

- 1. Verify that the V7.1 server can access the extracted data. The tape drive that is used for the extracted data must be physically attached to the V7.1 system.
- **2**. Ensure that the instance user ID has ownership or read/write permission for the manifest file that was created by the extraction process.

- **3**. Log in with the instance user ID on the system where you installed the V7.1 server.
- 4. Copy the manifest file that was created by the extraction process to the V7.1 system.
- 5. On the V7.1 server, complete the following steps:
 - a. Verify that the server options file from the V5 server includes the DEVCONFIG option, and that the option specifies the full path of the device configuration file.
 - b. Verify that the device configuration file from the V5 server is available in the location that is specified by the DEVCONFIG option.
 - **c**. Verify that the permissions on the device configuration file allow read access for the instance user ID.
- 6. Verify that the contents of the device configuration file are correct. The device class that was used for the extraction step is recorded in the manifest file, and that device class must exist and be valid on the V7.1 system. Verify entries for tape. For example, the device names might have changed.
- 7. Verify the contents of the manifest file and edit the file if necessary:
 - a. Ensure that the device names in the manifest file are valid for the V7.1 system. Device names for the same device might be different on V5 and V7.1 systems.
 - b. Ensure that the manifest file contains a list of volumes to be used when the extracted data is loaded into the new database.
- 8. To load an extracted server database into the prepared, empty V7.1 database, issue the DSMSERV INSERTDB command. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring. For example, enter the following command on one line: nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmserv insertdb \ manifest=./manifest.txt >insert.out 2>&1 &

For more information about loading an extracted database into a new database, see Appendix B, "Utilities, scripts, and commands for server upgrade and migration," on page 521.

9. Monitor the process for error messages, warning messages, and any items that might require your attention. The system displays interim statistics about the process of loading the database. However, there might be time periods when no messages are issued. During this time, DB2 operations are running in the background. The length of time that the process runs depends on the size of the database. For more information, see "Example: Estimating the upgrade time based on the database size" on page 43.

Optional: Verify that the database is being loaded by monitoring the processor and I/O usage for the server process and the corresponding DB2 process. For example, issue the following command to monitor the process:

tail -f insert.out

A message in the output of the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** command indicates the status of the operation:

- Success message: ANR1395I INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed.
- Failure message: ANR1396E INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed with errors.
- 10. If you used the media method to upgrade the system, after the data is loaded into the database, remove or check out from the library the tape that holds the extracted data. Prevent the tape from being reused until you are sure that you do not need to run the database-loading operation again.

Migration scenario 2: Configuring the system for database backup

If you did not use the upgrade wizard, you must complete the configuration for the database backup manually.

About this task

Starting with Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1, it is no longer necessary to set the API password during a manual configuration of the server. If you set the API password during the manual configuration process, attempts to back up the database might fail.

Complete the following steps before you issue either the **BACKUP DB** or the **RESTORE DB** command.

Attention: If the database is unusable, the entire Tivoli Storage Manager server is unavailable. If a database is lost and cannot be recovered, it might be difficult or impossible to recover data that was managed by that server. Therefore, it is critically important to back up the database.

In the following commands, replace the example values with your actual values. The examples use tsminst1 for the server instance user ID, /tsminst1 for the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance directory, and /home/tsminst1 as the home directory of the server instance user.

Procedure

- 1. Set the Tivoli Storage Manager API environment-variable configuration for the database instance:
 - a. Log in by using the tsminst1 user ID.
 - b. When user tsminst1 is logged in, ensure that the DB2 environment is correctly initialized. The DB2 environment is initialized by running the /home/tsminst1/sqllib/db2profile script, which normally runs automatically from the profile of the user ID. Ensure that the .profile file exists in the home directory of the instance user, for example, /home/tsminst1/.profile. If .profile does not run the db2profile script, add the following lines:
 - if [-f /home/tsminst1/sqllib/db2profile]; then
 - . /home/tsminst1/sqllib/db2profile
 - fi
 - c. In the *instance_directory*/sqllib/userprofile file, add the following lines:

DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory/tsmdbmgr.opt DSMI_DIR=server_bin_directory/dbbkapi DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory export DSMI_CONFIG_DSMI_DIR_DSMI_LOG

d. In the *instance_directory*/sqllib/usercshrc file, add the following lines:

setenv DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory/tsmdbmgr.opt
setenv DSMI_DIR=server_bin_directory/dbbkapi
setenv DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory

2. Log out and log in again as tsminst1, or issue this command:

. ~/.profile

Ensure that you enter a space after the initial dot (.) character.

3. Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.opt in the server instance directory, which is in the /tsminst1 directory in this example, and add the following line:

SERVERNAME TSMDBMGR_TSMINST1

The value for SERVERNAME must be consistent in the tsmdbmgr.opt and dsm.sys files.

4. Locate the Tivoli Storage Manager API dsm.sys configuration file. By default, the dsm.sys file is in the following location:

server_bin_directory/dbbkapi/dsm.sys

5. As root user, add the following lines to the dsm.sys configuration file:

servername TSMDBMGR_TSMINST1
commmethod tcpip
tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport 1500
errorlogname /tsminst1
nodename \$\$ TSMDBMGR \$\$

where

- servername matches the servername value in the tsmdbmgr.opt file.
- commmethod specifies the client API that is used to contact the server for database backup. This value can be tcpip or sharedmem. For more information about shared memory, see Step 6.
- tcpserveraddr specifies the server address that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be localhost.
- tcpport specifies the port number that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. Ensure that you enter the same tcpport value that is specified in the dsmserv.opt server options file.
- errorlogname specifies the error log where the client API logs errors that are encountered during a database backup. This log is typically in the server instance directory. However, this log can be placed in any location where the instance user ID has write-permission.
- nodename specifies the node name that the client API uses to connect to the server during a database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be \$\$_TSMDBMGR_\$\$.

Do not add the PASSWORDACCESS generate option to the dsm.sys configuration file. This option can cause the database backup to fail.

- 6. Optional: Configure the server to back up the database by using shared memory. In this way, you might be able to reduce the processor load and improve throughput. Complete the following steps:
 - a. Review the dsmserv.opt file. If the following lines are not in the file, add them:

commmethod sharedmem
shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port to use for shared memory.

b. In the dsm.sys configuration file, locate the following lines:

commmethod tcpip
tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport port_number

Replace the specified lines with the following lines: commmethod sharedmem shmport *port_number* where *port_number* specifies the port to use for shared memory.

Migration scenario 3: Using the network method and the upgrade wizard

Use this procedure if you are migrating the server by using the network method and the upgrade wizard. By applying the network method, you simultaneously extract data from the original database and load the data into the new database over a network connection. By using the wizard, you simplify the configuration process.

Procedure

To migrate the system by using Migration scenario 3, complete the following steps:

- 1. Ensure that you have completed the planning tasks. See Chapter 13, "Planning the migration," on page 365.
- 2. Ensure that you have completed the preparation tasks. See Chapter 14, "Preparing for the migration," on page 373.
- 3. Complete the tasks that are described in the following topics:
 - a. "Migration scenario 3: Installing the V7.1 server"
 - b. "Migration scenario 3: Setting up devices" on page 409
 - c. "Migration scenario 3: Creating the user ID and directories for the server instance" on page 410
 - d. "Migration scenario 3: Running the upgrade wizard" on page 411

What to do next

After you complete the planning, preparation, and migration steps, complete the post migration tasks. See Chapter 16, "Taking the first steps after migration," on page 425.

Migration scenario 3: Installing the V7.1 server

You can install the server by using the installation wizard, console mode, or silent mode.

Before you begin

You can obtain the installation package from the product DVD or from an IBM download site such as Passport Advantage or the Tivoli Storage Manager support site.

If you plan to download the files, set the system user limit for maximum file size to unlimited to ensure that the files can be downloaded correctly.

- To query the maximum file size value, issue the following command: ulimit -Hf
- 2. If the system user limit for maximum file size is not set to unlimited, change it to unlimited by following the instructions in the documentation for your operating system.

About this task

By using the Tivoli Storage Manager installation software, you can install the following Tivoli Storage Manager components:

- server
- server languages
- license
- devices
- Operations Center
- storage agent

Tip: The database (DB2) and the Global Security Kit are automatically installed when you select the Tivoli Storage Manager server component.

For more information about storage agents, see the Storage Agent User's Guide.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the system by using the root user ID.
- 2. If you are obtaining the package from an IBM download site, download the appropriate package file from one of the following websites:
 - For a new release, go to Passport Advantage at http://www.ibm.com/ software/lotus/passportadvantage/. Passport Advantage is the only website from which you can download a licensed package file.
 - For a maintenance fix, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager support site at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager.
- **3**. If you are downloading the package from one of the download sites, complete the following steps:
 - a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:
 - Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035122
 - Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035635
 - System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035637
 - b. Download the package file to the directory of your choice. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files. Also, ensure that you have executable permission for the package file.
 - **c.** If necessary, change the file permissions by issuing the following command:

chmod a+x package_name.bin

where *package_name* is like the following example:

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxx86_64.bin

In the examples, 7.1.0.000 represents the product release level. The package is large, so the download takes some time.

d. Extract the installation files by issuing the following command:

./package_name.bin

where *package_name* is like the following example:

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxx86_64.bin

The package is large, so the extraction takes some time.

4. If you plan to install the server by using the graphical interface of the IBM Installation Manager, verify that the operating system is set to the language that you require. By default, the language of the operating system is the language of the installation wizard.

On test servers only: Use the following command to bypass prerequisite checks such as the operating system and the required memory. Do not issue this command on a production server.

./install.sh -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS_TSM_REQ_CHECKS=true"

5. If you use the installation wizard, complete the following steps to begin the installation:

Option	Description
Installing from a downloaded package file:	 Change to the directory where you downloaded the package file. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command: ./install.sh
Installing from DVD media:	 Insert the DVD into the DVD drive. Tip: Ensure that the installation files are visible on the DVD drive. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command: ./install.sh

- 6. If you install the server by using the wizard, follow these instructions:
 - a. In the IBM Installation Manager window, click the **Install** icon; do not click the **Update** or **Modify** icon.
 - b. Select the components to install. You must install the license package. If you select the storage agent, you must accept the Tivoli Storage Manager for Storage Area Networks license.
- 7. Alternatively, install the server in console mode. Review the information about installing the server in console mode and then complete the installation procedure, as described in the *Installation Guide*.
- 8. Alternatively, to install the server in silent mode, follow the instructions for an installation in silent mode in the *Installation Guide*. Review the information about installing the server in silent mode. Then, complete Steps 1 and 2 of the installation procedure.
- Correct any errors that are detected during the installation process. To view installation log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click File > View Log. To collect log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click Help > Export Data for Problem Analysis.
- Obtain any applicable fixes by going to the following website: http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager. Click Fixes (downloads) and apply any applicable fixes.

11. To prevent server failures during interaction with DB2, tune the kernel parameters.

For instructions, see the section about tuning kernel parameters in the *Installation Guide*.

- **12**. Optional: To install an additional language package, use the modify function of the IBM Installation Manager.
- **13**. Optional: To upgrade to a newer version of a language package, use the update function of the IBM Installation Manager.

Migration scenario 3: Setting up devices

Set up the storage devices that you plan to use with the V7.1 server. Ensure that you set access permissions correctly for users and groups.

Procedure

To set up storage devices, follow these instructions:

- If the devices that you plan to use are controlled by the IBM device driver, complete the following steps:
 - 1. Install the IBM device driver and configure devices. Follow the instructions in the *IBM Tape Device Drivers Installation and User's Guide* at http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=ssg1S7002972.
 - 2. To set access permissions, complete one of the following actions:
 - If the system is dedicated to Tivoli Storage Manager and only the Tivoli Storage Manager administrator has access, make the device special files readable and writable to all users. Issue the following command: chmod a+rw /dev/IBMtapex

where x is a number that is assigned to a device. For example, a device drive can be named /dev/IBMtape0, where 0 is the device number.

 Restrict access to a group by creating a group and adding each instance user ID for Tivoli Storage Manager to that group. Then, change the ownership of the device special files to belong to the group, and make the device special files readable and writable to the group. Issue the following command:

chmod g+rw /dev/IBMtapex

where *x* is a number that is assigned to a device.

- If the devices that you plan to use are controlled by the Tivoli Storage Manager device driver, complete the following steps:
 - 1. Log in as the root user.
 - 2. Grant read and write access.
 - To grant read and write access to all users, issue the following command: /opt/tivoli/tsm/devices/bin/autoconf -a
 - To grant read and write access to only the group, issue the following command:

/opt/tivoli/tsm/devices/bin/autoconf -g

For more information about setting up devices, see the section about attaching devices to the server in the *Administrator's Guide*.

Migration scenario 3: Creating the user ID and directories for the server instance

Create the user ID that will own the server instance. Also, create the directories that the server instance will use for database and recovery logs.

Before you begin

To review the information about planning space for the server, see "Estimating database and recovery log requirements" on page 366.

Procedure

1. Create a user ID and group that will be the owner of the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance. You will use this user ID when you create the server instance in a later step.

Restriction: In the user ID, only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_) can be used. The user ID and group name must comply with the following rules:

- The length must be 8 characters or less.
- The user ID and group name cannot start with ibm, sql, sys, or a numeral.
- The user ID and group name cannot be user, admin, guest, public, local, or any SQL reserved word.

For example, create user ID tsminst1 in group tsmsrvrs. The following examples show how to create this user ID and group by using operating system commands:

```
# groupadd tsmsrvrs
# useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/bash tsminst1
# passwd tsminst1
```

- **2**. Log out and log in to your system again by using the new user ID and password. Use an interactive login program, such as telnet, so that you are prompted for the password and can change it if necessary.
- **3**. If a configuration profile does not exist for the user ID, create the file. For example, create a .profile file if you are using the Korn shell (ksh).
- 4. Ensure that you are logged in with the user ID that you created. Then, create the directories that the server requires.

Unique, empty directories are required for each item that is shown in the following table. Create the database directories, the active log directory, and the archive log directory on different physical volumes. For space requirements, see "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The instance directory for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsminst1	
The database directories	<pre>mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb001 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb002 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb003 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb004</pre>	

Table 64. Worksheet for creating required directories

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
Active log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmlog	
Archive log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmlogmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlogfailover	

Table 64. Worksheet for creating required directories (continued)

When a server is initially created by using the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility or the configuration wizard, a server database and recovery log are created. In addition, files are created to hold database information that is used by the database manager.

5. Create more logical volumes and mount the volumes on the directories that were created in the previous step.

Migration scenario 3: Running the upgrade wizard

The wizard offers a guided approach to upgrading a server. Start the wizard on the system where you installed the V7.1 server program.

Before you begin

Before you start the upgrade wizard, complete all preceding steps to prepare for the upgrade. Ensure that you backed up the server database and configuration files. Also, ensure that you installed the V7.1 server program, and created the directories and user ID for the server instance.

Procedure

- 1. Verify that the following requirements are met:
 - The system where you installed the V7.1 server program must have the X Window client. You also must be running an X Window server on your desktop.
 - The system must have one of the following protocols enabled. Ensure that the port that the protocol uses is not blocked by a firewall.
 - Secure Shell (SSH). Ensure that the port is set to the default value, 22.
 Also, ensure that the SSH daemon service has access rights for connecting to the system by using localhost.
 - Remote shell (rsh).
 - Remote Execution Protocol (REXEC).

The V5 server also must have one of the protocols enabled.

- You must be able to log in to the V7.1 system with the user ID that you created for the server instance by using the SSH, rsh, or REXEC protocol. When you use the wizard, you must provide this user ID and password to access that system.
- 2. Start the upgrade wizard, **dsmupgdx**, from the V7.1 server installation directory. Log in by using the root user ID and issue this command:

/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmupgdx

3. Follow the instructions to complete the upgrade. The upgrade wizard can be stopped and restarted, but the server will not be operational until the entire upgrade process is complete. Read all messages that are displayed for each phase of the upgrade process in the message display area within the wizard. Informational messages might require your attention.

Migration scenario 4: Using the network method and the command line

Use this procedure if you are migrating the server database by using the network method and the command line. By applying the network method, you simultaneously extract data from the original database and load the data into the new database over a network connection. By using administrative commands, you migrate the system manually.

Procedure

To migrate the system by using Migration scenario 4, complete the following steps:

- 1. Ensure that you have completed the planning tasks. See Chapter 13, "Planning the migration," on page 365.
- 2. Ensure that you have completed the preparation tasks. See Chapter 14, "Preparing for the migration," on page 373.
- 3. Complete the tasks that are described in the following topics:
 - a. "Migration scenario 4: Preparing the database of the V5 server"
 - b. "Migration scenario 4: Installing the V7.1 server" on page 413
 - c. "Migration scenario 4: Setting up devices" on page 416
 - d. "Migration scenario 4: Creating the user ID and directories for the server instance" on page 417
 - e. "Migration scenario 4: Creating the server instance and database" on page 418
 - f. "Migration scenario 4: Moving the server database over a network" on page 420
 - g. "Migration scenario 4: Configuring the system for database backup" on page 422

What to do next

After you complete the planning, preparation, and migration steps, complete the post migration tasks. See Chapter 16, "Taking the first steps after migration," on page 425.

Migration scenario 4: Preparing the database of the V5 server

Before you extract the data from the V5 server database, you must prepare the database by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility. If you have multiple servers on a single system, you must repeat this task for each server.

Before you begin

The upgrade utilities must be installed on the V5 system.

Procedure

- 1. Ensure that you completed the initial preparation steps. For instructions, see Chapter 14, "Preparing for the migration," on page 373.
- 2. Log in by using the root user ID on the V5 system.
- **3**. Change to the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading. The instance directory is the directory that contains the files such as dsmserv.dsk for the server.
- 4. Prepare the database. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to run the process in the background and direct the output to the file called prepare.out:

AIX

nohup /usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd preparedb >prepare.out 2>&1 &

HP-UX Solaris

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd preparedb >prepare.out 2>&1 &

5. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages. The final message indicates the success or failure of the operation. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to monitor the process:

tail -f prepare.out

What to do next

Ensure that the prepare operation is completed successfully before you continue to the next step. If the prepare operation fails, you might have to restart the V5 server to fix the problem and run the prepare operation again. If the server that is being upgraded is a V5.3 or V5.4 server, you might have to restore the database by using a backup. Then, you can restart the server to correct the problem.

Migration scenario 4: Installing the V7.1 server

You can install the server by using the installation wizard, console mode, or silent mode.

Before you begin

You can obtain the installation package from the product DVD or from an IBM download site such as Passport Advantage or the Tivoli Storage Manager support site.

If you plan to download the files, set the system user limit for maximum file size to unlimited to ensure that the files can be downloaded correctly.

- To query the maximum file size value, issue the following command: ulimit -Hf
- 2. If the system user limit for maximum file size is not set to unlimited, change it to unlimited by following the instructions in the documentation for your operating system.

About this task

By using the Tivoli Storage Manager installation software, you can install the following Tivoli Storage Manager components:

server

- server languages
- license
- devices
- Operations Center
- storage agent

Tip: The database (DB2) and the Global Security Kit are automatically installed when you select the Tivoli Storage Manager server component.

For more information about storage agents, see the Storage Agent User's Guide.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the system by using the root user ID.
- 2. If you are obtaining the package from an IBM download site, download the appropriate package file from one of the following websites:
 - For a new release, go to Passport Advantage at http://www.ibm.com/ software/lotus/passportadvantage/. Passport Advantage is the only website from which you can download a licensed package file.
 - For a maintenance fix, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager support site at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager.
- **3**. If you are downloading the package from one of the download sites, complete the following steps:
 - a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:
 - Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035122
 - Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035635
 - System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035637
 - b. Download the package file to the directory of your choice. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files. Also, ensure that you have executable permission for the package file.
 - **c.** If necessary, change the file permissions by issuing the following command:

chmod a+x package_name.bin

where *package_name* is like the following example:

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxx86_64.bin

In the examples, 7.1.0.000 represents the product release level. The package is large, so the download takes some time.

d. Extract the installation files by issuing the following command:

./package_name.bin

where *package_name* is like the following example:

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxx86_64.bin

The package is large, so the extraction takes some time.
4. If you plan to install the server by using the graphical interface of the IBM Installation Manager, verify that the operating system is set to the language that you require. By default, the language of the operating system is the language of the installation wizard.

On test servers only: Use the following command to bypass prerequisite checks such as the operating system and the required memory. Do not issue this command on a production server.

./install.sh -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS_TSM_REQ_CHECKS=true"

5. If you use the installation wizard, complete the following steps to begin the installation:

Option	Description
Installing from a downloaded package file:	 Change to the directory where you downloaded the package file. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command: ./install.sh
Installing from DVD media:	 Insert the DVD into the DVD drive. Tip: Ensure that the installation files are visible on the DVD drive. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command: ./install.sh

- 6. If you install the server by using the wizard, follow these instructions:
 - a. In the IBM Installation Manager window, click the **Install** icon; do not click the **Update** or **Modify** icon.
 - b. Select the components to install. You must install the license package. If you select the storage agent, you must accept the Tivoli Storage Manager for Storage Area Networks license.
- **7.** Alternatively, install the server in console mode. Review the information about installing the server in console mode and then complete the installation procedure, as described in the *Installation Guide*.
- 8. Alternatively, to install the server in silent mode, follow the instructions for an installation in silent mode in the *Installation Guide*. Review the information about installing the server in silent mode. Then, complete Steps 1 and 2 of the installation procedure.
- Correct any errors that are detected during the installation process. To view installation log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click File > View Log. To collect log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click Help > Export Data for Problem Analysis.
- Obtain any applicable fixes by going to the following website: http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager. Click Fixes (downloads) and apply any applicable fixes.
- **11**. To prevent server failures during interaction with DB2, tune the kernel parameters.

For instructions, see the section about tuning kernel parameters in the *Installation Guide*.

- **12**. Optional: To install an additional language package, use the modify function of the IBM Installation Manager.
- **13**. Optional: To upgrade to a newer version of a language package, use the update function of the IBM Installation Manager.

Migration scenario 4: Setting up devices

Set up the storage devices that you plan to use with the V7.1 server. Ensure that you set access permissions correctly for users and groups.

Procedure

To set up storage devices, follow these instructions:

- If the devices that you plan to use are controlled by the IBM device driver, complete the following steps:
 - 1. Install the IBM device driver and configure devices. Follow the instructions in the *IBM Tape Device Drivers Installation and User's Guide* at http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=ssg1S7002972.
 - 2. To set access permissions, complete one of the following actions:
 - If the system is dedicated to Tivoli Storage Manager and only the Tivoli Storage Manager administrator has access, make the device special files readable and writable to all users. Issue the following command: chmod a+rw /dev/IBMtapex

where x is a number that is assigned to a device. For example, a device drive can be named /dev/IBMtape0, where 0 is the device number.

 Restrict access to a group by creating a group and adding each instance user ID for Tivoli Storage Manager to that group. Then, change the ownership of the device special files to belong to the group, and make the device special files readable and writable to the group. Issue the following command:

chmod g+rw /dev/IBMtapex

where *x* is a number that is assigned to a device.

- If the devices that you plan to use are controlled by the Tivoli Storage Manager device driver, complete the following steps:
 - 1. Log in as the root user.
 - 2. Grant read and write access.
 - To grant read and write access to all users, issue the following command: /opt/tivoli/tsm/devices/bin/autoconf -a
 - To grant read and write access to only the group, issue the following command:

/opt/tivoli/tsm/devices/bin/autoconf -g

For more information about setting up devices, see the section about attaching devices to the server in the *Administrator's Guide*.

Migration scenario 4: Creating the user ID and directories for the server instance

Create the user ID that will own the server instance. Also, create the directories that the server instance will use for database and recovery logs.

Before you begin

To review the information about planning space for the server, see "Estimating database and recovery log requirements" on page 366.

Procedure

1. Create a user ID and group that will be the owner of the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance. You will use this user ID when you create the server instance in a later step.

Restriction: In the user ID, only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_) can be used. The user ID and group name must comply with the following rules:

- The length must be 8 characters or less.
- The user ID and group name cannot start with ibm, sql, sys, or a numeral.
- The user ID and group name cannot be user, admin, guest, public, local, or any SQL reserved word.

For example, create user ID tsminst1 in group tsmsrvrs. The following examples show how to create this user ID and group by using operating system commands:

```
# groupadd tsmsrvrs
# useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/bash tsminst1
# passwd tsminst1
```

- 2. Log out and log in to your system again by using the new user ID and password. Use an interactive login program, such as telnet, so that you are prompted for the password and can change it if necessary.
- **3.** If a configuration profile does not exist for the user ID, create the file. For example, create a .profile file if you are using the Korn shell (ksh).
- 4. Ensure that you are logged in with the user ID that you created. Then, create the directories that the server requires.

Unique, empty directories are required for each item that is shown in the following table. Create the database directories, the active log directory, and the archive log directory on different physical volumes. For space requirements, see "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The instance directory for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsminst1	
The database directories	<pre>mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb001 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb002 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb003 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb004</pre>	

Table 65. Worksheet for creating required directories

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
Active log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmlog	
Archive log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmlogmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlogfailover	

Table 65. Worksheet for creating required directories (continued)

When a server is initially created by using the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility or the configuration wizard, a server database and recovery log are created. In addition, files are created to hold database information that is used by the database manager.

5. Create more logical volumes and mount the volumes on the directories that were created in the previous step.

Migration scenario 4: Creating the server instance and database

Create the server instance and format files for an empty V7.1 database.

Procedure

1. Log in to the system where you installed the V7.1 program by using the root user ID.

Verify the following items:

- The home directory for the user, /home/tsminst1, exists. If there is no home directory, you must create it.
- The instance directory stores the following core files that are generated by the Tivoli Storage Manager server:
 - The server options file, dsmserv.opt
 - The server key database file, cert.kdb, and the .arm files, which are used by clients and other servers to import the Secure Sockets Layer certificates of the server
 - The device configuration file, if the DEVCONFIG server option does not specify a fully qualified name
 - The volume history file, if the VOLUMEHISTORY server option does not specify a fully qualified name
 - Volumes for storage pools of the FILE device type, if the directory for the device class is not fully specified, or not fully qualified
 - User exits
 - Trace output, if it is not fully qualified
- A shell configuration file, for example, a .profile file, exists in the home directory. The root user and instance user ID must have write permission to this file. For more information about the shell

configuration file, go to the DB2 information center at: http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/v10r5. Search for information about Linux and UNIX environment variable settings.

2. Create a Tivoli Storage Manager instance by using the **db2icrt** command.

Enter the following command on one line. For the instance name, specify the user ID that you created to own the instance:

/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2icrt -a server -s ese -u
user_id instance_name

For example, if the user ID for this instance is tsminst1, use the following command to create the instance:

```
/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2icrt -a server -s ese -u
tsminst1 tsminst1
```

Remember: From this point on, use this new user ID when you configure the Tivoli Storage Manager server. Log out of the root user ID, and log in by using the user ID that is the instance owner.

- **3.** Log in to the system by using the user ID that owns the V7.1 server instance (the instance user ID).
- 4. Copy the server options file from the V5 server to the instance directory that you created for the V7.1 server. The server options file is typically named dsmserv.opt. For example, if you created the instance directory that is shown in the example for creating directories, copy the file into the following directory:

/tsminst1

Ensure that the instance user ID has ownership of or read/write permission for the server options file.

- 5. Edit the server options file.
 - a. Remove any options that are not supported for V7.1. For the list of deleted options, see Table 29 on page 67.
 - b. Verify that the server options file contains at least one VOLUMEHISTORY option and at least one DEVCONFIG option. By specifying these options, you ensure that a volume history file and a device configuration file are generated and updated automatically. If you must restore the database, these files are required.
 - **c**. Verify that the server options file includes the TXNGROUPMAX option with a value, and if it does, what the value is. You might want to change the current value because the default value for this option changed from 256 to 4096, starting in V6. The increased value can improve the performance for data movement operations such as storage pool migration and storage pool backup.
 - If the server options file does not include this option, the server automatically uses the new default value, 4096.
 - If the specified value is less than 4096, consider increasing the value, or removing the option so that, when the server is restarted, the new default value is applied.
- 6. Change the default path for the database to be the same as the instance directory for the server. Issue the command:

db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath instance_directory

For example:

db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath /tsminst1

7. Modify the library path to use the version of the IBM Global Security Kit (GSKit) that is installed with the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

You must update the following files to set the library path when DB2 or the Tivoli Storage Manager server is started:

- instance_directory/sqllib/usercshrc
- instance_directory/sqllib/userprofile

For the *instance_directory*/sqllib/usercshrc file, add the following line: setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH /usr/local/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH

For the *instance_directory*/sqllib/userprofile file, add the following lines: LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/usr/local/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH export LD_LIBRARY_PATH

Verify the library path settings and ensure that the GSKit version is 8.0.14.14 or later. Issue the following commands from the instance home directory, for example, /home/tsminst1:

echo \$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
gsk8capicmd_64 -version
gsk8ver_64

If the GSKit version is not 8.0.14.14 or later, you must reinstall the Tivoli Storage Manager server. The reinstallation ensures that the correct GSKit version is available.

- 8. Change to the instance directory that you created for the server.
- 9. Create and format the database and recovery logs by using the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** command. In the command, specify the directories that you created for the database and logs. The directories must be empty.

For example, to get an active log size of 16 GB or 16384 MB, which is the default size, issue the following command, on one line:

```
/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmserv loadformat \
dbdir=/tsmdb001,/tsmdb002,/tsmdb003,/tsmdb004 \
activelogsize=16384 activelogdirectory=/tsmlog \
mirrorlogdirectory=/tsmlogmirror archlogdirectory=/tsmarchlog
```

For more information about creating and formatting a database, see Appendix B, "Utilities, scripts, and commands for server upgrade and migration," on page 521.

10. Monitor the process for errors and warning messages. The final message indicates the success or failure of the operation.

Migration scenario 4: Moving the server database over a network

Move the database by starting the insertion process for the V7.1 server to accept the server database. Then, start the extraction process for the V5 server to extract and send the database.

Before you begin

Ensure that the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server and V7.1 server are not running.

Procedure

To move the server database over a network, complete the following steps:

1. Verify that there is a good network connection between the two systems.

2. Start the insertion process on the V7.1 server to accept the database. Use the DSMSERV INSERTDB command. To monitor the process, direct the output of the process to a file. For example, to start the server, allow the default time of 60 minutes for the V5 server to contact the V7.1 server, and direct the process output to the insert.out file, use this command:

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmserv insertdb \
sesswait=60 >insert.out 2>&1 &

For more information about inserting data, see Appendix B, "Utilities, scripts, and commands for server upgrade and migration," on page 521.

The server starts and waits up to 60 minutes to be contacted by the original server. Some time might pass during which no messages are issued. During this time, DB2 operations are running in the background. Optional: To verify that operations are continuing as expected, monitor the processor and I/O usage for the server process and the corresponding DB2 process.

3. Monitor the output of the DSMSERV INSERTDB process. Verify that the DSMSERV INSERTDB process issues the following message before you continue to the next step:

ANR1336I INSERTDB: Ready for connections from the source server

Issue the following command to monitor the process output in the insert.out file:

tail -f insert.out

4. Start the data extraction from the original server by using the DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB command. Issue the command from the V5 server directory. Specify the TCP/IP address and port for the V7.1 server. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring. For example, enter the following command on one line:

AIX

nohup /usr/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd extractdb \
hladdress=9.11.25.124 lladdress=1500 >extract.out 2>&1 &

HP-UX Solaris

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/upgrade/bin/dsmupgrd extractdb \
hladdress=9.11.25.124 lladdress=1500 >extract.out 2>&1 &

For more information about extracting data, see Appendix B, "Utilities, scripts, and commands for server upgrade and migration," on page 521.

5. Monitor the processes for errors and warning messages, and for items that might require attention. From the instance directory for the server that you are upgrading, issue the following command to monitor the extraction process: tail -f extract.out

The length of time that the process runs depends on the size of the database, the hardware, and the network.

6. Examine the process outputs for the extraction and insertion processes to find the messages that indicate the success or failure of the operations.

Process	Success message	Failure message
Extraction	ANR1382I EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed.	ANR1396E EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed with errors.

Process	Success message	Failure message
Insertion	ANR1395I INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed.	ANR1396E INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed with errors.

Migration scenario 4: Configuring the system for database backup

If you did not use the upgrade wizard, you must complete the configuration for the database backup manually.

About this task

Starting with Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1, it is no longer necessary to set the API password during a manual configuration of the server. If you set the API password during the manual configuration process, attempts to back up the database might fail.

Complete the following steps before you issue either the **BACKUP DB** or the **RESTORE DB** command.

Attention: If the database is unusable, the entire Tivoli Storage Manager server is unavailable. If a database is lost and cannot be recovered, it might be difficult or impossible to recover data that was managed by that server. Therefore, it is critically important to back up the database.

In the following commands, replace the example values with your actual values. The examples use tsminst1 for the server instance user ID, /tsminst1 for the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance directory, and /home/tsminst1 as the home directory of the server instance user.

Procedure

- 1. Set the Tivoli Storage Manager API environment-variable configuration for the database instance:
 - a. Log in by using the tsminst1 user ID.
 - b. When user tsminst1 is logged in, ensure that the DB2 environment is correctly initialized. The DB2 environment is initialized by running the /home/tsminst1/sqllib/db2profile script, which normally runs automatically from the profile of the user ID. Ensure that the .profile file exists in the home directory of the instance user, for example, /home/tsminst1/.profile. If .profile does not run the db2profile script, add the following lines:
- c. In the *instance directory*/sqllib/userprofile file, add the following lines:

DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory/tsmdbmgr.opt DSMI_DIR=server_bin_directory/dbbkapi DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory export DSMI_CONFIG_DSMI_DIR_DSMI_LOG

- d. In the *instance_directory*/sqllib/usercshrc file, add the following lines:
 - setenv DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory/tsmdbmgr.opt
 setenv DSMI_DIR=server_bin_directory/dbbkapi
 setenv DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory

Log out and log in again as tsminst1, or issue this command:
 ~'.profile

Ensure that you enter a space after the initial dot (.) character.

3. Create a file that is named tsmdbmgr.opt in the server instance directory, which is in the /tsminst1 directory in this example, and add the following line: SERVERNAME TSMDBMGR_TSMINST1

The value for SERVERNAME must be consistent in the tsmdbmgr.opt and dsm.sys files.

4. Locate the Tivoli Storage Manager API dsm.sys configuration file. By default, the dsm.sys file is in the following location:

server_bin_directory/dbbkapi/dsm.sys

5. As root user, add the following lines to the dsm.sys configuration file:

```
servername TSMDBMGR_TSMINST1
commmethod tcpip
tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport 1500
errorlogname /tsminst1
nodename $$ TSMDBMGR $$
```

where

- servername matches the servername value in the tsmdbmgr.opt file.
- commmethod specifies the client API that is used to contact the server for database backup. This value can be tcpip or sharedmem. For more information about shared memory, see Step 6.
- tcpserveraddr specifies the server address that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be localhost.
- tcpport specifies the port number that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. Ensure that you enter the same tcpport value that is specified in the dsmserv.opt server options file.
- errorlogname specifies the error log where the client API logs errors that are encountered during a database backup. This log is typically in the server instance directory. However, this log can be placed in any location where the instance user ID has write-permission.
- nodename specifies the node name that the client API uses to connect to the server during a database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be \$\$_TSMDBMGR_\$\$.

Do not add the PASSWORDACCESS generate option to the dsm.sys configuration file. This option can cause the database backup to fail.

- 6. Optional: Configure the server to back up the database by using shared memory. In this way, you might be able to reduce the processor load and improve throughput. Complete the following steps:
 - a. Review the dsmserv.opt file. If the following lines are not in the file, add them:

commmethod sharedmem
shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port to use for shared memory.

b. In the dsm.sys configuration file, locate the following lines:

commmethod tcpip
tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport port_number

Replace the specified lines with the following lines: commmethod sharedmem shmport port_number

where *port_number* specifies the port to use for shared memory.

Chapter 16. Taking the first steps after migration

Verify that the server was migrated and can operate normally. The steps include starting the server, registering licenses, and backing up the database. After you complete those steps, you can begin operations and monitor the migrated server.

Procedure

Complete the following tasks:

- 1. "Configuring server options for server database maintenance"
- 2. "Starting the server" on page 426
- 3. "Verifying the migration results" on page 426
- 4. "Registering licenses" on page 427
- 5. "Updating device path information" on page 428
- 6. "Backing up the database" on page 428
- 7. "Changing the host name for the Tivoli Storage Manager server" on page 429
- 8. "Updating the tcpserveraddress option" on page 430
- 9. "Setting the IP address of the server" on page 430
- 10. "Migrating data from tape to DISK or FILE devices" on page 431
- 11. "Restoring backup sets" on page 432
- 12. "Updating automation" on page 433
- 13. "Beginning operations and monitoring the server" on page 433

What to do next

After you migrate the server to V7.1, you can authenticate passwords with the LDAP directory server, or authenticate passwords with the Tivoli Storage Manager server. Passwords that are authenticated with the LDAP directory server can provide enhanced system security. For details, see the section about managing passwords and logon procedures in the *Administrator's Guide*.

Configuring server options for server database maintenance

To help avoid problems with database growth and server performance, the server automatically monitors its database tables and reorganizes them when needed. Before starting the server for production use, set server options to control when reorganization runs. If you plan to use data deduplication, ensure that the option to run index reorganization is enabled.

About this task

Table and index reorganization requires significant processor resources, active log space, and archive log space. Because database backup takes precedence over reorganization, select the time and duration for reorganization to ensure that the processes do not overlap and reorganization can be completed. For more information about scheduling reorganization, see the *Administrator's Guide*.

Procedure

1. Modify the server options.

Edit the server options file, dsmserv.opt, in the server instance directory. Follow these guidelines when you edit the server options file:

- To activate an option, remove the asterisk at the beginning of the line.
- Begin entering an option on any line.
- Enter only one option per line. The entire option with its value must be on one line.
- If you have multiple entries for an option in the file, the server uses the last entry.
- To view available server options, see the sample file, dsmserv.opt.smp, in the /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin directory.
- 2. If you plan to use data deduplication, enable the ALLOWREORGINDEX server option. Add the following option and value to the server options file: allowreorgindex yes
- **3**. Set two server options that control when reorganization starts and how long it runs. Select a time and duration so that reorganization runs when you expect that the server is least busy. These server options control both table and index reorganization processes.
 - a. Set the time for reorganization to start by using the REORGBEGINTIME server option. Specify the time by using the 24-hour system. For example, to set the start time for reorganization as 8:30 p.m., specify the following option and value in the server options file: reorgbegintime 20:30
 - b. Set the interval during which the server can start reorganization. For example, to specify that the server can start reorganization for four hours after the time set by the REORGBEGINTIME server option, specify the following option and value in the server options file: reorgduration 4
- 4. Optionally, enable the SAN discovery function:

sandiscovery on

Tip: By using SAN discovery, the server can automatically correct the special file name for a device if it was changed for a specified tape device.

Starting the server

To verify that the upgrade was successful, start the server.

Procedure

To start the server, follow the instructions for Linux operating systems in "Starting the server on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 325.

Verifying the migration results

After the migration, verify the operation of the V7.1 server. Monitor the server for error and warning messages, verify that storage devices are accessible to the server, and conduct tests to ensure that the system is operating as planned.

Procedure

- 1. Monitor the messages that the server issues as it starts. Watch for error and warning messages.
- 2. Verify the following items:

- a. Ensure that the storage devices of the original server are accessible to the upgraded server.
- b. Compare the device names on the new system with the names for the devices on the original system. Update definitions for the devices on the server if needed. For example, update path definitions. For instructions, see "Updating device path information" on page 428.
- **c.** Update the network address that is used by backup-archive clients, storage agents, library client servers, and other servers for communicating with the upgraded server.

Optionally, instead of making these updates, consider whether you can use the network address of the original system as the address of the new system. You might also be able to update domain name service (DNS) to point to the new system instead of the original system. Consult your network administrator.

- **3**. Verify that you can connect to the server by using an administrative client as you did for the earlier version of the server.
- 4. Run commands to get a summary of information in the database. Compare the summary with the results for the same commands before the database migration.

Tip: For more information about the commands that are run before a database migration, see "Creating a summary of database contents" on page 377.

- 5. Perform backups for typical client nodes and verify that the backups work as expected.
- **6**. Verify that operations such as LAN-free data movement and library sharing work correctly.

What to do next

If the server is operating as expected and you must not revert to the previous version, return any settings that you changed to prepare for the migration back to the original values.

Registering licenses

Immediately register any Tivoli Storage Manager licensed functions that you purchased so that you do not lose data after you begin to use the server.

Procedure

Register the licenses for the Tivoli Storage Manager server components that are installed on your system by issuing the **REGISTER LICENSE** command: register license file=*installation directory*/server/bin/component name.lic

where *installation_directory* specifies the directory in which you installed the component, and *component_name* specifies the abbreviation for the component.

For example, if you installed the server in the default directory, /opt/tivoli/tsm, register the license by issuing the following command: register license file=/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/tsmbasic.lic

For example, if you installed Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition in the /opt/tivoli/tsm directory, issue the following command: register license file=/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/tsmee.lic

For example, if you installed System Storage Archive Manager in the /opt/tivoli/tsm directory, issue the following command: register license file=/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dataret.lic

Restriction: You cannot register licenses for Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail, Tivoli Storage Manager for Databases, Tivoli Storage Manager for ERP, and Tivoli Storage Manager for Space Management.

Updating device path information

If the storage area network (SAN) discovery function is not enabled, update the device path information for all drives and libraries. This step is required to ensure that storage devices can be accessed by the new system.

About this task

The SANDISCOVERY server option is available to automatically correct a special file name for a device if the file name changed because of changes in a SAN environment. If the SANDISCOVERY server option is set to OFF, update the device path information manually.

For instructions to update device path information, see the **UPDATE PATH** command in the *Administrator's Reference*.

If the SANDISCOVERY server option is set to ON, device path information for drives and libraries should be updated automatically when the V7.1 server is started.

Backing up the database

After you migrate the data, perform a full backup of the database as soon as possible. Also, back up the volume history.

Procedure

- 1. Complete the following steps:
 - a. If you did not use the instance configuration wizard to configure the server, ensure that you have completed the steps to manually configure the system for database backups.
 - b. If you used the media method for upgrade and used a tape device, remove or check out from the library the tape that was used to hold the extracted data. Prevent the tape from being reused until you are sure that the V7.1 server is operating correctly and you do not need to repeat the database insertion step.
- 2. Select the device class to be used for automatic backups of the database. From the Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command line, issue the following command:

set dbrecovery device_class_name

where *device_class_name* is the name of the device class to be used by the database manager for all automatic database backups.

For more information about selecting a device class for automatic backups, see the **SET DBRECOVERY** command in the *Administrator's Reference*.

 Back up the database by issuing the following command: backup db devclass=device class name type=full

where *device_class_name* is the name of the device class. You can specify the device class to be the same as or different from the device class that you specified with the **SET DBRECOVERY** command. If the device class is different, you receive a warning message, but the backup operation continues.

For more information about backing up the database, see the **BACKUP DB** command in the *Administrator's Reference*.

 Back up the volume history by issuing the following command: backup volhistory filenames=file_name

where *file_name* is the name of the file where volume history information will be stored.

For more information about backing up volume history, see the **BACKUP VOLHISTORY** command in the *Administrator's Reference*.

Changing the host name for the Tivoli Storage Manager server

If you must change the host name of the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server, ensure that you also update the database configuration. If you fail to update the database configuration, the Tivoli Storage Manager server might not start.

Procedure

Change the host name by completing the following steps:

- 1. Stop any Tivoli Storage Manager servers that are running on the system.
- **2**. Change the host name by using the procedures that are defined for your operating system.
- From the root user ID on the system, issue the following command: db2set -g DB2SYSTEM=newhostname

where *newhostname* is the new host name for the server.

Tip: The db2set command is in the /opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/adm directory.

4. Verify that the DB2SYSTEM value was changed by issuing the following command:

db2set -all

This command shows all configuration settings that are used by the database.

5. In the *instance directory*/sqllib directory, locate the db2nodes.cfg file. The file contains an entry that shows the previous host name, for example:
 A termon TSMMON A

0 tsmmon TSMMON 0

a. Update the entry with the new host name. The entry is similar to the following entry:

0 tsmnew *newhostname* 0

b. Save and close the changed file.

Updating the tcpserveraddress option

To ensure that all clients and servers in the system can access the V7.1 server, you must update the tcpserveraddress client option.

About this task

Set the tcpserveraddress option for all Tivoli Storage Manager clients that access the migrated server, and for all servers that communicate with the migrated server. The tcpserveraddress option must be set to the TCP/IP address of the migrated Tivoli Storage Manager server.

For instructions, see the Backup-Archive Clients Installation and User's Guide.

Setting the IP address of the server

If you plan to use server-to-server communications, ensure that other servers in the system can communicate with the V7.1 server. Update the high-level IP address of the V7.1 server and set the IP addresses of the other servers in the system accordingly.

Procedure

To update IP addresses for server-to-server communications, use Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands:

1. Update the IP address of the V7.1 server by using the **SET SERVERHLADDRESS** command. For example, to set the IP address to 9.230.99.66, issue the following command:

set serverhladdress 9.230.99.66

For more information about the **SET SERVERHLADDRESS** command and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

2. For each Tivoli Storage Manager server that will communicate with the V7.1 server, update the **HLAddress** parameter by issuing the **UPDATE SERVER** command. For example, to set the server IP address to 9.230.99.66, issue the following command:

update server server2 hladdress=9.230.99.66

- **3**. If you are sharing libraries, complete the following steps:
 - a. Verify that the V7.1 server is operating as expected. For details, see "Verifying the migration results" on page 426.

In the following three substeps, you are required to define the V7.1 server for the library manager server and delete the V5 server definition. As a result, you will not be able to revert to the V5 system.

b. On the library client server, define the V7.1 server for the library manager server. For example, to define a server with an IP address of 9.230.99.66 and a low-level address of 1500, issue the following command:

define server new_server_name serverpass=new_server_pass
hla=9.230.99.66_address lla=1500

where *new_server_name* specifies the name of the V7.1 server.

c. On the library client server, update the shared library by using the **UPDATE LIBRARY** command:

update library library name primarylibmanager=new server name

where *library_name* specifies the name of the shared library and *new_server_name* specifies the name of the V7.1 server.

d. On the library client server, delete the previous library manager server definition by using the **DELETE SERVER** command:

delete server v5_server_name

where *v5_server_name* specifies the name of the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server.

e. On the library client server, set the password for communication between servers by using the **SET SERVERPASSWORD** command:

set serverpassword lc_password

where *lc_password* specifies a password for the library client server.

f. On the library client server, reset the server verification key by using the **UPDATE SERVER** command:

update server * forcesync=yes

g. Optional: On the library client server, verify that the library client server can communicate with the library manager server by using the **AUDIT LIBRARY** command:

audit library *library_name* checklabel=barcode

where *library_name* specifies the name of the shared library.

4. If you plan to use LAN-free data movement, configure the storage agent to ensure that it can communicate with the V7.1 server. Use the **DSMSTA SETSTORAGESERVER** command. For example, issue the following command:

dsmsta setstorageserver myname=storagnt mypassword=fun4me myhladdress=agent.example.com servername=*new_server_name* serverpassword=*new_server_password* hladdress=*high_level_address* lladdress=*low_level_address*

In this example, the following variables are used:

- *new_server_name* specifies the name of the V7.1 server.
- *new_server_password* specifies the password for the V7.1 server.
- *high_level_address* specifies the high-level address of the V7.1 server.
- *low_level_address* specifies the low-level address of the V7.1 server.

Migrating data from tape to DISK or FILE devices

After the server migration, you can move the data from a tape device to a DISK or FILE device. In this way, you might be able to provide faster access to the data.

Procedure

 If you are moving data to a FILE device, define a FILE device class by using the Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command **DEFINE DEVCLASS**. For example, to define a device class named FILECLASS with a FILE device type and a maximum capacity of 50 MB, issue the following command: define devclass fileclass devtype=file maxcapacity=50m

For more information about the **DEFINE DEVCLASS** command and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

2. Define a storage pool by using the Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command **DEFINE STGPOOL**.

 For example, if you are moving data to a DISK device, to define a primary storage pool named BACKUPPOOL, issue the following command: define stgpool backuppool disk cache=yes nextstgpool=prog2

In this example, caching is enabled and PROG2 is specified as the primary storage pool to which files are migrated.

 For example, if you are moving data to a FILE device, to define a primary storage pool named FILEPOOL, issue the following command: define stgpool filepool fileclass nextstgpool=prog3

In this example, PROG3 is specified as the primary storage pool to which files are migrated.

3. Define a volume by using the administrative command **DEFINE VOLUME**. For example, to define a volume of 4 MB named /home/tsminst1/jamesvol.dsm in a storage pool named BACKUPPOOL, issue the following command:

define volume backuppool /home/tsminst1/jamesvol.dsm formatsize=4

4. To migrate data from tape to a DISK device, use the Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands **MOVE DATA** or **MOVE NODEDATA**, depending on where the data is stored and how you want to move it. For example, to move files from a storage pool volume named STGVOL.1 to storage pool BACKUPPOOL, issue the following command:

move data stgvol.1 stgpool=backuppool

5. To migrate data from tape to a FILE device, use the Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands **UPDATE STGPOOL** and **MIGRATE STGPOOL**. For example, to migrate data from the storage pool named LTOPOOL to the FILEPOOL storage pool, issue the following commands:

update stgpool ltopool nextstgpool=filepool highmig=100 migrate stgpool ltopool lowmig=0

Restoring backup sets

If you copied backup sets to a temporary location before the migration, you might want to move the backup sets to another location after the migration. You must remove existing entries in the server database and then re-create the backup sets in their new location.

Procedure

 Delete the backup set entries from the server database by issuing the Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command **DELETE BACKUPSET**. For example, to delete a backup set entry named PERS_DATA.3099, issue the following command: delete backupset pers data.3099

For more information about the **DELETE BACKUPSET** command and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

2. Re-create a backup set by issuing the Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command **DEFINE BACKUPSET**. For example, to define the PERS_DATA backup set that belongs to client node JANE, issue the following command:

define backupset jane pers_data devclass=agadm
volumes=vol1,vol2 retention=50
description="sector 7 base image"

In this example, volumes VOL001 and VOL002 contain the data for the backup set. The backup set is retained on the server for 50 days. The volumes are to be read by a device that is assigned to the AGADM device class. A description, sector 7 base image, is included.

Updating automation

After you migrate the data, you might need to modify administrative schedules that were defined in V5 because of changes in command syntax. Implement and verify changes to any automation or scripts that were identified as requiring modification in the planning process.

About this task

Important: Ensure that automation includes a backup of the database. Back up the database at least once per day.

Beginning operations and monitoring the server

When you start running the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server, monitor the space that is used by the server. Ensure that the amount of space is adequate.

Procedure

To monitor the V7.1 server and make any required adjustments, complete the following steps:

1. Monitor the active log to ensure that the size is correct for the workload that is handled by the server instance.

When the server workload reaches its typical expected level, the space that is used by the active log is 80% - 90% of the space that is available to the active log directory. At that point, you might need to increase the amount of space. Whether you must increase the space depends on the types of transactions in the server workload. Transaction characteristics affect how the active log space is used.

The following transaction characteristics can affect the space usage in the active log:

- The number and size of files in backup operations
 - Clients such as file servers that back up large numbers of small files can cause large numbers of transactions that are completed quickly. The transactions might use a large amount of space in the active log, but for a short time.
 - Clients such as a mail server or a database server that back up large chunks of data in a few transactions can cause small numbers of transactions that take a long time. The transactions might use a small amount of space in the active log, but for a long time.
- Network connection types
 - Backup operations that occur over fast network connections cause transactions that are completed more quickly. The transactions use space in the active log for a shorter time.
 - Backup operations that occur over relatively slower connections cause transactions that take a longer time to be completed. The transactions use space in the active log for a longer time.

If the server is handling transactions with a wide variety of characteristics, the space that is used for the active log might increase and decrease significantly over time. For such a server, you might need to ensure that the active log typically has a smaller percentage of its space used. The extra space allows the active log to grow for transactions that take a long time.

2. Monitor the archive log to ensure that space is always available.

Remember: If the archive log becomes full, and the archive failover log becomes full, the active log can become full, and the server stops. The goal is to make enough space available to the archive log so that it never uses all available space.

You are likely to notice the following pattern:

- a. Initially, the archive log grows rapidly as typical client-backup operations occur.
- b. Database backups occur regularly, either as scheduled or done manually.
- c. After full database backups occur, log pruning occurs automatically. The space that is used by the archive log decreases when the pruning occurs.
- d. Normal client operations continue, and the archive log grows again.
- e. Database backups occur regularly, and log pruning occurs as often as full database backups occur.

With this pattern, the archive log grows initially, decreases, and then might grow again. Over time, as normal operations continue, the amount of space that is used by the archive log should reach a relatively constant level.

If the archive log continues to grow, consider taking one or both of these actions:

• Add space to the archive log. You might need to move the archive log to a different file system.

For information about moving the archive log, see the Administrator's Guide.

- Increase the frequency of full database backups so that log pruning occurs more frequently.
- **3**. If you defined a directory for the archive failover log, determine whether any logs are stored in that directory during normal operations. If the failover log space is being used, consider increasing the size of the archive log. The goal is to use the archive failover log only under unusual conditions, not in normal operation.

Chapter 17. Troubleshooting the migration of a V5 server from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

In case you encounter issues during or after the migration, instructions are available for reverting the server to its previous version.

Reverting from V7.1 to the previous V5 server version

If you follow the steps in the migration procedure, you can revert to the V5 server at any point along the migration path.

Before you begin

Requirement: The V5 server must remain installed on the original system throughout the migration process.

Procedure

To restore the V5 server, complete the following steps:

1. On the V5 system, for each sequential-access storage pool on tape, set the **REUSEDELAY** parameter to the number of days during which you want to be able to revert to the V7.1 server, if necessary.

For example, if you want to be able to revert to the V7.1 server for up to 30 days after you revert to V5, set the **REUSEDELAY** parameter to 31 days. Issue the following administrative command:

update stgpool *sequential_access_storage_pool* reusedelay=31

where *sequential_access_storage_pool* specifies the name of the storage pool. By specifying the **REUSEDELAY** parameter, you can help prevent backup-archive client data loss.

For more information about the **UPDATE STGPOOL** command and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

For all tape volumes that were used by the V5 server, specify readwrite access mode. Issue the following administrative command:

update volume tape_volume access=readwrite

where *tape_volume* specifies the name of the tape volume.

3. For each copy storage pool that was used by the V5 server, change the value of the **RECLAIM** parameter from 100 to the value that was set before the migration. Issue the following administrative command:

update stgpool copy_storage_pool reclaim=reclaim_value

where *copy_storage_pool* is the name of the copy storage pool and *reclaim_value* is the reclamation value that was used before the migration.

 Start the V5 server by issuing the following administrative command: ./dsmserv

Part 3. Migrating Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers on z/OS systems to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z

An IBM Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server that runs on a z/OS system can be migrated to a V7.1 server that runs on AIX or Linux on System z. During the migration, IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media must be installed on the V5 server to ensure continued access to data stored on the z/OS system.

About this task

The cross-platform migration offers the following advantages:

- Client data that is stored on the z/OS system can be accessed from the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server through Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media. You can retain existing storage hardware that uses Fiber Connector (FICON[®]) channel technology.
- The Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 system can be expanded by using either z/OS or UNIX storage systems.

The process for migrating the Tivoli Storage Manager server from a z/OS operating system to AIX or Linux on System z is similar to the upgrade process from Tivoli Storage Manager V5 to V7.1 on the same operating system. For the cross-platform migration, you must complete additional steps to ensure that data on z/OS systems can be accessed from the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server.

Chapter 18. Migration overview

Before starting the cross-platform migration, review the migration road map, the scenarios for migration, and related information so that you can plan the migration process.

Migration road map

The migration road map provides links to information to help you plan, prepare, and complete the migration process.

To plan and prepare for the migration process, complete the following steps:

- 1. Review information about the Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media product. For details, see the *Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media Installation and Configuration Guide.*
- **2**. Review the migration scenarios: Scenarios for migrating a server from a z/OS system to AIX or Linux on System *z*.
- **3**. Familiarize yourself with the major phases in the migration process: "The migration process" on page 443.
- 4. Read about the changes that can be expected in the system following the migration: "Operational changes and requirements" on page 453.
- 5. Review the guidelines for planning the migration: Chapter 19, "Planning the migration," on page 455.
- 6. Select the migration method to use, and plan for the hardware, software, and storage space requirements for your server and environment.
- 7. Complete the preparation steps: Chapter 20, "Preparing for the migration," on page 473.

To migrate and configure the system, complete the following steps:

- 1. Follow the migration instructions: Chapter 21, "Migrating the z/OS server database to the V7.1 server," on page 491.
- 2. Configure the z/OS media server devices: Chapter 22, "Configuring the z/OS media server devices on the new server," on page 497.
- **3**. Complete the migration process: Chapter 23, "Taking the first steps after the migration," on page 499.

Scenarios for migrating a server from a z/OS system to AIX or Linux on System z

You can migrate the server by using the media method, the network method, or a hybrid upgrade-migration method.

With the media method, you extract data from the original database to media, and then load the data into the new database. The following figure illustrates the media method.



Figure 13. Migrating the server by using the media method

For information about selecting an appropriate level for a V5 server before a migration, see "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36.

Migrating V5 servers on z/OS systems to V7 on AIX or Linux systems

With the network method, you simultaneously extract data from the original database and load the data into the new database. The following figure illustrates the network method.



Figure 14. Migrating the server by using the network method

For information about selecting an appropriate level for a V5 server before a migration, see "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36.

Migrating V5 servers on z/OS systems to V7 on AIX or Linux systems

Expert users might want to use a third option, the hybrid upgrade-migration method, for migrating the server. The hybrid upgrade-migration method uses a combination of export and import operations along with standard V7 upgrade methods. For information about the hybrid upgrade-migration method, and for a comparison of all three options, see "Comparison of database migration methods" on page 452.

After completing the cross-platform migration steps, you have more flexibility in terms of data storage. You can select from the following main options:

- You can continue to use the z/OS system for data storage. In this case, the data is stored on tape volumes, and the contents are accessed by using FICON attached storage devices.
- You can gradually move the data from the z/OS storage system, and use the V7.1 system on AIX or Linux on System z for data storage.

Related concepts:

"Migration process overview" on page 444 "Key tasks in the migration process" on page 446 "Comparison of database migration methods" on page 452

Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media overview

With IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media, you can use a Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 system to access data that is stored on a z/OS system.

The Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media server gives the Tivoli Storage Manager server access to sequential storage media on the z/OS system. The z/OS media server manages the tape storage that was used by the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server on the z/OS system.

Only Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 servers that are running on AIX or Linux on System z operating systems can work with Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media.

For more information, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager V6.3 Information Center at http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/tsminfo/v6r3 and see the section about integrating storage from Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media.

Related concepts:

"Migration process overview" on page 444

The migration process

Migrating from Tivoli Storage Manager V5 running on z/OS to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z requires considerable planning. Before you begin, familiarize yourself with the migration overview, the key tasks in the migration process, and the utilities that are used for migration.

Migration process overview

Before starting the migration process, be aware of the restrictions that apply, and review the descriptions of system operations before and after the migration.

The following restrictions apply to the migration:

- The V5 server running on z/OS can be migrated only to an AIX or Linux on System z system.
- Client data that is stored in server storage pools on tape can remain on the existing z/OS system, but database information must be migrated. Client data that is stored on random-access disks or existing FILE storage pools must be moved to tape before the migration begins.

Before the migration, the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server uses FICON attached storage devices to access z/OS storage media.

The following figure illustrates operations before the migration.





After you migrate your system to a V7.1 server on AIX, the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server uses Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media to access z/OS storage media.

The following figure illustrates the system after migration to a V7.1 server on AIX.



z/OS storage media

Figure 16. Operations after migration to a V7.1 server running on AIX

After you migrate your system to a V7.1 server on Linux on System z, the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server uses Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media to access z/OS storage media.

The following figure illustrates the system after the migration to a V7.1 server on Linux on System z.



Figure 17. Operations after migration to a V7.1 server running on Linux on System z

Related concepts:

"Key tasks in the migration process"

"Device migration" on page 448

"Comparison of database migration methods" on page 452

Key tasks in the migration process

The migration process includes installing Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media on the V5 source server and installing Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 on the target server. Other tasks include backing up data, and then migrating data from the V5 source server to the V7.1 target server.

- 1. Prepare the system for migration.
 - a. On the target server, install Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 and configure a database instance.
 - b. On the source server, upgrade Tivoli Storage Manager to V5.5.6 or later.
 - c. On the source server, install Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media.
 - d. On the source server, use the **ZMSPREPARE** command to analyze the server and generate a report. The information in the report will help to identify the steps that must be completed before migration.
 - e. Back up, move, or delete data that is stored on DISK or FILE storage pools. Prevent new data from being stored on DISK or FILE storage pools.
 - f. Back up the source server database to tape.

Migrating V5 servers on z/OS systems to V7 on AIX or Linux systems

Important: Ensure that a full database backup is available onsite. A backup is essential if the migration process is interrupted or rolled back. The backup must be stored on tape because FILE volumes cannot be in use during the migration process.

- 2. Move the data from the source database to the target database.
- 3. Complete device configuration and related tasks.
 - a. Add new devices to the target server as needed by the Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media server.
 - b. Define new DISK and FILE storage pools on the target server. Restore data from the backups of the DISK and FILE storage pools that were on the z/OS system.
 - **c.** If any z/OS DISK or FILE volumes were marked as destroyed, delete those volumes.

Utilities and commands for data migration

Tivoli Storage Manager provides utilities and a command to help you move data from a V5 system running on z/OS to the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 system running on AIX or Linux on System z.

Use the following utilities for data migration:

DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB

The **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB** utility extracts data from the server database.

DSMSERV INSERTDB

The **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility moves extracted data into a new database.

DSMSERV LOADFORMAT

The **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** utility formats an empty database in preparation for inserting extracted data into the empty database.

DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB

The **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility prepares the database for migration by verifying that all premigration tasks are completed.

Use the following command for data migration:

ZMSPREPARE

The **ZMSPREPARE** command analyzes the V5 server and provides data to help you identify steps to be completed before the migration.

Many of the utilities and commands that are used for server upgrade are also used for server migration. For more information, see Appendix B, "Utilities, scripts, and commands for server upgrade and migration," on page 521.

Related reference:

"ZMSPREPARE (Prepare a server on a z/OS system for migration)" on page 541

Related information:

DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB

DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB (Prepare a server database for upgrade)

Device migration

You must migrate devices to ensure that the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server running on AIX or Linux on System z can access files stored on a z/OS system. An overview of device migration is provided.

The process for device migration varies, depending on the device type and the type of data that is stored:

- Migrate tape devices by using utilities.
- Migrate data that is stored on disks and data that is written to FILE device classes by completing manual steps. The manual steps include backing up data and deleting the volumes and pools that are no longer required.

Backing up primary storage pools on disk

Ensure that you have tape volumes available for backing up data that is stored by using DISK or FILE devices:

- At a minimum, tape volumes must be available for backing up the primary storage pool.
- To optimize the process, create a second, onsite backup of the primary storage pool. By creating one backup storage pool offsite and another onsite, you fulfill disaster recovery requirements for offsite storage. At the same time, volumes from the second pool are available onsite to restore data immediately after migration.

After the disk primary storage pool volumes are backed up, mark them as destroyed. By taking this step, you will make it possible to implement backup and restore procedures that minimize migration time. In addition, it will be easier to revert to the V5 system if necessary.

Backing up non-primary storage pools on disk

For copy storage pools and active-data storage pools that are written to FILE device classes, you will back up or reassign the data to new storage pools. Then, you will delete the data on disks.

For non-storage pool data that is written to FILE device classes, you will remove the following types of data: database backups, database snapshots, database memory dumps, recovery plan files, export volumes, and backup sets. You will not remove sequential storage pool volumes.

Conversion of z/OS device classes

As part of the migration process, the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility converts z/OS device classes into AIX or Linux on System z device classes. The conversion of device classes takes place in the following way:

- The DISK device class is mapped to the predefined DISK device class for the AIX or Linux on System z server.
- All device classes with the device type SERVER are converted to the AIX or Linux on System z equivalent.
- FILE device class attributes that are specific to the z/OS operating system are discarded during migration because the newly installed z/OS media server does not support the previously used FILE device type. Instead, new FILE device classes must be defined after the migration to use sequential FILE storage via the z/OS media server.

Migrating V5 servers on z/OS systems to V7 on AIX or Linux systems

- Tape and FILE device classes are set up to use the z/OS media server in the following way:
 - Tape device classes that are not configured for LAN-free access are updated to use the z/OS media server. The DSMSERV INSERTDB utility defines a new library and path for each device class, and sets up the libraries to access the z/OS media server.
 - Tape device classes that are configured for LAN-free access do *not* remain configured for LAN-free access. These tape device classes all have shared or external libraries that are associated with them. The libraries are deleted and replaced with libraries and paths that support access through the z/OS media server. After the migration, tape device classes that were configured for LAN-free access use the z/OS media server to communicate by using a LAN. The Tivoli Storage Manager storage agent facilitates this communication.
 - Device class attributes that are common across z/OS, AIX, and Linux on System z platforms are preserved.
 - Device class attributes that are used only for z/OS are carried over into new device class attributes used by the z/OS media server.
 - Device class attributes that are used on AIX and Linux on System z systems, but that did not exist on the z/OS system, are set to usable default values.

Role of Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media

After the migration, Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media takes over the management of tape data that was stored on the V5 server running on z/OS. For this reason, you must install Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media on the V5 server during the preparation phase. In addition, you must use the **DEFINE SERVER** command to define a new server on the V5 server to correspond to the z/OS media server. The new server is used during the migration phase to access upgrade media. After the migration is complete, the server is used to access client data stored on tape.

The following graphic illustrates how Tivoli Storage Manager uses the z/OS media server to access z/OS storage media.



Figure 18. Role of z/OS media server in the migrated system

Status of tape volumes

The **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility changes the status of all tape volumes whose status is FILLING to FULL. This change is required because the z/OS media server cannot append to tape volumes that were originally written by Tivoli Storage Manager running on z/OS.

Backup sets

Review the backup set information to understand which backup sets defined on the V5 server before the migration are usable after the migration.

Backup sets that use tape devices are migrated automatically.

Backup sets that use FILE device classes are not migrated. Backup sets that use FILE device classes cannot be regenerated, moved, or accessed after the migration.

During the migration process, you can use the **ZMSPREPARE** command to generate a list of backup sets that use FILE device classes. After that, you can use the **DELETE BACKUPSET** command to delete each backup set that uses a FILE device class.

Related reference:

"ZMSPREPARE (Prepare a server on a z/OS system for migration)" on page 541
Effects of migration on storage agents

After the system is migrated, a storage agent that is installed on a Tivoli Storage Manager client can send data to and receive data from storage devices that are attached to a z/OS media server.

LAN-free data movement to and from z/OS storage devices is not possible. Instead, the storage agent that is installed on the Tivoli Storage Manager client communicates with the z/OS media server by using a LAN. Client data can be read or written by using z/OS media server file or tape storage without the data passing through the Tivoli Storage Manager server. The following figure illustrates the communication channels.



Figure 19. Storage agent communicating with the z/OS media server by using a LAN

Requirement: To connect to a V7.1 server in a system that uses the z/OS media server, storage agents must be at V7.1. If you have storage agents at earlier versions, upgrade them to V7.1 as part of the migration process.

For more information about data movement in a z/OS media server environment, see the *Storage Agent User's Guide*.

Protection for client data and the server during the process

To protect client data and the server, ensure that you back up storage pools and the server database before starting the migration process. You will need these files if you must revert to the previous Tivoli Storage Manager version.

The server migration instructions provide detailed information about the backup tasks that must be completed. The two main backup tasks are listed here:

- "Backing up configuration information" on page 474
- "Backing up the server database" on page 488

Tip: When you back up the database, make two copies to protect the backup from media failures. Ensure that at least one full database backup is available onsite. If you must restore the database after a failed upgrade, having an onsite backup saves time.

For more information about protecting the database, see "Database protection and recovery" on page 5.

Important: Do not uninstall the V5 server on the z/OS system until you verify that the migration to V7.1 was successful.

Comparison of database migration methods

You can move the V5 database to the new V7.1 system by using the media method, the network method, or the hybrid upgrade-migration method. The hybrid upgrade-migration method combines database migration with export and import operations.

Comparison of the media and network methods

The standard way to migrate the database is to use the media method or the network method:

Media method

You must extract data from the original database to media, and later load the data into the new database.

Use this method if you cannot connect the V5 system and the V7.1 system by using a high speed network.

Network method

You must simultaneously extract data from the original database and load the data into the new database.

Use this method if your system requires maximum performance from the upgrade utility, and the systems are connected by a high speed network.

With either method, the original server cannot be running while the data is being extracted. You can expect the Tivoli Storage Manager server to be unavailable for hours or days. The downtime depends on several factors, including the size of the database and the performance of the disk system that contains the previous database and new database.

Hybrid upgrade-migration method

If it is important to migrate the system with a minimum of downtime, you might want to use the hybrid upgrade-migration method. This method uses a combination of export and import operations, along with the standard upgrade methods. It requires detailed planning.

Before you decide to employ the hybrid upgrade-migration method, estimate the time that it takes to migrate the data by using one of the standard methods versus the hybrid method. The standard method applicable to your situation might take less time than the hybrid upgrade-migration method.

For a general description of the hybrid upgrade-migration method, see the white paper in the Tivoli Storage Manager wiki at https://www.ibm.com/ developerworks/community/wikis/home/wiki/Tivoli Storage Manager/page/Tivoli Storage Manager Version 6 Hybrid Upgrade Migration Method.

Related concepts:

"Scenarios for migrating a server from a z/OS system to AIX or Linux on System z'' on page 439

Operational changes and requirements

To prepare for changes in the Tivoli Storage Manager system following the migration, review the operational changes and requirements.

For a general description of operational changes following an upgrade to V7.1, see "Operation changes" on page 4. For a description of changes that are specific to a migration from z/OS to a system running on AIX or Linux on System z, see the following topics.

Automated message response systems

The z/OS operating system includes an automated message response feature. If you set up automated message responses for the V5 server and its messages with the ANR prefix, you might want to do the same for the newly installed z/OS media server and its messages with the ANZ prefix.

For a list of ANZ messages, see the section that describes Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media messages in the Tivoli Storage Manager V6.3 Information Center at http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/tsminfo/v6r3.

Performance considerations

Migration to the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server running on AIX or Linux on System z can result in different network throughput requirements as compared to the V5 system on z/OS. After the migration, you might see an increase in the amount of data transferred over networks connected to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. To optimize server performance, review the guidelines in this section and plan the migration accordingly.

Before setting up a network connection between the Tivoli Storage Manager server and the z/OS media server, consider the following points:

• For client connections used to back up, archive, restore, and retrieve data, the V7.1 server generally requires the same network bandwidth as the V5 server

running on a z/OS system. This is based on the assumption that the migrated V7.1 server protects the same clients as the V5 system.

- More network bandwidth is required for operations that store or retrieve data by using the z/OS media server than for operations that use a local disk or tape.
- To optimize performance, use dedicated networks for connections between the V7.1 server and the z/OS media server. Use technologies that optimize network performance and efficiency, such as jumbo frames and HiperSockets[™]. HiperSockets can be used for connections between Linux and z/OS logical partitions located on the same System z central processor complex.
- To increase the network bandwidth between the V7.1 server and the z/OS media server, consider setting up multiple interfaces specified on a single server definition. You can use a comma-delimited expression for the TCP/IP address, as in this example:

```
define server ...
hladdress=10.10.48.1,10.10.56.1
lladdress=1500...
```

If this method is used, data can be stored or retrieved by using any available network interface. You are not required to distribute storage requirements over several device classes. This method increases the available network bandwidth and supports network connection failover and load balancing.

- To optimize network performance when using the z/OS media server, ensure that both the z/OS and the Tivoli Storage Manager server systems can use a large TCP/IP window size. On z/OS, this means that the TCPIP.PROFILE TCPCONFIG statement includes the **TCPMAXRCVBUFRSIZE** parameter, which is set to the default value of 256 K or greater. On AIX, this means that the network tuning parameter **rfc1323** is set to 1, which is not the default value. On Linux, this means that the kernel parameter **net.ipv4.tcp_window_scaling** is set to the default value of 1.
- To reduce network bandwidth requirements, store backup and archive data to a V7.1 server local disk pool. Then use storage pool backup and storage pool migration to copy and move the data to z/OS media server tape storage. This method requires less network bandwidth than backing up or archiving the data directly to the z/OS media server FILE device class storage, and then moving the data to z/OS tape storage.
- If you store the data by using the z/OS media server, the single-session backup throughput might be 80% of the throughput expected when storing the data by using local storage devices. For example, assume that the throughput for backing up a large amount of data is 30 MB per second for a V5 server running on a z/OS system. Following the migration to the V7.1 server running on AIX or Linux on System z with a z/OS media server, the throughput might be reduced to 80%, or 24 MB per second.
- Consider using the Tivoli Storage Manager storage agent installed on the client system with the LAN-free communication method to back up or archive data to the z/OS media server directly. This method might reduce the network bandwidth requirements on the V7.1 server and increase backup throughput.

Chapter 19. Planning the migration

Planning for the migration to Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 is important because, in addition to installing the new software, you must move the contents of the V5 server database into the V7.1 server database.

About this task

Tivoli Storage Manager V5 servers can be upgraded directly to V7.1. However, Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 servers cannot be used with V5 clients or with other servers in the system that are at V5. Unless all V5 clients and V5 servers can be upgraded at the same time, consider upgrading the server to a level that can be used with V5 clients and V5 servers. Then, upgrade all servers and clients to V7.1 when possible. For information about the levels of the Tivoli Storage Manager server that can be used with V5 clients and V5 servers, see the following technotes:

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager Server-Client Compatibility and Upgrade Considerations

(http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21053218)

Storage-agent and library-client compatibility with the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager server

(http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21302789)

When you move data from a V5 server database to a V7.1 database, a large amount of system processing capacity is used. The move also requires a large amount of I/O activity.

In your planning, consider testing the migration process on nonproduction systems. Testing provides information about how long the migration of the server database takes, which will help you to plan for the time that the server will be unavailable. Some databases might take much longer than others to migrate.

Testing also gives you more information about the size of the new database compared to the original, giving you more precise information about database storage needs.

If you have multiple servers, consider migrating one server first, to determine how the migration process will work for your data. Use the results of the first migration process to plan for migrating the remaining servers.

Hardware and software requirements for the V5 and V7.1 servers

Before you start the migration process, ensure that the system meets hardware and software requirements for the V5 server and the V7.1 server.

During the migration process, you must upgrade the V5 server on z/OS to V5.5.6 or later. Follow the guidelines in "Determining the appropriate level for a V5 server before an upgrade" on page 36. Tivoli Storage Manager V5.5 servers on z/OS are supported at z/OS V1R7, z/OS V1R8, or later.

For information about hardware and software requirements for a V7.1 server that is running on AIX, see "Server requirements on AIX systems" on page 21.

For information about hardware and software requirements for a V7.1 server that is running on Linux on System z, see "Server requirements for Linux on System z systems" on page 29.

For the latest information about hardware and software requirements, see the Tivoli Storage Manager Supported Operating Systems technote at http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21243309.

Compatibility with other components and versions

You can install other products that deploy and use DB2 products on the same system as the Tivoli Storage Manager Version 7.1 server running on AIX or Linux on System z.

To install and use other products that use a DB2 product on the same system as the Tivoli Storage Manager server, ensure that the following criteria are met:

Table 66. Compatibility of the Tivoli Storage Manager server with other DB2 products on the system

Criterion	Instructions	
Version level	The other products that use a DB2 products must use DB2 version 9 or later. DB2 products include product encapsulation a segregation support beginning with Versi 9. Starting with this version, you can run multiple copies of DB2 products, at differ code levels, on the same system. For deta see the information about multiple DB2 copies: http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocente db2luw/v10r5.	
User IDs and directories	Ensure that the user IDs, fence user IDs, installation location, other directories, and related information are not shared across DB2 installations. Your specifications must be different from the IDs and locations that you used for the Tivoli Storage Manager server installation and configuration. If you used the dsmicfgx wizard or dsmupgdx wizard to configure Version 7.1, or upgrade the server from Version 5.5, these are values that you entered when running the wizard. If you used the manual configuration for Version 7.1 or upgrade from Version 5.5 procedures, review the procedures that you used if necessary to recall the values that were used for the server.	

Criterion	Instructions
Resource allocation	Consider the resources and capability of the system compared to the requirements for both the Tivoli Storage Manager server and the other applications that use the DB2 product. To provide sufficient resources for the other DB2 applications, you might have to change the Tivoli Storage Manager server settings so that the server uses less system memory and resources. Similarly, if the workloads for the other DB2 applications compete with the Tivoli Storage Manager server for processor or memory resources, the performance of the server in handling the expected client workload or other server operations might be adversely affected.
	capability for the tuning and allocation of processor, memory, and other system resources for multiple applications, consider using logical partition (LPAR), workload partition (WPAR), or other virtual workstation support. For example, run a DB2 application on its own virtualized system.

Table 66. Compatibility of the Tivoli Storage Manager server with other DB2 products on the system (continued)

Estimating database and recovery log requirements

Estimate the space requirements for the migration process, and the space requirements for the server databases and recovery log for the V7.1 server. The space requirements for a cross-platform migration from V5 to V7 are similar to the space requirements for an upgrade from V5 to V7 on the same operating system.

Procedure

- 1. Estimate the space requirements for the V5 server system. For details, see "Space requirements for the V5 server system" on page 37.
- 2. Estimate the space requirements for the V7.1 server system. For details, see "Space requirements for the V7 server system" on page 38.
- **3.** Estimate the total space for the migration process and the V7.1 server. For details, see "Estimating total space requirements for the upgrade process and upgraded server" on page 39. If you are planning to migrate the data by using the media method, review the information under Chapter 6, "Scenario 3: New system, media method," on page 177. If you are planning to migrate the data by using the network method, review the information under Chapter 7, "Scenario 4: New system, network method," on page 225.
- 4. Optional: Use a worksheet to plan the amount and location of space for the V7.1 server. For details, see "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

Planning data movement from FILE and DISK devices

The V7.1 server cannot access data that is stored by using DISK or FILE devices on the z/OS server. This restriction means that data that is stored on DISK or FILE devices must be backed up to tape before the migration begins.

About this task

Ensure that you have tape volumes available for backing up data that is stored by using DISK or FILE devices:

- At a minimum, tape volumes must be available for backing up the primary storage pool.
- To optimize the process, tape volumes should be available to create a second, onsite backup of the primary storage pool. By creating one backup storage pool offsite and another onsite, you fulfill disaster recovery requirements for offsite storage. At the same time, volumes from the second pool are available onsite to restore data immediately after migration.

As the first step in the preparation process, you will run the **ZMSPREPARE** command. The **ZMSPREPARE** command will be used to identify all DISK and FILE device type storage pools and the volumes and amount of data that must be backed up to tape.

Any backup sets on FILE storage must be deleted.

Related reference:

"ZMSPREPARE (Prepare a server on a z/OS system for migration)" on page 541

Estimating storage and device requirements

Estimate the amount of space that will be required for data storage in the new Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 system. Plan the devices to be used for storage.

Procedure

- 1. Estimate the storage requirements for the new Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 system. For instructions, see the section that describes estimating space needs for sequential-access storage pools in the *Administrator's Guide*.
- 2. Plan the device requirements for the new Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 system. For instructions, see the section about configuring and managing storage devices in the *Administrator's Guide*.

Estimating the time required for migration

The V5 server is not available for use during migration operations. To help plan for the amount of time that the server will be unavailable, estimate the migration time. The time that is required to complete the migration of a V5 server depends on multiple factors.

About this task

The following factors can affect the migration time:

- The size of the database that is being migrated.
- The number and speed of system processors.

- The configuration of storage devices. If new hardware is being introduced, time is required to define the new devices to the server, test the configuration, and adjust storage pools.
- The method that is chosen for moving the data from the V5 database to the V7 database (media or network). The network method for the data movement overlaps the extraction time with the insertion time. Using the network method might help reduce the total time that is required for the migration because of the overlap.
- The type of workload that the server has handled. A workload that consists of large numbers of small files, or files with long file names, can cause a relatively longer migration time.

Procedure

When you estimate the time it might take to migrate the system, consider the data that is available for upgrade operations from Tivoli Storage Manager V5 to V6 on the same operating system. This information might help you estimate the time that is required for a cross-platform migration.

For example, in benchmark environments in IBM labs, upgrade operations achieved 5 - 10 GB per hour by using the network method. This rate is based on the amount of space that is used by the V5 database, not the allocated space for the database. Your environment might produce different results. Results are dependent on system configuration. If you use the media method, the rate is decreased.

Estimate the time that is required to migrate your system based on the amount of data in the server database.

Results

Your estimate might be higher than the actual time that is required. Because of the way that databases are structured, the amount of data that the extraction utility extracts might be much less than the total amount of space that is used by the database.

What to do next

Test migration operations for Tivoli Storage Manager servers that are used by essential systems.

Example: Estimating the migration time based on the database size

You can roughly estimate the time required for the migration based on the amount of data in the V5 database. To this estimate, add the time required for additional tasks, such as storage device configuration.

Procedure

- 1. To obtain details about the V5 database, issue a command.
 - If the V5 server is running, issue the command: query db format=detailed
 - If the V5 server is not running, use the upgrade utility: dsmupgrd querydb

Here is an example of the output obtained when the server is running, and the query db format=detailed command is issued:

Available Space (MB):	39,960
Assigned Capacity (MB):	37,992
Maximum Extension (MB):	1,968
Maximum Reduction (MB):	8,360
Page Size (bytes):	4,096
Total Usable Pages:	9,725,952
Used Pages:	7,584,387
Pct Util:	78.0
Max. Pct Util:	78.0
Physical Volumes:	10
Buffer Pool Pages:	8,192
Total Buffer Requests:	180,003
Cache Hit Pct.:	99.81
Cache Wait Pct.:	0.00
Backup in Progress?:	No
Type of Backup In Progress:	
Incrementals Since Last Full:	0
Changed Since Last Backup (MB):	67.63
Percentage Changed:	0.23
Last Complete Backup Date/Time:	05/18/11 23:16:26
Estimate of Recoverable Space (MB):	
Last Estimate of Recoverable Space (MB):	

Here is an example of the output obtained when the server is not running, and the **dsmupgrd querydb** utility is run:

Available Space	e (MB): 39,960
Assigned Capacity (MB):	37,992
Maximum Extension (MB):	1,968
Maximum Reduction (MB):	8,360
Page Size (bytes):	4,096
Total Usable Pages:	9,725,952
Used Pages:	7,584,383
Pct Util:	78.0
Max. Pct Util:	78.0
Physical Volumes:	10
Buffer Pool Pages:	8,192
Total Buffer Requests:	179,946
Cache Hit Pct.:	99.81
Cache Wait Pct.:	0.00
Backup in Progress?:	No
Type of Backup In Progress:	
Incrementals Since Last Full:	0
Changed Since Last Backup (MB):	67.63
Percentage Changed:	0.23
Last Complete Backup Date/Time:	05/19/11 06:16:26
Estimate of Recoverable Space (ME	3):
Last Estimate of Recoverable Space	e (MB):

2. To calculate the amount of data in the database, use the results of the query command. Multiply the number of used pages by the page size.

Using the results in the example, you can calculate the amount of data in this database:

7,584,383 used pages \times 4096 bytes/page = 31,065,632,768 bytes, or 28.9 GB

3. Estimate the time required for the upgrade operation by dividing the amount of data by the expected rate.

For example, by using rates of 5 GB/hour and 10 GB/hour:

28.9 GB \div 5 GB/hour = 5.8 hours 28.9 GB \div 10 GB/hour = 2.9 hours

Related reference:

"DSMUPGRD QUERYDB (Display information about a V5 database)" on page 522

Performance tips for the V5 database extraction process

Review the performance tips for the V5 database extraction process so that you can minimize the time that is required for the migration. In this way, you can reduce the time that the Tivoli Storage Manager server is unavailable.

The speed of the extraction process is typically limited by the speed of I/O to the destination for the extracted data. The length of time that the process runs also depends on the size of the database. The time will be approximately as long as the time required for a full backup of the database.

Do not reorganize the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 database before the migration. The extraction process can achieve faster throughput when the source database does not contain long sequences of pages that are allocated to a single database table. This tip applies to both the media method and the network method.

The following performance tips depend on the method that you choose for moving the data from the V5 database.

Media method

If you are using the media method, consider the following tips:

- If you are extracting the data to tape, use a high-speed tape device. For example, select a device with a transfer rate of at least 1000 MB per second.
- If both the V5 database and the destination for the extracted data are on a virtualization device (high-end storage controller, or a SAN virtualization device), ensure that the two virtual LUNs are *not* on the same physical disk drive. Ensure that the space for the V5 database and the destination for the extracted data are on different physical disk drives within the virtualization device.
- If it is not possible to provide different LUNs for the V5 database and the extraction destination, the extraction process will take more time. The slower speed of extraction might be acceptable, depending on the size of the database and your requirements for the migration.

Network method

- If you are using the network method, consider the following tip:
 - Use a high-speed link. If you are migrating a database that is larger than 2 3 GB, use at least a 1-gigabit (Gb) Ethernet network.

Related concepts:

"Comparison of database migration methods" on page 452

Performance tips for inserting data into the V7.1 database

The process for inserting the V5 extracted data into the V7.1 database is the longest-running part of a migration process, and is the most sensitive to the configuration of the system.

On a system that meets only the minimum requirements, the insertion process will run, but performance might be slow. For better performance, set up the system as described in the following tips:

Processors

The insertion process is designed to use multiple processors or cores. The insertion process typically performs better on a system with a relatively small number of fast processors. If the system has many slow processors, you might experience reduced performance levels.

Disk storage

The insertion process is designed to use high-bandwidth disk storage subsystems. The speed of the process is dependent on the disk storage that is used.

For best performance, use multiple LUNs that map to multiple independent disks, or that map to redundant arrays of independent disks (RAIDs) with a large stripe size (for example, 128 KB). Use a different file system on each LUN.

The following table shows an example of good usage of LUNs.

Table 67. Example of LUN usage

LUN	Usage
1	Active log
2	Archive log
3, 4, 5	Database directories

If the disk storage is supplied by a virtualization device (high-end storage controller, or a SAN virtualization device), ensure that none of the virtual LUNs are on the same physical disk drive. Ensure that the directories in use are on different physical disk drives within the virtualization device.

Planning for upgrading multiple servers and components

If your environment includes multiple servers and storage agents, evaluate the compatibility of the versions being run with an upgraded V7.1 server. Plan to upgrade one server first in a test environment. Then stage the upgrade of additional servers and storage agents.

Before you begin

For information about storage-agent and library client compatibility with Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 servers, see Technote 1302789 (http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21302789).

Related tasks:

"Testing the upgrade process for a server" on page 47

Planning for changes to storage agents

To connect to a V7.1 server in a system that uses the z/OS media server, storage agents must be at Version 7.1.

Procedure

If you have storage agents at earlier versions, upgrade them to V7.1 before you upgrade the server to V7.1. Verify that LAN-free data movement works as expected before you upgrade the server.

For the most recent information about supported levels of storage agents, go to the following website: http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21302789

Related concepts:

"Effects of migration on storage agents" on page 451

Preparing for operational changes

As you migrate your system from V5 to V7.1, the method for backing up and monitoring the server database changes.

Procedure

Verify the operating procedures, scripts, and administrative schedules that you use for server operations:

 Plan to back up the server database regularly by using administrative schedules, a maintenance script, or your own scripts. Back up the server database at least once per day. For best results, consider scheduling more frequent backups for the V7.1 database than you did for the V5 database. To ensure that archive log space is pruned, consider scheduling more full database backups and fewer incremental backups.

Review information about how database backups are performed automatically for the V7.1 server. For details, see the *Administrator's Guide*.

- Understand how database and recovery log space is used, and how monitoring will change.
- Verify scripts and administrative schedules. The V7.1 server adds new commands, changes some commands, and deletes some commands that are no longer needed. These changes will affect your automated operations. For information about new and changed commands, see "Command and option changes" on page 51.
- Verify the SELECT commands that you use regularly. Some parameters and syntax that were previously allowed are not accepted by the database manager program. For information about SELECT command updates, see "Changes to the SELECT command" on page 68. To resolve problems that are related to SELECT commands, see Technote 1380830 (http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg21380830).
- If you use products from independent software vendors to interface with the server, ensure that the products are compatible with the V7.1 server.

Reference information for planning

Information about updated commands and server options, and the migration of device classes and library attributes, can help you plan the migration process.

General reference information for Tivoli Storage Manager upgrades and migrations

General reference information is provided. You can review the changes in commands, options, and utilities that were implemented since V5 and learn about server naming practices. For more information, see "Reference information for planning" on page 51.

Utilities, scripts, and commands

For more information about the available utilities, scripts, and commands, see Appendix B, "Utilities, scripts, and commands for server upgrade and migration," on page 521.

Migration of device and library attributes

Review device class information to understand how z/OS device classes are mapped to an equivalent used by an AIX or Linux on System z system. Review the library and path information to understand how new libraries and paths are defined to ensure that existing device classes can use the z/OS media server. The **DSMSERV INSERTOB** utility maps the device classes and defines the libraries and paths.

Device class migration

The following tables describe how each z/OS device type is mapped to its equivalent on an AIX or Linux on System z system.

Attribute	Used on z/OS	Used on AIX and Linux on System z	Notes
DEVTYPE	Yes	Yes	The value is always 3590.
LIBRARY	Yes (optional)	Yes (required)	The LIBRARY device class is replaced with a new library that provides access through the z/OS media server. If no library was specified on the V5 system, a new library is defined to provide access through the z/OS media server.
ESTCAPACITY	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
MAXCAPACITY	Yes	No	The value is discarded.
FORMAT	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
PREFIX	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
MOUNTRETENTION	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
MOUNTWAIT	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
MOUNTLIMIT	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
COMPRESSION	Yes	New	The value is preserved.
EXPIRATION	Yes	New	The value is preserved.
RETENTION	Yes	New	The value is preserved.
PROTECTION	Yes	New	The value is preserved.

Table 68. 3590 device class attributes

Table 68. 3590 device class attributes (continued)

Attribute	Used on z/OS	Used on AIX and Linux on System z	Notes
UNIT	Yes	New	The value is preserved.

Table 69. 3592 device class attributes

Attribute	Used on z/OS	Used on AIX and Linux on System z	Notes
DEVTYPE	Yes	Yes	The value is always 3592.
LIBRARY	Yes (optional)	Yes (required)	The LIBRARY device class is replaced with a new library that provides access through the z/OS media server. If no library was specified on the V5 system, a new library is defined to provide access through the z/OS media server.
ESTCAPACITY	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
MAXCAPACITY	Yes	No	The value is discarded.
WORM	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
SCALEDCAPACITY	No	Yes	The default value of 100 is used.
DRIVEENCRYPTION	No	Yes	A value of ALLOW is used. The ALLOW value makes it possible for the remote z/OS system to control the use of drive encryption.
FORMAT	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
PREFIX	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
MOUNTRETENTION	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
MOUNTWAIT	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
MOUNTLIMIT	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
COMPRESSION	Yes	New	The value is preserved.
EXPIRATION	Yes	New	The value is preserved.

Attribute	Used on z/OS	Used on AIX and Linux on System z	Notes
RETENTION	Yes	New	The value is preserved.
PROTECTION	Yes	New	The value is preserved.
UNIT	Yes	New	The value is preserved.

Table 69. 3592 device class attributes (continued)

Table 70. E	CARTRIDGE	device	class	attributes
-------------	-----------	--------	-------	------------

Attribute	Used on z/OS	Used on AIX and Linux on System z	Notes
DEVTYPE	Yes	Yes	The value is always ECARTRIDGE.
LIBRARY	Yes (optional)	Yes (required)	The library is replaced with a new library that provides access through the z/OS media server. If no library was specified on the V5 system, a new library is defined to provide access through the z/OS media server.
ESTCAPACITY	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
MAXCAPACITY	Yes	No	The value is discarded.
WORM	No	Yes	The default value of NO is used.
DRIVEENCRYPTION	No	Yes	A value of ALLOW is used. The ALLOW value makes it possible for the remote z/OS system to control the use of drive encryption.
FORMAT	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
PREFIX	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
MOUNTRETENTION	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
MOUNTWAIT	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
MOUNTLIMIT	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
COMPRESSION	Yes	New	The value is preserved.

Attribute	Used on z/OS	Used on AIX and Linux on System z	Notes
EXPIRATION	Yes	New	The value is preserved.
RETENTION	Yes	New	The value is preserved.
PROTECTION	Yes	New	The value is preserved.
UNIT	Yes	New	The value is preserved.

Table 70. ECARTRIDGE device class attributes (continued)

Table 71. FILE device class attributes

Attribute	Used on z/OS	Used on AIX and Linux on System z	Notes	
DEVTYPE	Yes	Yes	The value is always FILE.	
LIBRARY	No	New	A new library is <i>not</i> defined to provide access to FILE device classes through the z/OS media server. The reason is that the media server does not support previous FILE device classes. LIBRARY is specified only on <i>new</i> FILE device classes, and is not added for device classes that existed on the V5 server.	
MOUNTLIMIT	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.	
PREFIX	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.	
DIRECTORY	No	Yes	This attribute is not set.	
SHARED	No	Yes	The default value of NO is used.	
UNIT	Yes	No	The value is discarded.	
VOLSER	Yes	No	The value is discarded.	
PRIMARYALLOC	No	New	This attribute is not set for FILE device classes that are migrated from the V5 server. This attribute is used only for new FILE classes that are added.	

Attribute	Used on z/OS	Used on AIX and Linux on System z	Notes
SECONDARYALLOC	No	New	This attribute is not set for FILE device classes that are migrated from the V5 server. This attribute is used only for new FILE classes that are added.
MAXCAPACITY	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.

TADIE 7 T. FILE DEVICE CLASS AUTIDULES (CONTINUE)	Table 71	. FILE devic	ce class attrib	outes (continued
---	----------	--------------	-----------------	------------------

Table 72. SERVER device class attributes.

Remember: Device classes with a device type of SERVER are the same across z/OS, AIX, and Linux on System z. All device classes with a device type of SERVER are preserved as-is.

Attribute	Used on z/OS	Used on AIX and Linux on System z	Notes
DEVTYPE	Yes	Yes	The value is always SERVER.
SERVERNAME	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
MOUNTLIMIT	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
MOUNTRETENTION	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
PREFIX	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
RETRYPERIOD	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
RETRYINTERVAL	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.
MAXCAPACITY	Yes	Yes	The value is preserved.

Library and path migration

On the z/OS system, libraries and paths are used to enable LAN-free access of media by using storage agents that run on AIX or Linux on System z systems. Because LAN-free access is not supported for servers migrated from z/OS, all libraries and paths are deleted during migration. Then, new libraries and paths are created to allow access to media through the z/OS media server.

The **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility defines new libraries and paths so that existing device classes can use the z/OS media server. For each device class, one new library is defined by using the same name as the device class: DEFINE LIBRARY <devclass_name> LIBTYPE=ZOSMEDIA

One new path is defined:

DEFINE PATH <server_name><devclass_name>SRCTYPE=SERVER DESTTYPE=LIBRARY ZOSMEDIASERVER=<media_server_name>ONLINE=YES

Migration of server options

During the upgrade process, the **ZMSPREPARE** command analyzes the Tivoli Storage Manager server options file and provides recommendations. The recommendations are designed to help you migrate server options to the server options file of the V7.1 system and to the server options file of the z/OS media server.

The **ZMSPREPARE** command makes recommendations based on the following table. Before you migrate server options, review the table.

Remember: The set of server options that is available on a V5 server is different from the set of options that is available on a V7.1 server. Similarly, the set of server options that is available on a z/OS system is different from the set of server options that is available on an AIX or Linux on System z system.

Table 73. z/OS platform-specific server options

Option name	Used on AIX or Linux on System z	Used on z/OS media server	Notes
COMMMETHOD	Yes	No	This option specifies the communication method to be used by the server. z/OS systems support only the TCPIP and V7TCPIP communication methods. Both of these communication methods are also supported by AIX and Linux on System z systems.
DELETIONEXIT	No	No	This option specifies a user exit that receives control when a tape volume is deleted from the database. This server option is not compatible with AIX and Linux on System z systems. For this reason, any existing entry for this server option must be removed.
DYNALLOCOFFLN	No	Yes	This option makes it possible for Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media to select an offline device if no other devices are available.
FILEEXIT	Yes	No	This option specifies a file to which enabled events are routed. The specified file name must be verified to ensure that it works on the V7.1 system.
FILETEXTEXIT	Yes	No	This option specifies a file to which enabled events are routed. The specified file name must be verified to ensure that it works on the V7.1 system.
HTTPTCPPORT	No	No	This option specifies the HTTP port number for the HTTP communication method for IBM TCP/IP. This option is not available in Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1.
LFVOLUMEFORMATCOUNT	No	No	This option specifies the number of volumes that the Tivoli Storage Manager server formats automatically for LAN-free operations if the storage pool does not contain formatted volumes. This option is not available in Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1.
LICENSES	No	No	This option specifies the terms of a licensing agreement. AIX and Linux on System z systems use a different licensing mechanism from the one specified by this option. For this reason, new licenses must be registered on the V7.1 server. Any existing entry for this server option must be removed.
MESSAGEFORMAT	Yes	Yes	This option specifies whether a message number is displayed in all lines of a multi-line message or only on the first line.

Table 73. z/OS	platform-s	becific server	options	(continued))
----------------	------------	----------------	---------	-------------	---

Option name	Used on AIX or Linux on System z	Used on z/OS media server	Notes
MSGHIGHLIGHT	No	No	This option specifies the message severity level for highlighting. Any existing entry must be removed when migrating the server options file to AIX or Linux on System z systems.
MSGSUPPRESS	No	Yes	This option specifies the level of messages to be suppressed. Any existing entry must be removed when migrating the server options file to AIX or Linux on System z systems. Any existing entry should be copied to the z/OS media server server options file.
OAMCALL	No	Yes	This option specifies whether Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media allocation should access the OAM database to determine if a required tape is in the automated tape library.
ROUTECODE	No	Yes	This option specifies the routing code for Tivoli Storage Manager messages. Any existing entry must be removed when migrating the server options file to AIX or Linux on System z systems. Any existing entry should be copied to the z/OS media server server options file.
TAPEDELEXIT	No	Yes	This option specifies the name of an exit program that is called when a tape volume is deleted from the Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media pool of managed tape volumes.
TCPADDR	No	Yes	This option specifies the home IP address that Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media will use to listen for incoming connections.
TCPADMINPORT	Yes	No	This option specifies the port number on which the server TCP/IP communication driver is to wait for requests for sessions other than client sessions. This option should be included in the AIX or Linux for System z server options file.
TCPBUFSIZE	Yes	No	This option specifies the size of the buffer used for TCP/IP send requests. The default value used by AIX and Linux on System z systems is 16, compared to 32, which is used by z/OS. Any existing value should be reconsidered in light of the fact that the V7.1 server will run on a different operating system.
TCPNAME	No	Yes	This option specifies the name of the started address space for TCP/IP. Any existing entry must be removed when migrating the server options file to AIX or Linux on System z. Any existing entry should be copied to the z/OS media server server options file.
TCPPORT	Yes	Yes	This option specifies the port number on which the TCP/IP communication driver of the server is to wait for requests for client sessions. This option should be migrated to the V7.1 server only after ensuring that the specified port will be available on the V7.1 server. Similarly, this option should be migrated to the z/OS media server only after ensuring that the specified port will be available on that server. It might not be useful for clients to contact the z/OS media server on the existing port. For this reason, the port specified for this server option might need to be different from the port of the Tivoli Storage Manager server that is being migrated from the z/OS system.

Option name	Used on AIX or Linux on System z	Used on z/OS media server	Notes
TCPWINDOWSIZE	Yes	No	This option specifies, in KB, the amount of receive data that can be buffered at one time on a TCP/IP connection. The option is used for tuning. Any existing value should be reconsidered in light of the fact that the V7.1 server will run on a different operating system.
TECBEGINEVENTLOGGING	Yes	No	This option specifies whether event logging for the Tivoli receiver should begin when the server starts.
TECHOSTNAME	Yes	No	This option specifies the host name or IP address for the Tivoli event server.
TECPORT	Yes	No	This option specifies the TCP/IP port address on which the Tivoli event server is listening.
UNIQUETDPTECEVENTS	Yes	No	This option generates a unique Tivoli Enterprise Console event class for each Tivoli Storage Manager message, including client, server, and Tivoli Data Protection agent messages.
UNIQUETECEVENTS	Yes	No	This option generates a unique Tivoli Enterprise Console event class for each Tivoli Storage Manager message.
USEREXIT	Yes	No	This option specifies a user-defined exit that will be given control to manage an event. The syntax of this option differs on different operating systems. This option specifies a user exit that is loaded by the server. For this reason, any existing value should be reconsidered in light of the fact that a z/OS exit does not work on an AIX or Linux for System z operating system.

Table 73. z/OS platform-specific server options (continued)

Related reference:

"Command and option changes" on page 51

Chapter 20. Preparing for the migration

To prepare for the migration from IBM Tivoli Storage Manager V5 on z/OS to V7.1 on AIX or Linux on System z, you must complete several steps. Ensure that you install and configure the V7.1 server and prepare the database of the V5 server for migration.

Preparing space for the migration process

Verify that you have sufficient space on the V7.1 system for the migration process.

Procedure

- 1. Verify that the system has the amount of space that was estimated in the planning step. Use the planning work sheet that you filled in with your information.
- 2. If you plan to extract the original server database to media for later insertion into the new database, ensure that you have enough storage space. Storage space is required for the database and the manifest file that the extraction process creates.
 - a. Identify the device class to which you will extract the original database. The definition must exist in the server database, not just in the device configuration file.

The device class must be sequential, and the device class type must be tape. Define a new device class if necessary.

b. Ensure that space or volumes are available in the selected device class. The amount of space that you need is about the same as the current size of the original database.

Ensure that the instance user ID that you create for the upgraded server has access permission to the location of the extracted data.

c. Check that the access permissions are correct for the location that you plan to specify for the manifest file.

The user ID that will run the database preparation and extraction utilities (**DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** and **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB**) must have write access to this file.

When the data is later inserted into the V7.1 database, the instance user ID that you use for the upgraded server must have access permission for the manifest file.

The manifest file might be less than 1 KB. However, for a complex configuration, it might exceed 1 KB.

Related tasks:

"Estimating database and recovery log requirements" on page 457

Backing up configuration information

Before you install the new version, you must back up critical files and information for each server instance. Store the files in a safe place because they are needed after the installation of the new software version is completed. You also need these files if you must revert to the previous version after the upgrade.

Procedure

 Back up device configuration information to another directory by using the following Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command: backup devconfig filenames=file name

where *file_name* specifies the file in which to store device configuration information.

- Back up volume history information to another directory. Ensure that the volume history includes information about the database backup that you completed in the preceding steps. For example, issue the following command: query volhistory type=dbbackup
- 3. Make a copy of the server options file.
- 4. Optional: Make a copy of the accounting log file.
- 5. Back up any scripts that were used for daily housekeeping for the server. Examine the scripts for changes that are needed after the upgrade.
- 6. Store the device configuration file, the volume history file, the server options file, and the other files in a safe place. Select a location that is not on the system that is being upgraded.

Installing and configuring the V7.1 server

In preparation for migration of the V5 server from the z/OS system, install and complete an initial configuration of the V7.1 server.

Installing the V7.1 server on AIX or Linux systems

You can install the server by using the installation wizard, console mode, or silent mode.

Before you begin

You can obtain the installation package from the product DVD or from an IBM download site such as Passport Advantage or the Tivoli Storage Manager support site.

If you plan to download the files, set the system user limit for maximum file size to unlimited to ensure that the files can be downloaded correctly.

- To query the maximum file size value, issue the following command: ulimit -Hf
- If the system user limit for maximum file size is not set to unlimited, change it to unlimited by following the instructions in the documentation for your operating system.

About this task

By using the Tivoli Storage Manager installation software, you can install the following Tivoli Storage Manager components:

- server
- server languages
- license
- devices
- Operations Center
- storage agent

Tip: The database (DB2) and the Global Security Kit are automatically installed when you select the Tivoli Storage Manager server component.

For more information about storage agents, see the Storage Agent User's Guide.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the system by using the root user ID.
- 2. If you are obtaining the package from an IBM download site, download the appropriate package file from one of the following websites:
 - For a new release, go to Passport Advantage at http://www.ibm.com/ software/lotus/passportadvantage/. Passport Advantage is the only website from which you can download a licensed package file.
 - For a maintenance fix, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager support site at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/Tivoli_Storage_Manager.
- **3**. If you are downloading the package from one of the download sites, complete the following steps:
 - a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product:
 - Tivoli Storage Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035122
 - Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition: http://www.ibm.com/ support/docview.wss?uid=swg24035635
 - System Storage Archive Manager: http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg24035637
 - b. Download the package file to the directory of your choice. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Ensure that you extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files.

Also, ensure that you have executable permission for the package file.

c. If necessary, change the file permissions by issuing the following command:

chmod a+x package_name.bin

where *package_name* is like the following example:

AIX

7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-AIX.bin

Linux

In the examples, 7.1.0.000 represents the product release level.

^{7.1.0.000-}TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxx86_64.bin 7.1.0.000-TIV-TSMSRV-Linuxs390x.bin

d. Extract the installation files by issuing the following command: ./package_name.bin

The package is large. Therefore, the extraction takes some time.

4. To ensure that the Tivoli Storage Manager wizards work correctly, verify that the following command is enabled:

By default, the command is enabled.

- 5. If you plan to install the server by using the graphical wizard of IBM Installation Manager, review the following information and verify that your system meets the requirements:
 - Verify that all required RPM files are installed. For a list of required RPM files and instructions about installing RPM files, see the section about installing Tivoli Storage Manager by using the installation wizard in the *Installation Guide*.
 - Verify that the operating system is set to the language that you require. By default, the language of the operating system is the language of the installation wizard.

On test servers only: Use the following command to bypass prerequisite checks such as the operating system and the required memory. Do not issue this command on a production server.

./install.sh -g -vmargs "-DBYPASS_TSM_REQ_CHECKS=true"

6. If you are using the installation wizard, complete the following steps to begin the installation:

Option	Description
Installing from a downloaded package file:	 Change to the directory where you downloaded the package file. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command: ./install.sh
Installing from DVD media:	 Insert the DVD into the DVD drive. Tip: Ensure that the installation files are visible on the DVD drive. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command: ./install.sh

- 7. If you are installing the server by using the wizard, follow these instructions:
 - a. In the IBM Installation Manager window, click the **Install** icon; do not click the **Update** or **Modify** icon.
 - b. Select the components to install. You must install the license package. If you select the storage agent, you must accept the Tivoli Storage Manager for Storage Area Networks license.

- 8. Alternatively, install the server in console mode. Review the information about installing the server in console mode and then complete the installation procedure, as described in the *Installation Guide*.
- **9**. Alternatively, to install the server in silent mode, follow the instructions for an installation in silent mode in the *Installation Guide*. Review the information about installing the server in silent mode. Then, complete Steps 1 and 2 of the installation procedure.
- Correct any errors that are detected during the installation process. To view installation log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click File > View Log. To collect log files, from the Installation Manager tool, click Help > Export Data for Problem Analysis.
- 11. Obtain any applicable fixes by going to the following website: http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Overview/Software/Tivoli/ Tivoli_Storage_Manager. Click **Fixes (downloads)** and apply any applicable fixes.
- **12**. To prevent server failures during interaction with DB2, tune the kernel parameters. For instructions, see the section about tuning kernel parameters in the *Installation Guide*.
- **13**. Optional: To install an additional language package, use the modify function of the IBM Installation Manager.
- 14. Optional: To upgrade to a newer version of a language package, use the update function of the IBM Installation Manager.

Creating the directories and the user ID for the server instance

Create the directories that the server instance needs for database and recovery logs, and create the user ID that will own the server instance.

Before you begin

Review the information about planning space for the server before completing this task.

Procedure

- 1. Create the user ID that will own the server instance. You use this user ID when you create the server instance in a later step.
 - a. Create the user ID and group.

Restriction: In the user ID, only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character (_) can be used. The user ID and group name must comply with the following rules:

- The length must be 8 characters or less.
- The user ID and group name cannot start with *ibm, sql, sys,* or a numeral.
- The user ID and group name cannot be *user*, *admin*, *guest*, *public*, *local*, or any SQL reserved word.

For example, create user ID tsminst1 in group tsmsrvrs. The following examples show how to create this user ID and group by using operating system commands:

AIX

[#] mkgroup id=1001 tsmsrvrs

[#] mkuser id=1002 pgrp=tsmsrvrs home=/home/tsminst1 tsminst1

[#] passwd tsminst1

Linux

```
# groupadd tsmsrvrs
# useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -m -g tsmsrvrs -s /bin/bash tsminst1
```

- # passwd tsminst1
- b. Log out and then log in to your system by using the new user ID and password. Use an interactive login program, such as telnet, so that you are prompted for the password and can change it if necessary.
- c. If a configuration profile does not exist for the user ID, create the file. For example, create a .profile file if you are using the Korn shell (ksh).
- 2. Create the directories that the server requires. Ensure that you are logged in under the new user ID that you created.

You need a unique, empty directory for each item in the following table. Create the database directories, the active log directory, and the archive log directory on different physical volumes. For space requirements, see "Worksheet for planning space for the V7.1 server" on page 42.

Item	Example commands for creating the directories	Your directories
The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which will contain files for this server instance, including the server options file	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsminst1	
The database directories	<pre>mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb001 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb002 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb003 mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmdb004</pre>	
Active log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/tsmlog	
Archive log directory	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlog	
Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmlogmirror	
Optional: Secondary archive log directory, which is the failover location for the archive log	mkdir /home/user_ID/ tsmarchlogfailover	

Table 74. Worksheet for creating required directories

When a server is initially created by using the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility or the configuration wizard, a server database and recovery log are created. In addition, files are created to hold database information that is used by the database manager.

3. Create additional logical volumes and mount the volumes on the directories that were created in the previous step.

Related tasks:

"Preparing space for the migration process" on page 473

Related reference:

"Server naming best practices" on page 70

Preparing the V5 server on z/OS for migration

To prepare the V5 server for migration, ensure that the server is upgraded to V5.5.6 or later. Then, on the V5.5.6 or later server, install the z/OS media server. Issue the **ZMSPREPARE** command to identify additional steps that must be completed before data migration. Then, back up data.

About this task

To protect your server and its data, follow the preparation steps carefully.

Important: It is possible, after the upgrade to V7.1 is complete, that conditions might cause the need to temporarily revert to the previous version of the server. Successfully reverting to the previous version of the server is possible only if you completed all preparation steps.

Modifying the server before the migration

A command must be run on the server to prevent one type of problem during the migration process. Some modifications to typical server settings are necessary to prepare for the migration.

Procedure

1. From a Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command line, issue the command:

convert ussfilespace

This command fixes a problem that might exist in older Tivoli Storage Manager databases. If the problem does not exist in your database, the command is completed and you might see error ANR2034E. This error can be ignored. For more information, see Technote 1408895 (http://www.ibm.com/support/ docview.wss?uid=swg21408895). If the problem exists in your database, the command might take some time to run.

Important: Do not skip this step. If your database has the problem and you do not run this command now, the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility fails when you run it. You must then restart the V5 server and run the **CONVERT USSFILESPACE** command before you continue the upgrade process.

2. Review the steps for reverting to the earlier version of the server in the section, "Reverting from V7.1 to the previous V5 server version" on page 351.

If you must revert to the earlier version after the upgrade to V7.1, the results of the reversion will be better if you understand the steps and prepare for the possibility now.

- **3**. Make the following adjustments to settings on your server and clients. These adjustments must be done to make it possible for you to revert to the original server after the upgrade, if problems occur.
 - a. For each sequential-access storage pool, set the **REUSEDELAY** parameter to the number of days during which you want to be able to revert to the original server, if necessary.

For example, if you want to be able to revert to the original server for up to 30 days after the upgrade to V7.1, set the **REUSEDELAY** parameter to 31 days. Issue the following administrative command:

update stgpool sequential_access_storage_pool reusedelay=31

b. For each copy storage pool, set the **RECLAIM** parameter to 100 (meaning 100%). Issue the following administrative command:

update stgpool copy_storage_pool reclaim=100

c. If you typically use a **DELETE VOLHISTORY** command to delete database backups, ensure that the command does not delete database backups too frequently. The interval between backups should be at least the same number of days that you set for the **REUSEDELAY** period for sequential-access storage pools. For example, to delete database backups every 45 days, issue the following administrative command:

delete volhist type=dbbackup todate=-45

d. For important clients that use the server, verify that the value for the schedlogretention client option is set to retain the client schedule log for a sufficient time. Update the option for clients if needed.

The entries in the client schedule log might be useful if the server must revert to the original version. If the retention period for the schedule log is too short, the schedule log information might be deleted too soon.

For example, to prune the log every 45 days and save the log entries, add the following option:

schedlogretention 45 S

Upgrading the V5 server to V5.5.6

To prepare the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server for the upgrade, ensure that Tivoli Storage Manager V5.5.6 or later is installed.

Before you begin

Upgrade the V5 server to V5.5.6 or later so that you can use the **ZMSPREPARE** command and other tools that help to prepare the system for the migration.

The Tivoli Storage Manager server must not be running during installation of the fix pack.

To install a fix pack to the server, you must have the Tivoli Storage Manager license package installed. The license package is provided when you purchase a base release.

Ensure that you retain the installation media from the base release of the installed server. If you installed Tivoli Storage Manager from a DVD, ensure that the DVD is available. If you installed Tivoli Storage Manager from a downloaded package, ensure that the downloaded files are available. If the upgrade fails, and the server license module is uninstalled, the installation media from the server base release are required to reinstall the license.

Procedure

- 1. Obtain the package file for the V5.5.6 or later fix pack from the Tivoli Storage Manager FTP downloads site at ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/storage/tivoli-storage-management/maintenance/server/v5r5/MVS/LATEST.
- 2. For installation information, review the README.txt file, which is available in the V5.5.6 or later package file.
- **3**. Install the V5.5.6 or later fix pack.

What to do next

For more information about the Tivoli Storage Manager server V5.5 release, see the Tivoli Storage Manager V5.5 information center at http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v1r1/index.jsp.

Installing Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media

To install Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media, use the appropriate installation commands. Then, complete the configuration tasks.

Procedure

- 1. To install Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager V6.3 Information Center at http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/tsminfo/v6r3. Follow the installation instructions in the *IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media Installation and Configuration Guide*.
- 2. To configure Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media, go to the Tivoli Storage Manager V6.3 Information Center at http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/tsminfo/v6r3. Follow the configuration instructions in the *IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media Installation and Configuration Guide*.

Related concepts:

"Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media overview" on page 443

Defining a server that corresponds to the z/OS media server

On the V5 system, create a server definition that corresponds to the z/OS media server. The z/OS media server will be used during the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** step to access upgrade media on tape. After the migration is complete, the z/OS media server will be used to access client data that is stored on tape.

About this task

On the V5 server, issue the **DEFINE SERVER** command. Ensure that the following parameters are set:

- The **SERVER_NAME** parameter must specify the user ID that is used to run the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server.
- The **SERVERPASSWORD** parameter must specify the password that is used to log on to the z/OS media server.
- The HLADDRESS parameter must specify the IP address of the z/OS media server.
- The **LLADDRESS** parameter must specify the port number of the z/OS media server.

Here is an example:

define server tsmserv serverpassword=yourlife hladdress=9.115.20.97 lladdress=1555

For details, see the DEFINE SERVER section in the Administrator's Reference.

Disabling sessions

In preparation for the migration, prevent activity on the server by disabling new sessions. Cancel any existing sessions.

About this task

The commands in the following procedure are Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands.

Procedure

1. Prevent all clients, storage agents, and other servers from starting new sessions with the server. Use the commands:

disable sessions client disable sessions server

2. Determine whether server processes are running. Either cancel processes, or allow them to complete. Use the commands:

query process
cancel process process_number

Allow time for the processes to be stopped. Some processes, such as storage pool migration, might take some time to stop.

- Verify whether any sessions exist, and notify the users that the server is going to be stopped. To check for existing sessions, use the command: query session
- Cancel sessions that are still running. Use the command: cancel session all

Analyzing the Tivoli Storage Manager server by using ZMSPREPARE

To analyze the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server in preparation for the migration, use the **ZMSPREPARE** command. The **ZMSPREPARE** command provides information that is useful for completing the steps that you must take before data migration can begin.

About this task

The report that is generated by the **ZMSPREPARE** command includes information about the following items:

- Storage pool volumes that are located on FILE and DISK device classes and that must either be converted to tape or deleted
- Sequential volumes that are recorded in the volume history and that are located on FILE storage, but not including storage pool volumes
- Backup sets that are located on FILE storage
- Invalid device classes
- Server options that might require an update
- Date and time of the most recent backup of the Tivoli Storage Manager server database

Requirement: Run the **ZMSPREPARE** command to ensure that all prerequisites are met before data migration begins.

Procedure

1. On the V5 server, run the **ZMSPREPARE** command from the administrative client command line. For more information about the **ZMSPREPARE** command, see "ZMSPREPARE (Prepare a server on a z/OS system for migration)" on page 541. The output from the **ZMSPREPARE** command shows the following types of information:

Disk-based storage pools.

Storage Pool Name	Storage Pool Type	Device Class Name	Estimated Capacity	Pct Util	Volumes are not marked destroyed
ADPPOOL	Active-Data	FILE	551 G	19.6	Θ
DISKPOOL	Primary	DISK	731 G	38.5	10
FILEMIGPOOL	Primary	FILE	851 G	20.8	12
FROM-POMPE- II2-VV	Primary	FROM-POMP- EII2-VV	561 G	22.1	Θ
LONGFNPOOL	Primary	FILE	61 G	1.5	Θ

FILE device type backup sets.

Node Name	Backup Set Name	Data Type	Date/Time
CLIENT115	TEST.99790852	File	08/19/11 13:20:25
Retention Period	Device Class Name	Description	Has Table of Conten- ts (TOC)?
365	FILE	No Description	No

Date/Time		Volume Type	Device Class	Volume Name
08/19/11	13:36:45	EXPORT	FILE	SVTSMS1.S3785800.EXP
08/19/11	13:36:45	EXPORT	FILE	SVTSMS1.S3785873.EXP
08/19/11	13:36:45	EXPORT	FILE	SVTSMS1.S3785947.EXP
08/19/11	13:36:45	EXPORT	FILE	SVTSMS1.S3786028.EXP
08/19/11	13:36:45	EXPORT	FILE	SVTSMS1.S3786094.EXP
08/19/11	13:36:45	EXPORT	FILE	SVTSMS1.S3786158.EXP

Convert server options file.

(Yes/No/Consult documentation/ Unknown option)

Line Number	Option	Include in V7 server options file?	Include in media server options file?
1	MSGWAITALL	No	No
6	TCPPORT	Consult	Consult
7	TCPNAME	No	Consult
8	TCPADMINPORT	Yes	No
9	HTTPTCPPORT	No	No
14	VOLUMEHISTORY	Consult	No
15	DEVCONFIG	Consult	No
22	TCPBUFSIZE	Consult	No
35	USELARGEBUFFE-	No	No
	RS		
48	LICENSE	No	No
49	LICENSE	No	No
54	LFVOLUMEFORMA-	No	No
	TCOUNT		
60	LFVOLUMEFORMA-	No	No

TCOUNT

	TCOUNT		
73	LICENSE	No	No
74	LICENSE	No	No
*****	*****	*****	****
No uns	upported device c	asses are found.	
*****	*****	*****	****
L	ast		
Comp1	ete		
Bac	kup		
Date/T	ime		
08/18/	11		
13:5	2:-		
	35		

- 2. Make appropriate changes to your system environment by using the report generated by the **ZMSPREPARE** command. Based on the report, you might need to complete one or more of the following tasks:
 - Back up the disk-based primary storage pools that are identified by the **ZMSPREPARE** command to copy storage pools on tape. For details, see "Backing up data from disk-based primary storage pools" on page 485. Update the storage pool volumes so that ACCESS=DESTROYED and delete the volumes of disk-based backup storage pools. For details, see "Removing volumes of disk-based copy storage pools." To view volume names in the storage pools that require handling, use the ZMSPREPARE FORMAT=DETAILED command.
 - Update identified server options. For details, see "Creating the Tivoli Storage Manager server options file" on page 486.
 - Remove or change invalid device classes.
 - Remove sequential volumes with a device type of FILE such as database backups, exports, and backup sets. For details, see "Identifying and deleting FILE backup sets" on page 486.

Related reference:

"ZMSPREPARE (Prepare a server on a z/OS system for migration)" on page 541

Removing volumes of disk-based copy storage pools

Before you migrate the Tivoli Storage Manager V5.5 server on z/OS to V7.1, delete all disk-based storage pool volumes or mark them as destroyed.

About this task

You can mark volumes of primary storage pools as destroyed, but destroyed is not a valid access mode for volumes of disk-based copy storage pools. For this reason, you must delete volumes of disk-based copy storage pools before you migrate your data.

Procedure

- 1. By using the output of the **ZMSPREPARE** command, determine if the copy storage pool must be migrated from the V5.5 server to the V7.1 server or if it can be recreated on the V7.1 server after the migration.
- 2. If you must migrate the copy storage pool to V7.1, recreate the copy storage pool on the V5.5 system from the primary storage pool by using the **BACKUP**

STGPOOL command. The reason for taking this step is that copies of copy pools are not permitted in Tivoli Storage Manager.

- **3**. If the primary storage pool is also disk-based, back up the primary storage pool to a tape-based copy storage pool as described in "Backing up data from disk-based primary storage pools."
- 4. Delete the volumes of the disk-based copy storage pools by using the **DELETE VOLUME** command.

For details, see the DELETE VOLUME section in the *Administrator's Reference*. **Related reference**:

"ZMSPREPARE (Prepare a server on a z/OS system for migration)" on page 541

Backing up data from disk-based primary storage pools

Disk-based primary storage pools will not be available after the migration. Therefore, you must create a tape copy storage pool for each disk-based primary storage pool that does not have one. Then, back up all data from disk-based primary storage pools to tape copy storage pools.

About this task

After the migration, you can restore the storage pools by using this backup.

Procedure

- 1. Create a tape copy storage pool. Issue the **DEFINE STGPOOL** command. Specify the following parameters:
 - The **POOL_NAME** parameter specifies the name of the storage pool to be defined.
 - The **DEVICE_CLASS_NAME** parameter specifies the name of the sequential access device class to which this copy storage pool is assigned.
 - The **POOLTYPE=COPY** parameter specifies that you want to define a storage pool.

Here is an example:

define stgpool tapepool2 dc480 pooltype=copy

For details, see the DEFINE STGPOOL section in the Administrator's Reference.

2. Back up a primary storage pool. Issue the **BACKUP STGPOOL** command. For example, to back up a primary storage pool named PRIMARY_POOL to a copy storage pool named COPYSTG, issue the following command:

backup stgpool primary_pool copystg

For details, see the BACKUP STGPOOL section in the Administrator's Reference.

3. Change the access mode of each volume of disk-based primary storage pools to destroyed so that no files can be written to or read from volumes in the storage pool. Use the **UPDATE VOLUME** command. For more information about changing the access mode of storage pools, see the *Administrator's Guide*. For more information about the **UPDATE VOLUME** command, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

Identifying and deleting FILE backup sets

Backup sets that use FILE device classes cannot be regenerated, moved, or accessed after you migrate your data. For this reason, delete any backup sets that use FILE device classes.

Procedure

- 1. Determine which backup sets use FILE device classes. Review the report generated by the **ZMSPREPARE** command.
- 2. Delete any backup sets that use FILE device classes. For details, see the section on deleting backup sets in the *Administrator's Guide*.

Related tasks:

"Analyzing the Tivoli Storage Manager server by using ZMSPREPARE" on page 482

Creating the Tivoli Storage Manager server options file

To create a server options file, start by using the options file from the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server and make appropriate changes for the V7.1 server.

Procedure

- 1. Move the options file that is used by the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server to the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server instance directory. Ensure that the file is owned by the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance owner and that it has valid permissions for that owner ID.
- **2**. Determine whether changes are required in the options file and make the required changes:
 - a. Review the report generated by the **ZMSPREPARE** command. The Convert server options file section lists options that are in the V5 options file, but that might not transfer to the V7.1 file.
 - b. Use the information in the Convert server options file section to determine whether to include a server option in the V7.1 file.

Results

For general information about server options, see the *Administrator's Reference*. For information about new and changed server options since V5, see "Command and option changes" on page 51.

Related tasks:

"Analyzing the Tivoli Storage Manager server by using ZMSPREPARE" on page 482

Running the ZMSPREPARE command again to verify prerequisites

After you have run the **ZMSPREPARE** command once and have made any required changes in your environment, run the **ZMSPREPARE** command again to ensure that all migration prerequisites are met.

About this task

Important: It is mandatory to run the **ZMSPREPARE** command to ensure that all prerequisites are met before data migration begins.
Procedure

- 1. On the V5 server, run the **ZMSPREPARE** command from the administrative client command line. For more information about the **ZMSPREPARE** command, see "ZMSPREPARE (Prepare a server on a z/OS system for migration)" on page 541.
- 2. Review the report generated by the **ZMSPREPARE** command to ensure that all migration prerequisites are met. If all migration prerequisites are met, the report is similar to the following one. Verify the following items:
 - The Volumes are not marked destroyed value is 0 for all storage pools.
 - For backup sets, this message is displayed: No FILE device type backup sets are found.
 - For sequential volumes, this message is displayed: No sequential volumes with a device type of FILE were found.
 - A value is displayed in the Last Complete Backup Date/Time column. Preferably, the time is recent.

tsm: EZU11>zmsprepare
Disk-based storage pools.

Storage Pool Name	Storage Pool Type	Device Class Name	Estimated Capacity	Pct Util	Volumes are not marked destroyed
ARCHIVEPOOL	Primary	DISK	0.0 M	0.0	Θ
BACKUPPOOL	Primary	DISK	10.0 M	0.5	0
FILE	Primary	FILE	4 G	0.0	0
SPACEMGPOOL	Primary	DISK	0.0 M	0.0	0

No FILE device type backup sets are found.

Convert server options file.

(Yes/No/Consult documentation/ Unknown option)

Line Number	Option	Include in V7 server options file?	Include in media server options file?
1	COMMMETHOD	Yes	No
2	TCPPORT	Consult	Consult
8	DEVCONFIG	Consult	No
9	LICENSE	No	No
10	LICENSE	No	No

No unsupported device classes are found.

Last Complete Backup Date/Time

```
09/26/20-
11 09:5-
9:15
```

3. If any migration prerequisites are not met, make appropriate changes in your system environment and run the **ZMSPREPARE** command again. Repeat this step as required until all migration prerequisites are met.

Related reference:

"ZMSPREPARE (Prepare a server on a z/OS system for migration)" on page 541

Backing up the server database

Immediately before you migrate the server, perform a full database backup to a tape device class.

About this task

Back up the database by using the following command. Run either a full or snapshot backup.

backup db type=type devclass=device class name

The device class that you specify must exist and have volumes that are available to it. For example, to perform a snapshot backup of your database to the TAPECLASS device class by using scratch volumes, enter:

backup db type=dbsnapshot devclass=tapeclass

To use specific volumes instead of scratch volumes, specify the volume names in the command.

Tip: To protect the backup from media failures, make two copies of the backup. Ensure that at least one full database backup is available onsite. If you must restore the database after a failed upgrade, having an onsite backup database saves time.

Stopping the server before the migration

On the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server that is running on z/OS, stop all server processes. Then, unmount any tapes that are mounted and stop the server.

Procedure

Use Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands to stop the server:

1. Determine whether server processes are running. Either cancel processes, or allow them to complete. Use the following commands:

query process
cancel process process_number

Allow time for the processes to be stopped. Some processes, such as storage pool migration, might take some time to stop.

For more information about the **QUERY PROCESS** and **CANCEL PROCESS** commands and other Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

2. After all sessions and processes are stopped, determine whether any tapes are mounted. Unmount any tapes that are mounted. Use the following commands:

query mount dismount volume *volume_name*

 Stop the server. Use the following command: halt

Preparing the database of a V5 server for migration

Before you extract the data from the database, you must prepare the server database by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility. If you have multiple servers on a single system, you must repeat this task for each server.

Procedure

- 1. Ensure that you have completed all preparation steps.
- 2. Log in as administrator to the V5 server system.
- **3**. Prepare the database by using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility. To use the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility on z/OS, you must submit a batch job by using JCL, as in the following example:

```
//PREPARE JOB ,REGION=256M,TIME=1440,CLASS=A,MSGCLASS=H
//* SETPROG APF,ADD,DSN=SVTSMS1.TSM556.LINKLIB,VOL=TS405B
//*
//TIVSMDB EXEC PGM=DSMUPGRD,
// PARM='POSIX(ON)/PREPAREDB MEDIASERVER=TUCMVSTT'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=SVTSMS1.TSM556.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//OPT DD DSN=SVTSMS1.TSM556.OPTIONS,DISP=SHR
//DSMAMENG DD DSN=SVTSMS1.TSM556.MESSAGES(ANRMENU),DISP=SHR
//HLPAMENG DD DSN=SVTSMS1.TSM556.HELP(ANRHENU),DISP=SHR
//DSK DD DSN=SVTSMS1.TSM556.DISKLOG,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTERM DD SYSOUT=*
```

4. Monitor the job output for errors and warning messages. The job output can be found on the MVS[™] console.

What to do next

Before you migrate the V5 server database, ensure that the prepare operation is completed successfully. If the prepare operation fails, you might need to restart the V5 server to fix the problem and run the prepare operation again.

Related reference:

"DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB (Prepare a V5 database for upgrade)" on page 523

Chapter 21. Migrating the z/OS server database to the V7.1 server

Migrate the database of the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server that is running on z/OS to the V7.1 server.

Before you begin

Decide on a method for moving the database: the media method or the network method. For information about the advantages of each method, see "Comparison of database migration methods" on page 452.

With either method, the original server cannot be running while the data is being extracted.

About this task

To move the database by using the media method, follow the instructions in "Migrating a V5 z/OS server by using the media method."

To move the database by using the network method, follow the instructions in "Migrating a V5 z/OS server by using the network method" on page 494.

Migrating a V5 z/OS server by using the media method

To migrate a V5 z/OS server by using the media method, prepare the V5 database for migration and extract the data to media. Then create and format the new database and load the extracted data into the new database.

Creating and formatting the new database

Create the server instance and format files for an empty V7.1 database.

Procedure

- 1. To define the database, run the DSMICFGX wizard, as you would when installing Tivoli Storage Manager.
- 2. Using the Tivoli Storage Manager instance owner ID, run the following command:

dsmserv removedb tsmdb1

3. To format the database, use the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** utility with appropriate parameters.

Results

If you complete these steps, there is no need to configure the system for database backup after the migration.

Extracting the data to media

Extract the data from the original V5 server database to sequential media.

Procedure

- 1. Log in as administrator to the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server system by using the administrative console.
- 2. Ensure that the device that you want to use to store the extracted data is available. The server database and the device configuration file must contain a valid device class definition for the device.
- **3**. To start the extraction, use the **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB** utility. To use the **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB** utility on z/OS, you must submit a batch job by using JCL, as in the following example:

```
//EXTRMED JOB ,REGION=256M,TIME=1440,CLASS=A,MSGCLASS=H
//* SETPROG APF,ADD,DSN=SVTSMS1.COLLIN.TSM556.LINKLIB,VOL=TS405B
//*
//TIVSMDB EXEC PGM=DSMUPGRD,
// PARM='POSIX(ON)/EXTRACTDB DEVCLASS=ECARTRIDGE MAN=//SVTSMS1.MED.MFST'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=SVTSMS1.TSM556.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//OPT DD DSN=SVTSMS1.TSM556.OPTIONS,DISP=SHR
//DSMAMENG DD DSN=SVTSMS1.TSM556.HELP(ANRHENU),DISP=SHR
//HLPAMENG DD DSN=SVTSMS1.TSM556.DISKLOG,DISP=SHR
//DSK DD DSN=SVTSMS1.TSM556.DISKLOG,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
```

For information about the **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB** command, see "DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB (Extract data from a V5 server database)" on page 529.

4. Monitor the job output for errors and warning messages. The job output can be found on the MVS console. A message near the end of the process output indicates success or failure of the operation:

Success message: ANR1382I EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed.

Failure message: ANR1396E EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed with errors.

The length of time that the process runs depends on the size of the database. The time is approximately as long as the time required for a full backup of the database.

Moving tape to another tape library

If you are using tape devices that are directly attached to the V7.1 server, instead of tape devices that are managed by the z/OS media server, you might need to move the tapes.

About this task

This step is required only if you plan to run the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** command to transfer the V5 server data to tape devices that are directly attached to the V7.1 server. In this case, you might need to move the tapes to another tape library before the data can be inserted into the DB2 database. For more information, see the technical documentation for your tape library.

Loading the extracted data into the new database

Load the data that you extracted from the V5 server database into the V7.1 server database.

Before you begin

Ensure that the following requirements are met before you begin to load the data:

- A new, empty database must be prepared on the V7.1 server by using the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** command.
- The manifest file from the **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB** operation must be available.
- The server options file must contain an entry for the device configuration file.
- The media that contains the extracted database must be available to the V7.1 server. The permissions must be set to grant access to the media for the user ID that owns the V7.1 server instance.
- The MANIFEST parameter must be specified to indicate that data will be read from external media.

Procedure

AIX Linux

- 1. On the V5 server, start the z/OS media server. The V7.1 server will access extracted data volumes through the z/OS media server.
- **2.** Log on by using the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance user ID to the system where you installed the V7.1 server.
- **3**. Copy the manifest file that was created by the extraction process on the V5 system to the V7.1 system. Ensure that the instance user ID has ownership or read/write permission for the manifest file.
- 4. Verify the contents of the manifest file and edit the file if necessary:
 - a. Ensure that the device names are valid for the V7.1 system. In particular, ensure that the definitions for accessing the media server are correct. If you are not using a media server, ensure that device names for accessing devices on the V7.1 system are correct.
 - **b.** Ensure that the manifest file contains a list of volumes to be used when the extracted data is loaded into the new database.
- 5. To load an extracted server database into the empty V7.1 database, issue the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** command. Direct the output of the process to a file for monitoring. For example, enter the following command on one line:

nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmserv insertdb \
manifest=./manifest.txt >insert.out 2>&1 &

6. Monitor the process output for error messages, warning messages, and any items that you might need to address. The system displays interim statistics about the operation. However, there might be time periods when no messages are issued. During this time, DB2 operations are running in the background. The length of time that the process runs depends on the size of the database. For more information, see "Estimating the time required for migration" on page 458.

Optional: Verify that the data-loading process is continuing; monitor the processor and I/O usage for the server process and the corresponding DB2 process. A message in the process output of the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** command indicates the status of the operation:

Success message: ANR1395I INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed.

Failure message: ANR1396E INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed with errors.

The success message must be displayed before you continue with the next step.

7. If you used the media method for upgrade *and* used a tape device, after the insertion operation is complete, protect the tape that holds the extracted data. For example, remove the tape or check it out from the library. Prevent the tape from being reused until you are sure that you do not need to run the insertion operation again.

Related information:

DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB

Migrating a V5 z/OS server by using the network method

To migrate a V5 server running on z/OS to a V7.1 server running on AIX or Linux on System *z*, several steps are required. Prepare the database of the V5 server for migration, and create and format the new database. Then, move the V5 server database over the network to the V7.1 server database.

Creating and formatting the new database

Create the server instance and format files for an empty V7.1 database.

Procedure

- 1. To define the database, run the DSMICFGX wizard, as you would when installing Tivoli Storage Manager.
- 2. Using the Tivoli Storage Manager instance owner ID, run the following command:

dsmserv removedb tsmdb1

3. To format the database, use the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** utility with appropriate parameters.

Results

If you complete these steps, there is no need to configure the system for database backup after the migration.

Moving the server database over a network

To move the server database over a network, first start the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility on the V7.1 server to ensure that the server can receive the database. Then, on the V5 server, extract the database and send it over the network to the V7.1 server by using the **DSMSERV EXTRACTDB** utility.

Before you begin

Ensure that the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server and V7.1 server are not running.

Procedure

- 1. Verify that there is a good network connection between the two systems.
- 2. Start the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** process on the V7.1 server to receive the database. The process must be started by the Tivoli Storage Manager instance owner user ID. To monitor the process, direct the output of the process to a file. For

example, start the server, allowing 60 minutes (the default time) for the other server to contact the V7.1 server and directing the process output to insert.out, by using this command:

```
nohup /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmserv insertdb \ sesswait=60 >insert.out 2>&1 &
```

The server starts and waits up to 60 minutes to be contacted by the original server.

3. Monitor the output of the process. Some time might pass during which no messages are issued. During this time, DB2 operations are running in the background. Optional: To verify that operations are continuing as expected, monitor the CPU and I/O usage for the server process and the corresponding DB2 process. Before continuing to the next step, verify that the DSMSERV INSERTDB process has issued the following message:

ANR1336I INSERTDB: Ready for connections from the source server

4. Start the **DSMSERV EXTRACTDB** process on the V5 server. Specify the TCP/IP address and port for the V7.1 server on the PARM card. Submit a batch job by using JCL, as in the following example:

```
//EXTRACT JOB ,REGION=256M,TIME=1440,CLASS=A,MSGCLASS=H
//*
//TIVSMDB EXEC PGM=DSMUPGRD,
// PARM='POSIX(ON)/EXTRACTDB HLADDRESS=9.11.125.129 LLADDRESS=1500'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=SVTSMS1.TSM556.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//OPT DD DSN=SVTSMS1.TSM556.OPTIONS,DISP=SHR
//DSMAMENG DD DSN=SVTSMS1.TSM556.HELP(ANRHENU),DISP=SHR
//HLPAMENG DD DSN=SVTSMS1.TSM556.HELP(ANRHENU),DISP=SHR
//DSK DD DSN=SVTSMS1.TSM556.DISKLOG,DISP=SHR
```

- 5. Monitor the processes for errors and warning messages, and for items that you might need to address. The job output can be found on the MVS console.
- 6. To find the messages that indicate the success or failure of the operations, examine the process outputs for the extraction and insertion processes.

Process	Success message	Failure message	
Extraction	ANR1382I EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed.	ANR1396E EXTRACTDB: Process 1, database extract, has completed with errors.	
Insertion	ANR1395I INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed.	ANR1396E INSERTDB: Process 1, database insert, has completed with errors.	

Chapter 22. Configuring the z/OS media server devices on the new server

On the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server, configure devices that you plan to use with z/OS media server storage.

About this task

For details, see the section on configuring the Tivoli Storage Manager server to use z/OS media server storage in the *Administrator's Guide*.

Chapter 23. Taking the first steps after the migration

After you migrate the system, configure the server options, start the server, verify the migration results, and complete other tasks to ensure that the system operates as expected.

Procedure

Complete the tasks that are described in the following topics:

- 1. "Configuring server options for the migrated server"
- 2. "Starting the server" on page 501
- 3. "Verifying the migration results" on page 501
- 4. "Recreating disk-based storage pools that were moved to tape" on page 502
- 5. "Registering licenses" on page 503
- 6. "Backing up the database" on page 504
- 7. "Updating automation" on page 504
- 8. "Updating configuration of storage agents" on page 505
- 9. "Beginning operations and monitoring the servers" on page 505
- 10. "Migrating data from z/OS media volumes to other devices" on page 507

What to do next

After you migrate the system to V7.1, you can authenticate passwords with the LDAP directory server, or authenticate passwords with the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager server. Passwords that are authenticated with the LDAP directory server can provide enhanced system security. For details, see the section about managing passwords and logon procedures in the *Administrator's Guide*.

Configuring server options for the migrated server

To help avoid problems with database growth and server performance, the server automatically monitors its database tables and reorganizes them when needed. Before starting the server for production use, set server options to control when reorganization runs. If you plan to use data deduplication, ensure that the option to run index reorganization is enabled.

Verify the settings of several other server options.

About this task

Table and index reorganization requires significant processor resources, active log space, and archive log space. Because database backup takes precedence over reorganization, select the time and duration for reorganization to ensure that the processes do not overlap and reorganization can complete. For more information about scheduling reorganization, see the *Administrator's Guide*.

If you update these server options while the server is running, you must stop and restart the server before the updated values take effect.

Procedure

1. Modify the server options.

Edit the server options file, dsmserv.opt, in the server instance directory. Follow these guidelines when you edit the server options file:

- To activate an option, remove the asterisk at the beginning of the line.
- Enter an option on any line.
- Enter only one option per line. The entire option with its value must be on one line.
- If you have multiple entries for an option in the file, the server uses the last entry.
- To view available server options, see the sample file, dsmserv.opt.smp, in the /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin directory.
- 2. If you plan to use data deduplication, enable the **ALLOWREORGINDEX** server option. Add the following option and value to the server options file: allowreorgindex yes
- **3**. Set the **REORGBEGINTIME** and **REORGDURATION** server options to control when reorganization starts and how long it runs. Select a time and duration so that reorganization runs when you expect that the server is least busy. These server options control both table and index reorganization processes.
 - a. Set the time for reorganization to start by using the **REORGBEGINTIME** server option. Specify the time by using the 24-hour system. For example, to set the start time for reorganization as 8:30 p.m., specify the following option and value in the server options file:
 - reorgbegintime 20:30
 - b. Set the interval during which the server can start reorganization. For example, to specify that the server can start reorganization for four hours after the time set by the **REORGBEGINTIME** server option, specify the following option and value in the server options file: reorgduration 4
- 4. Verify the following server options.

Option name	Instructions
DEVCONFIG	Ensure that the file name that is specified by the DEVCONFIG option works on the V7.1 system. Ensure that the path exists and that the syntax is correct for the V7.1 operating system.
LANGUAGE	Ensure that the language that is specified by the LANGUAGE option is appropriate. Specify en_US or another language that is available for the server. For a list of available languages, see the section about installing server language packages in the Appendix.
VOLUMEHISTORY	Ensure that the file name that is specified by the VOLUMEHISTORY option works on the V7.1 system. Ensure that the path exists and that the syntax is correct for the V7.1 operating system. Important: The V7.1 server uses a different format for volume history information than the V5 server. For this reason, back up the volume history when the migration completes. The VOLUMEHISTORY option was optional in V5, but is required for database backup and restore purposes in V7.1.

5. If the server was running while you updated the server options file, stop and restart the server.

Starting the server

To verify that the server instance is correctly set up, start the instance.

Procedure

To start the server instance, follow the instructions in "Starting the server on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Oracle Solaris systems" on page 325.

Verifying the migration results

Verify the operation of the server. If the server was installed on a new system as part of the upgrade, check and update connections to storage devices and other components.

Procedure

- 1. Monitor the messages that the server issues as it starts. Watch for error and warning messages.
- 2. If the server is running on a new system as a result of the upgrade, check the following items:
 - **a**. Ensure that all of the original server's storage devices are accessible to the upgraded server.
 - b. Compare the device names on the new system with the names for the devices on the original system. Update definitions for the devices on the server if needed. For example, update path definitions.
 - c. Update the network address that is used by backup-archive clients, storage agents, library client servers, and other servers for communicating with the upgraded server.

Optionally, instead of making these updates, consider whether you can use the network address of the original system as the address of the new system. You might also be able to update domain name service (DNS) to point to the new system instead of the original system. Consult your network administrator.

- **3**. Verify that you can connect to the server using an administrative client as you did for the earlier version of the server.
- 4. Run commands to get a summary of information in the database. Compare the summary with the results for the same commands before the upgrade.
- 5. Perform backups for typical client nodes and verify that the backups work as expected.
- 6. Verify that operations such as LAN-free data movement and library sharing work correctly.
- 7. After you are satisfied that the server is performing as expected and you will not need to revert to the previous version of the server, remember to return any settings that you changed to prepare for the upgrade back to the original values.

Recreating disk-based storage pools that were moved to tape

The process for recreating disk-based storage pools differs, depending on whether you deleted the original storage pools or marked them as destroyed.

Recreating deleted storage pools

If you backed up and then deleted storage pools in preparation for the migration, define new storage pools. These steps are necessary to ensure that data that you backed up can be restored and used by the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 system.

About this task

Use the **DEFINE STGPOOL** command to define storage pools on the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server. Alternatively, define tape storage pools on the z/OS media server. Complete one of the following steps:

• To define storage pools on the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 system, run the **DEFINE STGPOOL** command.

For details, see the **DEFINE STGPOOL** command in the Administrator's Reference.

Define storage pools on the z/OS media server.

For details, see the *IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media Installation and Configuration Guide*.

Recreating storage pool volumes marked as destroyed

If you backed up storage pool volumes and then marked them as destroyed, complete the following steps to ensure that data that you backed up can be restored and used by the V7.1 system.

Procedure

- Update the definitions of FILE device classes that write to disk by running the UPDATE DEVCLASS command. For device classes that were migrated from Tivoli Storage Manager V5.5 on z/OS to Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1, update the DIRECTORY parameter to indicate where storage pool volumes are to be written. If required, update the MAXCAPACITY parameter. For more information about the UPDATE DEVCLASS command, see the *Administrator's Reference*.
- 2. For all disk-based storage pools and FILE storage pools that do not automatically allocate new volumes, define storage pool volumes. Use the **DEFINE VOLUME** command. For more information about the **DEFINE VOLUME** command, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

Restoring data from backed-up storage pools

Restore the backed-up storage pools to the primary DISK and FILE storage pools on the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 system.

About this task

To restore data from backed-up storage pools, on the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 system, run the **RESTORE STGPOOL** command. To specify the name of the new storage pool to which to restore the files, use the **NEWSTGPOOL** parameter.

For details, see the **RESTORE STGPOOL** command in the *Administrator's Reference*.

Tip: It might be necessary to temporarily increase the value of the **MAXSCR** parameter for some FILE storage pools to ensure that data is restored. The reason

is that storage pool volumes with the ACCESS=DESTROYED attribute applied count against the MAXSCR parameter. Do not delete storage pool volumes that are marked as destroyed before you restore the data to the storage pool because the deletion also deletes corresponding data in the copy pool backup.

Cleaning up by deleting z/OS DISK and FILE volumes that were marked as destroyed

After you restore the primary storage pools from their backup on tape, you can delete DISK and FILE volumes that were marked as destroyed. These DISK and FILE storage pool volumes were used by the V5 system that was running on z/OS and are no longer required.

About this task

Do not delete storage pool volumes that are marked as destroyed before restoring the data to the storage pool because delete processing also deletes corresponding data in the copy pool backup.

To delete storage pool volumes, run the **DELETE VOLUME** command. If you are deleting several volumes, delete the volumes one at a time.

For details, see the **DELETE VOLUME** command in the Administrator's Reference.

Registering licenses

Immediately register any Tivoli Storage Manager licensed functions that you purchased so that you do not lose data after you begin to use the server.

Before you begin

Verify that the server instance directory of your installation does not include a NODELOCK file. The NODELOCK file contains the previous licensing information for your installation. This licensing information is replaced when the upgrade is complete. If the directory includes a NODELOCK file, move the file to another directory.

Procedure

Register the licenses for the Tivoli Storage Manager server components that are installed on your system by issuing the **REGISTER LICENSE** command: register license file=*installation directory*/server/bin/component name.lic

where *installation_directory* specifies the directory in which you installed the component, and *component_name* specifies the abbreviation for the component.

For example, if you installed the server in the default directory, /opt/tivoli/tsm, register the license by issuing the following command: register license file=/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/tsmbasic.lic

For example, if you installed Tivoli Storage Manager Extended Edition in the /opt/tivoli/tsm directory, issue the following command: register license file=/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/tsmee.lic

For example, if you installed System Storage Archive Manager in the /opt/tivoli/tsm directory, issue the following command:

register license file=/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dataret.lic

Restriction: You cannot register licenses for Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail, Tivoli Storage Manager for Databases, Tivoli Storage Manager for ERP, and Tivoli Storage Manager for Space Management.

Backing up the database

After migrating data, perform a full backup of the database as soon as possible. Also back up the volume history.

Procedure

- 1. Complete the following steps:
 - a. If you did not use the instance configuration wizard to configure the server, ensure that you have completed the steps to manually configure the system for database backups.
 - b. If you used the media method for upgrade *and* used a tape device, remove or check out from the library the tape that was used to hold the extracted data. Prevent the tape from being reused until you are sure that the V7.1 server is running properly and you do not need to repeat the database insertion step.
- 2. Select the device class to be used for automatic backups of the database. From the Tivoli Storage Manager administrative command line, issue the following command:

set dbrecovery device_class_name

The device class that you specify is used by the database manager for all automatic database backups.

3. Back up the database.

backup db devclass=device_class_name type=full

You can specify the device class to be the same as or different from the device class that you specified with the **SET DBRECOVERY** command. If the device class is different, you receive a warning message, but the backup operation continues.

 Back up the volume history. backup volhistory filenames=file name

Updating automation

After you migrate your data, you might need to modify administrative schedules that were defined in V5 because of changes in command syntax. Implement and verify changes to any automation or scripts that were identified as requiring modification in the planning process.

About this task

Important: Ensure that automation includes a backup of the database. Back up the database at least once per day.

Updating configuration of storage agents

After you migrate your data, verify that data can be transferred from storage agents to the z/OS media server. If necessary, reconfigure storage agents to ensure that data can be transferred.

About this task

Storage agents are used to ensure that client systems can write data directly to, and read data directly from, storage devices attached to the z/OS media server. A storage agent that is installed on a client system must be set up to communicate with the z/OS media server by using the LAN.

Procedure

1. Verify that data can be transferred from the storage agent to the z/OS media server.

For information about how to verify the data transfer, see the *Storage Agent User's Guide*.

2. If you detect an issue with data transfer, update the configuration of the storage agent.

For information about how to configure a storage agent for z/OS media server access, see the *Storage Agent User's Guide*.

Beginning operations and monitoring the servers

When you start running the Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1 server, monitor the space used by the server to ensure that the amount of space is adequate. On the V5 server, where the z/OS media server is installed, you can continue to use z/OS tools to monitor activity on the system.

Procedure

To monitor the V7.1 server and make any required adjustments, complete the following steps:

1. Monitor the active log to ensure that the size is correct for the workload that is handled by the server instance.

When the server workload reaches its typical expected level, the space that is used by the active log is 80% - 90% of the space that is available to the active log directory. At that point, you might need to increase the amount of space. Whether you must increase the space depends on the types of transactions in the server workload. Transaction characteristics affect how the active log space is used.

The following transaction characteristics can affect the space usage in the active log:

- The number and size of files in backup operations
 - Clients such as file servers that back up large numbers of small files can cause large numbers of transactions that are completed quickly. The transactions might use a large amount of space in the active log, but for a short time.
 - Clients such as a mail server or a database server that back up large chunks of data in a few transactions can cause small numbers of transactions that take a long time. The transactions might use a small amount of space in the active log, but for a long time.

- Network connection types
 - Backup operations that occur over fast network connections cause transactions that are completed more quickly. The transactions use space in the active log for a shorter time.
 - Backup operations that occur over relatively slower connections cause transactions that take a longer time to be completed. The transactions use space in the active log for a longer time.

If the server is handling transactions with a wide variety of characteristics, the space that is used for the active log might increase and decrease significantly over time. For such a server, you might need to ensure that the active log typically has a smaller percentage of its space used. The extra space allows the active log to grow for transactions that take a long time.

2. Monitor the archive log to ensure that space is always available.

Remember: If the archive log becomes full, and the archive failover log becomes full, the active log can become full, and the server stops. The goal is to make enough space available to the archive log so that it never uses all available space.

You are likely to notice the following pattern:

- **a**. Initially, the archive log grows rapidly as typical client-backup operations occur.
- b. Database backups occur regularly, either as scheduled or done manually.
- **c.** After full database backups occur, log pruning occurs automatically. The space that is used by the archive log decreases when the pruning occurs.
- d. Normal client operations continue, and the archive log grows again.
- e. Database backups occur regularly, and log pruning occurs as often as full database backups occur.

With this pattern, the archive log grows initially, decreases, and then might grow again. Over time, as normal operations continue, the amount of space that is used by the archive log should reach a relatively constant level.

If the archive log continues to grow, consider taking one or both of these actions:

• Add space to the archive log. You might need to move the archive log to a different file system.

For information about moving the archive log, see the Administrator's Guide.

- Increase the frequency of full database backups so that log pruning occurs more frequently.
- **3.** If you defined a directory for the archive failover log, determine whether any logs are stored in that directory during normal operations. If the failover log space is being used, consider increasing the size of the archive log. The goal is to use the archive failover log only under unusual conditions, not in normal operation.

What to do next

After the migration, you can continue to use z/OS tools to monitor activity on the V5 system where the z/OS media server is running.

For information about monitoring activity on the V5 system, see the section on monitoring the server in a system running on z/OS. This information can be found in the Tivoli Storage Manager V5.5 information center at http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v1r1/index.jsp.

If you are using the Tivoli Storage Manager V5 TSO administrative client, you might want to change to a newer administrative client. You can adapt your z/OS tools to use the z/OS UNIX System Services (USS) 6.1.4 administrative client. The z/OS USS 6.1.4 administrative client is not available for download from the client FTP site, but can be obtained by ordering the following fix packs:

- UK62472 for the USS Backup-Archive client
- UK62473 for the USS API client

To order fix packs, go to the IBM Passport Advantage website at http://www.ibm.com/software/lotus/passportadvantage/.

Migrating data from z/OS media volumes to other devices

After migration, data can be moved from z/OS media volumes to other devices.

Before you begin

To move data from z/OS media volumes to other devices, use one or both of the following methods:

- Direct incoming new data to storage pools on the AIX or Linux on System z system. Then, allow existing data that is stored on the z/OS system to naturally expire.
- Actively move data from z/OS media volumes to storage pools on the AIX or Linux on System z system. To move the data, use the MOVE DATA or MOVE NODEDATA command.

About this task

For more information about the **MOVE DATA** and **MOVE NODEDATA** commands, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

Chapter 24. Troubleshooting the migration of a V5 server from a z/OS system to AIX or Linux on System z

Review this section for tips to troubleshoot common problems that might occur after the migration. A procedure that explains how to return to the previous version of the server is also included.

Reverting to the V5 server running on z/OS after a migration

If you must revert the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager server to a previous version after migration, you must have a full database backup from the V5 system. In addition, you must have the server installation media for your original version and key configuration files. If you carefully follow the preparation steps before you upgrade the server, it might be possible to revert to the previous version with minimal loss of data.

About this task

The V5 server running on z/OS can be put back into production at any point along the migration path. Depending on the amount of progress made, different actions are required to revert to the original server:

- To revert to the V5 server before data is moved to the V7.1 system, see "Reverting to the V5 server before data is moved to the V7.1 server."
- To revert to the V5 server before DISK or FILE volumes are deleted, see "Reverting to the V5 server before volumes are deleted."
- To revert to the V5 server after the original database is deleted, see "Reverting to the V5 server after the V5 database is deleted" on page 510.

Reverting to the V5 server before data is moved to the V7.1 server

If you completed the preparation steps for migration, but did not move data, you can revert to the V5 system. You must restart the z/OS server and update relevant volumes.

Procedure

- 1. Restart the V5 server running on the z/OS system.
- 2. Change the access state of DISK and FILE volumes from destroyed to READWRITE.

Reverting to the V5 server before volumes are deleted

If you completed all preparation steps for migration, but did not delete DISK or FILE volumes, you can revert to the V5 server by completing the following steps.

Procedure

- 1. Restart the V5 server running on the z/OS system.
- 2. Change the access state of DISK and FILE volumes from destroyed to READWRITE.

Reverting to the V5 server after the V5 database is deleted

To revert to the V5 server system after you have deleted the database, you must restore the V5 database from its backup copies. After the database is recovered, it might be necessary to restore the contents of DISK and FILE volumes.

Before you begin

You must have the following items from the earlier version of the server:

- Server database backup
- Volume history file
- Device configuration file
- Server options file

About this task

Tip: The **REUSEDELAY** parameter can be used to extend the amount of time one can wait before reverting to the original V5 server running on a z/OS system. To extend the amount of time, specify the **REUSEDELAY** parameter for all sequential storage pools during the preparation phase. Specify the parameter before the final database backup is made and before the migration begins.

For more information about setting the **REUSEDELAY** parameter, see "Modifying the server before the migration" on page 479.

Restriction: Files backed up or archived to the server after the server is migrated to the V7.1 system will be lost if the server is reverted to V5. You cannot use **EXPORT** or **IMPORT** commands to recover these files because V7.1 export data cannot be imported by a V5 server.

Steps for reverting to the previous server version

To revert to the previous server version, you must back up the V7.1 database, uninstall the V7.1 server, reinstall the V5 server program, and restore the database from the backup.

Procedure

- 1. Back up the V7.1 database and save the contents of the instance directory, including the volume history file, the device configuration file, and server options file. Keep these files in case you must revert to the V7.1 server.
- 2. Remove the database from the database manager, and then delete the database and recovery log directories.
 - a. Manually remove the database. Issue the command:

dsmserv removedb tsmdb1

You can also use the following command to remove the database: db2 drop db tsmdb1 $% \left(\frac{1}{2}\right) =0$

- b. If you must reuse the space that is occupied by the database and recovery log directories, you can now delete these directories.
- **3.** Use the installation program to uninstall the V7.1 server. Uninstallation removes the server and the database manager software with their directories. For instructions about uninstalling the server, see the *Installation Guide*.

4. Reinstall the version of the server program that you were using before the upgrade to V7.1. This version must match the version that your server was running when you created the database backup that you will restore in a later step.

For example, if the server was at version 5.5.6.0 before the upgrade, and you intend to use the database backup that was in use on this server, you must install the V5.5.0.0 server program and then the V5.5.6.0 fix pack to be able to restore the database backup.

- a. Reinstall the base version of the server that was in use before the upgrade to V7.1.
- b. Reinstall any fix packs that were installed on the base server version before the upgrade to V7.1.
- 5. Copy the following files to the directory for server information:
 - Device configuration file
 - Volume history file
 - Server options file
- 6. Format the database by using the DSMSERV FORMAT utility. For details, see the information for the version of the server that you are reinstalling. Information for V5.5 is available at this information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v1r1

Information for V5.4 and V5.3 is available in the same information center. In the navigation pane, scroll down and expand **Previous versions**.

- 7. Restore the database by using the backup that was created in the preparation steps before the upgrade.
- 8. If you enabled data deduplication for any FILE-type storage pools that existed before the upgrade, or if you moved data that existed before the upgrade into new storage pools while using the V7.1 server, you must complete additional recovery steps. See "Additional recovery steps if you created new storage pools or enabled data deduplication" on page 512.
- **9**. If the **REUSEDELAY** setting on storage pools is less than the age of the database that you restored, restore volumes on any sequential-access storage pools that were reclaimed after that database backup. Use the **RESTORE VOLUME** command.

If you do not have a backup of a storage pool, audit the reclaimed volumes by using the **AUDIT VOLUME** command, specifying the FIX=YES parameter to resolve inconsistencies. Use the command:

audit volume volume_name fix=yes

- **10**. If client backup or archive operations were performed by using the V7.1 server, you might need to audit the storage pool volumes on which the data was stored.
- 11. If you were using active-data pools before upgrading to V7.1, you must recreate them.

The amount of time required to recreate the active-data pools might be significant, depending on the number and size of the active-data pools to be recreated.

Additional recovery steps if you created new storage pools or enabled data deduplication

If you created storage pools, enabled data deduplication for any FILE-type storage pools, or did both while your server was running as a V7.1 server, you must complete additional steps to revert the server to the previous version.

About this task

Use this information if you did either or both of the following actions while your server was running as a V7.1 server:

- You enabled data deduplication for any storage pools that existed before the upgrade to V7.1. Data deduplication applies only to storage pools that use a FILE device type.
- You created primary storage pools after the upgrade, *and* moved data that had been stored in other storage pools into the new storage pools.

Complete these steps after the server is restored to V5.

Procedure

- For each storage pool for which you enabled data deduplication, restore the entire storage pool by using the **RESTORE STGPOOL** command. To complete this task, you must have a complete backup of the storage pool, which must have been created before the upgrade to V7.1.
- For storage pools that you created after the upgrade, review the following information to determine what action to take.

Data that was moved from existing V5 storage pools into the new storage pools might be lost because the new storage pools no longer exist in your restored V5 server. Possible recovery depends on the type of storage pool:

If data was moved from V5 DISK-type storage pools into a new storage pool, space that was occupied by the data that was moved was probably reused. Therefore, you must restore the original, V5 storage pools by using the storage pool backups that were created before the upgrade to V7.1.

If *no* data was moved from V5 DISK-type storage pools into a new storage pool, audit the storage pool volumes in these DISK-type storage pools.

If data was moved from V5 sequential-access storage pools into a new storage pool, that data might exist and be usable in storage pool volumes on the restored V5 server. The data might be usable if the **REUSEDELAY** parameter for the storage pool was set to a value that prevented reclamation while the server was running as a V7.1 server. If any volumes were reclaimed while the server was running as a V7.1 server, restore those volumes from storage pool backups that were created before the upgrade to V7.1.

Part 4. Appendixes

Appendix A. Tivoli support information

You can find support information for Tivoli and other IBM products from various sources.

From the IBM Support Portal at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/, you can select the products that you are interested in and search for a wide variety of relevant information.

Communities and other learning resources

In addition to product documentation, many forms of assistance are available to help you get started as you deploy and use the Tivoli Storage Manager family of products. These resources can also help you to solve problems that you might have.

You can use forums, wikis, and other social media tools to ask questions, talk to experts, and learn from others.

User groups

Tivoli Global Storage Virtual User Group

Access this user group at http://www.tivoli-ug.org/storage.

This group makes it possible for individuals from many different industries and types of organizations to share information and work directly with the IBM product experts. Local chapters also exist where members meet in person to share experiences and hear from guest speakers.

ADSM.ORG

Access this mailing list at http://adsm.org.

This independently managed Storage Management discussion forum started when Tivoli Storage Manager was known as ADSTAR Distributed Storage Manager (ADSM). The members of this forum have many years of experience with Tivoli Storage Manager in almost every type of IT environment.

To subscribe to the forum, send an email to listserv@vm.marist.edu. The body of the message must contain the following text: SUBSCRIBE ADSM-L *your_first_name your_family_name*.

Tivoli Storage Manager community on Service Management Connect

Access Service Management Connect at http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/ servicemanagement. In the Storage Management community of Service Management Connect, you can connect with IBM in the following ways:

- Become involved with transparent development, an ongoing, open engagement between users and IBM developers of Tivoli products. You can access early designs, sprint demonstrations, product roadmaps, and prerelease code.
- Connect one-on-one with the experts to collaborate and network about Tivoli and the Tivoli Storage Manager community.
- Read blogs to benefit from the expertise and experience of others.

• Use wikis and forums to collaborate with the broader user community.

Tivoli Storage Manager wiki on developerWorks[®]

Access this wiki at https://www.ibm.com/developerworks/servicemanagement/ sm/index.html.

Find the latest best practices, white papers, and links to videos and other resources. When you log on, you can comment on content, or contribute your own content.

Tivoli Support Technical Exchange

Find information about upcoming Tivoli Support Technical Exchange webcasts at http://www.ibm.com/software/sysmgmt/products/support/supp_tech_exch.html. Replays of previous webcasts are also available.

Learn from technical experts who share their knowledge and then answer your questions. The sessions are designed to address specific technical issues and provide in-depth but narrowly focused training.

Other social media sites

LinkedIn

You can join groups on LinkedIn, a social media site for professionals. For example:

- Tivoli Storage Manager Professionals: http://www.linkedin.com/ groups/Tivoli-Storage-Manager-Professionals-54572
- TSM: http://www.linkedin.com/groups?gid=64540

Twitter

Follow @IBMStorage on Twitter to see the latest news about storage and storage software from IBM.

Tivoli education resources

Use these education resources to help you increase your Tivoli Storage Manager skills:

Tivoli Education and Certification website

View available education at http://www.ibm.com/software/tivoli/education.

Use the Search for Training link to find local and online offerings of instructor-led courses for Tivoli Storage Manager.

Education Assistant

Access resources at http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/ieduasst/ tivv1r0/index.jsp.

Scroll to view the list of available training videos. Recorded product demonstrations are also available on a YouTube channel.

Searching knowledge bases

If a problem occurs while you are using one of the Tivoli Storage Manager family of products, you can search several knowledge bases.

Begin by searching the Tivoli Storage Manager Information Center at http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/tsminfo/v7r1. Within the information center, you can enter words, phrases, or message numbers in the **Search** field to find relevant topics.

Searching the Internet

If you cannot find an answer to your question in the Tivoli Storage Manager information center, search the Internet for the information that might help you resolve the problem.

To search multiple Internet resources, go to the IBM support website at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/. You can search for information without signing in.

Sign in using your IBM ID and password if you want to customize the site based on your product usage and information needs. If you do not already have an IBM ID and password, click **Sign in** at the top of the page and follow the instructions to register.

From the support website, you can search various resources:

- IBM technotes.
- IBM downloads.
- IBM Redbooks[®] publications.
- IBM Authorized Program Analysis Reports (APARs). Select the product and click **Downloads** to search the APAR list.

Using IBM Support Assistant

IBM Support Assistant is a complimentary software product that can help you with problem determination. It is available for some Tivoli Storage Manager and Tivoli Storage FlashCopy Manager products.

IBM Support Assistant helps you gather support information when you must open a problem management record (PMR), which you can then use to track the problem. The product-specific plug-in modules provide you with the following resources:

- Support links
- Education links
- · Ability to submit problem management reports

You can find more information and download the IBM Support Assistant web page at http://www.ibm.com/software/support/isa.

You can also install the stand-alone IBM Support Assistant application on any workstation. You can then enhance the application by installing product-specific plug-in modules for the IBM products that you use. Find add-ons for specific products at http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg27012689.

Finding product fixes

A product fix to resolve a software problem might be available from the IBM software support website.

Procedure

Determine what fixes are available by checking the IBM software support website at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/.

If you previously customized the site based on your product usage:

- 1. Click the link for the product, or a component for which you want to find a fix.
- 2. Click Downloads, and then click Search for recommended fixes.

If you have not previously customized the site:

Click **Downloads** and search for the product.

Receiving notification of product fixes

You can receive notifications about fixes, flashes, upgrades, and other news about IBM products.

Procedure

- From the support page at http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/, click Sign in and sign in using your IBM ID and password. If you do not have an ID and password, click register now and complete the registration process.
- 2. Click Manage all my subscriptions in the Notifications pane.
- 3. Click the Subscribe tab, and then click Tivoli.
- 4. Select the products for which you want to receive notifications and click **Continue**.
- 5. Specify your notification preferences and click Submit.

Contacting IBM Software Support

You can contact IBM Software Support if you have an active IBM subscription and support contract, and if you are authorized to submit problems to IBM.

Procedure

- 1. Ensure that you have completed the following prerequisites:
 - a. Set up a subscription and support contract.
 - b. Determine the business impact of the problem.
 - c. Describe the problem and gather background information.
- Follow the instructions in "Submitting the problem to IBM Software Support" on page 520.

Setting up and managing support contracts

You can set up and manage your Tivoli support contracts by enrolling in IBM Passport Advantage. The type of support contract that you need depends on the type of product you have.

Procedure

Enroll in IBM Passport Advantage in one of the following ways:

- **Online:** Go to the Passport Advantage website at http://www.ibm.com/ software/lotus/passportadvantage/, click **How to enroll**, and follow the instructions.
- **By telephone:** For critical, system-down, or high-severity issues, you can call 1-800-IBMSERV (1-800-426-7378) in the United States. For the telephone number to call in your country, go to the IBM Software Support Handbook web page at http://www14.software.ibm.com/webapp/set2/sas/f/handbook/home.html and click **Contacts**.

Determining the business impact

When you report a problem to IBM, you are asked to supply a severity level. Therefore, you must understand and assess the business impact of the problem you are reporting.

Severity level	Description
Severity 1	Critical business impact: You are unable to use the program, resulting in a critical impact on operations. This condition requires an immediate solution.
Severity 2	Significant business impact: The program is usable but is severely limited.
Severity 3	Some business impact: The program is usable with less significant features (not critical to operations) unavailable.
Severity 4	Minimal business impact: The problem causes little impact on operations, or a reasonable circumvention to the problem has been implemented.

Describing the problem and gathering background information

When explaining a problem to IBM, it is helpful to be as specific as possible. Include all relevant background information so that IBM Software Support specialists can help you solve the problem efficiently.

To save time, know the answers to these questions:

- What software versions were you running when the problem occurred?
- Do you have logs, traces, and messages that are related to the problem symptoms? IBM Software Support is likely to ask for this information.
- Can the problem be re-created? If so, what steps led to the failure?
- Have any changes been made to the system? For example, hardware, operating system, networking software, and so on.
- Are you using a workaround for this problem? If so, be prepared to explain it when you report the problem.

Submitting the problem to IBM Software Support

You can submit the problem to IBM Software Support online or by telephone.

Online

Go to the IBM Software Support website at http://www.ibm.com/ support/entry/portal/Open_service_request/Software/ Software_support_(general). Sign in to access IBM Service Requests and enter your information into the problem submission tool.

By telephone

For critical, system-down, or severity 1 issues, you can call 1-800-IBMSERV (1-800-426-7378) in the United States. For the telephone number to call in your country, go to the IBM Software Support Handbook web page at http://www14.software.ibm.com/webapp/set2/sas/f/handbook/ home.html and click **Contacts**.

Appendix B. Utilities, scripts, and commands for server upgrade and migration

Utilities and commands are available to upgrade or migrate a V5 server to V7.1. A script is available for starting multiple servers.

DSMUPGRD QUERYDB (Display information about a V5 database)

Use the **DSMUPGRD QUERYDB** utility to display information about the database and recovery log for a V5 server. You can use the information to estimate the amount of storage that will be required for the database and recovery log when the server is upgraded to V7.1.

Syntax



Parameters

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris z/OS **-quiet**

Specifies that messages to the console are suppressed. This parameter is optional.

-o options_file

Specifies an options file to use. This parameter is optional.

Windows -k key_name

Specifies the name of the Windows registry key from which to retrieve information about the server. The default is SERVER1. This parameter is optional.

Examples

Obtain information about the database: dsmupgrd querydb
DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB (Prepare a V5 database for upgrade)

Use the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility to prepare a server database for upgrade to V7.1. You must run this utility before using the **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB** utility.

Syntax



Parameters

AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris	z/0S	-quiet
7 10 7 10	111 0/1	Emax	Contanto	2/00	-quiet

Specifies that messages to the console are suppressed. This parameter is optional.

-o options_file

Specifies an options file to use. This parameter is optional.

Windows -k key_name

Specifies the name of the Windows registry key from which to retrieve information about the server. The default is SERVER1. This parameter is optional.

z/0S MEDIASERVER

Specifies the name of the server to be used as the z/OS media server. The server must have been defined by using the **DEFINE SERVER** command before using the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility.

Example

dsmupgrd preparedb

DELETE VOLHISTORY (Delete sequential volume history information)

z/0S

The **DELETE VOLHISTORY** command is used to delete volume history file records that are no longer needed (for example, records for obsolete database backup volumes). In a migration from z/OS to AIX or Linux on System z, issue this command on the V5 server to specify the device class of volumes that must be deleted to prepare for the migration.

When you delete records for volumes that are not in storage pools (for example, database backup or export volumes), the volumes return to scratch status even if IBM Tivoli Storage Manager acquired them as private volumes. Scratch volumes of device type FILE are deleted. When you delete the records for storage pool volumes, the volumes remain in the Tivoli Storage Manager database. When you delete records for recovery plan file objects from a source server, the objects on the target server are marked for deletion.

Use the **DELETE BACKUPSET** command to delete specified backup set volume information in the volume history file. Do not use this **DELETE VOLHISTORY** command to delete backup set volume information in the volume history file.

For users of DRM, the database backup expiration should be controlled with the **SET DRMDBBACKUPEXPIREDAYS** command instead of this **DELETE VOLHISTORY** command. Using the **DELETE VOLHISTORY** command removes the Tivoli Storage Manager record of the volume. This can cause volumes to be lost that were managed by the **MOVE DRMEDIA** command. The standard way to manage the automatic expiration of DRM database backup volumes is by using the **SET DRMDBBACKUPEXPIREDAYS** command.

The **DELETE VOLHISTORY** command can be used to specify the device class of volumes that are to be deleted for migration purposes. The command can be used before migration of a Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server running on z/OS to a V7 server running on AIX or Linux on System Z. The device class must have a device type of FILE, and can be specified only if the **ZMSPREPARE** parameter is set to YES.

Notes:

- 1. Volumes for the most recent database backup series are not deleted.
- 2. Existing volume history files are not automatically updated with this command.
- **3.** You can use the **DEFINE SCHEDULE** command to periodically delete volume history records.

Privilege class

To issue this command, you must have system privilege.

Syntax







Parameters

TODate (Required)

Specifies the date to use to select sequential volume history information to be deleted. Tivoli Storage Manager deletes only those records with a date on or before the date you specify. You can specify the date by using one of the following values:

Value	Description	Example
MM/DD/YYYY	A specific date	01/23/1999
TODAY	The current date	TODAY
TODAY-days or -days	The current date minus days specified. The maximum number of days that you can	TODAY–30 or –30. To delete records that are 30 or more
	specify is 9999.	days old, specify TODAY-30 or -30.

TOTime

Specifies that you want to delete records created on or before this time on the specified date. This parameter is optional. The default is the end of the day (23:59:59). You can specify the time by using one of the following values:

Value	Description	Example	
HH:MM:SS	A specific time on the specified date	12:30:22	
NOW	The current time on the specified date	NOW	

Value	Description	Example
NOW+HH:MM or +HH:MM	The current time plus hours and minutes on the specified date	NOW+03:00 or +03:00. If you issue the DELETE VOLHISTORY command at 9:00 with TOTIME=NOW+03:00 or TOTIME=+03:00, Tivoli Storage Manager deletes records with a time of 12:00 or earlier on the specified date.
NOW-HH:MM or -HH:MM	The current time minus hours and minutes on the specified date	NOW-03:30 or -03:30. If you issue the DELETE VOLHISTORY command at 9:00 with TOTIME=NOW-3:30 or TOTIME=-3:30, Tivoli Storage Manager deletes records with a time of 5:30 or earlier on the specified date.

Type (Required)

Specifies the type of records, which also meet the date and time criteria, to delete from the volume history file. Possible values are:

A11

Specifies to delete all records.

Note: The **DELETE VOLHISTORY** command does not delete records of remote volumes.

DBBackup

Specifies to delete only records that contain information about volumes used for database full and incremental backups, that is, with volume types of BACKUPFULL and BACKUPINCR, and that meet the specified date and time criteria. The latest database full and incremental backup series will not be deleted.

DEVclass=class_name

Specifies the device class name that was used to create the database backups. This optional parameter can be used to delete database backups created by using a server-to-server virtual volume device class. The type of the device class must be SERVER. This parameter can be used only to delete volume history entries of type BACKUPFULL, BACKUPINCR, or DBSNAPSHOT.

A full, incremental, or snapshot database backup volume is eligible to be deleted if all of the following conditions are met:

- The device class that was used to create the database backup volume matches the specified device class.
- The volume was created on or before the specified date and time.
- The volume is not part of the latest full plus incremental database backup series if the specified volume type is DBBackup, or snapshot database backup series if the volume type is DBSnapshot.

DBSnapshot

Specifies to delete only records that contain information about volumes used for snapshot database backups, and that meet the specified date and time criteria. The latest snapshot database backup will not be deleted.

DEVclass=classname

Specifies the device class name that was used to create the database backups. This optional parameter can be used to delete database backups created by using a server-to-server virtual volume device class. The type of the device class must be SERVER. This parameter can be used only to delete volume history entries of type BACKUPFULL, BACKUPINCR, or DBSNAPSHOT.

A full, incremental, or snapshot database backup volume is eligible to be deleted if all of the following conditions are met:

- The device class that was used to create the database backup volume matches the specified device class.
- The volume was created on or before the specified date and time.
- The volume is not part of the latest full plus incremental database backup series if the specified volume type is DBBackup, or snapshot database backup series if the volume type is DBSnapshot.

DBRpf

Specifies to delete only records that contain information about full and incremental database backup volumes and recovery plan file volumes.

EXPort

Specifies to delete only records that contain information about export volumes.

RPFile

Specifies to delete only records that contain information about recovery plan file objects that are stored on a target server and that meet the specified date and time criteria.

DELETELatest

Specifies whether the latest recovery plan file is eligible for deletion. This optional parameter can be used to delete the latest recovery plan files created by using a server-to-server virtual volume device class.

This parameter can be used only to delete volume history entries of type RPFILE (for instance, those recovery plan files that were created by using the **DEVCLASS** parameter with the **PREPARE**command). If this parameter is not specified, the latest RPFILE entries are not deleted.

- **No** Specifies that the latest RPFILE file is not deleted.
- **Yes** Specifies that the latest RPFILE file is deleted if it meets the specified date and time criteria.

RPFSnapshot

Specifies to delete only records that contain information about recovery plan file objects that were created assuming snapshot database backups, that are stored on a target server, and that meet the specified date and time criteria. The latest RPFSNAPSHOT file will not be deleted unless it meets the specified date and time criteria, and the **DELETELATEST** parameter is set to Yes.

DELETELatest

Specifies whether the latest recovery plan file is eligible for deletion. This optional parameter can be used to delete the latest recovery plan files created by using a server-to-server virtual volume device class.

This parameter can be used only to delete volume history entries of type RPFSNAPSHOT (for instance, those recovery plan files that were created by using the **DEVCLASS** parameter with the **PREPARE** command). If this parameter is not specified, the latest RPFSNAPSHOT entries are not deleted.

- **No** Specifies that the latest RPFSNAPSHOT file is not deleted.
- **Yes** Specifies that the latest RPFSNAPSHOT file is deleted if it meets the specified date and time criteria.

STGNew

Specifies to delete only records that contain information about new sequential access storage volumes.

STGReuse

Specifies to delete only records that contain information about reused sequential storage pool volumes.

STGDelete

Specifies to delete only records that contain information about deleted sequential storage pool volumes.

ZMSPREPARE

Specifies whether the **DELETE VOLHISTORY** command is being used to delete sequential volumes that are stored in a FILE device class. The deletion takes place before migrating a Tivoli Storage Manager V5 server that is running on z/OS to a V7 server that is running on AIX or Linux on System z.

No Specifies that the **DELETE VOLHISTORY** command is not being used to prepare for a migration. This is the default value.

Yes

Specifies that the **DELETE VOLHISTORY** command is being used to prepare for a migration.

DEVclass=class_name

Specifies the device class name that was used to create the volumes that are being deleted. The device class type must be FILE.

Example: Delete recovery plan file information

Delete all recovery plan file information created on or before 03/28/2005. delete volhistory type=rpfile todate=03/28/2005

DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB (Extract data from a V5 server database)

Use the **DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB** utility to extract data from a server database. The data can be inserted into a version 7.1 server database either later or at the same time as the extraction process.

Prerequisite

Before using this utility, you must use the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility on the existing database.

Syntax



A: Extract to media:

└──DEVclass──=─*device_class_name*──MANifest──=*─_file_name*───**▶**



B: Extract and transmit by using a network:

Notes:

1 You must specify **VOLUMENAMES** if you specify **SCRATCH=NO**.

Parameters

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris z/OS **-quiet**

Specifies that messages to the console are suppressed. This parameter is optional.

-o options_file

Specifies an options file to use. This parameter is optional.

Windows -k key_name

Specifies the name of the Windows registry key from which to retrieve information about the server. The default is SERVER1. This parameter is optional.

DEVclass

Specifies a sequential device class to use for storing the extracted data. This parameter is required if you want to extract the database to media.

Restriction: You cannot use a device class with a device type of NAS or CENTERA.

Restriction: $z^{/0S}$ For a Tivoli Storage Manager server running on a z/OS system, you cannot use a device class with a device type of FILE.

MANifest

Specifies the location of the manifest file. Use a fully qualified file name, or place in a local directory. For example: ./manifest.txt

This parameter is required if you want to extract the database to media.

EVentbasedused

Specifies whether event-based archive retention was ever in use on the server. Event-based archive retention supports the retention of an archived object to be based on an external event. The default value for this parameter is YES. Possible values are:

Yes

Specifies that event-based archive retention was in use on the server. The default is YES. If you are not sure whether event-based archive retention was in use, accept the default.

Overriding the default might cause archive objects to expire prematurely after the upgrade, if event-based archive retention was ever used. Using the default value ensures correct results.

Never

Specifies that event-based archive retention was never in use on the server.

Attention: Specifying EVENTBASEDUSED=NEVER might improve the performance of the upgrade operation. However, do not use this value if there is *any* chance that event-based archive retention was ever used on the server. If event-based archive retention was ever used on the server, specifying EVENTBASEDUSED=NEVER can result in archive files expiring prematurely after the upgrade completes.

SCRatch

Specifies whether scratch volumes can be used to store the data. This parameter is optional. The default value is YES. Possible values are:

Yes

Specifies that scratch volumes can be used.

If you specify **SCRATCH=YES** and also specify volumes with the **VOLUMENAMES** parameter, the specified volumes are used first. Scratch volumes are used only if the specified volumes do not have enough space to contain the extracted data.

If the device type for the device class is FILE, the names for the scratch volumes are generated based on a time stamp.

No Specifies that scratch volumes cannot be used. If you specify this value, you must also specify volumes by using the **VOLUMENAMES** parameter.

If the volumes that you specify with the **VOLUMENAMES** parameter do not have enough space to contain the extracted data, the process fails.

VOLumenames

Specifies the volumes to use to store the extracted database. To specify multiple volumes, separate the names with commas and without intervening spaces.

HLAddress

Specifies either the numeric IP address or the domain name of the V7.1 server. This parameter is required if you want to extract and simultaneously transmit the data to the V7.1 server by using the network.

If the V5 server and the V7.1 server are on the same system, you can specify localhost.

LLAddress

Specifies the low-level address of the V7.1 server. This address is the same as the value that is specified with the TCPPORT server option for the V7.1 server. This parameter is required if you want to extract and simultaneously transmit the data to the V7.1 server by using the network.

Examples

Extract and transmit the data to a server by using the network: dsmupgrd extractdb hladdress=xyz.company.com lladdress=1555

Extract and store the data on media:

 ${\tt dsmupgrd\ extractdb\ devclass=tapeclass\ manifest=keepthis.txt}$

The manifest file for the data extraction to media

During the data extraction to media, the **DSMUPGRD** utility creates a manifest file. The manifest file contains information about the volumes and device classes that are used for storing the extracted data.

The manifest file is required by the data insertion process when you are using media to move the database to the V7.1 server. You specify the name of the manifest file when you run the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris Windows In the manifest file, the device configuration section contains information about the configuration settings of the source server device. You might need to edit settings, such as device names and drive element numbers, before you use the manifest file with the DSMSERV INSERTDB utility, especially if the utility is run on a different system.

A manifest file has content that is similar to the following example:

```
* Version 2 manifest file for EXTRACTDB
DEVCLASS-3584L2
STREAMS-1
VOLUMENAMES000-L12345
* Device Configuration Information
DEFINE DEVCLASS 3584L2 DEVTYPE-LTO FORMAT=DRIVE MOUNTLIMIT=DRIVES MOUNTWAIT=60
MOUNTRETENTION=60 PREFIX=ADSM LIBRARY=3584L2 WORM=NO DRIVEENCRYPTION=ALLOW
SET SERVERNAME MOKSHA
DEFINE LIBRARY 3584L2 LIBTYPE=SCSI SERIAL="00000002267304AB" SHARED=YES
AUTOLABEL=YES RESETORIVE=YES
DEFINE DRIVE 3584L2 S84L2_DRV1 ELEMENT=265 ONLINE=Yes WWN="500507630F18BA09"
SERIAL="0007859130"
DEFINE PATH MOKSHA 3584L2 SRCTYPE=SERVER DESTTYPE=LIBRARY DEVICE=/dev/IBMchanger5 ONLINE=YES
DEFINE PATH MOKSHA 3584L2_DRV1 SRCTYPE=SERVER DESTTYPE=DRIVE LIBRARY=3584L2 DEVICE=/dev/IBMchanger20 ONLINE=YES
```

z^{/0S} The device configuration section contains device configuration information for the source server. Device configuration statements are based on definitions from the source server, but the statements are transformed into the

format required by a server running on AIX or Linux on System z. The device configuration section is set up to use a z/OS media server for media access.

A manifest file for an upgrade to an AIX or a Linux on System z system has content similar to the following example:

* Version 2 manifest file for EXTRACTDB DEVCLASS=TAPE3592 STREAMS=1 VOLUMENAMES000=JJY010,JJY011,JJY012 /* Device Configuration */ DEFINE LERARY 3592LIB LBTYPE=ZOSMEDIA DEFINE DERARY 3592LIB LBTYPE=ZOSMEDIA DEFINE DEVCLASS 3592CLASS DEVTYPE=3592 ESTCAPACITY=314572800K PREFIX=ADSM MOUNTLIMIT=2 MOUNTRETENTION=60 MOUNTWAIT=60 COMPRESSION=Yes UNIT=C06M5N03 WORM=No PROTECTION=No FORMA1=Drive LIBRARY=3592LIB DEFINE PATH MVSTS 3592LIB SRCTYPE=SERVER DESTTYPE=LIBRARY ZOSMEDIASERVER=TUCMVSTS ONLINE=YES DEFINE DEVCLASS FILE DEVTYPE=File MAXCAPACITY=2097152K PREFIX=SVTSMS1 MOUNTLIMIT=20 DEFINE DEVCLASS FROM-MVSTT DEVTYPE=File MAXCAPACITY=2097152K PREFIX=SVTSMS1 MOUNTLIMIT=100 DEFINE DEVCLASS FROM-MVSTT DEVTYPE=FILE MAXCAPACITY=2097152K PREFIX=SVTSMS1 MOUNTLIMIT=100 DEFINE DEVCLASS TROM-WSTT DEVTYPE=FILE MAXCAPACITY=2097152K PREFIX=SVTSMS1 MOUNTLIMIT=100 DEFINE DEVCLASS TROM-MVSTT DEVTYPE=Server SERVERNAME=TUCMVSTT MAXCAPACITY=2097152K PREFIX=ADSM MOUNTLIMIT=50 RETRYPERIOD=10 RETRYINTERVAL=30 DEFINE SERVER TUCMVSTT COMMMETHOD=TCPIP HLADDRESS=tucmstt.storage.tucson.ibm.com LLADDRESS=533 NODENAME=MYSTS SERVERPASSWORD=18b74d5c185 DEFINE SERVER STA_PURGE COMMMETHOD=TCPIP HLADDRESS=purge.storage.tucson.ibm.com LLADDRESS=1500 SERVERPASSWORD=1809a6d6947303df677 DEFINE SERVER TUCMVSTS COMMETHOD=TCPIP HLADDRESS=9.11.92.48 LLADDRESS=2556 SERVERPASSWORD=18909a64947303df677 DEFINE SERVER TUCMVSTS SET SERVERFASSWORD=18909a66666454

Related reference:

"DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB (Extract data from a V5 server database)" on page 529

"DSMSERV INSERTDB (Move a server database into an empty database)" on page 538

DSMUPGRD EXTEND DB (Extend the size of the database)

Use this utility on a V5 database to extend its size. Use this utility only when an error occurs during the upgrade process that indicates that you need additional database space to continue.

Prerequisite

Use the DSMFMT utility to format a new volume to be used for extending the database. For information about how to use the DSMFMT utility, see the version 5.5 information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v1r1

Syntax



Parameters



Windows -k key_name

Specifies the name of the Windows registry key from which to retrieve information about the server. The default is SERVER1. This parameter is optional.

volume_name (Required)

Specifies the name to be used for the new database extension volume.

megabytes (Required)

Specifies the size of the new volume in megabytes. The size must be a multiple of 4 MB, and it must be 1 MB less than the size of the volume specified in the *volume_name* parameter. For example, if the volume is 5 MB, specify a value of 4.

DSMUPGRD EXTEND LOG (Extend the size of the recovery log)

Use this utility on a V5 server to extend the size of the recovery log when the ANR9999D LOGSEG message was issued during the upgrade process, which indicates that you need additional log space to continue with the upgrade process.

Issue this command if you receive an ANR9999D LOGSEG message. This indicates that your log space has been overcommitted and your server terminates with a LOGSEG871 error. After the server is running, you can do the following:

- Back up the database, which frees the recovery log space.
- Adjust the size of the recovery log, the database backup trigger full percentage, or both to allow for successful future database backups.

Prerequisite

Use the DSMFMT utility to format a new volume to be used for extending the recovery log. For information about how to use the DSMFMT utility, see the version 5.5 information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v1r1

Syntax



►-EXTEND LOG—volume_name—megabytes—

Parameters

 AIX
 HP-UX
 Linux
 Solaris
 z/0S
 -quiet

 Specifies that messages to the console are suppressed. This parameter is optional.
 optional
 This parameter
 Specifies

AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris	Windows	z/0S	-o options file
Specif	fies an opti	ons file to	use. This	parameter	is option	al.

opecifies an options file to use. This parameter

Windows -k key_name

Specifies the name of the Windows registry key from which to retrieve information about the server. The default is SERVER1. This parameter is optional.

volume_name (Required)

Specifies the name to be used for the new recovery log extension volume

megabytes (Required)

Specifies the size of the new volume in megabytes. The size must be a multiple of 4 MB, and it must be 1 MB less than the size of the volume specified in the *volume_name* parameter. For example, if the volume is 5 MB, specify a value of 4.

DSMUPGRD UPDATE (Create backup registry entries for a V5 server instance)

Windows

Use this utility to create registry entries for a V5 server instance if a problem in the upgrade process has removed the entries when they are still needed. For example, you can use this utility if you are upgrading a V5 server to V7.1 on the same system, and accidentally ran the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** utility before running the **DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB** utility.

Run this utility from the instance directory for the V5 database (where files such as dsmserv.dsk are stored for the server). The utility recreates the original registry entries for the V5 server, but stores the entries in a backup location to avoid overwriting the entries that were added by V7.1.

Syntax



Parameters

-k key_name

Specifies the name of the Windows registry key in which to store information about the server. The default is Server1.

Example

Run the utility to recreate registry entries for the server instance, Server2. "c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\upgrade\dsmupgrd" -k server2 update

DSMSERV LOADFORMAT (Format a database)

Use the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** utility to format an empty database on the V7.1 server in preparation for inserting data from an extracted V5 database.

Set the DB2CODEPAGE system environment variable to 819 for each server instance. Before you issue the **DSMSERV LOADFORMAT** command, log on to the system as the server instance owner and issue this command: db2set -i *instance_name* DB2CODEPAGE=819



same system. After you install a server by using this parameter, you must always start it with the value of this parameter. The default is SERVER1.

-o options_file

Specifies an options file to use. This parameter is optional.

-noexpire

Specifies that expiration processing is suppressed when starting. This parameter is optional.

-quiet

Specifies that messages to the console are suppressed. This parameter is optional.

DBDir

Specifies the relative path names of one or more directories that are used to store database objects. Directory names must be separated by commas but without spaces. You can specify up to 128 directory names. You must specify either the **DBDIR** or the **DBFILE** parameter.

DBFile

Specifies the name of a file that contains the relative path names of one or more directories that are used to store database objects. Each directory name must be on a separate line in the file. You can specify up to 128 directory names. You must specify either the DBDIR or the **DBFILE** parameter.

ACTIVELOGSize

Specifies the size of the active log in megabytes. This parameter is optional. The minimum value is 2048 MB (2 GB); the maximum is 131,072 MB (128 GB). If you specify an odd number, the value is rounded up to the next even number. The default is 16384 MB.

ACTIVELOGDirectory (Required)

Specifies the directory in which the Tivoli Storage Manager server writes and stores active log files. There is only one active log location. The name must be a fully qualified directory name. The directory must exist, it must be empty, and it must be accessible by the user ID of the database manager. The maximum number of characters is 175.

ARCHLogdirectory (Required)

Specifies the directory for the archive log files. The name must be a fully qualified directory name. The maximum number of characters is 175.

ARCHFailoverlogdirectory

Specifies the directory to be used as an alternative storage location if the ARCHLOGDIRECTORY directory is full. This parameter is optional. The maximum number of characters is 175.

MIRRorlogdirectory

Specifies the directory in which the server mirrors the active log (those files in the ACTIVELOGDIRECTORY directory). This parameter is optional. The directory must be a fully qualified directory name. The maximum number of characters is 175.

Example: Format a database

AIX Linux

dsmserv format dbdir=/tsmdb001 activelogsize=8192 activelogdir=/activelog archlogdir=/archlog archfailoverlogdir=/archfaillog mirrorlogdir=/mirrorlog

DSMSERV INSERTDB (Move a server database into an empty database)

Use the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility to move a server database into a new database. The database can be extracted from the original server and inserted into a new database on the new server by using a network connection between the two servers. The database can also be inserted from media that contains the extracted database.

Tip: AX If the server is installed on an AIX Version 6.1 operating system, to improve system performance, consider selecting the time zone specification that is associated with the Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX). The alternative time zone specification, based on the Olson database, might affect system performance. For information about setting time zone specifications, see the documentation for the AIX operating system. If the server is installed on AIX Version 7.1, this issue does not occur.

Before you use the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** utility, complete the planning and preparation tasks, such as backing up the database and saving configuration information. Ensure that you meet all requirements before you move the server database. For planning and preparation information, see the upgrade or migration procedure for your operating system.

Requirements for insertion by using media

Before you run the utility to insert the server database into an empty database, ensure that your system meets the following requirements.

- The manifest file from the DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB operation must be available.
- If the manifest file does not contain device configuration information, or if you are specifying the **CONFIGINFO=DEVCONFIG** parameter, both of the following statements must be true:
 - The server options file must contain an entry for the device configuration file.
 - The device configuration file must have information about the device class that is specified in the manifest file.
- The media that contains the extracted database must be available to the V7 server. Also, the permissions must be set to grant access to the media for the user ID that owns the V7 server instance.

Syntax



A: Insert from media:

1	CONFiginfoMANifest
DEVclassdevice_class_name	CONFiginfoMANifest
►-MANifest <i>file_name</i>	

B: Insert over a network:



Parameters

AIX

HP-UX	Linux	Solaris	-u	user	name

Specifies a user name to switch to before initializing the server. This parameter is optional.

AIX		Linux	Solarie	i instance din
AIX	HP-UX	LIIIUX	Solaris	-1 instance air

Specifies an instance directory to use. This directory becomes the current working directory of the server. This parameter is optional.

Windows -k key_name

Specifies the name of the Windows registry key from which to retrieve information about the server. This parameter is optional. The default is **SERVER1**.

-o options_file

Specifies an options file to use. This parameter is optional.

-noexpire

Specifies that expiration processing is suppressed when starting. This parameter is optional.

-quiet

Specifies that messages to the console are suppressed. This parameter is optional.

DEVclass

Specifies a sequential-access device class. You can specify any device class except for the DISK device class. The definition for the device class must exist in either the manifest file or the device configuration file.

This parameter is optional and is used only when the database that you want to insert into the empty V7 database was extracted to media. If the database is on media and you do not specify a device class, the device class that is identified in the manifest file is used.

Restriction: You cannot use a device class with a device type of NAS or CENTERA.

MANifest

Specifies the location of the manifest file. Use a fully qualified file name, or place in a local directory. For example: ./manifest.txt

This parameter is required when the database that you want to insert into the empty V7 database was extracted to media.

CONFiginfo

Specifies the source of the device configuration information that is used by the **DSMSERV INSERTDB** operation. The default value for this parameter is **MANIFEST**. Possible values are as follows:

MANifest

Specifies that device configuration information is read from the manifest file. If the manifest file does not have device configuration information, the device configuration file is used instead.

DEVConfig

Specifies that device configuration information is read from the device configuration file.

SESSWait

Specifies the number of minutes that the V7 server waits to be contacted by the original server. The default value is 60 minutes.

Use this parameter only if the data that is inserted into the empty V7 database is transmitted from the source server with a network connection.

PREview

Specifies whether to preview the insertion operation. This parameter is optional. The default value is **NO**.

Use the **PREVIEW=YES** parameter to test a database. When you use this parameter, the operation includes all steps of the process, except for the actual insertion of data into the new database. When you preview the insertion operation, you can quickly verify that the source database is readable. You can also identify any data constraint violations that might prevent an upgraded database from being put into production.

ZMSPREPARE (Prepare a server on a z/OS system for migration)

z/0S

Use the **ZMSPREPARE** command to view information about data that must be backed up from disk to tape to prepare to migrate the server to the z/OS media server.

The **ZMSPREPARE** command also reports on the following items:

- Copy and active-data storage pools that must be deleted or marked as destroyed
- Sequential volumes that are recorded in the volume history and that are located on FILE storage, but not including storage pool volumes
- Backup sets that are located on FILE storage
- Invalid device classes
- Server options that require an update
- Date and time of the most recent Tivoli Storage Manager server database backup

This command can be issued only on a z/OS server.

Privilege class

Any administrator can issue this command.

Syntax



Parameters

STGpoo1

Specifies the storage pools to be listed.

Format

Specifies the format of the output. The following values are possible:

Standard

Specifies that summary data is displayed.

Detailed

Specifies that detailed data is displayed.

Example: View data for all storage pools in standard format

View data for all storage pools in standard format. Issue the following command: zmsprepare stgpool=* Format=Standard

Disk-base Storage Pool Name	ed Storage Pools. Storage e Pool Type	 Device Class Name	Estimated Capacity	Pct Util	Volumes not mark- ed destr- oyed	
ARCHIVEP BACKUPPO HFSPOOL SPACEMGPO	DOL Primary DL Primary Primary DOL Primary	DISK DISK HFSCLASS DISK	0.0 M 12.0 M 0.0 M 0.0 M	0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0	0 1 2 0	
******** No FILE ******** Sequentia Date/Time	device type Backu ************************************	p Sets found. ************************************	******* ******* ILE Class Volume N	lame		
04/22/20 04/22/20 ********	11 13:20:09 BACK 11 13:20:30 EXPC	UPFULL FILE RT FILE	USER3.S3 USER3.S3	3503609.D 3503630.E	DBB EXP	
(Yes/No Line Number	o/Consult documen Option	tation) Include in V7 se options file?	rver Incl opti	ude in m ons file	nedia server ?	
19	COMMOPENTIMEO-	No	No			
24 104 109 137 163 167	COMMETHOD TCPNAME DELETIONEXIT VOLUMEHISTORY DEVCONFIG TCPPORT	Yes No Consult Consult Consult ***************	No Yes No No Cons	sult		
Las Complete Backuj Date/Time 03/15/11	t e e 15:51:21					

Example: View data for all storage pools in detailed format

View data for all storage pools in detailed format. Issue the following command: zmsprepare stgpool=* Format=Detailed

The output is similar to that of the previous example, except for the storage pool section, which includes a list of any volumes not marked DELETED:

```
Disk-based Storage Pools...
          Storage Pool Name: ARCHIVEPOOL
          Storage Pool Type: Primary
          Device Class Name: DISK
         Estimated Capacity: 0.0 M
                    Pct Util: 0.0
Volumes not marked destroyed: 0
         Copy Storage Pools:
                Volume Name:
          Storage Pool Name: BACKUPPOOL
          Storage Pool Type: Primary
          Device Class Name: DISK
         Estimated Capacity: 12.0 M
                   Pct Util: 0.0
Volumes not marked destroyed: 1
         Copy Storage Pools:
                Volume Name: STGVOL1 Read/Write
          Storage Pool Name: HFSPOOL
          Storage Pool Type: Primary
          Device Class Name: HFSCLASS
         Estimated Capacity: 0.0 M
                   Pct Util: 0.0
Volumes not marked destroyed: 2
         Copy Storage Pools:
                Volume Name: /u/tsm/tsm1/hfsvol1 Read/Write
                              /u/tsm/tsm2/hfsvol2 Read/Write
          Storage Pool Name: SPACEMGPOOL
          Storage Pool Type: Primary
          Device Class Name: DISK
          Estimated Capacity: 0.0 M
                   Pct Util: 0.0
Volumes not marked destroyed: 0
         Copy Storage Pools:
                Volume Name:
```

Server startup script: rc.dsmserv

AIX HP-UX Solaris

You can use the **rc.dsmserv** script in your system startup to automatically start a server instance under a specific user ID.

Syntax

 uniser name		
└─ -U──user name─┘	└ –i—instance dir-J	
_	_	

Parameters

-u user_name

Specifies the Tivoli Storage Manager instance user ID for which the environment is set up. The server will run under this user ID.

-U user_name

Specifies the Tivoli Storage Manager instance user ID for which the environment is set up. The server will run under the user ID of the invoker of the command.

-i instance_dir

Specifies an instance directory, which becomes the working directory of the server.

Server startup script: dsmserv.rc

Linux

You can use the dsmserv.rc script to stop a server instance, or manually or automatically start a server.

Prerequisites

Before you issue the **DSMSERV.RC** command, complete the following steps:

- 1. Ensure that the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance runs under a non-root user ID with the same name as the instance owner.
- Copy the dsmserv.rc script to the /etc/rc.d/init.d directory. The dsmserv.rc script is in the server installation directory, for example, /opt/tivoli/tsm/ server/bin.
- **3**. Rename the script so that it matches the name of the server instance owner, for example, tsminst1.
- 4. Use tools such as the **CHKCONFIG** utility to configure the run level in which the server automatically starts. Specify a value that corresponds to a multiuser mode, with networking turned on. Typically, the run level to use is 3 or 5, depending on the operating system and its configuration. For details about run levels, see the documentation for your operating system.

Syntax



Parameters

start

Starts the server.

stop

Stops the server.

status

Shows the status of the server. If the status is started, the process ID of the server process is also shown.

restart

Stops the server and starts it again.

Sample commands to run for validation of the database upgrade

Run commands before and after you upgrade a server to get a summary of information about the contents of the server database. Comparing the results of the commands before and after the upgrade can help confirm that all data transferred correctly. Samples provide a set of commands to start with.

The following commands show examples for getting summary information for some specific types of objects:

File spaces

select node_name, count(*) as "Number of Filespaces" from filespaces
group by node_name order by 2

Nodes select platform_name, count(*) as "Number of Nodes" from nodes group by platform_name

Backed-up files

select node_name,sum(num_files) as "Number of Backup Files" from occupancy where type='Bkup' group by node_name

Archived files

select node_name,sum(num_files) as "Number of Archive Files" from occupancy where type='Arch' group by node name

Management classes

select count(*) as "Number of Management Classes" from mgmtclasses

Server scripts

select count(*) as "Number of Server Scripts" from script names

Storage pools

select count(*) as "Number of Storage Pools" from stgpools

The following example shows a more complete set of commands. You can run this set of commands as a script from a Tivoli Storage Manager server command line. Redirect the output to a file to save the results.

select node name, count(*) as "Number of Filespaces" from filespaces group by node name order by 2 select platform_name, count(*) as "Number of Nodes" from nodes group by platform_name select count(*) as "Number of Administrators" from admins select node_name,sum(num_files) as "Number of Backup Files" from occupancy where type='Bkup' group by node name select node name, sum(num files) as "Number of Archive Files" from occupancy where type='Arch' group by node name select count(*) as "Number of Schedule Associations" from associations select count(*) as "Number of Backupsets" from backupsets select count(*) as "Number of Client Option Sets" from cloptsets select count(*) as "Number of Collocation Groups" from collocgroup select count(*) as "Number of Archive CopyGroups" from ar_copygroups select count(*) as "Number of Backup CopyGroups" from bu_copygroups select count(*) as "Number of Data Movers" from datamovers select count(*) as "Number of Device Classes" from devclasses select count(*) as "Number of Domains" from domains select count(*) as "Number of Drives" from drives select count(*) as "Number of Libraries" from libraries select count(*) as "Number of Library Volumes" from libvolumes select count(*) as "Number of Volumes" from volumes select count(*) as "Number of Management Classes" from mgmtclasses select count(*) as "Number of Node Groups" from nodegroup select count(*) as "Number of Device Paths" from paths select count(*) as "Number of Policy Sets" from policysets select count(*) as "Number of Client Schedules" from client_schedules select count(*) as "Number of Admin Schedules" from admin_schedules select count(*) as "Number of Server Scripts" from scripts select count(*) as "Number of Servers Defined" from servers select count(*) as "Number of Servers Groups Defined" from server group select count(*) as "Number of Storage Pools Defined" from stgpools

Appendix C. Installing server language packages

	AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris	Windows	
--	-----	-------	-------	---------	---------	--

Translations for the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager server allow the server to display messages and help in languages other than U.S. English. The translations also allow for the use of locale conventions for date, time, and number formatting.

Server language locales

Use either the default language package option or select another language package to display server messages and help.

AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris This language package is automatically installed for the following default language option for Tivoli Storage Manager server messages and help:

- AIX LANGUAGE en_US
- HP-UX LANGUAGE AMENG

The following system locale must be installed on the system when you use LANGUAGE AMENG:

HP-UX en_US.iso88591

- Linux LANGUAGE en_US
- LANGUAGE AMENG

Solaris The following system locale must be installed on the system when you use LANGUAGE AMENG:

Solaris en_US

Windows This language package is automatically installed for the following default language option for Tivoli Storage Manager server messages and help: LANGUAGE AMENG.

For languages or locales other than the default, install the language package that your installation requires.

You can use the languages that are shown:

Table 75.	Server	languages	for AIX
		0 0	

Language	LANGUAGE option value
Chinese, Simplified	zh_CN
Chinese, Simplified (UTF-8)	ZH_CN
Chinese, Traditional (Big5)	Zh_TW
Chinese, Traditional (UTF-8)	ZH_TW
Chinese, Traditional (euc_tw)	zh_TW
English	en_US
English (UTF-8)	EN_US

Table 75. Server languages	for AIX	(continued)
----------------------------	---------	-------------

Language	LANGUAGE option value
French	fr_FR
French (UTF-8)	FR_FR
German	de_DE
German (UTF-8)	DE_DE
Italian	it_IT
Italian (UTF-8)	IT_IT
Japanese, EUC	ja_JP
Japanese, PC	Ja_JP
Japanese, UTF8	JA_JP
Korean	ko_KR
Korean (UTF-8)	KO_KR
Portuguese, Brazilian	pt_BR
Portuguese, Brazilian (UTF-8)	PT_BR
Russian	ru_RU
Russian (UTF-8)	RU_RU
Spanish	es_ES
Spanish (UTF-8)	ES_ES
Notes:	

• For more information about setting the LANGUAGE option, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

HP-UX

Table 76. Server languages for HP-UX

Language	LANGUAGE option value	
Chinese, Simplified	zh_CN.hp15CN	
	zh_CN.utf8	
Chinese, Traditional	zh_TW.big5	
	zh_TW.eucTW	
	zh_TW.utf8	
English	AMENG (default)	
	en_US.utf8	
French	fr_FR.iso88591	
	fr_FR.utf8	
German	de_DE.iso88591	
	de_DE.utf8	
Italian	it_IT.iso88591	
	it_IT.utf8	
Japanese	ja_JP.eucJP	
	ja_JP.utf8	

Table 76. Server languages for HP-UX (continued)

Language	LANGUAGE option value
Korean	ko_KR.eucKR
	ko_KR.utf8
Portuguese, Brazilian	pt_PT.iso88591
	pt_PT.utf8
Russian	ru_RU.iso88595
	ru_RU.utf8
Spanish	es_ES.iso88591
	es_ES.utf8
Notes: For more information about setting the LANGUAGE option, see the <i>Administrator's</i>	

Reference.

Linux

Table 77. Server languages for Linux

LANGUAGE	LANGUAGE option value
Chinese, Simplified	zh_CN
	zh_CN.gb18030
	zh_CN.utf8
Chinese, Traditional	Big5 / Zh_TW
	zh_TW
	zh_TW.utf8
English, United States	en_US
	en_US.utf8
French	fr_FR
	fr_FR.utf8
German	de_DE
	de_DE.utf8
Italian	it_IT
	it_IT.utf8
Japanese	ja_JP
	ja_JP.utf8
Korean	ko_KR
	ko_KR.utf8
Portuguese, Brazilian	pt_BR
	pt_BR.utf8
Russian	ru_RU
	ru_RU.utf8
Spanish	es_ES
	es_ES.utf8
Notes: For more information about setting	g the LANGUAGE option, see the Administrator's

Reference.



Table 78. Server languages for Solaris

Language	LANGUAGE option value	
Chinese, Simplified	zh	
	zh_CN.UTF-8	
Chinese, Traditional	zh_TW	
	zh_TW.BIG5	
	zh_TW.UTF-8	
English	AMENG (default)	
	en_US.UTF-8	
French	fr_FR.ISO8859-1	
	fr_FR.UTF-8	
German	de_DE.ISO8859-1	
	de_DE.UTF-8	
Italian	it_IT.ISO8859-1	
	it_IT.UTF-8	
Japanese	ja	
	ja_JP.UTF-8	
Korean	ko	
	ko_KR.UTF-8	
Portuguese, Brazilian	pt_BR.ISO8859-1	
	pt_BR.UTF-8	
Russian	ru_RU.ISO8859-5	
	ru_RU.UTF-8	
Spanish	es_ES.ISO8859-1	
	es_ES.UTF-8	

Notes:

• LANGUAGE AMENG requires system locale en_US.

• For more information about setting the LANGUAGE option, see the *Administrator's Reference*.

Windows

Table 79. Server languages for Windows

Language	LANGUAGE option value
Chinese, Simplified	chs
Chinese, Traditional	cht
English	ameng
French	fra
German	deu
Italian	ita
Japanese (Shift-JIS)	jpn
Korean	kor

Table 79. Server languages for Windows (continued)

Language	LANGUAGE option value	
Portuguese, Brazilian	ptb	
Russian	rus	
Spanish	esp	
Notes: For more information about setting the LANGUAGE option, see the <i>Administrator's Reference</i> .		

Restriction: AIX Linux Solaris Windows For Operations Center users, some characters might not be displayed properly if the web browser does not use the same language as the server. If this problem occurs, set the browser to use the same language as the server.

Configuring a language package

After you configure a language package, messages and help are shown on the Tivoli Storage Manager in languages other than US English. Installation packages are provided with Tivoli Storage Manager.

About this task



complete one of the following tasks:

• Set the LANGUAGE option in the server options file to the name of the locale that you want to use. For example:

AIX To use the it_IT locale, set the LANGUAGE option to it_IT. See "Server language locales" on page 547.

HP-UX To use the it_IT.iso88591 locale, set the LANGUAGE option to it_IT.iso88591. See "Server language locales" on page 547.

Solaris To use the it_IT.IS08859-1 locale, set the LANGUAGE option to it_IT.IS08859-1. See "Server language locales" on page 547.

• AIX HP-UX Linux Solaris If you are starting the server in the foreground, set the LC_ALL environment variable to match the value that is set in the server options file. For example, to set the environment variable for Italian, enter the following value:

export LC_ALL=it_IT

Windows Set the LANGUAGE option in the server options file to the name of the locale that you want to use. For example: to use the ita locale, set the LANGUAGE option to ita. See "Server language locales" on page 547.

If the locale is successfully initialized, it formats the date, time, and number for the server. If the locale is not successfully initialized, the server uses the US English message files and the date, time, and number format.

Appendix D. HP-UX system resource requirements

HP-UX

Semaphores, shared memory, and processes are HP-UX system resources that might require special configuration and tuning for the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

Estimating required semaphore resources

HP-UX

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager uses semaphore resources to control its internal operations.

About this task

To estimate the total number of semaphores that the server may need, use the following formula:

semaphores = 60 + (2 x maxSessions)

Where *maxSessions* is the maximum number of concurrent client sessions.

For example, if you expect to have up to 15 client sessions active at the same time, Tivoli Storage Manager needs approximately 90 semaphores.

Note: If you have other applications that use semaphores, you must account for their requirements also when adjusting your kernel configuration.

After you have estimated the number of semaphores, ensure that your kernel configuration contains the correct value. See "Viewing and modifying the kernel configuration" on page 554 for details.

Estimating required process resources

HP-UX

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager uses standard HP-UX processes for concurrent server operations.

About this task

To estimate the total number of processes that the server may need, you can use the following formula:

processes = 60 + (2 x maxSessions)

Where *maxSessions* is the maximum number of concurrent client sessions.

For example, assume that you will have up to 15 client sessions active at the same time. You can calculate that IBM Tivoli Storage Manager needs approximately 90

processes to control its internal operations. You will also need to account for all of the other HP-UX processes that might be running concurrently on your system when computing the total requirements for your HP-UX kernel resources.

After you have estimated the required number of processes, ensure that your kernel configuration contains the correct value. See "Viewing and modifying the kernel configuration" for details.

Estimating required number of threads per process

HP-UX

The HP-UX default setting for the maximum number of threads allowed in each process is 64 threads.

When Tivoli Storage Manager is running a high workload or participating in LAN-free data movement, this setting might be too low. To prevent thread creation errors in the Tivoli Storage Manager server, increase the HP-UX maximum number of threads per process to 500.

See "Viewing and modifying the kernel configuration" for details.

Viewing and modifying the kernel configuration

HP-UX

To view or modify your existing kernel configuration, use either the SAM utility program on HP-UX Version 11iv2 or System Management Homepage (SMH) on HP-UX Version 11iv3, or edit the configuration file directly. Base the kernel values on the recommendations of the DB2OSCONF utility.

About this task

Start either SAM or SMH, then select:

- 1. Kernel Configuration
- 2. Configurable Parameters

A list of parameters, whose values you can change, is displayed. The list includes:

- semmns The maximum number of semaphores
- shmmax The maximum amount of available shared memory
- nproc The maximum number of processes
- max_thread_proc The maximum number of threads allowed in each process

See your HP-UX documentation for details about changing configurable kernel parameters.

Appendix E. Services associated with the Tivoli Storage Manager server

Windows

When you start the Tivoli Storage Manager server as a service, other services automatically start. These services are associated with the database manager, DB2.

Service name	Purpose	Comments
TSM Server_instance	The service for the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance that is named <i>Server_instance</i> .	Set the start and stop options for this service to start and stop the server instance automatically.
	For example: TSM Server1	Each server instance runs as a separate service.
DB2 - DB2TSM1 - <i>SERVER_INSTANCE</i>	The DB2 service for the server instance that is named <i>Server_instance</i> . For example: DB2 - DB2TSM1 - SERVER1	This service is automatically started when the service for the Tivoli Storage Manager server instance is started. The DB2 service is not stopped automatically when you stop the service for the server. The system has one of these services for each server-instance service that is started on the system.
DB2 Governor (DB2TSM1)	A DB2 service that is created at installation time, and is required for all server instances.	Do not change the options for this service.
DB2 License Server (DB2TSM1)	A DB2 service that is created at installation time, and is required for all server instances.	Do not change the options for this service.
DB2 Management Server (DB2TSM1)	A DB2 service that is created at installation time, and is required for all server instances.	Do not change the options for this service.
DB2 Remote Command Server (DB2TSM1)	A DB2 service that is created at installation time, and is required for all server instances.	Do not change the options for this service.

The following services are associated with the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

Servers upgraded from V6.1.0 or V6.1.1: On a system that is running the Tivoli Storage Manager V6.1.0 or V6.1.1 server program, an additional service named DB2 - DB2TSM1 - DB2TSM-0 is displayed in the list of services. When the V6.1.0 or V6.1.1 server program is upgraded to a later version, that service is renamed to DB2 - DB2TSM1 - DB2TSM. This service does not affect the operation of the Tivoli Storage Manager server instances that you configure. DB2TSM is a nonfunctional DB2 instance.

Appendix F. Accessibility features for the Tivoli Storage Manager product family

Accessibility features help users who have a disability, such as restricted mobility or limited vision to use information technology products successfully.

Accessibility features

The IBM Tivoli Storage Manager family of products includes the following accessibility features:

- Keyboard-only operation using standard operating-system conventions
- Interfaces that support assistive technology such as screen readers

The command-line interfaces of all products in the product family are accessible.

Tivoli Storage Manager Operations Center provides the following additional accessibility features when you use it with a Mozilla Firefox browser on a Microsoft Windows system:

- · Screen magnifiers and content zooming
- High contrast mode

The Operations Center and the Tivoli Storage Manager Server can be installed in console mode, which is accessible.

The Tivoli Storage Manager Information Center is enabled for accessibility. For information center accessibility information, see "Accessibility features in the information center" (http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/tsminfo/v7r1/topic/ com.ibm.help.ic.doc/iehs36_accessibility.html).

Vendor software

The Tivoli Storage Manager product family includes certain vendor software that is not covered under the IBM license agreement. IBM makes no representation about the accessibility features of these products. Contact the vendor for the accessibility information about its products.

IBM and accessibility

See the IBM Human Ability and Accessibility Center (http://www.ibm.com/able) for information about the commitment that IBM has to accessibility.
Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not grant you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing IBM Corporation North Castle Drive Armonk, NY 10504-1785 U.S.A.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte character set (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

Intellectual Property Licensing Legal and Intellectual Property Law IBM Japan, Ltd. 19-21, Nihonbashi-Hakozakicho, Chuo-ku Tokyo 103-8510, Japan

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM websites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those websites. The materials at those websites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those websites is at your own risk. IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who want to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Corporation 2Z4A/101 11400 Burnet Road Austin, TX 78758 U.S.A.

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this information and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement, or any equivalent agreement between us.

Any performance data contained herein was determined in a controlled environment. Therefore, the results obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Some measurements may have been made on development-level systems and there is no guarantee that these measurements will be the same on generally available systems. Furthermore, some measurements may have been estimated through extrapolation. Actual results may vary. Users of this document should verify the applicable data for their specific environment.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

This information is for planning purposes only. The information herein is subject to change before the products described become available.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs. The sample

programs are provided "AS IS", without warranty of any kind. IBM shall not be liable for any damages arising out of your use of the sample programs.

Each copy or any portion of these sample programs or any derivative work, must include a copyright notice as follows: © (your company name) (year). Portions of this code are derived from IBM Corp. Sample Programs. © Copyright IBM Corp. _enter the year or years_.

If you are viewing this information in softcopy, the photographs and color illustrations may not appear.

Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and ibm.com[®] are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corp., registered in many jurisdictions worldwide. Other product and service names might be trademarks of IBM or other companies. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the Web at "Copyright and trademark information" at http://www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml.

LTO and Ultrium are trademarks of HP, IBM Corp. and Quantum in the U.S. and other countries.

Intel and Itanium are registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft and Windows are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Privacy policy considerations

IBM Software products, including software as a service solutions, ("Software Offerings") may use cookies or other technologies to collect product usage information, to help improve the end user experience, to tailor interactions with the end user or for other purposes. In many cases no personally identifiable information is collected by the Software Offerings. Some of our Software Offerings can help enable you to collect personally identifiable information. If this Software Offering uses cookies to collect personally identifiable information, specific information about this offering's use of cookies is set forth below.

This Software Offering does not use cookies or other technologies to collect personally identifiable information.

If the configurations deployed for this Software Offering provide you as customer the ability to collect personally identifiable information from end users via cookies and other technologies, you should seek your own legal advice about any laws applicable to such data collection, including any requirements for notice and consent.

For more information about the use of various technologies, including cookies, for these purposes, see IBM's Privacy Policy at http://www.ibm.com/privacy and

IBM's Online Privacy Statement at http://www.ibm.com/privacy/details the section entitled "Cookies, Web Beacons and Other Technologies" and the "IBM Software Products and Software-as-a-Service Privacy Statement" at http://www.ibm.com/software/info/product-privacy.

Glossary

A glossary is available with terms and definitions for the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager family of products.

You can view the glossary in the Tivoli Storage Manager information center at http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/ infocenter/tsminfo/v7r1.

To view glossaries for other IBM products, see http://www.ibm.com/software/globalization/terminology/.

Index

A

access storage pools on disk 323 access permissions setting devices 388 access rights setting before server startup 326 accessibility features 557 activating the server 325 active log monitoring after upgrade 339 space requirements 39 active log mirror space requirements 39 AIX clustered environment upgrading from V5.5 to V7.1 271 archive failover log monitoring after upgrade 339 space requirements 39 archive log monitoring after upgrade 339 space requirements 39 auditing the database 3 automatic starting, server 329, 330 automation implementation 338 after migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 433 after z/OS migration 504 planning 50

В

backing up configuration information 474 backup sets before and after migration 450 deleting 486 moving before migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 376 restoring after migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 432 backups API configuration for database general upgrade procedures 318 upgrade scenario 1 129 upgrade scenario 2 171 upgrade scenario 3 219 upgrade scenario 4 265 before upgrade z/OS storage pools 485 database after migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 428 after upgrade 335 after z/OS migration 504 automatic 5 protection 5 recovery 5 volume history file 5 database manager configuration 318

backups (continued) upgrade scenario 1 129 upgrade scenario 2 171 upgrade scenario 3 219 upgrade scenario 4 265 backups before migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris server database 377 backups before upgrade configuration information general upgrade procedures 285 upgrade scenario 1 99 upgrade scenario 2 142 upgrade scenario 3 185 upgrade scenario 4 232 database general upgrade procedures 284 upgrade scenario 1 98 upgrade scenario 2 141 upgrade scenario 3 184 upgrade scenario 4 231 storage pools general upgrade procedures 284 upgrade scenario 1 98 upgrade scenario 2 141 upgrade scenario 3 184 upgrade scenario 4 231 backups before z/OS migration configuration information 474 server database 488 storage pools 448 Butterfly software 357

С

client data protecting during migration 452 protection migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 364 client nodes settings changes for upgrade general upgrade procedures 282 upgrade scenario 1 96 upgrade scenario 2 139 upgrade scenario 3 182 upgrade scenario 4 229 upgrade planning 47 clustered environment upgrade from V5.5 to 7.1 274 upgrade from V5.5 to V7.1 273 upgrade planning 273 upgrading from V5.5 to V7.1 271 clustered environments upgrading to V7.1 271 commands administrative 10 changes in V7 51 deleted 65 migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 363 new 51 overview 521 SELECT 68

commands (continued) SET DBRECOVERY 504 SET DBRECOVERY command 428 updated 57 validating database upgrade 546 VARY 351 ZMSPREPARE 541 compatibility, server with other DB2 products 35 components available for installation 46 compatibility with earlier versions 46 configuration API, Tivoli Storage Manager general upgrade procedures 318 upgrade scenario 1 129 upgrade scenario 2 171 upgrade scenario 3 219 upgrade scenario 4 265 database backups general upgrade procedures 318 upgrade scenario 1 129 upgrade scenario 2 171 upgrade scenario 3 219 upgrade scenario 4 265 z/OS media server 481 configuration information backups before upgrade general upgrade procedures 285 upgrade scenario 1 99 upgrade scenario 2 142 upgrade scenario 3 185 upgrade scenario 4 232 backups before z/OS migration 474 Console language support 547 copy storage pools removing disk-based volumes 484 cross-platform migration to Linux x86_64 See migration of V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris customer support contacting 518

D

data DISK devices migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 375 FILE devices migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 375 GENERICTAPE devices migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 376 migrating from tape to DISK after server migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 431 migrating from tape to FILE after server migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 431 movement migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 363 data deduplication after migrating servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 425 data movement before migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 375, 376 database administration 4 audits 3 automatic backups 5 backing up before migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 377

database (continued) backup configuration migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 404 backups after migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 428, 433 after upgrade 335 after z/OS migration 504 automatic 5 recovery 5 backups before upgrade general upgrade procedures 284 upgrade scenario 1 98 upgrade scenario 2 141 upgrade scenario 3 184 upgrade scenario 4 231 changes in V7.1 3 configuration for backup migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 422 contents summary before migration 377 contents summary before upgrade general upgrade procedures 286 upgrade scenario 1 99 upgrade scenario 2 143 upgrade scenario 3 185 upgrade scenario 4 233 creation general upgrade procedures 308 upgrade scenario 1 122 upgrade scenario 2 164 upgrade scenario 3 212 upgrade scenario 4 259 z/OS migration 491, 494 data movement from FILE and DISK devices 458 migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 368 data movement from GENERICTAPE devices migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 368 database moving data, network method 15 description 3 estimating recovery log requirements 457 before migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 366 estimating space requirements 457 before migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 366 extending 533 extraction description 529 device class, definition 121, 204, 313 DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB 529 loading extracted data 126, 216, 314 manifest file 531 message output 121, 204, 313 performance 44 performance tips 461 to media 121, 313, 492 formatting general upgrade procedures 308 migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 400, 418 upgrade scenario 1 122 upgrade scenario 2 164 upgrade scenario 3 212 upgrade scenario 4 259 formatting empty 536 loading data migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 402 loading data, media method general upgrade procedures 314

database (continued) loading data, media method (continued) upgrade scenario 1 126 upgrade scenario 3 216 z/OS migration 493 location 4 manager See database manager monitoring extraction 121, 204, 313 moving comparison of methods 452 moving data, media method 15 general upgrade procedures 312 upgrade scenario 1 121 upgrade scenario 3 204 z/OS migration 492 moving data, network method general upgrade procedures 316 migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 420 upgrade scenario 2 169 upgrade scenario 4 263 z/OS migration 494 operations 4 performance tips inserting data into V7 database 461 preparation before migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 392, 412 preparation for migration from z/OS 489 preparation for upgrade general upgrade procedures 294 upgrade scenario 1 107 upgrade scenario 2 151 upgrade scenario 3 203 upgrade scenario 4 250 protection changes 5 recovery changes 5 recovery logs 4 restoration 5 server instance creation general upgrade procedures 308 upgrade scenario 1 122 upgrade scenario 2 164 space 4 SQL queries 3 updates overview 3 validating upgrade 546 database backups planning 12, 463 migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 368 database extraction performance tips migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 369 database insertion performance tips migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 370 database manager backup configuration general upgrade procedures 318 upgrade scenario 1 129 upgrade scenario 2 171 upgrade scenario 3 219 upgrade scenario 4 265 overview 3 updates overview 3 database manager (DB2TSM1) 555 DB2 products, compatibility with the server 35, 456

DB2 technology 3 deployment engine backup 335 device classes migration from z/OS 464 device configuration information backups before upgrade general upgrade procedures 285 upgrade scenario 1 99 upgrade scenario 2 142 upgrade scenario 3 185 upgrade scenario 4 232 backups before z/OS migration 474 conversion of z/OS device classes 448 migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 364 z/OS migration 497 device path information updating after migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 428 device requirements migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 369 migration from z/OS 458 devices configuration migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 388 configuring migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 397 directories creating for server instance migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 389 disability 557 disabling sessions 284 upgrade scenario 1 97 upgrade scenario 2 141 upgrade scenario 3 183 upgrade scenario 4 230 disaster recovery manager 5 disk space, requirements 39 drives updating device path information after migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 428 DSMSERV INSERTDB 346 DSMSERV LOADFORMAT utility 536 DSMSERV_CONFIG environment variable setting for upgrade utilities upgrade scenario 2 149 DSMSERV_DIR environment variable obsolete for V7.1 9 setting for upgrade utilities general upgrade procedures 292 upgrade scenario 1 106 upgrade scenario 2 149 upgrade scenario 3 192 upgrade scenario 4 239 dsmupgdx See upgrade wizard description DSMUPGRD EXTEND DB utility extend V5 database 533 DSMUPGRD EXTEND LOG utility extend V5 server log 534 DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB utility extract V5 database 529 DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB utility prepare V5 database 523 DSMUPGRD QUERYDB utility display V5 database information 522 display V5 server information 522

DSMUPGRD UPDATE utility 535 DSMUPGRD upgrade utilities See upgrade utilities

Ε

environment variables changes in V7.1 9 setting for upgrade utilities general upgrade procedures 292 upgrade scenario 1 106 upgrade scenario 2 149 upgrade scenario 3 192 upgrade scenario 4 239 upgrade utilities 9 V7.1 server 9 estimating performance 42 threads per process (HP-UX) 554 upgrade duration 42 upgrade space requirements 39 extending database 533 logs, archive 534

F

failover archive log *See* archive failover log file set names 9 files location 9 missing 351 naming 9 volume history 5 fixes, obtaining 518

G

GSKit removing Version 7 340

Η

hardware requirements migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 366 overview 19 planning 12 V5 server 17 V7.1 server AIX 21 HP-UX 24 Linux 26 Linux on System z 29 Linux x86_64 26 Microsoft Windows 33 Oracle Solaris 31 z/OS migration 455 host name changing after migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 429 after upgrade 336, 337 hybrid upgrade-migration method 452

I

IBM Support Assistant 517 IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media See z/OS media server index reorganization after migrating servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 425 installation component availability 46 location 9 logs 9 server migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 386 migration from z/OS 474 upgrade scenario 1 111 upgrade scenario 2 155 upgrade scenario 3 194, 205 upgrade scenario 4 241, 252 installing z/OS media server 481 instance user ID 7 Internet, searching for problem resolution 517, 518 IP address updating after migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 430

Κ

kernel configuration, viewing and modifying 554 keyboard 557 knowledge bases, searching 517

L

LANGUAGE option 547, 551 language packages 547 language support 551 languages set 551 libraries updating device path information after migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 428 library attributes migration from z/OS 464 library clients, upgrading 47 library manager, upgrading 47 license information updating general upgrade procedures 285 NODELOCK file 285 upgrade scenario 1 98 upgrade scenario 2 142 upgrade scenario 3 184 upgrade scenario 4 232 licenses registering after migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 427 after upgrade 334 registering after z/OS migration 503 Linux x86_64 See also migration of V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris migrating Linux x86_64 357 migration to 355 See migration of V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris logs

extending, archive 534

logs (continued) installation 9 recovery location 39 overview 4 recovery log mode 5 roll-forward mode *See* recovery log mode space requirements, recovery 38

M

manifest file 531 manual upgrade See upgrading using command interface media method 15, 452, 491 media server See z/OS media server messages extraction output 121, 204, 313 server 70 z/OS media server 453 migrating servers from z/OS 474, 491 advantages 439 analyzing v5 server 482 backing up server database 488 before you start 443 commands 447 compatibility with other products 456 configuration of z/OS media server devices 497 configuring server 474 creating server options file 486 creating V7 database 491, 494 data backup 485 data movement from FILE and DISK devices 458 database preparation for migration from z/OS 479 database and recovery log requirements 457 defining media server 481 defining storage pools 502 deleting backup sets 486 deleting volumes marked as destroyed 503 device migration 448, 464 device requirements 458 disabling sessions 482 extracting data to media 492 first steps after migration 499 formatting V7 database 491, 494 hardware and software requirements 455 hybrid upgrade-migration method 452 installing server 474 installing V7 server 474 library definition 464 loading extracted data 493 major phases 446 media and network methods 491 media method 452 moving data media method 492 network method 494 moving tape to another tape library 492 network method 452 operational changes 453, 463 overview 437, 439

migrating servers from z/OS (continued) path definition 464 performance tips database extraction 461 database insertion 461 planning 455 preparation 473 preparing server 541 preparing V5 database 489 preparing V5 server 479 process overview 444 recreating disk-based storage pools 502 recreating storage pool volumes 502 reference information 463 removing copy storage pool volumes 484 restoring storage pools 502 restrictions 444 reverting to V5 509 after V5 database is deleted 510 before data is moved 509 before volumes are deleted 509 scenarios 439 server instance startup 501 settings changes 479 space preparation 473 storage agents 451 storage requirements 458 time estimation example 459 time requirements 458 upgrading multiple servers and components 462 utilities 447 verifying results 501 verifying server options 499 migration commands overview 521 migration of servers to Linux x86_64 See migration of V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris migration of V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 357, 364 advantages 355 automation updating 433 backup sets moving 376 restoring 432 before you start 363 client data protection 364 commands 363 data moving from tape devices 431 data movement 363 data movement from FILE and DISK devices 368 data movement from GENERICTAPE devices 368 data on DISK devices backing up 375 migrating 375 data on FILE devices backing up 375 migrating 375 data on GENERICTAPE devices 376 migrating 376 database backing up 428 moving by network method 420 database contents creating summary 377 database requirements 366

migration of V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 357, 364 (continued) device path information updating 428 device requirements 369 devices configuration 388 configuring 397 migrating 364 directories creating 389 hardware requirements 366 host name changing 429 IP address updating 430 licenses registering 427 media method 385 media method, upgrade wizard 385 method selecting 385 migration scenario 1 385 running upgrade wizard 390 migration scenario 2 configuration for database backup 404 database creation 400 database preparation 392 device configuration 397 loading extracted data 402 media method, command line 391 server installation 393 400 server instance creation migration scenario 3 406 running upgrade wizard 411 server installation 406 migration scenario 4 configuration for database backup 422 database creation 418 database preparation 412 moving server database 420 network method, command line 412 server installation 413 server instance creation 418 network method 385 network method, upgrade wizard 406 operational changes 368 performance tips database extraction 369 database insertion 370 planning 365 reference 371 postmigration tasks 425 preparation 373 recovery log requirements 366 reverting to V5 435 roadmap 357 scenarios 358 server 373 installation 386 monitoring 433 starting 426 server database backing up 377 maintaining 425 server options configuring 425

migration of V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 357, 364 (continued) server settings changing 378 sessions disabling 374 software requirements 366 space preparation 373 space requirements monitoring 433 stopping the server 379 storage requirements 369 tcpserveraddress option updating 430 time requirements 367 troubleshooting 435 upgrade utilities installing 380 installing on AIX 380 installing on HP-UX 381 installing on Oracle Solaris 382 upgrading from V5 to V5.5.6 373 upgrading multiple servers and components 368 user ID creating 389 utilities 363 verifying results 426 migration utilities overview 521 monitoring logs for the upgraded server 339 V5 server after z/OS migration 505 V7 server after migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 433 V7 server after z/OS migration 505 monitoring after z/OS migration server 505 multiple components migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 368 upgrading from z/OS 462 multiple DB2 copies 35 multiple server instances 7 multiple servers migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 368 upgrading 45 upgrading from z/OS 462 multiple servers, upgrading 46

Ν

names for server instance 70 network method 15, 452 migrating servers from z/OS 494 NODELOCK file deleting 334, 503 renaming 334, 503

0

Operations Center overview xiii options after migration from z/OS verifying 499 changes in V7 51 deleted 65 options (continued) new 51 updated 57 options for startup change current working directory 8 DSMSERV utility 8 switch user IDs 8 overview Operations Center xiii ownership storage pools on disk 323

Ρ

Passport Advantage 519 paths migration from z/OS 464 performance of network connections migration from z/OS 453 performance of upgrade processes estimating 42 tips extraction, V5 server 44 insertion, V7.1 server 45 permissions storage pools on disk 323 planning upgrade client nodes 47 client program 47 estimating time required 42, 43 multiple servers 45, 46 reference 51 server 11 AIX clustered environment 271 Windows clustered environment 273 space requirements upgrade process 37 V5 server system 37 V7.1 server system 38 storage agents 45, 47 preparing for upgrade configuration information backup general upgrade procedures 285 upgrade scenario 1 99 upgrade scenario 2 142 upgrade scenario 3 185 upgrade scenario 4 232 database general upgrade procedures 294 upgrade scenario 1 107 upgrade scenario 2 151 upgrade scenario 3 203 upgrade scenario 4 250 database backup general upgrade procedures 284 upgrade scenario 1 98 upgrade scenario 2 141 upgrade scenario 3 184 upgrade scenario 4 231 overview general upgrade procedures 277 upgrade scenario 1 91 upgrade scenario 2 135 upgrade scenario 3 177 upgrade scenario 4 225 server operations 50

preparing for upgrade (continued) space preparation general upgrade procedures 281 upgrade scenario 1 95 upgrade scenario 2 139 upgrade scenario 3 181 upgrade scenario 4 229 storage pool backups general upgrade procedures 284 upgrade scenario 1 98 upgrade scenario 2 141 upgrade scenario 3 184 upgrade scenario 4 231 volume history backup general upgrade procedures 285 upgrade scenario 1 99 upgrade scenario 2 142 upgrade scenario 3 185 upgrade scenario 4 232 preparing for z/OS migration configuration information backup 474 preparing V5 server migrating servers from z/OS 480 problem determination describing problem for IBM Software Support 519 determining business impact for IBM Software Support 519 submitting a problem to IBM Software 520 process resources, server estimating total number 553 using SAM with 11iv2 to view or change 554 using SMH with 11iv3 to view or change 554 publications download xii

R

recovery log description 4 location 39 space requirements 38 recovery log mode 5 registering licenses REGISTER LICENSE command 503 registration licenses after migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 427 after upgrade 334 requirements for upgrade V5 server media method 37 network method 37 V7.1 server 17 resource for HP system process considerations 553 semaphore considerations 553 reverting to previous server version 343

S

scenarios migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 358 migration from z/OS 439 overview for upgrade 73 upgrade procedures new system, media method 177 scenarios (continued) upgrade procedures (continued) new system, network method 225 same system, media method 91 same system, network method 135 scripts dsmserv.rc 330 implementation 338 after migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 433 after z/OS migration 504 overview 521 rc.dsmserv 8, 329 setting up environment 8 starting servers automatically 329, 330 SELECT command 68 semaphore resources, server estimating number of 553 using SAM with 11iv2 to view or change 554 using SMH with 11iv3 to view or change 554 server after migration from z/OS first steps 499 starting instance 501 verifying server operations 501 after upgrade first steps 323 before migration determining appropriate fix pack level 36 prepare server on z/OS 541 before migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris planning 365 before migration from z/OS planning 455 before upgrade determining appropriate fix pack level 36 prepare empty database 536 specify device class of volumes for deletion 524 changing settings before migration from AIX, Linux, or Solaris 378 commands administrative 10 changes in V7 51 deleted 65 new 51 updated 57 compatibility DB2 products 35 earlier versions 46 deleted commands 65 deleted options 65 deleted utilities 65 files location 9 naming 9 installing migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 386, 393, 406, 413 migration from z/OS 474 upgrade scenario 1 111 upgrade scenario 2 155 upgrade scenario 3 194, 205 upgrade scenario 4 241, 252 installing V7 migration from z/OS 474 installing V7.1 general upgrade procedures 297

server (continued) instances multiple on single system 7 owner ID 7 owner, creating 297 starting 8,9 messages 70 migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris verifying server operations 426 migration using network method 494 new commands 51 new options 51 new utilities 51 operation changes 4 options changes in V7 51 deleted 65 new 51 updated 57 options for startup change current working directory 8 DSMSERV 8 switch user IDs 8 prerequisites verification general upgrade procedures 278 upgrade scenario 1 92 upgrade scenario 2 136 upgrade scenario 3 178 upgrade scenario 4 226 protecting during migration 452 requirements verification general upgrade procedures 278 upgrade scenario 1 92 upgrade scenario 2 136 upgrade scenario 3 178 upgrade scenario 4 226 reverting to V5 after migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 435 after migration from z/OS 509 after upgrade 351 after V5 database is deleted 510 before data is moved 509 before volumes are deleted 509 running as root 329 setting up 325 settings changes for migration 479 settings changes for upgrade general upgrade procedures 282 upgrade scenario 1 96 upgrade scenario 2 139 upgrade scenario 3 182 upgrade scenario 4 229 Solaris service 324 starting 331 automatic 329, 330 changes in V7.1 8 from instance owner user ID 328 from root user ID 329 on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, Solaris 325 on Windows 9, 331 using Windows services 332 starting after migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 426 starting after upgrade 325 starting instance 325 stopping 488 migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 379 server (continued) stopping before upgrade general upgrade procedures 286 upgrade scenario 1 100 upgrade scenario 2 143 upgrade scenario 3 186 upgrade scenario 4 233 updated commands 57 updated options 57 updated utilities 57 upgrade planning 11 utilities changes in V7 51 deleted 65 new 51 updated 57 Windows service 318 upgrade scenario 1 128 upgrade scenario 2 170 upgrade scenario 3 218 upgrade scenario 4 265 server data protection migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 364 server database See also database reorganization options 324, 499 server instance creation migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 400, 418 directories migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 389 server instance creation upgrade scenario 3 212 upgrade scenario 4 259 server instances owner 7 starting 8,9 server options deleted 65 migrated from z/OS 469 new 51 updated 57 server utilities deleted 65 new 51 updated 57 services on Solaris systems creating for server instances 324 services on Windows systems creating for server instances 318 upgrade scenario 1 128 upgrade scenario 2 170 upgrade scenario 3 218 upgrade scenario 4 265 database manager 9 database manager (DB2TSM1) 555 DB2 555 server 555 startup of server 9 sessions disabling before migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 374 disabling before upgrade 284, 482 upgrade scenario 1 97 upgrade scenario 2 141

sessions (continued) disabling before upgrade (continued) upgrade scenario 3 183 upgrade scenario 4 230 SET DBRECOVERY command 335, 428, 504 shared libraries, upgrading 47 software requirements migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 366 overview 19 V5 server 17 V7.1 server AIX 21 HP-UX 24 Linux 26 Linux on System z 29 Linux x86_64 26 Microsoft Windows 33 Oracle Solaris 31 z/OS migration 455 software support describing problem for IBM Software Support 519 determining business impact for IBM Software Support 519 submitting a problem 520 Software Support contacting 518 Solaris services creating for server instances 324 space requirements active log 39 active log mirror 39 archive failover log 39 archive log 39 database 38 migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 373 planning worksheet 42 recovery log 38, 39 upgrade process estimating 39 planning 37 V5 server media method 37 network method 37 V7.1 server 17, 38 z/OS migration 473 specify device class of volumes for deletion DELETE VOLHISTORY command 524 SQL changes to syntax in V7.1 68 queries in V7.1 3 SELECT command 68 starting servers after upgrade 325 automatically 329 autostart 8 changes in V7.1 8 multiple instances 8,9 Windows servers services 331 Windows services 9 starting servers automatically 330 stopping server See server, stopping stopping the server migrating servers from z/OS 488 storage agents migration from z/OS 451

storage agents (continued) planning changes migration from z/OS 462 upgrading 45, 47 upgrading configuration 505 storage pool volumes recreating 502 storage pools backups before upgrade general upgrade procedures 284 upgrade scenario 1 98 upgrade scenario 2 141 upgrade scenario 3 184 upgrade scenario 4 231 defining for z/OS migration 502 recreating z/OS migration 502 restoring as part of the z/OS migration 502 verifying access 323 storage requirements migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 369 migration from z/OS 458 support contract 519 support information 515 support subscription 519

T

table reorganization after migrating servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 425 tape devices moving data after migration 431 tcpserveraddress option updating after migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 430 testing before upgrade 47 threads 554 Tivoli Storage Manager for z/OS Media See z/OS media server Tivoli Storage Manager server database See database translation features 547 translations 547 troubleshooting common problems 343 migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 435 migration from z/OS 509

U

ulimits setting before server startup 326 upgrade commands overview 521 upgrade methods overview 73 procedures new system, media method 177 new system, network method 225 same system, network method 91 same system, network method 135 upgrade utilities creating a test server 47 DSMSERV_DIR 9 upgrade utilities (continued) DSMUPGRD overview 16 environment variables, setting general upgrade procedures 292 upgrade scenario 1 106 upgrade scenario 2 149 upgrade scenario 3 192 upgrade scenario 4 239 installing before migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 380 installing on AIX before migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 380 general upgrade procedures 287 upgrade scenario 1 101 upgrade scenario 2 144 upgrade scenario 3 187 upgrade scenario 4 234 installing on HP-UX before migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 381 general upgrade procedures 289 upgrade scenario 1 102 upgrade scenario 2 146 upgrade scenario 3 188 upgrade scenario 4 236 installing on Linux general upgrade procedures 290 upgrade scenario 1 103 upgrade scenario 2 147 upgrade scenario 3 189 upgrade scenario 4 237 installing on Oracle Solaris before migration from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 382 general upgrade procedures 291 upgrade scenario 1 105 upgrade scenario 2 148 upgrade scenario 3 191 upgrade scenario 4 238 installing on Windows general upgrade procedures 293 upgrade scenario 1 107 upgrade scenario 2 150 upgrade scenario 3 193 upgrade scenario 4 240 logs, location 9 moving data, methods 15 overview 16, 521 usage for upgrade general upgrade procedures 307 upgrade scenario 1 120 upgrade scenario 2 164 upgrade scenario 3 202 upgrade scenario 4 250 V5 database BACKUP STGPOOL 485 DSMUPGRD EXTEND DB 533 DSMUPGRD EXTRACTDB 529 DSMUPGRD PREPAREDB 523 DSMUPGRD QUERYDB 522 ZMSPREPARE 482 V5 server DSMUPGRD EXTEND LOG 534 DSMUPGRD QUERYDB 522 upgrade wizard description 305 logs migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 390, 411

upgrade wizard (continued) upgrade scenario 1 118 upgrade scenario 2 162 upgrade scenario 3 194, 201 upgrade scenario 4 241, 248 upgrading multiple servers 46 upgrading comparison of methods 13 existing system, V5 server comparison with new system upgrade 13 new system, V7.1 server comparison with existing system upgrade 13 procedures general purpose 277 new system, media method 177 new system, network method 225 same system, media method 91 same system, network method 135 process 12 server overview 1 using command interface general upgrade procedures 307 upgrade scenario 1 120 upgrade scenario 2 164 upgrade scenario 3 202 upgrade scenario 4 250 upgrading to V7 reverting to V5 351 upgrading to V7.1 server general upgrade procedures 277 scenario procedures new system, media method 177 new system, network method 225 same system, media method 91 same system, network method 135 US English 551 user limits setting before server startup 326 utilities See also upgrade utilities changes in V7 51 deleted 65 DSMSERV LOADFORMAT 536 DSMUPGRD UPDATE 535 migrating V5 servers from AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris 363 new 51 updated 57

V

VARY command troubleshooting 351 verifying upgrade server operations 336 volume history information backups before upgrade general upgrade procedures 285 upgrade scenario 1 99 upgrade scenario 2 142 upgrade scenario 3 185 upgrade scenario 4 232 backups before z/OS migration 474 requirement for database recovery 5 volumes

deleting as part of the z/OS migration 503

W

Windows clustered environment upgrade from V5.5 to 7.1 274 upgrade from V5.5 to V7.1 273 Windows services creating for server instances 318 upgrade scenario 1 128 upgrade scenario 2 170 upgrade scenario 3 218 upgrade scenario 4 265 starting server 332 Tivoli Storage Manager server 555 wizards *See* upgrade wizard description worksheet server space planning 42

Ζ

z/OS media server 439, 447 configuration 481 data migration 482 defining 481 deleting backup sets 486 device migration 448 functionality 437 installation 481 messages 453 migrating data to other devices 507 product overview 443 verifying migration prerequisites 486 ZMSPREPARE command verify migration prerequisites 486 ZMSPREPARE command preparing server on z/OS for migration 541



Product Number: 5608-E01 5608-E02 5608-E03

Printed in USA